Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology

Jean-Paul Latgé *Editor*

The Fungal Cell Wall

An Armour and a Weapon for Human Fungal Pathogens

Springer

Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology

Volume 425

Series Editors

Rafi Ahmed
School of Medicine, Rollins Research Center, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, USA

Shizuo Akira
Immunology Frontier Research Center, Osaka University, Suita, Osaka, Japan

Klaus Aktories
Faculty of Medicine, Institute of Experimental and Clinical Pharmacology and Toxicology, University of Freiburg, Freiburg, Baden-Württemberg, Germany

Arturo Casadevall
W. Harry Feinstone Department of Molecular Microbiology & Immunology, Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health, Baltimore, MD, USA

Richard W. Compans
Department of Microbiology and Immunology, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, USA

Jorge E. Galan
Boyer Ctr. for Molecular Medicine, School of Medicine, Yale University, New Haven, CT, USA

Adolfo Garcia-Sastre
Department of Microbiology, Icahn School of Medicine at Mount Sinai, New York, NY, USA

Bernard Malissen
Parc Scientifique de Luminy, Centre d'Immunologie de Marseille-Luminy, Marseille, France

Rino Rappuoli
GSK Vaccines, Siena, Italy

The review series *Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology* provides a synthesis of the latest research findings in the areas of molecular immunology, bacteriology and virology. Each timely volume contains a wealth of information on the featured subject. This review series is designed to provide access to up-to-date, often previously unpublished information.

2019 Impact Factor: 3.095., 5-Year Impact Factor: 3.895

2019 Eigenfaktor Score: 0.00081, Article Influence Score: 1.363

2019 Cite Score: 6.0, SNIP: 1.023, h5-Index: 43

More information about this series at http://www.springer.com/series/82

Jean-Paul Latgé
Editor

The Fungal Cell Wall

An Armour and a Weapon for Human Fungal Pathogens

Responsible Series Editor: Arturo Casadevall

Editor
Jean-Paul Latgé
Foundation for Research and
Technology-Hellas (FORTH)
Institute of Molecular Biology and
Technology
Heraklion, Crete, Greece

ISSN 0070-217X ISSN 2196-9965 (electronic)
Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology
ISBN 978-3-030-49927-3 ISBN 978-3-030-49928-0 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-49928-0

© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved by the Publisher, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilms or in any other physical way, and transmission or information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed.
The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, service marks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use.
The publisher, the authors and the editors are safe to assume that the advice and information in this book are believed to be true and accurate at the date of publication. Neither the publisher nor the authors or the editors give a warranty, expressed or implied, with respect to the material contained herein or for any errors or omissions that may have been made. The publisher remains neutral with regard to jurisdictional claims in published maps and institutional affiliations.

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

To Anne Beauvais who inspired and supported me for so many years

Preface

The importance of the fungal cell wall has been recognized for centuries. Historically, chitin was first discovered and analysed in mushrooms by H. Braconnot in 1811 after a potassium hydroxide treatment, a chemical treatment which remains to date the most appropriate to investigate the composition of the cell wall of yeast and moulds. The second-most abundant on earth after cellulose and discovered 30 years before cellulose, chitin is present in all kingdoms (Chromista, Animalia, Protozoa and Fungi) except plants and has been at the origin of the separation of plants from the other kingdoms. Another major component of the cell wall is the polysaccharide β-1,3 glucans which has been discovered by Mangin at the end of the nineteenth century. It has been the topic of much structural research in the first half of the last century favoured by the Beer/Whisky Scottish industry but also recognized at the same time as one of the first potent immunostimulant.

In the early times, the study of the fungal cell walls has been only devoted to the analysis of the cell wall polymers. Two pioneers (with very different characters!) did open the mystery box of the cell wall synthesis: a student of F. Leloir, E. Cabib who has identified biochemically the role of the nucleotide sugars in the synthesis of chitin and glucans and S. Bartnicki Garcia who was the first one to identify organelles responsible for this synthesis and has launched the role of cell biology in the understanding of cell wall synthesis. This was 50 years ago. Then came the revolution of molecular biology and the identification of many genes since 1/3 to 1/4th of the total genome is now considered to be devoted to the construction of the cell wall. Too many genes indeed to be studied by a too low number of cell wall scientists to be able to reach a full picture of the cell wall synthesis metabolism which remains today poorly understood.

For a cell wall scientist, the question often arises: how did you fall into the "magic potion" of the cell wall research and spend your life to the study of the fungal cell wall. One reason has been for me the love of natural beauties: looking at swimming Entomophthorales protoplasts in an insect hemocoel look like scuba diving below a flight of Manta rays in an Indian ocean. For other scientists, the fungal cell wall was a way to obtain an international recognition: Toll like receptors or dectin1 would not have been identified without the use of β1,3 glucans, a major

component of the fungal cell wall. More down to earth for many other scientists, it has just been the desire to answer biological and mycological questions since the cell wall is a unique and essential organelle protecting the fungus against external stress; a role which has also attracted the diagnostic and drug industry.

The fungal cell wall is a fascinating topic but progresses in the area have been desperately slow. We hope that the reading of these chapters will stimulate the interest of many new young scientists. Dragging more people to this field is today an important challenge. A multi-facetted experimentalist approach of the cell wall with new biochemistry, immunology or cell biology technologies will certainly be exciting incentives.

I thank all the contributors to this Current topic for their patience during my editing and Anne for her support and help in the reviewing of the different chapters.

Heraklion, Crete, Greece Jean-Paul Latgé

Contents

Synthetic Oligosaccharides Mimicking Fungal Cell Wall Polysaccharides 1
Vadim B. Krylov and Nikolay E. Nifantiev

***Aspergillus fumigatus* DHN-Melanin** 17
Georgios Chamilos and Agostinho Carvalho

Hydrophobin Rodlets on the Fungal Cell Wall 29
Sarah R. Ball, Ann H. Kwan, and Margaret Sunde

α- and β-1,3-Glucan Synthesis and Remodeling 53
Johannes Wagener, Kristina Striegler, and Nikola Wagener

Chitin: A "Hidden Figure" in the Fungal Cell Wall 83
Hannah E. Brown, Shannon K. Esher, and J. Andrew Alspaugh

Control of Actin and Calcium for Chitin Synthase Delivery to the Hyphal Tip of *Aspergillus* 113
Norio Takeshita

Glucanases and Chitinases 131
César Roncero and Carlos R. Vázquez de Aldana

GPI Anchored Proteins in *Aspergillus fumigatus* and Cell Wall Morphogenesis 167
Marketa Samalova, Paul Carr, Mike Bromley, Michael Blatzer, Maryse Moya-Nilges, Jean-Paul Latgé, and Isabelle Mouyna

PAMPs of the Fungal Cell Wall and Mammalian PRRs 187
Remi Hatinguais, Janet A. Willment, and Gordon D. Brown

Exopolysaccharides and Biofilms 225
François Le Mauff

Cell Wall-Modifying Antifungal Drugs 255
David S. Perlin

Mitochondrial Control of Fungal Cell Walls: Models and Relevance in Fungal Pathogens 277
Barbara Koch and Ana Traven

Impact of the Environment upon the *Candida albicans* Cell Wall and Resultant Effects upon Immune Surveillance 297
Delma S. Childers, Gabriela M. Avelar, Judith M. Bain, Daniel E. Larcombe, Arnab Pradhan, Susan Budge, Helen Heaney, and Alistair J. P. Brown

Revisiting Old Questions and New Approaches to Investigate the Fungal Cell Wall Construction 331
Michael Blatzer, Anne Beauvais, Bernard Henrissat, and Jean-Paul Latgé

Synthetic Oligosaccharides Mimicking Fungal Cell Wall Polysaccharides

Vadim B. Krylov and Nikolay E. Nifantiev

Contents

1 Introduction 2
2 Thematic Glycoarrays 4
  2.1 Galactomannan 5
  2.2 α- and β-Mannan 7
  2.3 α- and β-(1 → 3)-Glucans 8
  2.4 Polysaccharides Composed of 2-Deoxy-2-Aminosugars 10
3 Conclusions 11
References 12

Abstract The cell wall of pathogenic fungi is highly important for the development of fungal infections and is the first cellular component to interact with the host immune system. The fungal cell wall is mainly built up of different polysaccharides representing ligands for pattern recognition receptors (PRRs) on immune cells and antibodies. Purified fungal polysaccharides are not easily available; in addition, they are structurally heterogenic and have wide molecular weight distribution that limits the possibility to use natural polysaccharides to assess the structure of their active determinants. The synthetic oligosaccharides of definite structure representing distinct polysaccharide fragments are indispensable tools for a variety of biological investigations and represent an advantageous alternative to natural polysaccharides. The attachment of a spacer group to these oligosaccharides permits their efficient transformation into immunogenic glycoconjugates as well as their immobilization on plates or microbeads. Herein, we summarize current information on synthetic availability of the variety of oligosaccharides related to main types of fungal cell wall components: galactomannan, α- and β-mannan, α- and β-(1 → 3)-glucan, chitin, chitosan, and others. These data are supplemented with published results of biochemical and immunological applications of synthetic oligosaccharides as

V. B. Krylov · N. E. Nifantiev (✉)
Laboratory of Glycoconjugate Chemistry, N.D. Zelinsky Institute of Organic Chemistry, Russian Academy of Sciences, Leninsky Prospect 47, 119991 Moscow, Russia
e-mail: nen@ioc.ac.ru

Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology (2020) 425: 1–16
https://doi.org/10.1007/82_2019_187
© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2019
Published Online: 25 December 2019

molecular probes especially as the components of thematic glycoarrays suitable for characterization of anti-polysaccharide antibodies and cellular lectins or PRRs.

1 Introduction

Nowadays, the prevalence of fungal infections, especially severe invasive mycoses, is increasing all over the world and emerges as a challenge for modern medicine (Brown et al. 2012). The mortality rate associated with invasive fungal infections often exceeds 50%, which is connected both with delays in diagnostic and limited number of available anti-fungal drugs. Difficulties in disease management also arise from the poorly understood mechanism of interaction between the host immune system and fungal pathogens and especially the mechanism of fungal adaptation to host conditions allowing escape from the host defense reactions.

The fungal cell wall is the first component of a pathogen in contact with the immune system. The cell wall of most fungi contains a structural skeleton composed of chitin and branched β-(1 → 3)-glucan. This rigid central core is decorated with amorphous polysaccharides in which composition varies with the fungal species. Figure 1 is a schematic representation of the cell wall of different fungal species although the cellular localization of the different components of the cell wall is not clearly demonstrated for most polysaccharides. Moreover, the covalent and noncovalent forces holding together the different components remain often hypothetical.

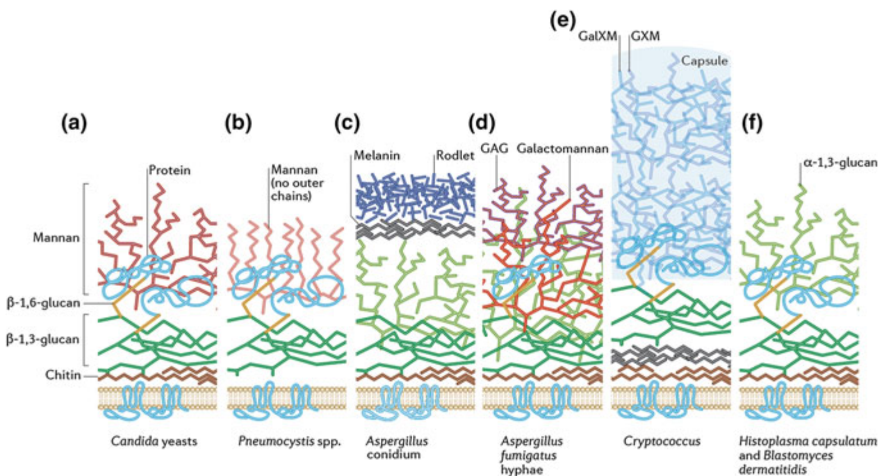


Fig. 1 Schematic view of cell wall composition of main human fungal pathogens. Reprinted by permission from Springer Nature: Nature Reviews Microbiology, vol. 14, Interactions of fungal pathogens with phagocytes, Erwig L.P., Gow N.A.R., pp. 163–176, Copyright, 2016

It is more and more obvious that polysaccharides play a major role in the immune interaction of the host with the pathogen (Hall and Gow 2013; Erwig and Gow 2016; Snarr et al. 2017). Moreover, cell wall polysaccharide antigenic markers of invasive fungal infections used in their diagnosis (Nelson et al. 1990; Tamura and Finkelman 2005; Cuenca-Estrella et al. 2012; Ullmann et al. 2018). In spite of the obvious importance of fungal cell wall polysaccharides for immune response modulation and for fungal infections diagnostic, little is known about the exact structure of their antigenic or immunogenic epitopes. This knowledge is essential for the understanding of the cellular immune response against the cell wall and for the development of diagnostic tests based on the use of circulating antigens antibodies.

To date, only the role of β-(1 → 3)-glucan and its associated receptor (Dectin 1) has been precisely analyzed (Brown 2006).

Precise quantitative analysis of carbohydrate-binding properties of anti-fungal lectins and antibodies could be performed using arrays composed of structurally defined glycans representing all the major carbohydrate structures present in the cell wall of fungal pathogens. The idea of using a comprehensive carbohydrate array for a wide range of glycobiology purposes has been proposed early by the Consortium for Functional Glycomics (CFG, http://www.functionalglycomics.org) since 2001 (Blixt et al. 2004; Raman et al. 2006). A number of thematic glycoarrays were designed and successfully applied to analyze viral and bacterial infections, cancer process, autoimmune disorders, etc. For example, microarrays composed of human glycans were used to survey the host specificity of different strains of influenza viruses (Stevens et al. 2006). Arrays were used for the analysis of glycan-specific antibodies against tumors in patient sera (Wang et al. 2008). An array composed of synthetic glycans related to cell wall polysaccharides from the human pathogen *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and other mycobacteria was developed and applied for screening of specificity of immune system receptors (Zheng et al. 2017).

Various formats of arrays in which carbohydrate ligands are attached to microbeads, microtiter plate, chip, or glass slide have been used to study glycan–protein interactions. The immobilization techniques, though widely varying, can be divided into two main categories—noncovalent and covalent binding (Park et al. 2013) (Fig. 2). An example of noncovalent binding is attachment of lipid-conjugated oligosaccharides (neoglycolipids, NGLs) to nitrocellulose surface via hydrophobic interactions which is widely used to prepare glycan microarrays (Li and Feizi 2018) (Fig. 2a). Covalent and site-specific immobilization requires both introduction of a reactive functional group into the glycan and chemical derivatization of the surface (*e.g.* attachment of amine-linked sugars to the N-hydroxysuccinimide ester-coated surface, Fig. 2b) (Blixt et al. 2004).

Another immobilization strategy is based on a very strong biotin–streptavidin interaction ($K_d \sim 10^{-15}$ M) which, being formally noncovalent, is energetically closer to covalent binding. The attachment of biotin-linked sugars to the streptavidin-coated surface (Fig. 2c) has strong advantages. First of all, the amount of ligand is defined by the binding capacity of the surface which is well

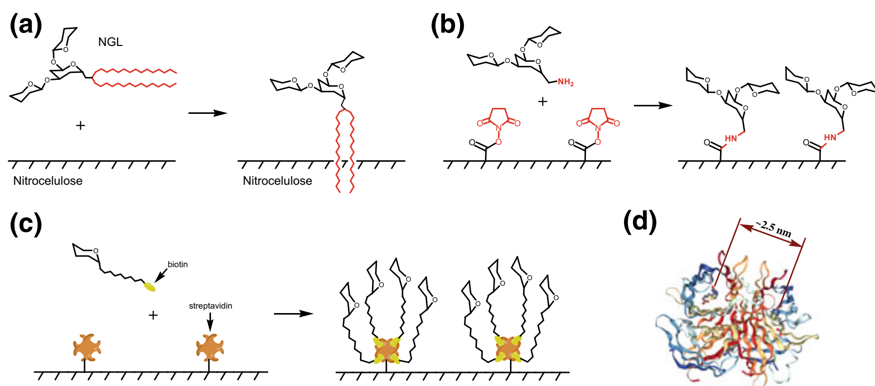


Fig. 2 Strategies of glycan immobilization on a surface. **a** noncovalent attachment of lipid-conjugated glycans to nitrocellulose; **b** covalent attachment of amine-linked sugars to the NHS ester-coated surface; **c** attachment via biotin–streptavidin interaction; and **d** structure of biotin–streptavidin complex (PDB: 6j6j), the distance between biotin-binding sites is shown

documented. Thus, the molar density of the coating glycan is constant and does not depend on its molecular weight, charge, and hydrophilic/hydrophobic properties. Another advantage is the standardized distance between binding sites. The streptavidin molecule is composed of four biotin-binding subunits with the average distance between biotin molecules of about 2.5 nm. For a standard commercial microtiter plate with the biotin-binding capacity of 5 pmol per well, the calculated average distance between biotin-binding streptavidin subunits is 6.1 nm assuming their uniform distribution. This exceeds the size of the immobilized oligosaccharide molecules allowing the study of the interaction properties of individual carbohydrate ligands (Galanina et al. 2003).

The value of carbohydrate arrays as a powerful and easy tool for investigation of protein–carbohydrate interactions is well recognized. However, there are no publications reporting a comprehensive glycoarray covering all the polysaccharide types of the fungal cell wall. In this review, we summarize the currently available information on synthetic availability of the variety of oligosaccharides related to major fungal cell wall polysaccharides.

2 Thematic Glycoarrays

Due to their insolubility and their complex heterogenic structure, pure fungal polysaccharides are not easy to obtain. This complicates the possibility to use them as probes to investigate their immune role. An alternative to natural polysaccharides is to use synthetic oligosaccharides of definite structure representing distinct polysaccharide fragments. For over 15 years, our laboratory has been performing

systematic synthesis of oligosaccharides related to the main types of fungal cell wall polysaccharides: galactomannan, α- and β-mannans, α- and β-(1 → 3)-glucans, chitin, galactosaminogalactan, galactoxylomannan, and others. The use of such oligosaccharides is illustrated with examples of biochemical and immunological applications of the use of synthetic oligosaccharides as molecular probes suitable for the characterization of anti-polysaccharide antibodies and cellular lectins.

2.1 Galactomannan

A specific carbohydrate antigen produced by *Aspergillus* and *Penicillium* species is a galactomannan (Latgé et al. 1994). It is a complex heteropolysaccharide built up of mannopyranose and galactofuranose monosaccharide residues. Latgé et al. (1994) proposed its structure representing α-(1 → 2)-/α-(1 → 6)-linked poly-D-mannoside backbone bearing β-(1 → 5)-linked oligogalactofuranoside side chains attached to some of the mannose units via either β-(1 → 3)- or β-(1 → 6)-bonds. Shibata et al. (Kudoh et al. 2015; Krylov et al. 2018a) revealed the presence of additional structural elements: β-(1 → 6)-linkage within the oligogalactofuranoside side chain and in addition to β-(1 → 3)- or β-(1 → 6)-bonds, β-(1 → 2)-attachment of the galactofuranoside side chain to the mannan backbone (Fig. 3a).

The first synthesized oligosaccharide fragments of the galactomannan corresponding to the homo-galactofuranosyl chains of variable length were either naïve or biotinylated (Veeneman et al. 1987; Zuurmond et al. 1990; Cattiaux et al. 2011). The first synthesis of a heterosaccharide fragment containing both galactofuranosyl and mannopyranosyl residues was then undertaken (Fu et al. 2005). Recently, galactomannan-related oligosaccharides (Argunov et al. 2015, 2016; Krylov et al. 2018a) have been synthesized employing an alternative synthetic strategy based on a new reaction in carbohydrate chemistry, namely pyranoside-*into*-furanoside rearrangement (Krylov et al. 2014, 2016; Gerbst et al. 2019), and controlled O(5) → O(6) benzoyl migration (Argunov et al. 2016). A library of 13 synthetic oligosaccharides (shown in Fig. 3B) was prepared in the form of aminopropyl glycosides allowing their further modification, conjugation, and application in different fields of glycoscience.

The synthetic galactomannan fragments (**10** on Fig. 3b) and immunogens prepared thereof were used for generation of monoclonal antibodies (mAb) and characterization of their specificity (Matveev et al. 2018). Thus, 7B8 and 8G4 mAbs, obtained by immunization of mice with BSA-conjugate of the synthetic pentasaccharide, efficiently recognized natural galactomannan of *A. fumigatus.*

The glycoarray formed from biotinylated oligosaccharides related to galactomannan (Fig. 3b) was used to establish fine carbohydrate specificity of anti-galactomannan poly- and monoclonal antibodies.

The galactomannan glycoarray was employed to reinvestigate the carbohydrate specificity of the EB-A2 monoclonal antibody used in the commercial Aspergillus sandwich immune assay. It was shown that EB-A2 could recognize

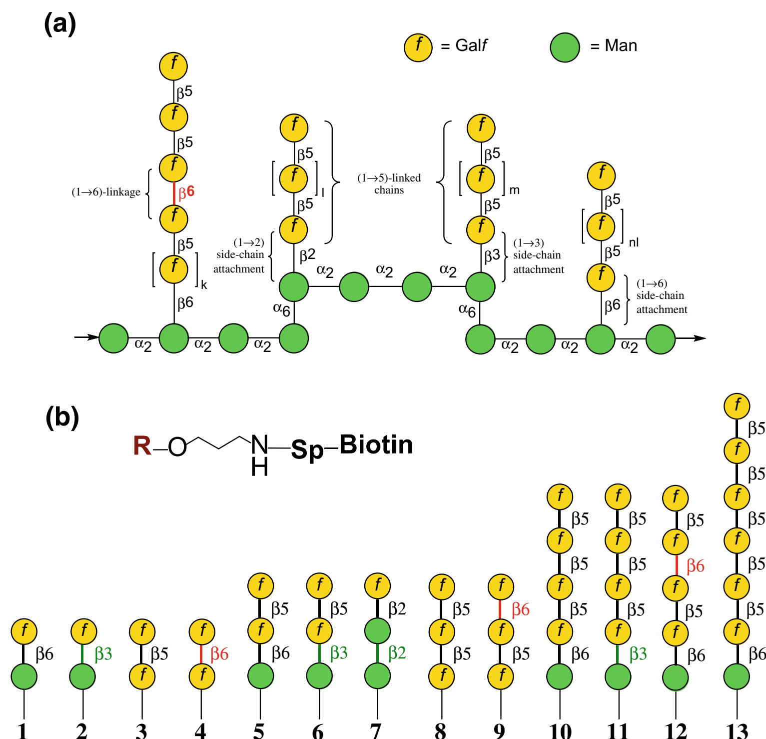


Fig. 3 **a** Tentative structure of galactomannan summarizing the structural features reported by Latgé (Latgé et al. 1994) and Shibata (Kudoh et al. 2015); **b** synthetic oligosaccharides prepared as aminopropyl glycosides. The carbohydrate sequences are represented according to symbol carbohydrate nomenclature (Neelamegham et al. 2019)

oligosaccharides sequences containing only disaccharide Galf-β-(1 → 5)-Galf fragment (Krylov et al. 2019), but not the tetrasaccharide one as had been reported previously (Stynen et al. 1992). This result could explain the occurrence of false-positive signals due to the presence of such epitope not only in *A. fumigatus* galactomannan but also in other bacteria and non-Aspergillus fungi. Monoclonal antibodies 7B8 and 8G4 recognize longer oligosaccharides sequences (Matveev et al. 2018) containing β-(1 → 5)-linked trigalactofuranoside (**8** on Fig. 3b) and pentasaccharide β-D-Galf-[(1 → 5)-β-D-Galf]$_3$-(1 → 6)-α-D-Manp (**10** on Fig. 3b) respectively.

Assaying of polyclonal rabbit antibodies obtained using different preparations of *Aspergillus* species as immunogens and purified on affine sorbent revealed different specificity profiles of anti-galactomannan antibodies. In all the cases, the smallest carbohydrate fragment recognized by the pAb consisted of two β-(1 → 5)-linked galactofuranosyl residues (Krylov et al. 2018c, b).

Synthetic oligosaccharides were also used to investigate the immunobiological activity of the galactomannan. Its action was studied using RAW 264.7 cell line murine macrophages and human PBMCs. Significant immunomodulating efficacy of the galactomannan-related oligosaccharides was established by a proliferation/cytotoxicity assay, phagocytosis and inductive cytokines, and growth factors release (Paulovičová et al. 2017). Oligosaccharides with Galf(1 → 5)Galf blocks was shown to induce the secretion of cytokines and chemokines by immune cells (Wong et al. 2020).

2.2 α- and β-Mannan

The outer layer of the cell wall of *Candida* species consists of mannoproteins. Their mannan moieties are important for host–fungal interactions and virulence. The mannan has a comb-like structure with an α-(1 → 6)-linked backbone bearing different types of oligomannoside side chains depending on the fungal species (Shibata et al. 2012) (Fig. 4a). Some oligosaccharides have a phosphodiester linkage which can be selectively cleaved by treatment with a weak acid solution, releasing the "acid-labile" fraction of the mannan. Early studies have shown that these mannoside fragments are responsible for the serotyping of *Candida* species and are so-called antigenic factors (Fig. 4a) (Suzuki 1997). Numerous studies have also shown the essential immunological role of these mannans (Netea et al. 2008).

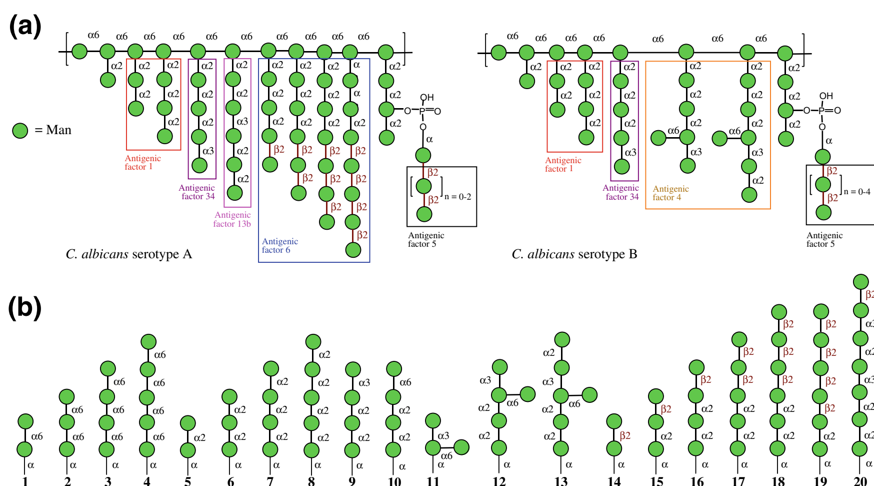


Fig. 4 **a** Structure of the cell wall mannan of *C. albicans* serotypes A and B with marked structures of main antigenic factors; **b** synthesized oligosaccharides related to mannan fragments. All synthetic ligands were prepared as aminopropyl glycosides. The carbohydrate sequences are represented according to symbol carbohydrate nomenclature (Neelamegham et al. 2019)

The synthesis of oligosaccharides related to fragments of yeast cell wall mannans was described in a monograph published in 2009 (Collot et al. 2009). The synthetic works published afterward were considered in a review by Karelin et al. in 2017 (Karelin et al. 2017). The systematic syntheses of oligosaccharides related to *Candida* mannan have been performed in our laboratory since 2007 and allow construction of a representative library of aminopropyl glycosides corresponding to main antigenic factors of yeast pathogens (Fig. 4b). For example, linear α-(1 → 6)-linked oligosaccharides **1–4** represent the mannan backbone, α-(1 → 2)-linked oligosaccharides **5–8** correspond to antigenic factor 1 (Karelin et al. 2007), and branched oligosaccharides **11–13** are related to antigenic factor 4 (Karelin et al. 2010; Argunov et al. 2011).

Preparation of β-linked oligomannosides is a special problem due to the lack of efficient and reliable corresponding synthetic methods. This task commonly requires application of original approaches. Chemo-enzymatic synthesis was developed for preparation of disaccharide ligand **14** with a β-mannoside linkage. It included chemical cleavage and enzymatic dephosphorylation of biotechnologically available phosphomannan followed by its chemical derivatization (Karelin et al. 2019). The strategy based on direct β-mannosylation with conformationally rigid 4,6-O-benzylidene protected mannosyl donors was applied for the synthesis of ligands **15**–**20** related to antigenic factors 5 and 6 (Karelin et al. 2015, 2016).

Synthetic oligosaccharides and corresponding conjugates mimicking *C. albicans* mannan were employed to study the interactions of immune cells with *Candida*. BSA-based conjugates of synthetic oligomannosides effectively induced humoral and cell-mediated immunity. The immunomodulating activity of the conjugates was evaluated based on the induction of pro-inflammatory cytokines. Mice immunization with BSA-conjugates resulted in the production of polyclonal antibodies against synthetic oligosaccharides that were capable of recognizing branched α-oligomannoside structures on the cell wall of *C. albicans* yeast and hyphae (Paulovičová et al. 2013a). Additionally, the anti-sera obtained after mice immunization with BSA-mannooligosaccharides conjugates were able to enhance phagocytosis of *C. albicans* cells by polymorphonuclear leukocytes (Paulovicová et al. 2010; Paulovičová et al. 2013b). It is also worth to mention that the collected databases of NMR-spectral characteristics for synthesized oligosaccharides can be used for the development of computer-assisted method for structural analysis of fungal mannans as it was applied for bacterial polysaccharides including vicinally branched ones (Lipkind et al. 1992).

2.3 α- and β-(1 → 3)-Glucans

Although the glucans (and especially β-(1 → 3)-D-glucan with their associated Dectin1 receptor) have been shown to be essential in the pathogenic life of different fungi, their immunological role has been insufficiently analyzed. The main restriction for the use of glucans from natural sources arises from their limited

solubility. Accordingly, the soluble oligosaccharides related to specified glucan fragments and conjugates thereof are highly demanded mimetics of such polysaccharides.

The synthetic approaches to β-(1 → 3)-D-glucan-related oligosaccharides are relatively well elaborated (Tsvetkov et al. 2015). Syntheses of linear (Yashunsky et al. 2016a) and branched (Yashunsky et al. 2016b) 3-aminopropyl glycosides of β-(1 → 3)-D-glucooligosaccharides were performed. β-(1 → 6)-D-Glucotetraoside and the corresponding biotinylated derivative was synthesized from monosaccharide building blocks via successive glycosylation with a monosaccharide donor (Yashunsky et al. 2018).

The synthesis of α-(1 → 3)-glucooligosaccharides with a predefined structure required special methods of 1,2-*cis*-glycosylation. Strategies based on remote participation of acyl protecting groups were developed (Komarova et al. 2014, 2016) and successfully applied (Komarova et al. 2015, 2018) to obtain oligo-α-(1 → 3)-D-glucosides containing from three to eleven glucose units (Fig. 5). An alternative synthetic approach to the assembly of oligosaccharides related to α-(1 → 3)-glucans (Wang et al. 2019) and α-(1 → 4)-glucans (Wang et al. 2018) was suggested in Codée's group. However, to the best of our knowledge, the results of their biochemical and immunological application studies have not been published yet.

Synthetically prepared oligosaccharides were used to generate mono- and polyclonal antibodies. For example, mouse monoclonal antibodies 3G11 and 5H5 were generated using synthetic nona-β-(1 → 3)-D-glucoside conjugated with the bovine serum albumin (G9-BSA) (Matveev et al. 2019). The glycoarray which included linear and branched synthetic oligosaccharide demonstrated that 5H5 mAbs recognized the linear triglucoside fragment, while 3G11 mAbs could bind the pentasaccharide. In addition, anti-*C. albicans* activity of 3G11 and 5H5 mAbs was demonstrated in vivo and in vitro experiments. Active immunization by synthetically prepared G9-BSA also had revealed effective induction of specific humoral responses against *C. albicans* infection (Paulovičová et al. 2016).

Immunization of mice with the BSA-conjugate of penta-α-(1 → 3)-D-glucoside led to generation of antibodies that recognized α-glucan on *A. fumigatus* cell surface

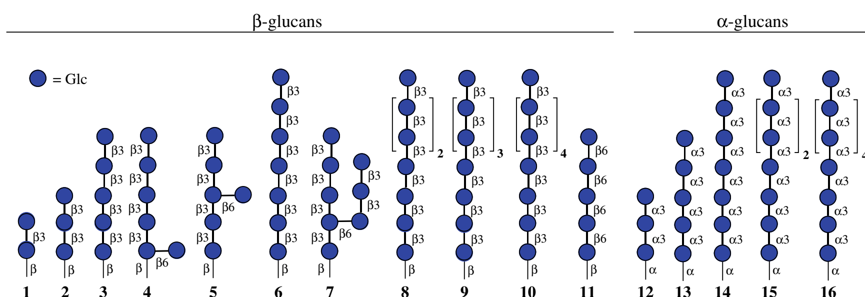


Fig. 5 Oligosaccharides related to α- and β-glucans

(Komarova et al. 2015). Additionally, synthetic biotinylated oligo-α-glucosides loaded on a streptavidin-coated plate were able to recognize human anti-α-glucan antibodies in sera of patients with aspergillosis and induced cytokine responses upon stimulation of human peripheral blood mononuclear cells (Komarova et al. 2018).

2.4 Polysaccharides Composed of 2-Deoxy-2-Aminosugars

In this section, a group of cell wall polysaccharides and corresponding oligosaccharide fragments composed of amino sugars is considered. The most common among them is chitin, an insoluble linear polymer, built up of β-(1 → 4)-linked *N*-acetylglucosamine units. This polysaccharide forms the inner layer of the fungal cell wall and is responsible for its rigidity (Erwig and Gow 2016). Deacetylated chitin, termed chitosan, is produced by many fungal species during their life cycle and plays regulatory and signaling roles. Chitin blocks the recognition of *C. albicans* by human PBMCs and murine macrophages, leading to significant reductions in cytokine production (Mora-Montes et al. 2011). Galactosaminogalactan (GAG) is the polysaccharide exposed on the outer surface of *A. fumigatus* cells. It acts as an immunosuppressor helping the fungal pathogen to survive in the host medium (Fontaine et al. 2011). Structurally, GAG represents a linear heterogeneous polysaccharide composed of α-(1 → 4)-linked galactose and N-acetylgalactosamine units. Both monosacharides are randomly distributed along the chain with the percentage of galactose ranging from 15 to 60%. GAG inhibits pro-inflammatory Th17 and Th1 responses in human peripheral blood mononuclear cells by inducing the expression of the anti-inflammatory interleukin-1 receptor antagonist (IL-1Ra), which blocks IL-1β signaling (Gresnigt et al. 2014). Additionally, immunosuppressive GAG activity associated with diminishing neutrophil infiltrates was observed in in vivo experiments (Fontaine et al. 2011).

The matter of a special interest is β-(1 → 6)–linked poly-*N*-acetyl-D-glucosamine (PNAG). Originally, it was isolated from the polysaccharide capsule of *Staphylococcus aureus* and developed as a promising target for antibacterial therapy and prophylaxis (Gening et al. 2007, 2010). To the best of our knowledge, this polysaccharide was not isolated from fungal species, though immunofluorescence labeling with specific monoclonal antibodies detected PNAG in such fungal species as *C. albicans*, *A. flavus*, *Fusarium solani*, and *C. neoformans*, additionally anti-PNAG antibodies have protective effect against these fungi (Cywes-Bentley et al. 2013).

Due to its poor solubility, using natural chitin for immunobiological studies is difficult. Synthetic chitooligosaccharides do not have these disadvantages. Thus, spacer-armed chitotriose, chitopentaose, and chitoheptaose and their biotinylated derivatives were prepared using a properly protected monosaccharide acceptor and a disaccharide donor (Yudina et al. 2015, 2016). The synthetic scheme developed for synthesis of GAG-related oligosaccharides involved the use of phenyl

2-azido-2-deoxy-1-seleno-α-D-galactosides (Mironov et al. 2004) allowing highly α-stereoselective formation of the glycoside bond (Khatuntseva et al. 2016). The synthesis of the GAG-related biotinylated oligo-α-(1 → 4)-D-galactosamines comprising from 2 to 6 monosaccharide units and of N-acetylated derivatives of above glycoconjugates was performed. Obtained series of GAG mimetics was used to investigate the epitopes recognized by anti-GAG monoclonal antibodies and of antibodies in blood sera of patients with allergic bronchopulmonary and chronic pulmonary aspergilloses (Kazakova et al. 2020) (Fig. 6).

3 Conclusions

The elucidation of the immune response modulation by fungal cell wall components is a highly important but a very complex task. The purification of standardized individual cell wall polysaccharides is almost impossible due to high variability and sensitivity of their structure to minor changes in cultivation conditions. Moreover, natural polysaccharides are highly heterogenic which can result in a high variability between the immune response against different strains.

The approach based on the use of synthetically prepared fragments related to fungal cell wall glycans is the most appropriate to elucidate the complex immune response against the fungal cell wall. In this review, we summarized recent works on synthesis of oligosaccharides related to polysaccharides of the fungal cell wall and a few examples of their potential to investigate their interactions with the host. All synthetic molecules were prepared in spacer-armed form which made possible their biotinylation and controlled site-specific immobilization on streptavidin-coated microtiter plates. The oligosaccharide ligands were combined to thematic glycoarrays used to determine fine specificity of antibodies and innate immune

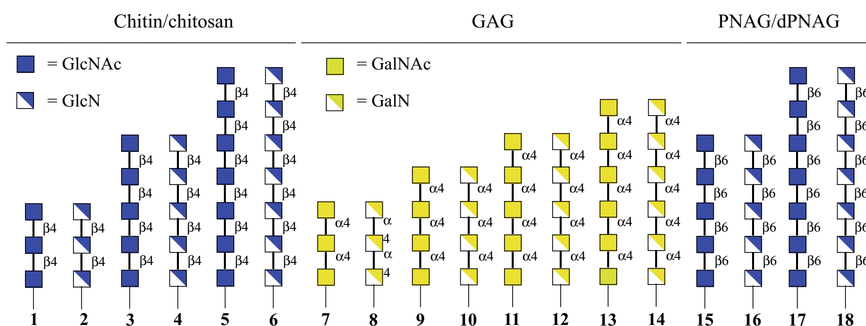


Fig. 6 Synthetic oligosaccharides related to polysaccharides composed of N-acetylated and non-acetylated aminosugars: chitin/chitosan; galactosaminogalactan (GAG); and β-(1 → 6)–linked poly-*N*-acetyl-D-glucosamine (PNAG) and its deacetylated derivative (dPNAG). The carbohydrate sequences are represented according to symbol carbohydrate nomenclature (Neelamegham et al. 2019)

system receptors. The data obtained with such glycoarrays have obvious practical importance for development of new diagnostic kits and vaccines for treatment and prophylaxis of fungal infections.

Acknowledgements This work was supported by the Russian Science Foundation (grant 19-73-30017). We thank Professor J.-P. Latgé and Dr. A. G. Gerbst for critical reading this manuscript and valuable comments.

References

Argunov DA, Karelin AA, Grachev AA et al (2011) A new synthesis of the 3, 6-branched hexasaccharide fragment of the cell wall mannan in *Candida albicans*, corresponding to the antigenic factor 4. Russ Chem Bull 60:1004–1011

Argunov DA, Krylov VB, Nifantiev NE (2015) Convergent synthesis of isomeric heterosaccharides related to the fragments of galactomannan from *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Org Biomol Chem 13:3255–3267. https://doi.org/10.1039/C4OB02634A

Argunov DA, Krylov VB, Nifantiev NE (2016) The use of pyranoside-*into*-furanoside rearrangement and controlled O(5) → O(6) benzoyl migration as the basis of a synthetic strategy to assemble (1 → 5)-and (1 → 6)-linked galactofuranosyl chains. Org Lett 18:5504–5507. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.orglett.6b02735

Blixt O, Head S, Mondala T et al (2004) Printed covalent glycan array for ligand profiling of diverse glycan binding proteins. Proc Nat Acad Sci USA 101:17033–17038. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.0407902101

Brown GD (2006) Dectin-1: a signalling non-TLR pattern-recognition receptor. Nat Rev Immunol 6:33–43. https://doi.org/10.1038/nri1745

Brown GD, Denning DW, Gow NAR et al (2012) Hidden killers: human fungal infections. Sci Transl Med 4:165rv13. https://doi.org/10.1126/scitranslmed.3004404

Cattiaux L, Sendid B, Collot M et al (2011) Synthetic biotinylated tetra β (1 → 5) galactofuranoside for in vitro aspergillosis diagnosis. Bioorg Med Chem 19:547–555

Collot M, Loukou C, Mallet J-M (2009) Chemical synthesis of the oligosaccharidic fragments of yeast mannans. In: Nifantiev NE (ed) Progress in the synthesis of complex carbohydrate chains of plant and microbial polysaccharides. Transworld Research Network, Kerala, pp 371–398

Cuenca-Estrella M, Verweij PE, Arendrup MC et al (2012) ESCMID* guideline for the diagnosis and management of *Candida* diseases 2012: diagnostic procedures. Clin Microbiol Infect 18 (Suppl 7):9–18. https://doi.org/10.1111/1469-0691.12038

Cywes-Bentley C, Skurnik D, Zaidi T et al (2013) Antibody to a conserved antigenic target is protective against diverse prokaryotic and eukaryotic pathogens. Proc Nat Acad Sci USA 110: E2209–E2218. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1303573110

Erwig LP, Gow NA (2016) Interactions of fungal pathogens with phagocytes. Nat Rev Microbiol 14:163. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrmicro.2015.21

Fontaine T, Delangle A, Simenel C et al (2011) Galactosaminogalactan, a new immunosuppressive polysaccharide of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. PLoS Pathog 7:e1002372

Fu M, Zhang G, Ning J (2005) First synthesis of the immunodominant β-galactofuranose-containing tetrasaccharide present in the cell wall of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Carbohyd Res 340:25–30

Galanina OE, Mecklenburg M, Nifantiev NE et al (2003) GlycoChip: multiarray for the study of carbohydrate-binding proteins. Lab Chip 3:260–265. https://doi.org/10.1039/B305963D

Gening ML, Maira-Litrán T, Kropec A et al (2010) Synthetic β-(1 → 6)-linked *N*-acetylated and nonacetylated oligoglucosamines used to produce conjugate vaccines for bacterial pathogens. Infect Immun 78:764–772. https://doi.org/10.1128/IAI.01093-09

Gening ML, Tsvetkov YE, Pier GB, Nifantiev NE (2007) Synthesis of β-(1 → 6)-linked glucosamine oligosaccharides corresponding to fragments of the bacterial surface polysaccharide poly-*N*-acetylglucosamine. Carbohyd Res 342:567–575

Gerbst AG, Krylov VB, Argunov DA et al (2019) Driving force of the pyranoside-*into*-furanoside rearrangement. ACS Omega 4:1139–1143. https://doi.org/10.1021/acsomega.8b03274

Gresnigt MS, Bozza S, Becker KL et al (2014) A polysaccharide virulence factor from *Aspergillus fumigatus* elicits anti-inflammatory effects through induction of Interleukin-1 receptor antagonist. PLoS Pathog 10:e1003936. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.ppat.1003936

Hall RA, Gow NAR (2013) Mannosylation in *Candida albicans*: role in cell wall function and immune recognition. Mol Microbiol 90:1147–1161. https://doi.org/10.1111/mmi.12426

Karelin AA, Tsvetkov YE, Kogan G et al (2007) Synthesis of oligosaccharide fragments of mannan from *Candida albicans* cell wall and their BSA conjugates. Russ J Bioorg Chem 33:110–121

Karelin AA, Tsvetkov YE, Nifantiev NE (2017) Synthesis of oligosaccharides related to polysaccharides of the cell wall of the fungi *Candida* and *Aspergillus*. Russ Chem Rev 86:1073–1126. https://doi.org/10.1070/RCR4750

Karelin AA, Tsvetkov YE, Paulovičová E et al (2015) Blockwise synthesis of a pentasaccharide structurally related to the mannan fragment from the *Candida albicans* cell wall corresponding to the antigenic factor 6. Russ Chem Bull 64:2942–2948

Karelin AA, Tsvetkov YE, Paulovičová E et al (2016) A blockwise approach to the synthesis of (1 → 2)-linked Oligosaccharides corresponding to fragments of the acid-stable β-mannan from the *Candida albicans* cell wall. Eur J Org Chem 2016:1173–1181

Karelin AA, Tsvetkov YE, Paulovičová L et al (2010) Synthesis of 3,6-branched oligomannoside fragments of the mannan from *Candida albicans* cell wall corresponding to the antigenic factor 4. Carbohyd Res 345:1283–1290

Karelin AA, Ustyuzhanina NE, Tsvetkov YE, Nifantiev NE (2019) Synthesis of a biotinylated probe from biotechnologically derived β-D-mannopyranosyl-(1 → 2)-D-mannopyranose for assessment of carbohydrate specificity of antibodies. Carbohyd Res 471:39–42

Kazakova ED, Yashunsky DV, Krylov VB et al (2020) Biotinylated oligo-α-(1 → 4)-D-galactosamines and their *N*-acetylated derivatives: α-stereoselective synthesis and immunology application. Submitted

Khatuntseva EA, Sherman AA, Tsvetkov YE, Nifantiev NE (2016) Phenyl 2-azido-2-deoxy-1-selenogalactosides: a single type of glycosyl donor for the highly stereoselective synthesis of α-and β-2-azido-2-deoxy-D-galactopyranosides. Tetrahedron Lett 57:708–711. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tetlet.2016.01.013

Komarova BS, Orekhova MV, Tsvetkov YE, Nifantiev NE (2014) Is an acyl group at O-3 in glucosyl donors able to control α-stereoselectivity of glycosylation? The role of conformational mobility and the protecting group at O-6. Carbohyd Res 384:70–86. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carres.2013.11.016

Komarova BS, Orekhova MV, Tsvetkov YE et al (2015) Synthesis of a pentasaccharide and neoglycoconjugates related to fungal α-(1 → 3)-glucan and their use in the generation of antibodies to trace *Aspergillus fumigatus* cell wall. Chem Eur J 21:1029–1035. https://doi.org/10.1002/chem.201404770

Komarova BS, Tsvetkov YE, Nifantiev NE (2016) Design of α-selective Glycopyranosyl donors relying on remote Anchimeric assistance. Chem Rec 16:488–506. https://doi.org/10.1002/tcr.201500245

Komarova BS, Wong SSW, Orekhova MV et al (2018) Chemical synthesis and application of biotinylated oligo-α-(1 → 3)-D-glucosides to study the antibody and cytokine response against the cell wall α-(1 → 3)-D-glucan of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. J Org Chem 83:12965–12976. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.joc.8b01142

Krylov VB, Argunov DA, Solovev AS et al (2018a) Synthesis of oligosaccharides related to galactomannans from *Aspergillus fumigatus* and their NMR spectral data. Org Biomol Chem 16:1188–1199. https://doi.org/10.1039/C7OB02734F

Krylov VB, Argunov DA, Vinnitskiy DZ et al (2014) Pyranoside-*into*-furanoside rearrangement: new reaction in carbohydrate chemistry and its application in Oligosaccharide synthesis. Chem Eur J 20:16516–16522. https://doi.org/10.1002/chem.201405083

Krylov VB, Argunov DA, Vinnitskiy DZ et al (2016) The pyranoside-*into*-furanoside rearrangement of alkyl glycosides: scope and limitations. Synlett 27:1659–1664. https://doi.org/10.1055/s-0035-1561595

Krylov VB, Petruk MI, Glushko NI et al (2018b) Carbohydrate specificity of antibodies against phytopathogenic fungi of the *Aspergillus* genus. Appl Biochem Microbiol 54:522–527

Krylov VB, Petruk MI, Grigoryev IV et al (2018c) Study of the carbohydrate specificity of antibodies against *Aspergillus fumigatus* using the library of synthetic mycoantigens. Russ J Bioorg Chem 44:80–89

Krylov VB, Solovev AS, Argunov DA et al (2019) Reinvestigation of carbohydrate specificity of EB-A2 monoclonal antibody used in the immune detection of *Aspergillus fumigatus* galactomannan. Heliyon 5:e01173. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.heliyon.2019.e01173

Kudoh A, Okawa Y, Shibata N (2015) Significant structural change in both O-and N-linked carbohydrate moieties of the antigenic galactomannan from *Aspergillus fumigatus* grown under different culture conditions. Glycobiology 25:74–87. https://doi.org/10.1093/glycob/cwu091

Latgé J-P, Kobayashi H, Debeaupuis J-P et al (1994) Chemical and immunological characterization of the extracellular galactomannan of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Infect Immun 62:5424–5433

Li Z, Feizi T (2018) The neoglycolipid (NGL) technology-based microarrays and future prospects. FEBS Lett 592:3976–3991. https://doi.org/10.1002/1873-3468.13217

Lipkind GM, Shashkov AS, Nifant'ev NE, Kochetkov NK (1992) Computer-assisted analysis of the structure of regular branched polysaccharides containing 2,3-disubstituted rhamnose and mannose residues on the basis of ^{13}C-NMR data. Carbohyd Res 237:11–22

Matveev AL, Krylov VB, Emelyanova LA et al (2018) Novel mouse monoclonal antibodies specifically recognize *Aspergillus fumigatus* galactomannan. PLoS ONE 13:e0193938. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0193938

Matveev AL, Krylov VB, Khlusevich YA et al (2019) Novel mouse monoclonal antibodies specifically recognizing β-(1 → 3)-D-glucan antigen. PLoS ONE 14:e0215535. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0215535

Mironov Y, Sherman A, Nifantiev N (2004) Homogeneous azidophenylselenation of glycals using of $TMSN_3$-Ph_2Se_2-$PhI(OAc)_2$. Tetrahedron Lett 45:9107–9110

Mora-Montes HM, Netea MG, Ferwerda G et al (2011) Recognition and blocking of innate immunity cells by *Candida albicans* chitin. Infect Immun 79:1961–1970. https://doi.org/10.1128/IAI.01282-10

Neelamegham S, Aoki-Kinoshita K, Bolton E et al (2019) Updates to the symbol nomenclature for glycans (SNFG) guidelines. Glycobiology. https://doi.org/10.1093/glycob/cwz045

Nelson MR, Bower M, Smith D et al (1990) The value of serum cryptococcal antigen in the diagnosis of cryptococcal infection in patients infected with the human immunodeficiency virus. J Infect 21:175–181

Netea MG, Brown GD, Kullberg BJ, Gow NAR (2008) An integrated model of the recognition of *Candida albicans* by the innate immune system. Nature Rev Microbiol 6:67–78. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrmicro1815

Park S, Gildersleeve JC, Blixt O, Shin I (2013) Carbohydrate microarrays. Chem Soc Rev 42:4310–4326. https://doi.org/10.1039/c2cs35401b

Paulovičová E, Paulovičová L, Hrubiško M et al (2017) Immunobiological activity of synthetically prepared immunodominant galactomannosides structurally mimicking *Aspergillus* galactomannan. Front Immunol 8:1273

Paulovičová E, Paulovičová L, Pilišiová R et al (2013a) Synthetically prepared glycooligosaccharides mimicking *Candida albicans* cell wall glycan antigens—novel tools to study host-pathogen interactions. FEMS Yeast Res 13:659–673. https://doi.org/10.1111/1567-1364.12065

Paulovičová E, Paulovičová L, Pilišiová R et al (2016) The evaluation of β-(1 → 3)-nonaglucoside as an anti-*Candida albicans* immune response inducer. Cell Microbiol 18:1294–1307. https://doi.org/10.1111/cmi.12631

Paulovicová L, Bystrický S, Paulovicová E et al (2010) Model α-mannoside conjugates: immunogenicity and induction of candidacidal activity. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol 58:307–313. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1574-695X.2009.00642.x

Paulovičová L, Paulovičová E, Karelin AA et al (2013b) Effect of branched α-oligomannoside structures on induction of anti-*Candida* humoral immune response. Scand J Immunol 77:431–441. https://doi.org/10.1111/sji.12044

Raman R, Venkataraman M, Ramakrishnan S et al (2006) Advancing glycomics: implementation strategies at the consortium for functional glycomics. Glycobiology 16:82R–90R. https://doi.org/10.1093/glycob/cwj080

Shibata N, Kobayashi H, Suzuki S (2012) Immunochemistry of pathogenic yeast, *Candida* species, focusing on mannan. Proc Japan Acad Ser B 88:250–265

Snarr BD, Qureshi ST, Sheppard DC (2017) Immune recognition of fungal polysaccharides. J Fungi (Basel) 3. https://doi.org/10.3390/jof3030047

Stevens J, Blixt O, Paulson JC, Wilson IA (2006) Glycan microarray technologies: tools to survey host specificity of influenza viruses. Nat Rev Microbiol 4:857–864. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrmicro1530

Stynen D, Sarfati J, Goris A et al (1992) Rat monoclonal antibodies against *Aspergillus galactomannan*. Infect Immun 60:2237–2245

Suzuki S (1997) Immunochemical study on mannans of genus *Candida*. I. Structural investigation of antigenic factors 1, 4, 5, 6, 8, 9, 11, 13, 13b and 34. Curr Top Med Mycol 8:57–70

Tamura H, Finkelman MA (2005) Detection and Measurement of (1 → 3)-β-D-Glucan with *Limulus amebocyte* lysate-based reagents. In: Toxicology of 1-3-beta-glucans. CRC Press, pp 191–210

Tsvetkov YE, Khatuntseva EA, Yashunsky DV, Nifantiev NE (2015) Synthetic β-(1 → 3)-D-glucooligosaccharides: model compounds for the mechanistic study of β-(1 → 3)-D-glucan bioactivities and design of antifungal vaccines. Russ Chem Bull 64:990–1013. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11172-015-0969-4

Ullmann AJ, Aguado JM, Arikan-Akdagli S et al (2018) Diagnosis and management of *Aspergillus* diseases: executive summary of the 2017 ESCMID-ECMM-ERS guideline. Clin Microbiol Infect 24:e1–e38. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cmi.2018.01.002

Veeneman GH, Notermans S, Liskamp RMJ et al (1987) Solid-phase synthesis of a naturally occurring β-(1 → 5)-linked D-galactofuranosyl heptamer containing the artificial linkage arm L-homoserine. Tetrahedron Lett 28:6695–6698

Wang C-C, Huang Y-L, Ren C-T et al (2008) Glycan microarray of Globo H and related structures for quantitative analysis of breast cancer. Proc Nat Acad Sci USA 105:11661–11666. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.0804923105

Wang L, Overkleeft HS, van der Marel GA, Codée JD (2019) Reagent controlled stereoselective assembly of α-(1,3)-glucans. Eur J Org Chem 2019:1994–2003. https://doi.org/10.1002/ejoc.201800894

Wang L, Overkleeft HS, van der Marel GA, Codée JD (2018) Reagent controlled stereoselective synthesis of α-glucans. J Am Chem Soc 140:4632–4638. https://doi.org/10.1021/jacs.8b00669

Wong S, Krylov VB, Argunov DA et al (2020) Potential of chemically synthesized oligosaccharides to define th carbohydrate moieties of the fungal cell wall responsible for the human immune response. The example of the *Aspergillus fumigatus* galactomannan. mSphere, in press

Yashunsky DV, Karelin AA, Tsvetkov YE, Nifantiev NE (2018) Synthesis of 3-aminopropyl β-(1 → 6)-D-glucotetraoside and its biotinylated derivative. Carbohyd Res 455:18–22. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carres.2017.11.001

Yashunsky DV, Tsvetkov YE, Grachev AA et al (2016a) Synthesis of 3-aminopropyl glycosides of linear β-(1 → 3)-D-glucooligosaccharides. Carbohyd Res 419:8–17. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carres.2015.10.012

Yashunsky DV, Tsvetkov YE, Nifantiev NE (2016b) Synthesis of 3-aminopropyl glycoside of branched β-(1 → 3)-D-glucooctaoside. Carbohyd Res 436:25–30. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carres.2016.11.005

Yudina ON, Tsvetkov YE, Nifantiev NE (2015) Synthesis of 2-aminoethyl glycosides of chitooligosaccharides. Russ Chem Bull 64:2932–2941

Yudina ON, Tsvetkov YE, Nifantiev NE (2016) Conditions of catalytic hydrogenolysis for the simultaneous reduction of azido group and debenzylation of chitooligosaccharides. Synthesis of biotinylated derivatives of chitooligosaccharides. Russ Chem Bull 65:2937–2942

Zheng RB, Jégouzo SAF, Joe M et al (2017) Insights into interactions of mycobacteria with the host innate immune system from a novel array of synthetic Mycobacterial Glycans. ACS Chem Biol 12:2990–3002. https://doi.org/10.1021/acschembio.7b00797

Zuurmond HM, Van der Klein PAM, Veeneman GH, Van Boom JH (1990) A convenient iodonium-ion-assisted synthesis of an immunologically active tetrameric β (1 → 5)-linked D-galactofuranoside from the extracellular polysaccharide of *Aspergillus* and *Penicillium* species. Recl Trav Chim Pays-Bas 109:437–441

Aspergillus fumigatus DHN-Melanin

Georgios Chamilos and Agostinho Carvalho

Contents

1 Introduction 18
2 Conclusions and Unresolved Questions on Biology of *A. fumigatus* melanin 23
References 25

Abstract Dihydroxynaphthalene melanin (DHN-melanin) is an integral component of the conidial cell wall surface, which has a central role in the pathogenicity of the major human airborne fungal pathogen *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Although the biosynthetic pathway for *A. fumigatus* DHN-melanin production has been well characterized, the molecular interactions of DHN-melanin with the immune system have been incompletely understood. Recent studies demonstrated that apart from concealing immunostimulatory cell wall polysaccharides, calcium sequestration by DHN-melanin inhibits essential host effector pathways regulating phagosome biogenesis and prevents *A. fumigatus* conidia killing by phagocytes. From the host perspective, DHN-melanin is specifically recognized by a C-type lectin receptor

G. Chamilos (✉)
Department of Medicine, University of Crete, Heraklion, Crete, Greece
e-mail: hamilos@imbb.forth.gr

Institute of Molecular Biology and Biotechnology, Foundation for Research and Technology, Heraklion, Crete, Greece

A. Carvalho
School of Medicine, Life and Health Sciences Research Institute (ICVS), University of Minho, Campus de Gualtar, Braga, Portugal

ICVS/3B's-PT Government Associate Laboratory, Braga/Guimarães, Portugal

Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology (2020) 425: 17–28
https://doi.org/10.1007/82_2020_205
© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
Published Online: 9 May 2020

(MelLeC) present in murine endothelia and in human myeloid cells. Furthermore, DHN-melanin activates platelets and facilitates opsonophagocytosis by macrophages via binding to soluble pattern recognition receptors. Dissecting the dynamics of DHN-melanin organization on the fungal cell wall and the molecular interplay with the immune system will lead to a better understanding of *A. fumigatus* pathophysiology.

1 Introduction

Melanins have evolved over 500 million years across all animal kingdoms, yet their biological functions remain enigmatic (Riley 1997; Burkhart and Burkhart 2005). Melanin pigments are ubiquitous light-absorbing polymers of various chemical composition, undetermined structure, and unique physicochemical properties (Riley 1997; Fogarty and Tobin 1996; Smith and Casadevall 2019; Solano 2014). Apart from conferring protection against UV light, mechanical, chemical, and thermal stress, melanins act as powerful cation chelators and anti-oxidants, bind and inactivate microbicidal peptides and antimicrobial drugs, inhibit activation of enzymes, and confer tolerance to dehydration (Riley 1997; Fogarty and Tobin 1996; Smith and Casadevall 2019; Solano 2014). Therefore, melanins might have evolved to confer protection against environmental stressors, including microbial predators (Burkhart and Burkhart 2005).

In infectious diseases, melanins serve as virulence factors that confer protection to microbial pathogens upon interactions with the host immune system (Smith and Casadevall 2019; Langfelder et al. 2003; Solano 2014). On the host perspective, melanins exert important immunomodulatory actions. Of interest, in invertebrates, melanins serve as antimicrobial effectors. In particular, activation of innate pattern recognition receptors (PRRs) by microbial ligands triggers the prophenoloxidase pathway of melanization, which acts as a primitive complement system of vertebrates (Burkhart and Burkhart 2005).This melanization response pathway results in the encapsulation of larger organisms, including parasites, and killing via the production of toxic-free radicals, quinine intermediate compounds, and other antimicrobial effectors. Notably, fungal melanin seems to activate the alternative complement pathway in mammalian serum (Rosas et al. 2002; Pinto et al. 2018).

In fungi, cell wall melanin has a central role in fungal survival and virulence during interaction with the host immune response (Kuo and Alexander 1967; Smith and Casadevall 2019; Perez-Cuesta et al. 2019). Fungal melanins are negatively charged, hydrophobic pigments of high molecular weight produced by oxidative polymerization of phenolic or indolic compounds, including catechol, 1,8-dihydroxynaphthalene (DHN) or 3,4-dihydroxyphenylalanine (DOPA). Most Ascomycota, including *Aspergillus fumigatus* synthesize DHN-melanin, whereas few species including *A. nidulans* are able to produce melanin through L-DOPA.

Furthermore, some fungi including *A. fumigatus* produce pyomelanins, resulting from the breakdown of aromatic amino acids (Heinekamp et al. 2013). This review will discuss recent advances in understanding biology and interactions of *A. fumigatus* cell wall DHN-melanin with the immune system.

A. Topology, gene regulation, and biosynthesis of melanin on *A. fumigatus* cell wall

Topology of DHN-melanin in dormant conidia. Melanin—dihydroxynaphthalene (DHN-melanin) is an integral component of *A. fumigatus* cell wall that accounts for the brownish-gray color of conidia (Tsai et al. 1998; Tsai et al. 1999; Langfelder et al. 1998). In particular, the outer layer of the *A. fumigatus* conidium is mainly composed of a hydrophobic rodlet protein layer (Aimanianda et al. 2009). DHN-melanin is located below the rodlet layer with melanin patches exposed on the surface, which account for the echinulate surface of dormant conidia of *A. fumigatus*in electron microscopy studies (Tsai et al. 1998; Bayry et al. 2014). Both melanin and rodlet layer have been traditionally regarded as immunologically inert molecules that conceal fungal pattern recognition molecular patterns (PAMPs) and prevent activation of PRRs (Aimanianda et al. 2009; Bayry et al. 2014).

The molecular interactions of DHN-melanin on *A. fumigatus*cell wall have not been precisely characterized. Atomic force microscopy studies suggest that DHN-melanin physically interacts with hydrophobins, since pigmentless *A. fumigatus* mutants lack the surface rodlet protein layer (Bayry et al. 2014; Pihet et al. 2009). Accordingly, genetic or chemical removal of the rodlet layer results in higher surface exposure of DHN-melanin and in potent inhibition of host immune responses in macrophages (Akoumianaki et al. 2016). Of interest, in *Cryptococcus*, melanin is organized in spherical structures termed melanin granules, cell wall micro domains of 200 nM size, which are further composed of nanospheres of 30 nM diameter that resemble mammalian melanosomes (Camacho et al. 2019). This model of cell wall melanin organization allows for physical separation of the melanin layer during cell division. Additionally, there is evidence of release of these melanin nanospheres in exosomes (Smith and Casadevall 2019). It is tempting to speculate that a similar model of cell wall organization and melanin release is relevant to *A. fumigatus*. New biophysical approaches such as solid-NMR studies could provide essential clues on molecular interactions of melanin with other cell wall components of *A. fumigatus* (Kang et al. 2018).

DHN-melanin surface removal during cell wall remodeling. The fate of cell wall melanin during *A. fumigatus* germination remains enigmatic. Of interest, although present on early germinating conidia, DHN-melanin is no longer recognized by the specialized host receptor MelLeC within 4 h of conidial swelling (Stappers et al. 2018). Similarly, activation of physiological immune responses, which are specifically inhibited by DHN-melanin, occurs within 2–4 h following phagocytosis of *A. fumigatus* conidia by monocytes/macrophages (Kyrmizi et al. 2018). Therefore, removal of DHN-melanin from the conidial surface results in its

functional inactivation. Importantly, the mechanism of removal or alteration of DHN-melanin from the conidial surface during germination is not understood. It is only known that (i) *A. fumigatus* is able to degrade DOPA-melanins of exogenous sources via uncharacterized enzymatic mechanisms (Luther and Lipke 1980); (ii) non-enzymatic degradation of different melanin pigments, including *A. fumigatus* DHN-melanin can also be achieved within few min of exposure to hydrogen peroxide in vitro (Akoumianaki et al. 2016; Korytowski and Sarna 1990). Whether this is a physiologically relevant mechanism upon activation of NADPH oxidase complex mediated ROS production inside the phagosome remains to be tested.

Biosynthesis of DHN-melanin and cell wall deposition. In *A. fumigatus*, the polyketide-derived DHN-melanin is synthesized by six enzymes encoded by a gene cluster located on the second chromosome (Tsai et al. 1999) (Fig. 1).The polyketide synthase PKS or ALB1 (for "albino 1") is responsible for the first biosynthetic step in *A. fumigatus*, resulting in the biosynthesis of the heptaketide naphthopyrone YWA1 from the substrates acetyl-CoA and malonyl-CoA. A series of subsequent enzymatic reactions carried out by Ayg1, Arp2, Arp1, and Arp2 through hydrolysis of YWA1 to produce 1,3,6,8-tetrahydroxynapthalene (T4HN) by Ayg1, followed by serial reduction and dehydration reactions to produce scytalone, 1,3,8-trihydroxynapthalene (THN), and vermelone. Vermelone is next dehydrated to form 1,8-DHN (DHN), which is then oxidized and polymerized by the copper oxidase Abr1 and the laccase Abr2 to form mature melanin (Tsai et al. 1999; Upadhyay et al. 2013).

Recent seminal studies have revealed important information on spatial and temporal regulation of biosynthesis of *A. fumigatus* DHN-melanin. Notably, the enzymes that function prior to the vermelone production, also called as early enzymes in DHN-melanin biosynthesis (Alb1/Ayg1/Arp1/Arp2), are post-translationally modified via palmitoylation for endosomal sorting and subsequently recruited to the secretory pathway via a non-canonical mechanisms that involves sorting nexins (Upadhyay 2016a, b). In contrast, the late enzymes are (Abr1/Abr2) located to the cell wall surface via trafficking through the classical secretory pathway. This mechanism of trafficking of enzymes implicated in *A. fumigatus* melanin biosynthesis likely ensures tightly regulated production and

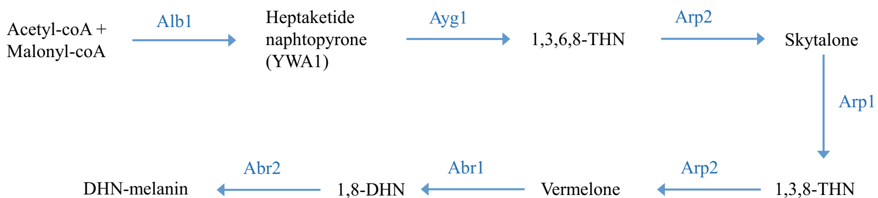


Fig. 1 Biosynthetic pathway of DHN-melanin in *A. fumigatus*. The initial step in melanin biosynthesis is regulated by pksP or alb1 gene. Adapted from Tsai et al. (1998)

has striking similarities with the compartmentalization of synthesis of mammalian melanins in melanosomes (Upadhyay 2016a, b).

Gene regulation of DHN-melanin production. The transcriptional control of DHN-melanin production is incompletely understood. Multiple pathways activated by G protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) converge to activation of transcriptional regulators of pksP gene cluster control conidium formation, development, and melanin biosynthesis in *A. fumigatus*. The cAMP pathway activates the gene cluster of DHN-melanin biosynthesis via protein kinase catalytic unit 1 (PKaC1). MAPK signaling pathways, including MpkB and MpkA, which have antagonistic interactions, activate the master transcriptional regulator RlmA that binds directly to the pksP promoter (Manfiolli et al. 2019).

B. Biological properties and pathogenetic role of melanin

In vivo *virulence studies*. Virulence testing performed via the intravenous route in immunocompetent mice confirmed the marked decrease in pathogenicity of alb1 mutant as compared to the wild-type *A. fumigatus* strain (Jahn et al. 1997; Tsai et al. 1998; Langfelder et al. 1998). The alb1 mutant also is completely avirulent following pulmonary infection of mice immunosuppressed with cyclophosphamide (Akoumianaki et al. 2016). Of interest, infection of *Drosophila melanogasterToll*-deficient mutants via the oral or thoracic route with alb1 mutant resulted in attenuated pathogenicity, implying that the role of *A. fumigatus* melanin in virulence is evolutionarily conserved (Lionakis et al. 2005). In contrast, mutation in abr2 laccase encoding gene did not affect the virulence of *A. fumigatus* (Sugareva et al. 2006). Notably, the contribution of other genes of DHN-melanin biosynthesis in virulence has not been tested in vivo. In contrast, in the invertebrate experimental system *Galleria mellonela*, mutants in the biosynthetic pathway of DHN-melanin generated in two different genetic backgrounds displayed increased virulence (Jackson et al. 2009). This paradoxical increase in virulence might be related to an exuberant host immune response by *Galleria* phagocytes coupled with a robust melanization reaction; however, this hypothesis has not been explored mechanistically.

Interactions of melanin with professional phagocytes cells. In view of the central role of myeloid cells in immunity against *A. fumigatus*, the pathogenetic role of melanin has been predominantly tested during interactions with monocytes/ macrophages and neutrophils (Tsai et al. 1998; Langfelder et al. 1998; Jahn et al. 1997, 2000, 2002). These studies revealed the heightened susceptibility of melanin-deficient (abino) mutants to killing by macrophages and neutrophils in comparison with the wild-type isogenic conidia. Because the enhanced susceptibility of pksP mutant was accompanied by a tenfold increase in ROS as compared to the wild-type strain, it was concluded that melanin somehow compromises the ability of phagocytic cells to activate ROS production, which is consistent with the ROS scavenging properties of melanin pigments. Follow up studies suggested that

DHN-melanin has a direct inhibitory action on phagosome acidification and phagolysosomal fusion in monocytes/macrophages possibly via disruption of V-ATPase assembly to the phagosome, which correlated with the increased resistance of melanized conidia to killing by phagocytes (Thywißen et al. 2011; Heinekamp et al. 2013). However, a mechanistic explanation on the ability of DHN-melanin to inhibit phagosome responses remained elusive.

Targeting of LC3 associate phagocytosis (LAP) by melanin. In recent years, the molecular machinery regulating phagosome maturation has been characterized. Seminal work demonstrated that activation of certain PRR triggers recruitment of components of the autophagy pathway to the phagosome and promotes phagolysosomal fusion (Sanjuan et al. 2007). This specialized autophagic pathway termed LC3-associated phagocytosis (LAP) requires certain members of the autophagic machinery, activation of NADPH oxidase, and is regulated by Rubicon (Martinez et al. 2015). LAP has an important role in killing of conidia by mononuclear phagocytes and in physiological immunity against *A. fumigatus* (Kyrmizi et al. 2018; Akoumianaki et al. 2016; Martinez et al. 2015). *A. fumigatus* conidia selectively trigger the activation of LAP during intracellular germination via the Dectin-1 signaling pathway (Kyrmizi et al. 2018). Of interest, melanin targets the LAP pathway by interrupting the assembly of NADPH oxidase complex on the phagosome (Akoumianaki et al. 2016). This response is important for fungal pathogenicity as albino conidia recover full virulence in the setting of conditional inactivation of LAP in myeloid cells. Importantly, melanin inhibits a calcium/calmodulin signaling pathway regulating the activation of LAP (Kyrmizi et al. 2018). Specifically, calcium scavenging by melanin inside the phagosome lumen inhibits the recruitment of calmodulin to the phagosome, abrogating Rubicon-induced activation of NADPH oxidase and LAP. Whether this melanin calcium binding inhibitory action interferes with specialized calcium channel activation is currently unknown. Because calcium/calmodulin signaling is an upstream regulator of phagosome acidification (Kyrmizi et al. 2018), this mechanism explains the effect of melanin on other downstream phagosome responses, including V-ATPase recruitment for phagosome acidification. Recent phagosome proteomics studies indicate that melanin impacts on major host effector mechanisms including iron homeostasis, mTOR signaling and metabolism, and endosomal trafficking (Schmidt et al. 2018). Whether these differences in phagosome response of albino and melanized conidia are related to inhibition of calcium signaling, other immune effector pathways, or an effect of concealing of PAMPs remains to be elucidated. Importantly, all the aforementioned virulence properties of *A. fumigatus* DHN-melanin have been observed with DOPA-melanin of fungal or synthetic origin arguing for a lack of specificity of the immune role of fungal melanin (Akoumianaki et al. 2016).

Host recognition of DHN-melanin. A novelC-type lectin receptor, termed melanin-sensing C-type lectin receptor (MelLec), specifically recognizes DHN-melanin of *A. fumigatus* and other melanized fungi (Stappers et al. 2018). MelLec recognizes the naphthalene-diol unit of 1,8-dihydroxynaphthalene and has an important role in immunity against *A. fumigatus*. Of interest, in mice, MelLec is expressed in endothelia and a sub-population of epithelial cells and is absent from myeloid cells. In contrast, in humans, MelLec is expressed in myeloid cells and hypo-functional polymorphisms result in attenuated cytokine responses and increased risk for invasive aspergillosis in stem cell transplant recipients. Apart from MelLec, other innate immune mechanisms are also activated by *A. fumigatus* melanin. Of interest, melanin triggers the activation of platelets following *A. fumigatus* infection (Rambach et al. 2015), and these innate immune cells participate in antifungal host defense.

Finally, DHN-melanin activates PI3K/Akt signaling pathway to inhibit apoptosis during interactions with macrophages and epithelia (Volling et al. 2011; Amin et al. 2014). This important virulence mechanism could be used as a Trojan horse by the fungus to establish prolonged intracellular persistence. In addition, because PI3K/Akt signaling is an upstream activator of mTOR, a major regulator of cell metabolism, it would be interesting to explore the effect of melanin on shaping the metabolism of host immune cells.

2 Conclusions and Unresolved Questions on Biology of *A. fumigatus* melanin

Once considered an immunological inert cell wall component that confers resistance to mechanical and osmotic stress, DHN-melanin has been recently evolved as a major player of host-fungal interplay (Table 1). It has become apparent that DHN-melanin targets essential phagosome biogenesis pathways to block phagolysosome formation parallel with activation of anti-apoptotic pathways in immune cells to promote fungal survival within the host. At the same time, innate sensing of melanin via soluble and cell type specific PRRs mounts effective antifungal immune responses to counteract the inhibitory actions of melanin (Wong et al. 2018). Furthermore, metabolic rewiring during fungal-macrophage interplay could be regarded as an alternative immune effector pathway to control fungal disease. The full spectrum of interactions of melanin with host immune and non-immune cells has just started to be characterized. Many unresolved questions on the biological properties of *Aspergillus fumigatus* DHN-melanin as compared to other fungal melanins are presented in Table 2.

Table 1 Functional assessment of mutations in melanin biosynthetic pathway in comparison with the wild-type isogenic strain of *A. fumigatus* (NT = not tested)

Gene	Conidial color	Conidial hydrophobicity (AFM)	Rodlet layer on surface	Activation of PI3K/Akt signaling	Phagocytosis	Phagosome acidification	Killing of conidia	Activation of MelLeC
Alb1 (pksP)	White (colorless)	↓↓↓	↓↓↓	↓↓↓	↑↑↑	↑↑↑	↑↑↑	No
Ayg1	Yellow	↓↓↓	↓↓↓	↓↓↓	NT	↑	NT	Yes
Arp2	Pink	↓↓↓	↓↓↓	↓	NT	↑	NT	Yes
Arp1	Pink	↓↓↓	↓↓↓	N/A	NT	NT	NT	Yes
Abr1	Brown	↓↓↓	↓↓↓	N/A	NT	NT	NT	Yes
Abr2	Brown	↓	↓	N/A	NT	↑	NT	Yes
References	Tsai et al. (1999)	Bayry et al. (2014)	Bayry et al. (2014)	Volling et al. (2011)	Jahn et al. (2002)	Thywißen et al. (2011)	Jahn et al. (2002), Akoumianaki et al. (2016)	Stappers et al. (2018)

Gene	Cytokine responses	ROS production	Activation of LAP	Activation of platelets	Virulence in mammalian models	Virulence in *Drosophila* model	Virulence in *Galleria* model
Alb1 (pksP)	↑↑↑	↑↑↑	↑↑↑	↓↓↓	↓↓↓	↓↓↓	↑↑↑
Ayg1	↑↑↑	NT	NT	NT	NT	NT	↑↑↑
Arp2	↑↑↑	NT	NT	NT	NT	NT	↑↑↑
Arp1	↑ to wild-type level	NT	NT	NT	NT	NT	↑↑↑
Abr1	WT levels	NT	NT	NT	NT	NT	↑↑↑
Abr2	WT levels	NT	NT	NT	Virulent	NT	↑↑↑
References	Bayry et al. (2014)	Jahn et al. (2000, 2002)	Akoumianaki et al. (2016)	Rambach et al. (2015)	Tsai et al. (1998), Akoumianaki et al. (2016), Sugareva et al. (2006)	Lionakis et al. (2005)	Jackson et al. (2009)

Table 2 Intriguing questions to the role of the melanin in host-fungal interplay

1. Apart from monocytes/macrophages, the molecular interactions of melanin with other immune and non-immune cells are essentially unknown
2. A direct interaction of melanin with divalent cation channels regulating calcium signaling has not been formally tested experimentally
3. The biological significance of metal binding by melanin has not been explored apart from calcium
4. The potential function of melanin degradation or release, during either intracellular or extracellular life cycle of the fungus, in the form of exosomes is elusive
5. The requirement of surface exposure of melanin to retain its biological activity requires clarification
6. The potential role of other secondary metabolites produced by pksP cluster in virulence has not been considered
7. The importance of molecular interactions of melanin with other cell wall components has not been evaluated comprehensively
8. A potential function of melanin on cell metabolism apart from the phagolysosome requires systematic studies
9. The role of other melanins such as DOPA-melanin or pyomelanin has not been properly investigated and compared to DHN-melanin

References

Aimanianda V, Bayry J, Bozza S, Kniemeyer O, Perruccio K, Elluru SR, Clavaud C, Paris S, Brakhage AA, Kaveri SV, Romani L, Latgé JP (2009) Surface hydrophobin prevents immune recognition of airborne fungal spores. Nature 460(7259):1117–1121

Akoumianaki T, Kyrmizi I, Valsecchi I, Gresnigt MS, Samonis G, Drakos E, Boumpas D, Muszkieta L, Prevost MC, Kontoyiannis DP, Chavakis T, Netea MG, van de Veerdonk FL, Brakhage AA, El-Benna J, Beauvais A, Latge JP, Chamilos G (2016) Aspergillus cell wall melanin blocks LC3-associated phagocytosis to promote pathogenicity. Cell Host Microbe 19 (1):79–90

Amin S, Thywissen A, Heinekamp T, Saluz HP, Brakhage AA (2014) Melanin dependent survival of *Apergillus fumigatus* conidia in lung epithelial cells. Int J MedMicrobiol 304(5–6):626–636

Bayry J, Beaussart A, Dufrêne YF, Sharma M, Bansal K, Kniemeyer O, Aimanianda V, Brakhage AA, Kaveri SV, Kwon-Chung KJ, Latgé JP, Beauvais A (2014) Surface structure characterization of *Aspergillus fumigatus* conidia mutated in the melanin synthesis pathway and their human cellular immune response. Infect Immun 82(8):3141–3153

Burkhart CG, Burkhart CN (2005) The mole theory: primary function of melanocytes and melanin may be antimicrobial defense and immunomodulation (not solar protection). Int J Dermatol 44 (4):340–342

Camacho E, Vij R, Chrissian C, Prados-Rosales R, Gil D, O'Meally RN, Cordero RJB, Cole RN, McCaffery JM, Stark RE, Casadevall A (2019) The structural unit of melanin in the cell wall of the fungal pathogen *Cryptococcus neoformans*. J Biol Chem 294(27):10471–10489

Fogarty RV, Tobin JM (1996) Fungal melanins and their interactions with metals. Enzyme Microb Tech 19:311–317

Heinekamp T, Thywißen A, Macheleidt J, Keller S, Valiante V, Brakhage AA (2013) *Aspergillus fumigatus* melanins: interference with the host endocytosis pathway and impact on virulence. Front Microbiol 18(3):440

Jahn B, Koch A, Schmidt A, Wanner G, Gehringer H, Bhakdi S, Brakhage AA (1997) Isolation and characterization of a pigmentless-conidium mutant of *Aspergillus fumigatus* with altered conidial surface and reduced virulence. Infect Immun 65(12):5110–5117

Jahn B, Boukhallouk F, Lotz J, Langfelder K, Wanner G, Brakhage AA (2000) Interaction of human phagocytes with pigmentless *Aspergillus conidia*. Infect Immun 68(6):3736–3739

Jahn B, Langfelder K, Schneider U, Schindel C, Brakhage AA (2002) PKSP-dependent reduction of phagolysosome fusion and intracellular kill of *Aspergillus fumigatus conidia* by human monocyte-derived macrophages. Cell Microbiol 4(12):793–803

Jackson JC, Higgins LA, Lin X (2009) Conidiation color mutants of *Aspergillus fumigatus* are highly pathogenic to the heterologous insect host Galleria mellonella. PLoS ONE 4(1):e4224

Kang X, Kirui A, Muszyński A, Widanage MCD, Chen A, Azadi P, Wang P, Mentink-Vigier F, Wang T (2018) Molecular architecture of fungal cell walls revealed by solid-state NMR. Nat Commun 9(1):2747

Korytowski W, Sarna T (1990) Bleaching of melanin pigments. Role of copper ions and hydrogen peroxide in autooxidation and photooxidation of synthetic dopa-melanin. J Biol Chem 265 (21):12410–12416

Kuo MJ, Alexander M (1967) Inhibition of the lysis of fungi by melanins. J Bacteriol 94(3):624–629

Kyrmizi I, Ferreira H, Carvalho A, Figueroa JAL, Zarmpas P, Cunha C, Akoumianaki T, Stylianou K, Deepe GS Jr, Samonis G, Lacerda JF, Campos A Jr, Kontoyiannis DP, Mihalopoulos N, Kwon-Chung KJ, El-Benna J, Valsecchi I, Beauvais A, Brakhage AA, Neves NM, Latge JP, Chamilos G (2018) Calcium sequestration by fungal melanin inhibits calcium-calmodulin signalling to prevent LC3-associated phagocytosis. Nat Microbiol 3 (7):791–803

Langfelder K, Jahn B, Gehringer H, Schmidt A, Wanner G, Brakhage AA (1998) Identification of a polyketide synthase gene (pksP) of *Aspergillus fumigatus* involved in conidial pigment biosynthesis and virulence. Med Microbiol Immunol 187(2):79–89

Langfelder K, Streibel M, Jahn B, Haase G, Brakhage AA (2003) Biosynthesis of fungal melanins and their importance for human pathogenic fungi. Fungal Genet Biol 38(2):143–158

Lionakis MS, Lewis RE, May GS, Wiederhold NP, Albert ND, Halder G, Kontoyiannis DP (2005) Toll-deficient *Drosophila* flies as a fast, high-throughput model for the study of antifungal drug efficacy against invasive aspergillosis and *Aspergillus virulence*. J Infect Dis 191(7):1188–1195

Luther JP, Lipke H (1980) Degradation of melanin by Aspergillus fumigatus. Appl Environ Microbiol 40(1):145–155

Manfiolli AO, Siqueira FS, Dos Reis TF, Van Dijck P, Schrevens S, Hoefgen S, Föge M, Straßburger M, de Assis LJ, Heinekamp T, Rocha MC, Janevska S, Brakhage AA, Malavazi I, Goldman GH, Valiante V (2019) Mitogen-activated protein kinase cross-talk interaction modulates the production of melanins in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. mBio 10(2). pii: e00215-19. https://doi.org/10.1128/mbio.00215-19

Martinez J, Malireddi RK, Lu Q, Cunha LD, Pelletier S, Gingras S, Orchard R, Guan JL, Tan H, Peng J, Kanneganti TD, Virgin HW, Green DR (2015) Molecular characterization of LC3-associated phagocytosis reveals distinct roles for Rubicon, NOX2 and autophagy proteins. Nat Cell Biol 17(7):893–906

Perez-Cuesta U, Aparicio-Fernandez L, Guruceaga X, Martin-Souto L, Abad-Diaz-de-Cerio A, Antoran A, Buldain I, Hernando FL, Ramirez-Garcia A, Rementeria A (2019) Melanin and pyomelanin in *Aspergillus fumigatus*: from its genetics to host interaction. Int Microbiol

Pihet M, Vandeputte P, Tronchin G, Renier G, Saulnier P, Georgeault S, Mallet R, Chabasse D, Symoens F, Bouchara JP (2009) Melanin is an essential component for the integrity of the cell wall of *Aspergillus fumigatus conidia*. BMC Microbiol 24(9):177

Pinto L, Granja LFZ, Almeida MA, Alviano DS, Silva MHD, Ejzemberg R, Rozental S, Alviano CS (2018) Melanin particles isolated from the fungus *Fonsecaea pedrosoiactivates* the human complement system. Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz 113(8):e180120

Rambach G, Blum G, Latgé JP, Fontaine T, Heinekamp T, Hagleitner M, Jeckström H, Weigel G, Würtinger P, Pfaller K, Krappmann S, Löffler J, Lass-Flörl C, Speth C (2015) Identification of *Aspergillus fumigatus* surface components that mediate interaction of conidia and hyphae with human platelets. J Infect Dis 212(7):1140–1149

Riley PA (1997) Molecules in focus: melanin. Int J Biochem Cell Biol 29:1235–1239

Rosas AL, MacGill RS, Nosanchuk JD, Kozel TR, Casadevall A (2002) Activation of the alternative complement pathway by fungal melanins. Clin Diagn Lab Immunol 9(1):144–148

Sanjuan MA, Dillon CP, Tait SW, Moshiach S, Dorsey F, Connell S, Komatsu M, Tanaka K, Cleveland JL, Withoff S, Green DR (2007) Toll-like receptor signalling in macrophages links the autophagy pathway to phagocytosis. Nature 450(7173):1253–1257

Schmidt H, Vlaic S, Krüger T, Schmidt F, Balkenhol J, Dandekar T, Guthke R, Kniemeyer O, Heinekamp T, Brakhage AA (2018) Proteomics of *Aspergillus fumigatus* conidia-containing phagolysosomes identifies processes governing immune evasion. Mol Cell Proteomics 17 (6):1084–1096

Smith DFQ, Casadevall A (2019) The role of melanin in fungal pathogenesis for animal hosts. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 422:1–30

Solano F (2014) Melanins: skin pigments and much more—types, structural models, biological functions, and formation routes. New J Sci 1–28

Stappers MHT, Clark AE, Aimanianda V, Bidula S, Reid DM, Asamaphan P, Hardison SE, Dambuza IM, Valsecchi I, Kerscher B, Plato A, Wallace CA, Yuecel R, Hebecker B, da Glória Teixeira Sousa M, Cunha C, Liu Y, Feizi T, Brakhage AA, Kwon-Chung KJ, Gow NAR, Zanda M, Piras M, Zanato C, Jaeger M, Netea MG, van de Veerdonk FL, Lacerda JF, Campos A, Carvalho A, Willment JA, Latgé JP, Brown GD (2018) Recognition of DHN-melanin by a C-type lectin receptor is required for immunity to *Aspergillus*. Nature 555 (7696):382–386

Sugareva V, Härtl A, Brock M, Hübner K, Rohde M, Heinekamp T, Brakhage AA (2006) Characterisation of the laccase-encoding gene abr2 of the dihydroxynaphthalene-like melanin gene cluster of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. ArchMicrobiol 186(5):345–355

Tsai HF, Chang YC, Washburn RG, Wheeler MH, Kwon-Chung KJ (1998) The developmentally regulated alb1 gene of *Aspergillus fumigatus*: its role in modulation of conidial morphology and virulence. J Bacteriol 180(12):3031–3038

Tsai HF, Wheeler MH, Chang YC, Kwon-Chung KJ (1999) A developmentally regulated gene cluster involved in conidial pigment biosynthesis in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. J Bacteriol 181 (20):6469–6477

Thywißen A, Heinekamp T, Dahse HM, Schmaler-Ripcke J, Nietzsche S, Zipfel PF, Brakhage AA (2011) Conidial dihydroxynaphthalene melanin of the human pathogenic fungus *Aspergillus fumigatus* interferes with the host endocytosis pathway. Front Microbiol 3(2):96

Upadhyay S, Torres G, Lin X (2013) Laccases involved in 1,8-dihydroxynaphthalenemelanin biosynthesis in *Aspergillus fumigatus* are regulated by developmental factors and copper homeostasis. Eukaryot Cell 12(12):1641–1652

Upadhyay S, Xu X, Lin X (2016) Interactions between melanin enzymes and their a typical recruitment to the secretory pathway by palmitoylation. mBio. 7(6). pii: e01925-16. https://doi.org/10.1128/mbio

Upadhyay S, Xu X, Lowry D, Jackson JC, Roberson RW, Lin X (2016b) Subcellular Compartmentalization and trafficking of the biosynthetic machinery for fungal melanin. Cell Rep 14(11):2511–2518

Volling K, Thywissen A, Brakhage AA, Saluz HP (2011) Phagocytosis of melanized *Aspergillus* conidia by macrophages exerts cytoprotective effects by sustained PI3K/Akt signalling. Cell Microbiol 13(8):1130–1148

Wong SSW, Rani M, Dodagatta-Marri E, Ibrahim-Granet O, Kishore U, Bayry J, Latgé JP, Sahu A, Madan T, Aimanianda V (2018) Fungal melanin stimulates surfactant protein D-mediated opsonization of and host immune response to *Aspergillus fumigatus* spores. J Biol Chem 293(13):4901–4912

Hydrophobin Rodlets on the Fungal Cell Wall

Sarah R. Ball, Ann H. Kwan, and Margaret Sunde

Contents

1 The Discovery of the Hydrophobic Rodlet Layer on Conidia 30
2 Hydrophobins Are the Proteins that Make up the Rodlet Layer 32
3 Generic Properties of Class I Hydrophobin Rodlets 33
4 Sequence and Structural Analysis of Hydrophobins 34
5 The Mechanism of Rodlet Assembly 37
6 Unique Biological Roles of Rodlet Functional Amyloids 40
6.1 Hydrophobins in Symbiotic Relationships with Plants and in Lichens 41
6.2 The Contribution of Hydrophobins to Plant and Insect Infections 42
6.3 The Role of RodA and Other Hydrophobins in *A. Fumigatus* 43
7 Conclusions 44
References 45

Abstract The conidia of airborne fungi are protected by a hydrophobic protein layer that coats the cell wall polysaccharides and renders the spores resistant to wetting and desiccation. A similar layer is presented on the outer surface of the aerial hyphae of some fungi. This layer serves multiple purposes, including facilitating spore dispersal, mediating the growth of hyphae into the air from moist environments, aiding host interactions in symbiotic relationships and increasing infectivity in pathogenic fungi. The layer consists of tightly packed, fibrillar structures termed "rodlets", which are approximately 10 nm in diameter, hundreds of nanometres long and grouped in fascicles. Rodlets are an extremely stable protein structure, being resistant to detergents, denaturants and alcohols and requiring strong acids for depolymerisation. They are produced through the self-assembly of small, surface-active proteins that belong to the hydrophobin

S. R. Ball · M. Sunde (✉)
Pharmacology, School of Medical Sciences and Sydney Nano, The University of Sydney, Sydney, NSW 2006, Australia
e-mail: margaret.sunde@sydney.edu.au

A. H. Kwan
School of Life and Environmental Sciences and Sydney Nano, The University of Sydney, Sydney, NSW 2006, Australia

Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology (2020) 425: 29–51
https://doi.org/10.1007/82_2019_186
© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2019
Published Online: 25 December 2019

protein family. These small proteins are expressed by all filamentous fungi and are characterised by a high proportion of hydrophobic residues and the presence of eight cysteine residues. Rodlets are a form of the functional amyloid fibril, where the hydrophobin monomers are held together in the rodlets by intermolecular hydrogen bonds that contribute to a stable β-sheet core.

1 The Discovery of the Hydrophobic Rodlet Layer on Conidia

The structure of fungal conidia allows fungi to survive and persist in harsh environments that can be challenging in terms of extremes of pH, UV and osmotic pressure. *A. fumigatus* spores can survive storage in liquid nitrogen for up to 18 years and can survive 60 years when lyophilised (Kwon-Chung and Sugui 2013). While all fungal cells are surrounded by a protective cell wall composed of structural polysaccharides, the conidia have additional layers on the surface of the cell wall which confer unique protective properties and which modulate interactions with the environment and the host during infection. Most fungi use air dispersal to disseminate conidia, and the outermost surface of these so-called dry spores is comprised of a protein layer that is extremely hydrophobic. This layer lies on the outside of the conidial melanin layer, which in turn covers the cell wall carbohydrate structures (van de Veerdonk et al. 2017). It prevents wetting of the spores and hence spores remain light and are able to travel long distances on air currents (Beever and Dempsey 1978). The hydrophobic coating also facilitates the dispersal of conidia on the surface of water droplets (Whiteford and Spanu 2001). It is estimated that humans inhale between 100 and 1000 spores per day, depending on the season and environment (Latgé 1999). *Cladosporium*, *Alternaria*, *Penicillium* and *Aspergillus* species contribute the majority of airborne spores present in outdoor places, and most indoor outbreaks of nosocomial fungal disease are caused by airborne conidia from outside (Shams-Ghahfarokhi et al. 2014). *Aspergillus fumigatus* spores are more hydrophobic than conidia of other *Aspergillus* species and can disperse readily in the environment, making *A. fumigatus* conidia the most commonly found spores in the air (Kwon-Chung and Sugui 2013).

The hydrophobic outer protein layer of the conidia is composed of tightly packed fibrillar structures known as rodlets (Fig. 1a). The rodlet layer was first reported following electron microscopy studies of conidia of *Penicillium megasporum* (Hess et al. 1968). Rodlets have subsequently been characterised on the spores of *Cladosporium* (Latge et al. 1988), *Aspergillus* (Ghiorse and Edwards 1973), *Neurospora* species (Beever et al. 1979a; Hallett and Beever 1981) and many others (references in (Cole 1973; Cole et al. 1979; Gardner et al. 1983; Gerin et al. 1994; Lugones et al. 1996)). The rodlet morphology is also visible on vegetative hyphae of *Schizophyllum commune* (Wessels et al. 1972) and on aerial and submerged conidia of the entomopathogenic fungus *Beauveria bassiana* (Bidochka et al. 1995).

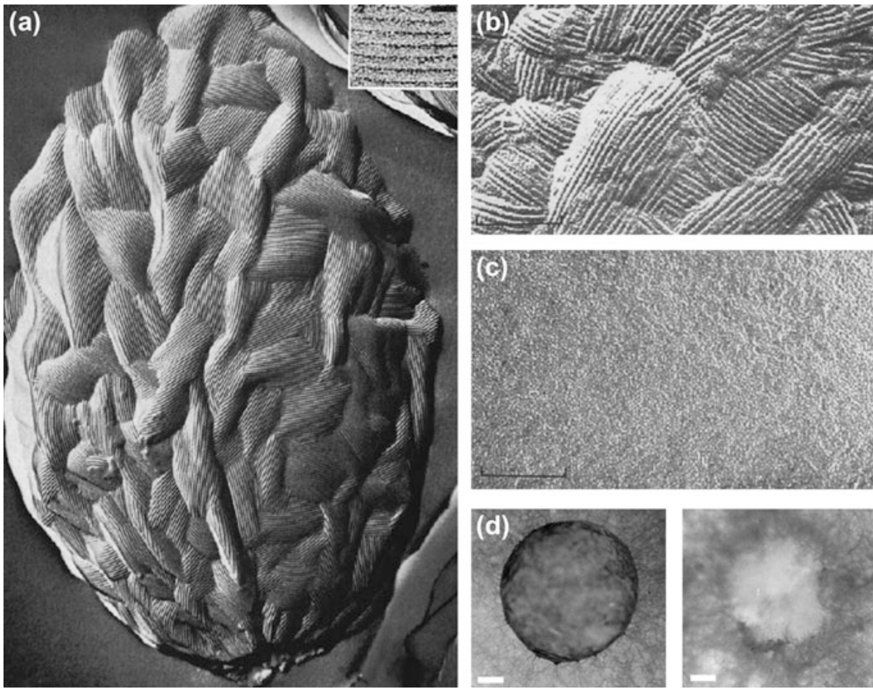


Fig. 1 **a** Freeze-fracture image of a *Penicillium* conidium, showing the patchwork covering of rodlets, grouped into fascicles; magnification *x18,200*. Inset shows higher magnification of rodlets, bar = 20 nm. Image from (Cole et al. 1979) by kind permission of the publisher. Surface carbon–platinum replicas of **b** wild type and **c** ΔRodA mutant conidia of *A. fumigatus* show that in the absence of RodA, no surface rodlet layer is present. Image reproduced with the permission from (Thau et al. 1994), bar = 100 nm. **d** Hydrophobin rodlets are responsible for the hydrophobicity of fungal aerial surfaces. A water droplet remains on the surface of aerial hyphae of wild-type *Schizophyllum commune*, while droplets immediately soak into the mycelium of the ΔSC3 strain. Image reproduced with the permission from (Wosten et al. 1999)

Morphological information regarding the rodlet layer on the surface of conidia has been obtained from freeze-etch electron microscopy investigations (Beever et al. 1979a; Hess et al. 1968; Hess and Stocks 1969) and, more recently, from atomic force microscopy using rodlets assembled in vitro on hydrophobic surfaces (Gunning et al. 1998) and on intact conidia (Dague et al. 2008; Valsecchi et al. 2019b). Freeze-etch studies indicate that, for most species, the rod-like structures are grouped into bundles or fascicles that form the component blocks of a patchwork-like covering over the entire surface of the spore (Hallett and Beever 1981). Within the fascicles, small numbers of rodlets lie almost parallel (Fig. 1b). The fascicles abut neighbouring fascicles of differing orientation and some may overlap, with interdigitation of the rodlets from adjacent bundles (Cole 1973; Cole et al. 1979). There are variations in the number of rodlets within the fascicles and in the length of rodlets, and some of these characteristics may be species-specific

(Hess et al. 1968). For example, in ten *Penicillium* species studied in detail (*P. brevicompactum, P. camemberti, P. chrysogenum, P. claviforme, P. cyclopium, P. cylindrosporum, P. digitatum, P. herquei, P. megasporum, and P. rugulosum*) rodlets are approximately 5 nm wide, with rodlet-to-rodlet spacing of 10 nm. Fascicles range from 10 to 250 nm in width, with rodlets up to 600 nm in length (Hess et al. 1968). The variation in observed fascicle width on a single spore is considerable, e.g. 3–30 nm for *P. chrysogenum* and 10–250 nm for *P. herquei*. Rodlet length also varies with average length observed for *P. chrysogenum* of 90 nm and for *P. rugulosum* 300 nm (Hess et al. 1968). Rodlets from *A. fumigatus*, *A. melleus*, *A. awamori*, *A. nidulans*, *A. ustus* and *A. wentii* range from 30 to greater than 300 nm (Hess and Stocks 1969; Thau et al. 1994). Rodlets from *N. crassa* are approximately 10 nm wide and range from 35 to 240 nm in length (Dempsey and Beever 1979). Rodlets composed of the hydrophobin MPG1 on *Magnaporthe oryzae* spores appear 5–7 nm in diameter (Kershaw et al. 1998). Early microscopy studies reported the observation that the rodlets were composed of chains of subunits (Cole et al. 1979). A detailed examination of the aerial spores and mycelium of *Micropolyspora* revealed the presence of rodlets of 6–8 nm diameter and fibres of 3–4 nm diameter. A two-stranded helical substructure was observed within the rodlets, suggesting that rodlets may be composed of two fibres (Takeo 1976).

2 Hydrophobins Are the Proteins that Make up the Rodlet Layer

The proteinaceous nature of the rodlet layer was established in the late 1970s through chemical analysis, as was its resistance to enzymatic treatment and hot SDS treatment (Cole et al. 1979). However, the nature of the proteins that form the rodlet layer was only revealed when Wessels and colleagues reported their identification of a family of small, hydrophobic proteins with eight conserved cysteine residues that were secreted into the culture medium and also accumulated in the walls of emerging hyphae (Wessels et al. 1991). The layer of rodlets conferred hydrophobicity on hydrophilic surfaces and on the surface of the *thn* mutant that lacks the ability to form aerial hyphae due to the lack of expression of the *SC3* gene. They gave these proteins the name "hydrophobins" and postulated that hydrophobins were involved in the emergence of aerial structures in *S. commune* and might play a general morphogenetic role in fungi. The hydrophobin SC3 was identified as the protein that forms the hydrophobic rodlet coating on the aerial hyphae of *S. commune* (Wessels et al. 1991; Wosten et al. 1994). The sequence similarity between *S. commune* hydrophobins and the rodlet-forming protein in *A. nidulans*, RodA, and the similar poor aerial dispersal of conidia formed by rodletless mutants of *A. nidulans* and *N. crassa* were noted soon after (Stringer et al. 1991) (Fig. 1c). Together, these studies revealed that the characteristic hydrophobicity of the fungal conidial surface was due to the rodlet layer, which was composed of a polymeric

form of a single hydrophobin protein (Fig. 1d). This new understanding of hydrophobin structure and properties in *S. commune, A. nidulans* and *N. crassa* led to a rapid identification of similar hydrophobins in other fungi. The *MPG1* gene was shown to encode a hydrophobin in *Magnaporthe oryzae*, and this hydrophobin MPG1 was demonstrated to play a role in the production of infectious structures (Talbot et al. 1993, 1996). The gene encoding RodA, the rodlet-forming hydrophobin in *A. fumigatus,* was cloned by homology with the *RODA* gene from *A. nidulans* (Thau et al. 1994). The protein product of the rodlet-forming gene in *N. crassa* was purified by Templeton and colleagues in 1995 (Templeton et al. 1995). It is named EAS for the "easily wettable" character of the spores produced by the *EAS* mutant strain of *N. crassa* (Beever and Dempsey 1978). Subsequently, genes encoding members of the hydrophobin protein family have been identified in all of the genomes of filamentous fungi sequenced to date (Linder et al. 2005; Littlejohn et al. 2012; Seidl-Seiboth et al. 2011).

3 Generic Properties of Class I Hydrophobin Rodlets

The ubiquitous presence of rodlets in the cell walls of filamentous fungi suggests that conferring hydrophobicity on aerial surfaces is likely a generic and vital property of these structures (de Vries et al. 1993). Hydrophobin rodlets are not covalently attached to the fungal surface, although the association of rodlets with the conidia is stronger in the presence of melanin and conversely, melanin assembly appears enhanced by the presence of rodlets (Valsecchi et al. 2019a). Bundles of rodlets may be shed from conidia when cells are passed through a cell fractionator (Cole 1973) or when conidia are subjected to shaking (Beever et al. 1979b) or sonication (Templeton et al. 1995). De Vries and colleagues showed that the polymeric hydrophobin structures could be extracted from mycelia with formic acid and solubilised and dissociated to a monomeric form by treatment with trifluoroacetic acid in the absence of reducing agent. This revealed that the hydrophobin rodlets are not stabilized by intermolecular disulphide bridges (de Vries et al. 1993). The conidial surface is rendered hydrophilic by genetic or chemical removal of the rodlet layer, and conidia that lack a hydrophobin rodlet layer are aggregation-prone (Beever et al. 1979a; Thau et al. 1994). Upon conidial germination, the ordered rodlet structure disappears, digested by conidial proteases (Valsecchi et al. 2019b). The rodlet layer is completely absent from the conidial surface after 5–6 h from the start of conidial swelling and germination (Fig. 2). Although the melanin and hydrophobin rodlet layers form a robust shell on the spore surface, resistant to a wide range of physicochemical insults, these layers do not appear to control water influx since the germination of the conidium of the parent strain and the RodA mutant occurs at the same speed (Valsecchi et al. 2019a).

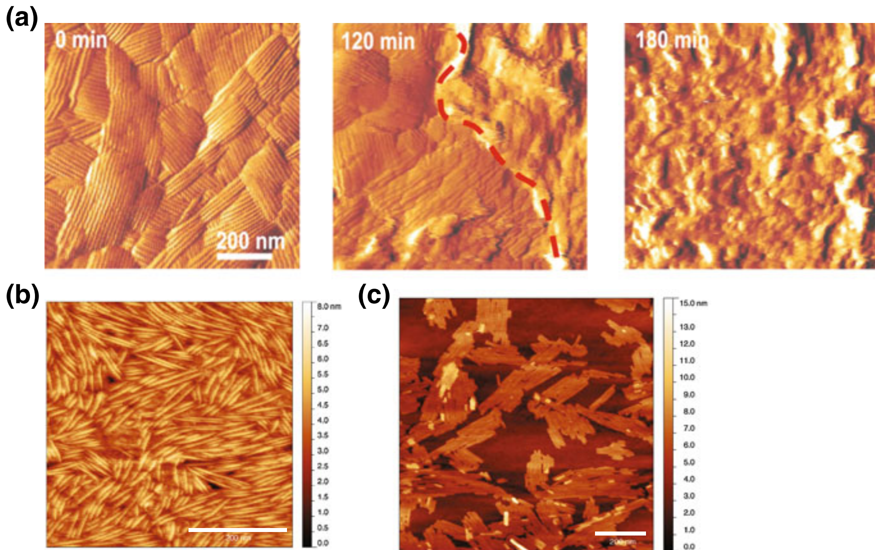


Fig. 2 **a** High-resolution atomic force microscopy (AFM) imaging of the surface of germinating conidia of *A. fumigatus* shows the intact rodlet layer at 0 min, gradual loss of rodlet morphology and emergence of amorphous material at 120 min and the complete absence of rodlets and exposure of cell wall polysaccharides at 180 min. Image reproduced with the permission from (Dague et al. 2008). Recombinant class I hydrophobin proteins spontaneously self-assemble into rodlets when deposited from solution onto highly oriented pyrolytic graphite. **b** Recombinant MPG1 hydrophobin (Pham et al. 2016) and **c** $EAS_{\Delta 15}$ hydrophobin (Kwan et al. 2008), a truncated form of EAS from *N. crassa*, display the characteristic rodlet morphology when self-assembled. Scale bar = 200 nm in all images

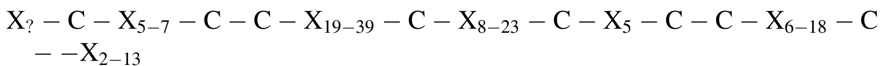
4 Sequence and Structural Analysis of Hydrophobins

The hydrophobin family consists of more than 1,000 small proteins (~5–20 kDa) that are characterised by the presence of a high proportion of hydrophobic amino acids and eight cysteine residues that occur in a distinctive pattern with two pairs of vicinal cysteines (Gandier et al. 2017; Linder et al. 2005). Filamentous fungi express multiple hydrophobin proteins at different stages of the life cycle to mediate transitions between hydrophobic and hydrophilic environments and while all of those characterised are surface-active and self-assemble into amphipathic layers, not all hydrophobins form layers that are composed of rodlets (Linder et al. 2005; Wosten and de Vocht 2000; Wosten and Scholtmeijer 2015; Zampieri et al. 2010).

Early sequence analysis of hydrophobins revealed that they could be divided into two categories, with distinct and characteristic hydrophobicity plots and patterns of inter-cysteine spacing (Wosten et al. 1994). These classes corresponded to hydrophobins that self-assembled into SDS-resistant rodlets (class I) and hydrophobins that formed less regular and less stable assemblies (class II). Class I rodlets require strong acids such as formic, trifluoroacetic or hydrofluoric acid to be solubilised to

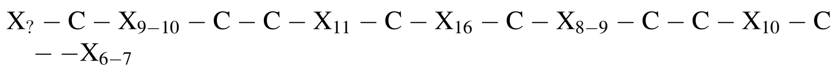
the monomeric protein form, while class II hydrophobin layers are depolymerised by treatment with hot alcohols and detergents (Linder et al. 2005). As more members of the hydrophobin family have been sequenced and identified, this classification has been adjusted to reflect that some hydrophobin members have sequence and predicted structural characteristics that are intermediate between representative members of the two major hydrophobin classes (Jensen et al. 2010; Littlejohn et al. 2012) (Fig. 3a). Additionally, some basidiomycete hydrophobins, e.g. the *S. commune* hydrophobin SC16, form a distinct class I subdivision, different in monomer structure from both ascomycete class I hydrophobins and from a mixed group of class I hydrophobins that display little sequence or loop length conservation (Gandier et al. 2017). Rodlet formation by SC16 occurs at an air–water interface, and the rodlets have a class I-like morphology and amyloid structure (Gandier et al. 2017). In fungi where multiple hydrophobins of different classes have been identified and studied, the different hydrophobins may have specific properties suited to different stages and challenges of the life cycle and environments or they may complement each other (Grunbacher et al. 2014; Lacroix et al. 2008; Moonjely et al. 2018; Valsecchi et al. 2017; Linder et al. 2005). For example, of the six hydrophobins present in the conidia of *A. nidulans*, all contribute to the hydrophobicity of the structures and at least three are able to form rodlets, yet only RodA is present in rodlet form on the wild-type spore surface (Grunbacher et al. 2014). Currently, the consensus for classification is based on the following criteria (Littlejohn et al. 2012):

Class I:



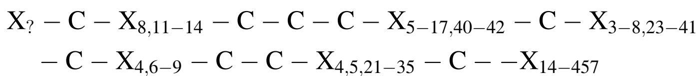
$$X_{?} - C - X_{5-7} - C - C - X_{19-39} - C - X_{8-23} - C - X_{5} - C - C - X_{6-18} - C - -X_{2-13}$$

Class II:



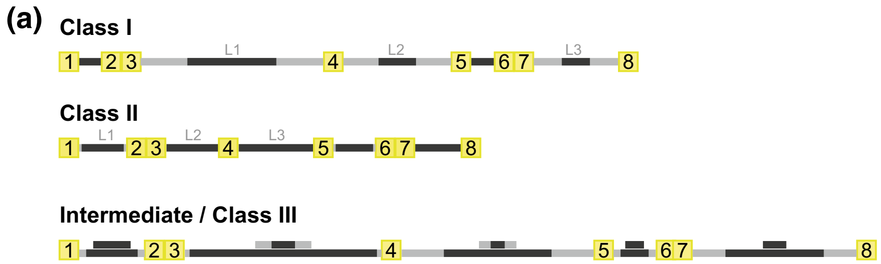
$$X_{?} - C - X_{9-10} - C - C - X_{11} - C - X_{16} - C - X_{8-9} - C - C - X_{10} - C - -X_{6-7}$$

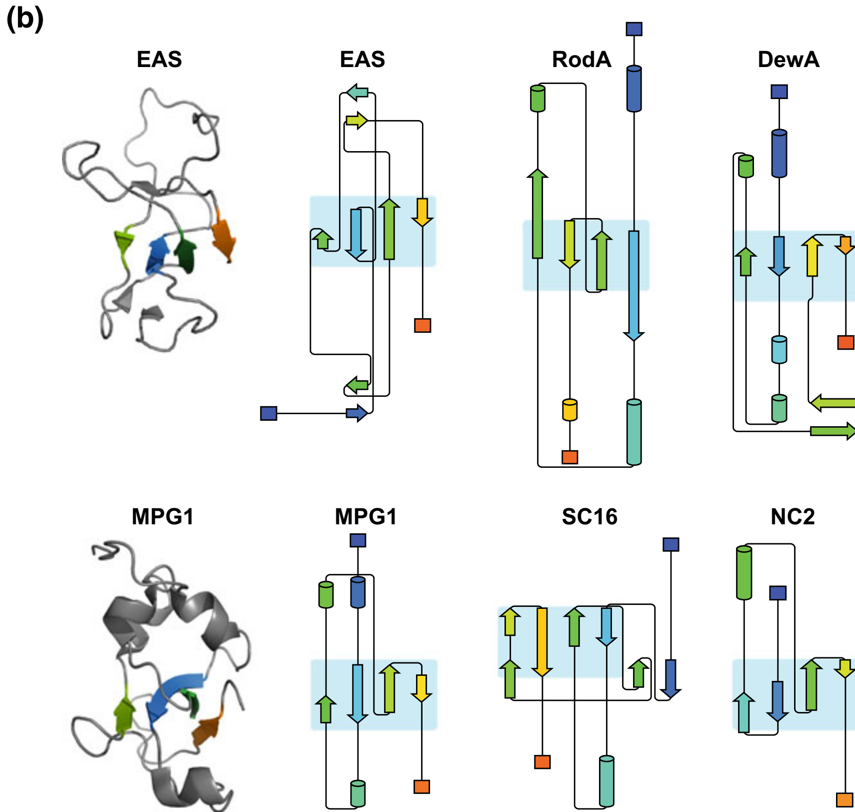
Intermediate/Class III:



$$X_{?} - C - X_{8,11-14} - C - C - C - X_{5-17,40-42} - C - X_{3-8,23-41} - C - X_{4,6-9} - C - C - X_{4,5,21-35} - C - -X_{14-457}$$

Structural understanding of hydrophobins has advanced rapidly since the crystal structures of the class II hydrophobins HFBI and HFBII, from *Trichoderma reesei*, were first reported (Hakanpaa et al. 2004, 2006). HFBI and its close homologue HFBII have small β-barrel structures that are tightly constrained by the presence of the four disulphide bridges and have two short loops (L1 and L2) and a slightly longer loop (L3), with an α-helix in L2 on the periphery of the barrel. The first





structure of the monomeric form of a class I hydrophobin was determined in 2006, when solution NMR spectroscopy revealed that EAS had a similar small β-barrel core structure but is significantly different in the loop regions (Kwan et al. 2006) (Fig. 3b). L2 in EAS contains β-sheet structure but L1 and L3 lack regular, stable elements of secondary structure and are flexible. The NMR structures of other class I hydrophobins, DewA, MPG1, RodA and SC16 reveal that while all of them contain a half β-barrel structure that is characteristic of hydrophobins, there are significant differences in the structures of the loop regions (Morris et al. 2013;

◀**Fig. 3** **a** Schematic representation of the differences and variations in inter-cysteine length that underlie the classification of hydrophobins into three classes. The positions of the eight conserved cysteine residues are highlighted in yellow. The lengths of the N- and C-terminal regions that lie before cysteine 1, and after cysteine 8, respectively, have been omitted for clarity. Along the amino acid sequence, the lengths of the polypeptide chains between the cysteine residues vary from that shown in black (shortest) to the combined length illustrated in black and grey (longest). In the intermediate/class III hydrophobins, two distinct sets of spacings are observed, as indicated by the two sets of black and/or grey bars. The positions of the loops 1, 2 and 3 are indicated by L1, L2 and L3. **b** Cartoon representations of the secondary structure elements of the monomeric forms of the class I hydrophobins EAS and MPG1 and topology diagrams indicating the four β-strands that make up the conserved β-barrel in EAS, RodA, DewA, MPG1, SC16 and the class II hydrophobin NC2. The corresponding four strands are coloured light green, blue, dark green and orange in the three-dimensional structures of EAS and MPG1, for comparison. Topology diagrams were produced with Pro-origami (Stivala et al. 2011) and representations of EAS and MPG1 structures with the PyMOL Molecular Graphics System, Version 2.3.0 Schrödinger, LLC, using PDB codes 2FMC (EAS), 2LSH (DewA), 4AOG (NC2), 6GCJ (RodA), 2NBH (SC16) and 2N4O (MPG1)

Pham et al. 2016, 2018; Pille et al. 2015; Ren et al. 2013; Valsecchi et al. 2019b). Helical elements are accommodated in the N-terminal regions and L1 and L2 regions but the extent and orientation of these elements is different in the individual proteins (Fig. 3b). The sequence analysis and structure of SC16 from *S. commune* reported by Gandier and colleagues (Gandier et al. 2017), combined with mutational analysis of Vmh2 from *Pleurotus ostreatus* (Pennacchio et al. 2018), suggest a further subdivision within basidiomycete hydrophobins, based on structure and mechanism of rodlet assembly. All of the hydrophobins display a large area of exposed hydrophobicity on the protein surface, unusual for soluble proteins (Sunde et al. 2008). The stable display of this relatively extensive hydrophobic surface area on a monomeric protein in solution is likely possible because of the presence of the four disulphides, which prevent folding of the polypeptide to bury the hydrophobic regions (Gandier et al. 2017; Wosten and Scholtmeijer 2015; Ren et al. 2014). Intact disulphides are required for function and structured self-assembly in most hydrophobins (Sallada et al. 2018; Valsecchi et al. 2019b). Additionally, in some members of the class I hydrophobins, the flexibility of the inter-cysteine loops may be critical in preventing unwanted self-assembly in solution (De Simone et al. 2012).

5 The Mechanism of Rodlet Assembly

Notably, Wessels and colleagues described in 1993 that the hydrophobin SC3 aggregates into rodlets when heated or exposed to bubbles and suggested that the aggregation of the protein was likely to occur at gas–liquid interfaces (de Vries et al. 1993). In a follow-up study, this group demonstrated that purified monomeric SC3 protein could be induced to self-assemble into structures with a rodlet morphology similar to that observed on the surface of aerial hyphae and that the process

occurred at the surface of air vesicles (Wosten et al. 1993). Biophysical studies of the process of self-assembly of purified SC3 demonstrated that self-assembly into the rodlet form is associated with an overall increase in β-sheet structure, with the involvement of a helical intermediate when assembly occurs on a hydrophobic surface (de Vocht et al. 1998).

New insight into the structure of the rodlet form, and a breakthrough in understanding the self-assembly process, came from two papers that almost concurrently reported that hydrophobin rodlets have an amyloid substructure, i.e. the ordered secondary structure within the rodlets consists of β-sheet structure in which the constituent β-strands lie at right angles to the rodlet long axis. Butko et al. provided spectroscopic evidence that interfacial assembly of SC3 generated an amyloid-like structure (Butko et al. 2001), and Mackay and colleagues showed that the rodlet form of EAS is a functional amyloid (Mackay et al. 2001). This appears to be the case for all rodlet-forming hydrophobins characterised to date (Gandier et al. 2017). Studies of recombinantly produced hydrophobins, namely RodA, RodB and RodC from *A. fumigatus* and MPG1, DewA and $EAS_{\Delta15}$, a truncated version of EAS (Kwan et al. 2008) have demonstrated that all of these hydrophobins apart from RodC can be triggered to assemble in vitro into a fibrillar form that is high in β-sheet content (Pham et al. 2018). However, the rodlets produced in vitro may differ in some details, for example in lateral packing, from those assembled in situ on spores, since the exact nature of the interacting surface provided by the cell wall is not replicated and the kinetics of formation may be different. While the underlying structural core is the same, morphological differences are commonly observed between amyloid fibrils assembled in vitro and those present in the biological context (Sunde et al. 2008; Kollmer et al. 2019).

The obvious difference between representative members of the two major classes is the presence of relatively long loops of varied sequences in class I hydrophobins, which are absent in class II members. This led to the hypothesis that the loops would play a key role in the assembly or structure of the rodlet form (Kwan et al. 2006). However, deletion analysis of L1, the long loop between cysteines 3 and 4 in EAS demonstrated that this loop could be dramatically shortened without compromising the ability of the protein to form rodlets Kwan et al. (2006, 2008). Instead, the mutational analysis demonstrated that in EAS, the L3 loop between cysteines 7 and 8 contains the key amyloidogenic segment (Macindoe et al. 2012). Subsequent solid-state NMR analysis has confirmed that this region forms the ordered β-sheet core of the EAS rodlet functional amyloid (Morris et al. 2012). Other class I hydrophobins may accommodate the amyloidogenic segments in other inter-cysteine regions that are sufficiently flexible to allow for the formation of intermolecular β-sheet structures. The amyloid-forming segment(s) of other class I hydrophobins have been suggested to be located in L1, L2 or L3 (Gandier et al. 2017; Morris et al. 2013; Pennacchio et al. 2018; Pham et al. 2016, 2018; Niu et al. 2014) and RodA is predicted to have two amyloidogenic segments, in L2 and L3 (Valsecchi et al. 2019b).

The majority of the class I hydrophobins that have been characterised require a hydrophilic–hydrophobic interface to trigger self-assembly (Lo et al. 2014; Pham et al. 2016). In solution and in the absence of an interface, the monomeric form of class I hydrophobins is prevented from self-assembling, possibly because the amyloid-forming regions are shielded due to intramolecular interactions and/or because the loops are too dynamic for intermolecular interactions to be favoured (De Simone et al. 2012; Kwan et al. 2006). Certain hydrophobins, including DewA and SC3, form dimers in the solution that are off-pathway for rodlet assembly and may represent an assembly control mechanism (Morris et al. 2013; Wang et al. 2004). SC3 has been shown to exist in three different conformations: a soluble, predominantly dimeric state in solution and α-helical and β-sheet states at a hydrophilic–hydrophobic interface (Wang et al. 2002). The SC3 dimers dissociate when the protein binds to a hydrophobic surface (Wang et al. 2004) and molecular dynamic simulations suggest that the conversion from the α-helical to a stable β-sheet conformation occurs when the monomers assemble into the rodlet state (Fan et al. 2006). SC3 has also been demonstrated to form nanorods in solution, with self-assembly promoted by low ionic strength and more alkaline pH, suggesting that the self-assembly of individual hydrophobins may be tailored to the environmental conditions present when they are expressed and functional (Zykwinska et al. 2014a).

In general, the relatively large, surface-exposed hydrophobic regions of these proteins result in their recruitment to hydrophilic–hydrophobic interfaces, and alignment there, to maximise hydrophobic interactions. The high surface activity of hydrophobins is reflected in the reduction in contact angle made by hydrophobin-containing solutions, compared to water droplets, on hydrophobic surfaces (Morris et al. 2011; Wosten et al. 1993). Interface properties are critical for recruitment and alignment and additives that reduce the surface tension of a solution can be seen to inhibit class I hydrophobin assembly (Morris et al. 2011). When class I hydrophobins are recruited to the interface, they undergo a conformational transition that exposes the amyloidogenic regions, allowing intermolecular interactions to occur and the stable amyloid core to develop (Macindoe et al. 2012). The very extensive hydrogen bonding between monomers that occurs along the rodlet length is likely responsible for the resistance of these structures to most denaturants. While EAS has a single amyloidogenic region in the L3 loop, RodA from *A. fumigatus* appears to have two amyloidogenic regions and the involvement of both of these in β-sheet-rich rodlet structures may be the reason for the extreme stability of RodA rodlets, which require hydrofluoric acid treatment to achieve complete depolymerisation (Valsecchi et al. 2019b). The model for class I hydrophobin self-assembly to form functional amyloid rodlets is illustrated in Fig. 4. While class II hydrophobins also assemble at hydrophilic–hydrophobic interfaces, they do not form stable intermolecular β-sheet structure, and hence, class II assemblies are readily depolymerized (Wosten and de Vocht 2000). The assemblies formed by class III hydrophobins have not yet been investigated experimentally.

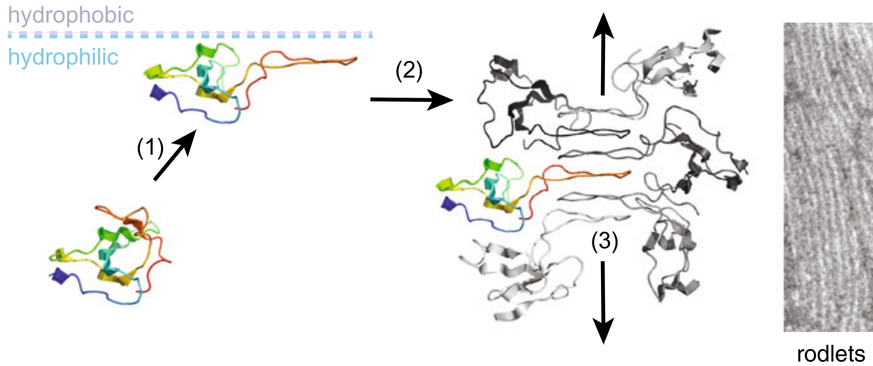


Fig. 4 Schematic representation of the assembly of monomeric forms of class I hydrophobins into the rodlet structure, based on biophysical characterisation of the process in $EAS_{\Delta 15}$ (Kwan et al. 2008; Macindoe et al. 2012; Morris et al. 2013). (1) Recruitment of the protein to the hydrophilic–hydrophobic interface, followed by (2) alignment and conformational change to expose the amyloidogenic segment(s) and (3) formation of intermolecular β-sheet in the rodlet form. Cartoon representations prepared using the PyMOL Molecular Graphics System, Version 2.3.0 Schrödinger, LLC, with PDB code 2K6A for the $EAS_{\Delta 15}$ monomer and rodlet form as in (Macindoe et al. 2012)

6 Unique Biological Roles of Rodlet Functional Amyloids

In addition to providing a hydrophobic coating on fungal structures, some rodlet-forming hydrophobins contribute to other properties that are characteristic of particular fungi, including aiding symbiotic relationships or increasing the pathogenicity of the fungus towards its host.

Hydrophobin rodlets are one type of a number of functional amyloid assemblies now recognised as being applied for diverse biological purposes by organisms from bacteria to mammals. In bacteria, filamentous fungi and yeasts, functional amyloids assembled from different proteins have roles that range from stabilising biofilms, altering surface properties, facilitating interactions, regulating heterokaryon incompatibility, modulating transcription, environmental adaptation and acting as cytotoxins (Shanmugam et al. 2019). Viral functional amyloids can inhibit host cell responses and cell death (Pham et al. 2019). Although fungal hydrophobin rodlets and certain bacterial and viral functional amyloids modulate the host response to infection, they do not themselves cause disease but may be considered pathogenicity factors (Bayry et al. 2012). In mammals, functional amyloids have been shown to be involved in pigment biosynthesis and sequestration, haemostatic control, hormone storage and release and signal transduction (Chuang et al. 2018).

Fungal functional amyloids take several different forms, involving the self-assembly of different types of protein which display no sequence or structural similarity. They include hydrophobin rodlets, prion aggregates in yeast such as those formed by sup35p and ure2p in *S. cerevisiae* and the HET-s prion filaments of

Podospora anserina. The formation of these amyloids is temporally and spatially regulated and tightly controlled to confer the desired biological function. While hydrophobin rodlet assembly follows a nucleation-dependent polymerisation mechanism like other amyloids, the formation of the nucleus is localised to a hydrophobic–hydrophilic interface (Pham et al. 2016). Disaggregation of rodlets occurs prior to germination, likely through protease digestion. Prion assembly and disassembly in yeast have been shown to be under chaperone control (Chuang et al. 2018).

This tight regulation of assembly and disassembly of functional amyloids contrasts with the formation and deposition of disease-associated amyloid fibrils, such as amyloid-β in Alzheimer's disease, prions in the spongiform encephalopathies and transthyretin in familial amyloidotic polyneuropathy (Pham et al. 2014). Disease-associated amyloid fibrils form as a consequence of protein misfolding and aggregation, are generally stable and resistant to clearance and are associated with cell death and tissue and organ disruption.

6.1 Hydrophobins in Symbiotic Relationships with Plants and in Lichens

Fungi from the *Tricholoma* genus form ectomycorrhizal symbiotic relationships with the roots of woodland trees. This relationship is mutualistic, allowing the fungus access to carbohydrates and growth factors and providing the tree with increased nutrient and water supply (Sammer et al. 2016). Species from *Tricholoma* utilise hydrophobins to aid the communication and maintain the relationship between host and fungus. Initial research identified a single class I hydrophobin gene, hyd1 within the *T. terreum* species (Mankel et al. 2002). Hyd1 forms hydrophobin rodlets that exist at the interface between the host tree and *T. terreum,* and it was therefore proposed to aid in host compatibility (Mankel et al. 2002). 43 hydrophobin gene sequences have been identified in the *Tricholoma* genus, with nine hydrophobin genes identified in *T. vaccinum* that are expressed at different stages of the life cycle. These nine hydrophobins were shown to be involved in aerial hyphae and fruiting body formation as well as host recognition and the response to metal stress (Sammer et al. 2016).

A similar advantageous role for hydrophobins is observed in lichens, where hydrophobins prevent waterlogging within airspaces. A lichen is a composite organism generated by a symbiotic relationship between a fungus and algae or cyanobacteria (Dyer 2002). Lichens have the ability to survive dramatic changes in wettability, and this has been attributed to the presence of hydrophobins. Multiple hydrophobins have been identified from two taxonomically unrelated fungi *Dictyonema glabratum* and *Xanthoria parietina* (Scherrer et al. 2000, 2002; Trembley et al. 2002). The hydrophobins create a hydrophobic coating on the hyphae that is in contact with the algae and maintain gas-filled spaces despite the

lichen being water-saturated (Honegger 1991). This ensures appropriate gas exchange, and therefore, photosynthesis can occur even in conditions of high water content (Dyer 2002). This function is similar to that attributed to the hydrophobin SC4 from *S. commune*. SC4 lines gas channels in fruiting bodies and prevents them from filling with water, therefore maximising gas exchange (van Wetter et al. 2000).

6.2 The Contribution of Hydrophobins to Plant and Insect Infections

MPG1, from *M. oryzae*, was the first hydrophobin to be demonstrated to perform a pathogenic role in a fungal disease. *M. oryzae* causes rice blast disease; responsible for destroying up to one-third of the annual global rice crop (Fernandez and Orth 2018). MPG1 self-assembles at the spore–rice leaf interface, aiding in the detection of the surface as well as attachment of the spore to the hydrophobic leaf (Talbot et al. 1996). Knockout of *mpg1* results in loss of the rodlet layer on spores and reduced appressorium formation (Beckerman and Ebbole 1996). The appressorium allows the fungus to puncture through the infection surface; therefore, a reduction in appressorium formation decreases the pathogenicity of the fungus. MPG1 has also been linked to the activity of the enzyme cutinase 2 produced by *M. oryzae* (Skamnioti and Gurr 2008). Cutinase enzymes can degrade the robust cutin coating on plant leaves. MPG1 stimulates cutinase 2 activation, which subsequently activates the appressorium formation and leads to penetration of the rice leaf (Pham et al. 2016; Skamnioti and Gurr 2009). *M. oryzae* also contains a class II hydrophobin MHP1. MHP1 is similar to other class II hydrophobins in that it does not form fibrillar rodlets but it has been shown to have a potential regulatory role in MPG1 rodlet formation (Pham et al. 2016).

The temporal and spatial expression of the four class I hydrophobins produced by the tomato pathogen *Cladosporium fulvum* suggests that they perform distinct roles in the formation of aerial hyphae, conidia and germ tubes and during infection (Lacroix et al. 2008; Whiteford and Spanu 2001).

Beauveria bassiana, an entomogenous pathogen, utilises two hydrophobins to create a rodlet layer on spores (Zhang et al. 2011). *B. bassiana* contains two class I hydrophobins Hyd1 and Hyd2, and initially, Hyd2 was proposed as the main component of the rodlet layer on spores (Cho et al. 2007; Holder and Keyhani 2005). However, it has been shown that both Hyd1 and Hyd2 contribute to the rodlet spore coat: Hyd2 is proposed to have a regulatory role and forms the boundary of the rodlet nanodomains, initiating the nucleation of Hyd1 rodlet formation (Zhang et al. 2011). This rodlet coat ultimately aids the attachment of a spore to the insect cuticle and therefore subsequent hyphal penetration. This discovery highlighted that the rodlets coating fungal spores are not necessarily composed of a single type of hydrophobin (Zhang et al. 2011).

6.3 *The Role of RodA and Other Hydrophobins in* A. Fumigatus

Hydrophobins in the human pathogen *A. fumigatus* have a pathogenic role in addition to aiding in spore dispersal and reversing wettability. *A. fumigatus* is an opportunistic pathogen that can infect the human lung and subsequently spread to other organs including the brain and kidneys (Latge 1999). The spores are deposited into the alveoli of the lungs where they invade the epithelial cell wall lining and germinate, leading to invasive aspergillosis, a condition that occurs predominantly in immunocompromised patients. Patients with pre-existing pulmonary disease are also more susceptible to allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis and the development of aspergilloma (Lee and Sheppard 2016). *A. fumigatus* also causes aspergillosis in a wide range of agricultural, domestic and wild animals and birds (Seyedmousavi et al. 2018).

The hydrophobin rodlet layer plays an important role in evasion of the host immune system by *A. fumigatus* since, along with the melanin layer, it immunosilences the conidium (Aimanianda et al. 2009; Thau et al. 1994; Beauvais and Latge 2018; Girardin et al. 1999; Paris et al. 2003; Valsecchi et al. 2017). In dormant conidia, the hydrophobin coating shields the carbohydrate moieties of the cell wall from detection by the dectin-1 receptor, which recognises β-1,3-glucan, the dectin-2 receptor, which recognises galactomannan, and Toll-like receptors. The presence of the rodlet layer thus prevents activation and maturation of dendritic cells, macrophages or neutrophils and prevents cytokine induction in response to the presence of conidia. Hence, even though most people breathe in several hundreds of *A. fumigatus* spores daily, and these are small enough to reach the alveoli in the lungs, they do not result in activation of the innate immune defenses. Complement components such as the major complement protein C3, acute phase proteins such as surfactants, and the pentraxin-related protein PTX3, act as soluble mediators that interact with dormant *A. fumigatus* conidia and result in spore ingestion by macrophages (Wong and Aimanianda 2017). The rodlet layer hides the spore from immune detection until appropriate germination conditions are met. At this point, the rodlet layer degrades and germination can commence. In immunocompromised patients, the macrophages fail to kill the conidia, and as a result, filamentous hyphae can form and invade the lung tissue, resulting in a necrotizing pneumonia and further dissemination to other tissues (Aimanianda et al. 2009; Dague et al. 2008; Lee and Sheppard 2016).

A. fumigatus contains multiple hydrophobins (Rod A–G); however, only RodA is well characterised (Valsecchi et al. 2017). Knockout of *RODA* reduces the dispersal of spores and results in hydrophilic spores that lack the rodlet layer, instead of displaying an amorphous surface (Thau et al. 1994; Valsecchi et al. 2019a). Chemical or genetic removal of the RodA rodlet layer generates spores that can activate the immune system, releasing cytokines, chemokines and reactive oxygen intermediates (Aimanianda et al. 2009). A decrease in surface RodA rodlets also results in an increase in phagocytosis of *A. fumigatus* spores (Dagenais et al. 2010).

RodA has been proposed to form a multilayer on spores compared to the observed monolayer on spores of other fungi (Zykwinska et al. 2014b). Similar to other hydrophobins, the rodlets are organised into nanodomains that vary in length (120–220 nm) and width (60–100 nm) but are composed of at least three rodlets. An analysis of atomic force microscopy images was used to elucidate the approximate height of ~5 nm for the RodA layer (Zykwinska et al. 2014b). Previous research into hydrophobins has shown that EAS and SC3 organise into monolayers of 2–2.5 nm in height (Zykwinska et al. 2014a; Yang et al. 2013). From this observation, it was proposed that RodA forms a bilayer structure with two monolayers stacked on top of each other. The first layer of the bilayer is attached to the fungal cell wall via its hydrophobic side, interacting with hydrophobic melanin, glycoproteins and polysaccharides. Pre-assembled oligomers from the surrounding growth environment interact with their hydrophilic side with the monolayer already assembled and therefore create a bilayer that renders the spore hydrophobic (Zykwinska et al. 2014b).

Recent attempts to characterise the remaining five hydrophobins in *A. fumigatus* suggest that not all are active in aiding fungal infection. The class I hydrophobins RodA–C are very similar in sequence but RodD–G have limited similarity (Valsecchi et al. 2017). RodD and RodE are controversial as hydrophobins as RodD lacks a cysteine, and RodE has three additional cysteines, while the presence of eight cysteines is a defining feature of hydrophobins. RodA, B and C are present in the conidial cell wall of *A. fumigatus*. However, only RodA forms rodlets on the conidium and is necessary for dispersal, hydrophobicity and immune evasion (Paris et al. 2003). When *A. fumigatus* grows in a biofilm, the *RODB* gene is highly expressed but the protein is not detectable in the biofilm by immunofluorescence (Valsecchi et al. 2017). RodB is able to form rodlets in vitro (Pham et al. 2018) but it does not appear to substitute for this function in ΔRodA mutants. The *RODB* gene is also highly expressed in vivo in a mouse invasive model of aspergillosis but the significance of this is unclear and despite being expressed, the role of the remaining hydrophobins RodC–G in *A. fumigatus* remains unknown (Valsecchi et al. 2017).

7 Conclusions

The rodlet covering formed by class I hydrophobin proteins on the outside of the cell wall of conidia and on aerial hyphae provides a protective coat on these fungal surfaces. Building on the recognition of the distinct morphology of the rodlet layers provided by imaging techniques, structural and mechanistic studies have revealed that all class I hydrophobins share a β-barrel structure, stabilized by a characteristic pattern of four disulphide bridges, and that rodlets are functional amyloid structures. The class I hydrophobins generally have longer inter-cysteine sequences, and a diversity of regular secondary structure elements, something that is lacking in class II hydrophobins but which is consistent with the class I ability to form inter-molecular interactions within the rodlet β-sheet-rich scaffold. The role of certain

rodlets is well understood, where they have been demonstrated to increase the attachment of fungi to host surfaces, to support the generation of infectious structures and to shield conidia from detection by host defenses, thereby contributing to infectivity and pathogenicity. However, a full picture of the roles of the multiple different rodlet-forming hydrophobins that are present in some fungal genomes remains to be elucidated. Additionally, understanding of the process by which class I hydrophobins localise to the outer surface of the fungal cell wall, for self-assembly into the unique and remarkable rodlet structure, could identify ways to manipulate the interaction of fungi with different environments.

Acknowledgements The authors acknowledge funding from the Australian Research Council over many years, for research into hydrophobin proteins, which has contributed to this work (DP0879121, DP120100756 and DP150104227) and support from the French-Australian Science and Technology (FAST) Program (FR110012). SRB is supported by the Australian Government in the form of a Research Training Program Scholarship. The authors wish to thank Chi Pham, Victor Lo, Vanessa Morris, Qin Ren, Jennifer Lai, Ingrid Macindoe and all other researchers and students working in the Sunde and Kwan Laboratories who have contributed to hydrophobin projects. We acknowledge the facilities and the scientific and technical assistance of Sydney Microscopy and Microanalysis at the Australian Centre for Microscopy and Microanalysis at the University of Sydney. We thank Chiara Neto for use of atomic force microscopy facilities.

References

Aimanianda V, Bayry J, Bozza S, Kniemeyer O, Perruccio K, Elluru SR, Clavaud C, Paris S, Brakhage AA, Kaveri SV, Romani L, Latge JP (2009) Surface hydrophobin prevents immune recognition of airborne fungal spores. Nature 460(7259):1117–1121

Bayry J, Aimanianda V, Guijarro JI, Sunde M, Latge JP (2012) Hydrophobins–unique fungal proteins. PLoS Pathog 8(5):e1002700. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.ppat.1002700

Beauvais A, Latge JP (2018) Special issue: fungal cell wall. J Fungi (Basel, Switzerland) 4(3). https://doi.org/10.3390/jof4030091

Beckerman JL, Ebbole DJ (1996) MPG1, a gene encoding a fungal hydrophobin of *Magnaporthe grisea*, is involved in surface recognition. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact: MPMI 9(6):450–456

Beever RE, Dempsey GP (1978) Function of rodlets on the surface of fungal spores. Nature 272 (5654):608–610. https://doi.org/10.1038/272608a0

Beever RE, Redgewell RJ, Dempsey G (1979a) Purification and chemical characterization of the rodlet layer of Neurospora crassa conidia. J Bacteriol 140:1063–1070

Beever RE, Redgwell RJ, Dempsey GP (1979b) Purification and chemical characterization of the rodlet layer of Neurospora crassa conidia. J Bacteriol 140(3):1063

Bidochka MJ, Stleger RJ, Joshi L, Roberts DW (1995) The rodlet layer from aerial and submerged conidia of the entomopathogenic fungus beauveria-bassiana contains hydrophobin. Mycol Res 99:403–406

Butko P, Buford JP, Goodwin JS, Stroud PA, McCormick CL, Cannon GC (2001) Spectroscopic evidence for amyloid-like interfacial self-assembly of hydrophobin Sc3. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 280(1):212–215

Cho EM, Kirkland BH, Holder DJ, Keyhani NO (2007) Phage display cDNA cloning and expression analysis of hydrophobins from the entomopathogenic fungus *Beauveria (Cordyceps) bassiana*. Microbiology (Reading, England) 153(Pt 10):3438–3447. https://doi.org/10.1099/mic.0.2007/008532-0

Chuang E, Hori AM, Hesketh CD, Shorter J (2018) Amyloid assembly and disassembly. J Cell Sci 131(8):jcs189928. https://doi.org/10.1242/jcs.189928
Cole GT (1973) A correlation between rodlet orientation and conidiogenesis in Hyphomycetes. Can J Botany-Revue Can De Botanique 51:2413–2422
Cole GT, Sekiya T, Kasai R, Yokoyama T, Nozawa Y (1979) Surface ultrastructure and chemical composition of the cell walls of conidial fungi. Exp Mycol 3(2):132–156. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0147-5975(79)80025-0
Dagenais TR, Giles SS, Aimanianda V, Latge JP, Hull CM, Keller NP (2010) *Aspergillus fumigatus* LaeA-mediated phagocytosis is associated with a decreased hydrophobin layer. Infect Immun 78(2):823–829. https://doi.org/10.1128/iai.00980-09
Dague E, Alsteens D, Latgé J-P, Dufrêne YF (2008) High-resolution cell surface dynamics of germinating Aspergillus fumigatus conidia. Biophys J 94(2):656–660. https://doi.org/10.1529/biophysj.107.116491
De Simone A, Kitchen C, Kwan AH, Sunde M, Dobson CM, Frenkel D (2012) Intrinsic disorder modulates protein self-assembly and aggregation. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 109(18):6951–6956. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1118048109
de Vocht ML, Scholtmeijer K, van der Vegte EW, de Vries OM, Sonveaux N, Wosten HA, Ruysschaert JM, Hadziloannou G, Wessels JG, Robillard GT (1998) Structural characterization of the hydrophobin SC3, as a monomer and after self-assembly at hydrophobic/hydrophilic interfaces. Biophys J 74(4):2059–2068. https://doi.org/10.1016/s0006-3495(98)77912-3
de Vries OMH, Fekkes MP, Wösten HAB, Wessels JGH (1993) Insoluble hydrophobin complexes in the walls of Schizophyllum commune and other filamentous fungi. Arch Microbiol 159(4):330–335. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF00290915
Dempsey GP, Beever RE (1979) Electron microscopy of the rodlet layer of Neurospora crassa conidia. J Bacteriol 140(3):1050–1062
Dyer PS (2002) Hydrophobins in the lichen symbiosis. New Phytol 154(1):1–4. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1469-8137.2002.00387.x
Fan H, Wang X, Zhu J, Robillard GT, Mark AE (2006) Molecular dynamics simulations of the hydrophobin SC3 at a hydrophobic/hydrophilic interface. Proteins: Struct Funct Bioinform 64(4):863–873. https://doi.org/10.1002/prot.20936
Fernandez J, Orth K (2018) Rise of a cereal killer: the biology of *Magnaporthe oryzae* biotrophic growth. Trends Microbiol 26(7):582–597. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tim.2017.12.007
Gandier J-A, Langelaan DN, Won A, O'Donnell K, Grondin JL, Spencer HL, Wong P, Tillier E, Yip C, Smith SP, Master ER (2017) Characterization of a Basidiomycota hydrophobin reveals the structural basis for a high-similarity Class I subdivision. Sci Rep 7:45863–45863. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep45863
Gardner JS, Hess WM, Tripathi RK (1983) Surface rodlets of *Tilletia indica* teliospores. J Bacteriol 154(1):502–504
Gerin PA, Asther M, Sleytr UB, Rouxhet PG (1994) Detection of rodlets in the outer wall region of conidiospores of *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. Can J Microbiol 40(5):412–416
Ghiorse WC, Edwards MR (1973) Ultrastructure of *Aspergillus fumigatus* conidia development and maturation. Protoplasma 76(1):49–59
Girardin H, Paris S, Rault J, Bellon-Fontaine MN, Latgé JP (1999) The role of the rodlet structure on the physicochemical properties of *Aspergillus conidia*. Lett Appl Microbiol 29(6):364–369. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1472-765X.1999.00643.x
Grunbacher A, Throm T, Seidel C, Gutt B, Rohrig J, Strunk T, Vincze P, Walheim S, Schimmel T, Wenzel W, Fischer R (2014) Six hydrophobins are involved in hydrophobin rodlet formation in *Aspergillus nidulans* and contribute to hydrophobicity of the spore surface. PLoS ONE 9(4):e94546. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0094546
Gunning AP, De Groot PWJ, Visser J, Morris VJ (1998) Atomic force microscopy of a hydrophobin protein from the edible mushroom Agaricus bisporus. J Colloid Interface Sci 201(2):118–126

Hakanpaa J, Linder M, Popov A, Schmidt A, Rouvinen J, Linder MB, Szilvay GR, Nakari-Setala T, Penttila ME (2006) Hydrophobin HFBII in detail: ultrahigh-resolution structure at 0.75 A. Acta Crystallogr D Biol Crystallogr 62 (Pt 4):356–367

Hakanpaa J, Paananen A, Askolin S, Nakari-Setala T, Parkkinen T, Penttila M, Linder MB, Rouvinen J (2004) Atomic resolution structure of the HFBII hydrophobin, a self-assembling amphiphile. J Biol Chem 279(1):534–539

Hallett IC, Beever RE (1981) Rodlets on the surface of Neurospora conidia. Trans Br Mycol Soc 77(3):662–665. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0007-1536(81)80124-6

Hess WM, Sassen MM, Remsen CC (1968) Surface characteristics of *Penicillum conidia*. Mycologia 60(2):290–303

Hess WM, Stocks DL (1969) Surface characteristics of *Aspergillus conidia*. Mycologia 61(3):560–571

Holder DJ, Keyhani NO (2005) Adhesion of the entomopathogenic fungus *Beauveria* (*Cordyceps*) *bassiana* to substrata. Appl Environ Microbiol 71(9):5260–5266. https://doi.org/10.1128/aem.71.9.5260-5266.2005

Honegger R (1991) Functional aspects of the lichen symbiosis. Annu Rev Plant Physiol Plant Mol Biol 42(1):553–578. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.pp.42.060191.003005

Jensen BG, Andersen MR, Pedersen MH, Frisvad JC, Sondergaard I (2010) Hydrophobins from *Aspergillus* species cannot be clearly divided into two classes. BMC Res Notes 3:344. https://doi.org/10.1186/1756-0500-3-344

Kershaw MJ, Wakley G, Talbot NJ (1998) Complementation of the Mpg1 mutant phenotype in *Magnaporthe grisea* reveals functional relationships between fungal hydrophobins. EMBO J 17(14):3838–3849. https://doi.org/10.1093/emboj/17.14.3838

Kollmer M, Close W, Funk L, Rasmussen J, Bsoul A, Schierhorn A, Schmidt M, Sigurdson CJ, Jucker M, Fändrich M (2019) Cryo-EM structure and polymorphism of Aβ amyloid fibrils purified from Alzheimer's brain tissue. Nat Commun 10(1):4760. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-019-12683-8

Kwan AH, Macindoe I, Vukasin PV, Morris VK, Kass I, Gupte R, Mark AE, Templeton MD, Mackay JP, Sunde M (2008) The Cys3-Cys4 loop of the hydrophobin EAS is not required for rodlet formation and surface activity. J Mol Biol 382(3):708–720. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmb.2008.07.034

Kwan AH, Winefield RD, Sunde M, Matthews JM, Haverkamp RG, Templeton MD, Mackay JP (2006) Structural basis for rodlet assembly in fungal hydrophobins. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 103(10):3621–3626. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.0505704103

Kwon-Chung KJ, Sugui JA (2013) *Aspergillus fumigatus*–what makes the species a ubiquitous human fungal pathogen? PLoS Pathog 9(12):e1003743–e1003743. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.ppat.1003743

Lacroix H, Whiteford JR, Spanu PD (2008) Localization of *Cladosporium fulvum* hydrophobins reveals a role for HCf-6 in adhesion. FEMS Microbiol Lett 286(1):136–144. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1574-6968.2008.01227.x

Latge JP (1999) *Aspergillus fumigatus* and *aspergillosis*. Clin Microbiol Rev 12(2):310–350

Latge JP, Bouziane H, Diaquin M (1988) Ultrastructure and composition of the conidial wall of *Cladosporium cladosporioides*. Can J Microbiol 34(12):1325–1329

Lee MJ, Sheppard DC (2016) Recent advances in the understanding of the *Aspergillus fumigatus* cell wall. J Microbiol (Seoul, Korea) 54(3):232–242. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12275-016-6045-4

Linder MB, Szilvay GR, Nakari-Setala T, Penttila ME (2005) Hydrophobins: the protein-amphiphiles of filamentous fungi. FEMS Microbiol Rev 29(5):877–896

Littlejohn KA, Hooley P, Cox PW (2012) Bioinformatics predicts diverse *Aspergillus hydrophobins* with novel properties. Food Hydrocolloids 27(2):503–516. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.foodhyd.2011.08.018

Lo VC, Ren Q, Pham CL, Morris VK, Kwan AH, Sunde M (2014) Fungal hydrophobin proteins produce self-assembling protein films with diverse structure and chemical stability. Nanomaterials (Basel, Switzerland) 4(3):827–843. https://doi.org/10.3390/nano4030827

Lugones LG, Bosscher JS, Scholtmeyer K, de Vries OM, Wessels JG (1996) An abundant hydrophobin (ABH1) forms hydrophobic rodlet layers in *Agaricus bisporus* fruiting bodies. Microbiology (Reading, England) 142(Pt 5):1321–1329. https://doi.org/10.1099/13500872-142-5-1321

Macindoe I, Kwan AH, Ren Q, Morris VK, Yang W, Mackay JP, Sunde M (2012) Self-assembly of functional, amphipathic amyloid monolayers by the fungal hydrophobin EAS. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 109(14):E804–E811. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1114052109

Mackay JP, Matthews JM, Winefield RD, Mackay LG, Haverkamp RG, Templeton MD (2001) The hydrophobin EAS is largely unstructured in solution and functions by forming amyloid-like structures. Structure (London, England: 1993) 9(2):83–91

Mankel A, Krause K, Kothe E (2002) Identification of a hydrophobin gene that is developmentally regulated in the ectomycorrhizal fungus *Tricholoma terreum*. Appl Environ Microbiol 68 (3):1408–1413. https://doi.org/10.1128/aem.68.3.1408-1413.2002

Moonjely S, Keyhani NO, Bidochka MJ (2018) Hydrophobins contribute to root colonization and stress responses in the rhizosphere-competent insect pathogenic fungus *Beauveria bassiana*. Microbiology (Reading, England) 164(4):517–528. https://doi.org/10.1099/mic.0.000644

Morris VK, Kwan AH, Sunde M (2013) Analysis of the structure and conformational states of DewA gives insight into the assembly of the fungal hydrophobins. J Mol Biol 425(2):244–256. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmb.2012.10.021

Morris VK, Linser R, Wilde KL, Duff AP, Sunde M, Kwan AH (2012) Solid-state NMR spectroscopy of functional amyloid from a fungal hydrophobin: a well-ordered beta-sheet core amidst structural heterogeneity. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 51(50):12621–12625. https://doi.org/10.1002/anie.201205625

Morris VK, Ren Q, Macindoe I, Kwan AH, Byrne N, Sunde M (2011) Recruitment of class I hydrophobins to the air: water interface initiates a multi-step process of functional amyloid formation. J Biol Chem 286(18):15955–15963. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M110.214197

Niu B, Gong Y, Gao X, Xu H, Qiao M, Li W (2014) The functional role of Cys3–Cys4 loop in hydrophobin HGFI. Amino Acids 46(11):2615–2625. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00726-014-1805-0

Paris S, Debeaupuis JP, Crameri R, Carey M, Charles F, Prevost MC, Schmitt C, Philippe B, Latge JP (2003) Conidial hydrophobins of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Appl Environ Microbiol 69 (3):1581–1588

Pennacchio A, Cicatiello P, Notomista E, Giardina P, Piscitelli A (2018) New clues into the self-assembly of Vmh2, a basidiomycota class I hydrophobin. Biol Chem 399(8):895–901. https://doi.org/10.1515/hsz-2018-0124

Pham CL, Shanmugam N, Strange M, O'Carroll A, Brown JW, Sierecki E, Gambin Y, Steain M, Sunde M (2019) Viral M45 and necroptosis-associated proteins form heteromeric amyloid assemblies. EMBO reports 20(2). https://doi.org/10.15252/embr.201846518

Pham CLL, Kwan AH, Sunde M (2014) Functional amyloid: widespread in nature, diverse in purpose. In: Perrett S (ed) Amyloids in health and disease, vol 56. Essays in biochemistry, pp 207–219. https://doi.org/10.1042/bse0560207

Pham CLL, Rey A, Lo V, Soulès M, Ren Q, Meisl G, Knowles TPJ, Kwan AH, Sunde M (2016) Self-assembly of MPG1, a hydrophobin protein from the rice blast fungus that forms functional amyloid coatings, occurs by a surface-driven mechanism. Sci Rep 6:25288. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep25288

Pham CLL, Rodriguez de Francisco B, Valsecchi I, Dazzoni R, Pille A, Lo V, Ball SR, Cappai R, Wien F, Kwan AH, Guijarro JI, Sunde M (2018) Probing structural changes during self-assembly of surface-active hydrophobin proteins that form functional amyloids in fungi. J Mol Biol 430(20):3784–3801. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmb.2018.07.025

Pille A, Kwan AH, Cheung I, Hampsey M, Aimanianda V, Delepierre M, Latge JP, Sunde M, Guijarro JI (2015) (1)H, (13)C and (15)N resonance assignments of the RodA hydrophobin from the opportunistic pathogen *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Biomol NMR Assignments 9(1):113–118. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12104-014-9555-1

Ren Q, Kwan AH, Sunde M (2013) Two forms and two faces, multiple states and multiple uses: properties and applications of the self-assembling fungal hydrophobins. Biopolymers 100 (6):601–612. https://doi.org/10.1002/bip.22259

Ren Q, Kwan AH, Sunde M (2014) Solution structure and interface-driven self-assembly of NC2, a new member of the class II hydrophobin proteins. Proteins 82(6):990–1003. https://doi.org/10.1002/prot.24473

Sallada ND, Dunn KJ, Berger BW (2018) A structural and functional role for disulfide bonds in a class II hydrophobin. Biochemistry 57(5):645–653. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.biochem.7b01166

Sammer D, Krause K, Gube M, Wagner K, Kothe E (2016) Hydrophobins in the life cycle of the ectomycorrhizal basidiomycete *Tricholoma vaccinum*. PLoS ONE 11(12):e0167773. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0167773

Scherrer S, De Vries OM, Dudler R, Wessels JG, Honegger R (2000) Interfacial self-assembly of fungal hydrophobins of the lichen-forming ascomycetes *Xanthoria parietina* and *X. ectaneoides*. Fungal Genet Biol FG & B 30(1):81–93. https://doi.org/10.1006/fgbi.2000.1205

Scherrer S, Haisch A, Honegger R (2002) Characterization and expression of XPH1, the hydrophobin gene of the lichen-forming ascomycete *Xanthoria parietina*. New Phytol 154 (1):175–184. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1469-8137.2002.00351.x

Seidl-Seiboth V, Gruber S, Sezerman U, Schwecke T, Albayrak A, Neuhof T, von Dohren H, Baker SE, Kubicek CP (2011) Novel hydrophobins from *Trichoderma* define a new hydrophobin subclass: protein properties, evolution, regulation and processing. J Mol Evol 72 (4):339–351. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00239-011-9438-3

Seyedmousavi S, Bosco SMG, de Hoog S, Ebel F, Elad D, Gomes RR, Jacobsen ID, Jensen HE, Martel A, Mignon B, Pasmans F, Pieckova E, Rodrigues AM, Singh K, Vicente VA, Wibbelt G, Wiederhold NP, Guillot J (2018) Fungal infections in animals: a patchwork of different situations. Medical mycology 56 (suppl_1):165–187. https://doi.org/10.1093/mmy/myx104

Shams-Ghahfarokhi M, Aghaei-Gharehbolagh S, Aslani N, Razzaghi-Abyaneh M (2014) Investigation on distribution of airborne fungi in outdoor environment in Tehran, Iran. J Environ Health Sci Eng 12(1):54–54. https://doi.org/10.1186/2052-336x-12-54

Shanmugam N, Baker MODG, Ball SR, Steain M, Pham CLL, Sunde M (2019) Microbial functional amyloids serve diverse purposes for structure, adhesion and defence. Biophysical Reviews. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12551-019-00526-1

Skamnioti P, Gurr SJ (2008) Cutinase and hydrophobin interplay: a herald for pathogenesis? Plant Signaling Behav 3(4):248–250. https://doi.org/10.4161/psb.3.4.5181

Skamnioti P, Gurr SJ (2009) Against the grain: safeguarding rice from rice blast disease. Trends Biotechnol 27(3):141–150. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tibtech.2008.12.002

Stivala A, Wybrow M, Wirth A, Whisstock JC, Stuckey PJ (2011) Automatic generation of protein structure cartoons with Pro-origami. Bioinformatics (Oxford, England) 27(23):3315–3316. https://doi.org/10.1093/bioinformatics/btr575

Stringer MA, Dean RA, Sewall TC, Timberlake WE (1991) Rodletless, a new *Aspergillus* developmental mutant induced by directed gene inactivation. Genes Dev 5(7):1161–1171. https://doi.org/10.1101/gad.5.7.1161

Sunde M, Kwan AH, Templeton MD, Beever RE, Mackay JP (2008) Structural analysis of hydrophobins. Micron 39(7):773–784

Takeo K (1976) Existence of a surface configuration on the aerial spore and aerial mycelium of micropolyspora. J Gen Microbiol 95(1):17–26. https://doi.org/10.1099/00221287-95-1-17

Talbot NJ, Ebbole DJ, Hamer JE (1993) Identification and characterization of MPG1, a gene involved in pathogenicity from the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe grisea*. Plant Cell 5 (11):1575–1590. https://doi.org/10.1105/tpc.5.11.1575

Talbot NJ, Kershaw MJ, Wakley GE, De Vries O, Wessels J, Hamer JE (1996) MPG1 encodes a fungal hydrophobin involved in surface interactions during infection-related development of *Magnaporthe grisea*. Plant Cell 8(6):985–999. https://doi.org/10.1105/tpc.8.6.985

Templeton MD, Greenwood DR, Beever RE (1995) Solubilization of neurospora crassa rodlet proteins and identification of the predominant protein as the proteolytically processed eas (ccg-2) gene product. Exp Mycol 19(2):166–169

Thau N, Monod M, Crestani B, Rolland C, Tronchin G, Latge JP, Paris S (1994) Rodletless mutants of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Infect Immun 62(10):4380–4388

Trembley ML, Ringli C, Honegger R (2002) Hydrophobins DGH1, DGH2, and DGH3 in the lichen-forming basidiomycete *Dictyonema glabratum*. Fungal Genet Biol FG & B 35(3):247–259. https://doi.org/10.1006/fgbi.2001.1325

Valsecchi I, Dupres V, Michel JP, Duchateau M, Matondo M, Chamilos G, Saveanu C, Guijarro JI, Aimanianda V, Lafont F, Latge JP, Beauvais A (2019a) The puzzling construction of the conidial outer layer of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Cell Microbiol 21(5):e12994. https://doi.org/10.1111/cmi.12994

Valsecchi I, Dupres V, Stephen-Victor E, Guijarro JI, Gibbons J, Beau R, Bayry J, Coppee J-Y, Lafont F, Latgé J-P, Beauvais A (2017) Role of hydrophobins in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. J Fungi (Basel, Switzerland) 4(1):2. https://doi.org/10.3390/jof4010002

Valsecchi I, Lai JI, Stephen-Victor E, Pillé A, Beaussart A, Lo V, Pham CLL, Aimanianda V, Kwan AH, Duchateau M, Gianetto QG, Matondo M, Lehoux M, Sheppard DC, Dufrene YF, Bayry J, Guijarro JI, Sunde M, Latgé J-P (2019b) Assembly and disassembly of *Aspergillus fumigatus* conidial rodlets. Cell Surface 5:100023. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tcsw.2019.100023

van de Veerdonk FL, Gresnigt MS, Romani L, Netea MG, Latge JP (2017) Aspergillus fumigatus morphology and dynamic host interactions. Nat Rev Microbiol 15(11):661–674. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrmicro.2017.90

van Wetter MA, Wosten HA, Wessels JG (2000) SC3 and SC4 hydrophobins have distinct roles in formation of aerial structures in dikaryons of *Schizophyllum commune*. Mol Microbiol 36 (1):201–210

Wang X, De Vocht ML, De Jonge J, Poolman B, Robillard GT (2002) Structural changes and molecular interactions of hydrophobin SC3 in solution and on a hydrophobic surface. Protein Sci 11(5):1172–1181

Wang X, Graveland-Bikker JF, de Kruif CG, Robillard GT (2004) Oligomerization of hydrophobin SC3 in solution: from soluble state to self-assembly. Protein Sci Publ Protein Soc 13(3):810–821

Wessels J, De Vries O, Asgeirsdottir SA, Schuren F (1991) Hydrophobin genes involved in formation of aerial hyphae and fruit bodies in Schizophyllum. Plant Cell 3(8):793–799. https://doi.org/10.1105/tpc.3.8.793

Wessels JGH, Kreger DR, Marchant R, Regensburg BA, De Vries OMH (1972) Chemical and morphological characterization of the hyphal wall surface of the basidiomycete *Schizophyllum commune*. Biochim et Biophys Acta (BBA)—Gen Subj 273(2):346–358. https://doi.org/10.1016/0304-4165(72)90226-7

Whiteford JR, Spanu PD (2001) The hydrophobin HCf-1 of *Cladosporium fulvum* is required for efficient water-mediated dispersal of conidia. Fungal Genet Biol 32(3):159–168. https://doi.org/10.1006/fgbi.2001.1263

Wong SSW, Aimanianda V (2017) Host soluble mediators: defying the immunological inertness of *Aspergillus fumigatus* conidia. J Fungi (Basel, Switzerland) 4(1). https://doi.org/10.3390/jof4010003

Wosten H, De Vries O, Wessels J (1993) Interfacial self-assembly of a fungal hydrophobin into a hydrophobic rodlet layer. Plant Cell 5(11):1567–1574. https://doi.org/10.1105/tpc.5.11.1567

Wosten HA, Scholtmeijer K (2015) Applications of hydrophobins: current state and perspectives. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 99(4):1587–1597. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00253-014-6319-x

Wosten HA, Schuren FH, Wessels JG (1994) Interfacial self-assembly of a hydrophobin into an amphipathic protein membrane mediates fungal attachment to hydrophobic surfaces. EMBO J 13(24):5848–5854

Wosten HA, van Wetter MA, Lugones LG, van der Mei HC, Busscher HJ, Wessels JG (1999) How a fungus escapes the water to grow into the air. Curr Biol CB 9(2):85–88

Wosten HAB, de Vocht ML (2000) Hydrophobins, the fungal coat unravelled. Biochim Et Biophys Acta-Rev Biomembr 1469(2):79–86

Yang W, Ren Q, Wu YN, Morris VK, Rey AA, Braet F, Kwan AH, Sunde M (2013) Surface functionalization of carbon nanomaterials by self-assembling hydrophobin proteins. Biopolymers 99(1):84–94. https://doi.org/10.1002/bip.22146

Zampieri F, Wosten HAB, Scholtmeijer K (2010) Creating surface properties using a palette of hydrophobins. Materials (Basel, Switzerland) 3(9):4607–4625. https://doi.org/10.3390/ma3094607

Zhang S, Xia YX, Kim B, Keyhani NO (2011) Two hydrophobins are involved in fungal spore coat rodlet layer assembly and each play distinct roles in surface interactions, development and pathogenesis in the entomopathogenic fungus, *Beauveria bassiana*. Mol Microbiol 80(3):811–826. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2958.2011.07613.x

Zykwinska A, Guillemette T, Bouchara JP, Cuenot S (2014a) Spontaneous self-assembly of SC3 hydrophobins into nanorods in aqueous solution. Biochem Biophys Acta 1844 7:1231–1237. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbapap.2014.04.003

Zykwinska A, Pihet M, Radji S, Bouchara JP, Cuenot S (2014b) Self-assembly of proteins into a three-dimensional multilayer system: investigation of the surface of the human fungal pathogen *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Biochem Biophys Acta 1844 6:1137–1144. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbapap.2014.03.001

α- and β-1,3-Glucan Synthesis and Remodeling

Johannes Wagener, Kristina Striegler, and Nikola Wagener

Contents

1 Introduction 54
2 Biosynthesis of Cell Wall Glucans 56
 2.1 β-1,3-Glucan Synthesis 56
 2.2 β-1,3;1,4- and β-1,6-Glucan Synthesis 63
 2.3 α-1,3-Glucan Synthesis 64
 2.4 Regulation of Glucan Synthesis 70
3 Concluding Remarks 72
References 73

Abstract Glucans are characteristic and major constituents of fungal cell walls. Depending on the species, different glucan polysaccharides can be found. These differ in the linkage of the D-glucose monomers which can be either in α- or β-conformation and form 1,3, 1,4 or 1,6 *O*-glycosidic bonds. The linkages and polymer lengths define the physical properties of the glucan macromolecules, which may form a scaffold for other cell wall structures and influence the rigidity and elasticity of the wall. β-1,3-glucan is essential for the viability of many fungal pathogens. Therefore, the β-1,3-glucan synthase complex represents an excellent and primary target structure for antifungal drugs. Fungal cell wall β-glucan is also an important pathogen-associated molecular pattern (PAMP). To hide from innate immunity, many fungal pathogens depend on the synthesis of cell wall α-glucan,

---

J. Wagener (✉) · K. Striegler
Institut Für Hygiene Und Mikrobiologie, University of Würzburg, Würzburg, Germany
e-mail: j.wagener@hygiene.uni-wuerzburg.de

J. Wagener
National Reference Center for Invasive Fungal Infections (NRZMyk), Jena, Germany

N. Wagener
Department of Cell Biology, Medical Faculty, University of Munich, Martinsried, Germany

Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology (2020) 425: 53–82
https://doi.org/10.1007/82_2020_200
© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
Published Online: 20 March 2020

which functions as a stealth molecule to mask the β-glucans itself or links other masking structures to the cell wall. Here, we review the current knowledge about the biosynthetic machineries that synthesize β-1,3-glucan, β-1,6-glucan, and α-1,3-glucan. We summarize the discovery of the synthases, major regulatory traits, and the impact of glucan synthesis deficiencies on the fungal organisms. Despite all efforts, many aspects of glucan synthesis remain yet unresolved, keeping research directed toward cell wall biogenesis an exciting and continuously challenging topic.

1 Introduction

Glucans are polymers of D-glucose and represent the major constituent of many fungal cell walls. Several different kinds of glucan polymers are found in the walls of fungi. They differ in their *O*-glycosidic bonds between the D-glucose monomers which can adopt either α- or β-conformation and are formed between the carbon atoms 1,3, 1,4 or 1,6 of the pyranose moieties. Depending on the fungal species, the abundance of the individual glucans as well as their importance for the cell wall integrity and fungal physiology varies significantly. The cell walls of the better characterized *Ascomycota* such as *Saccharomycetes* (e.g., *Saccharomyces* and *Candida*) and *Eurotiomycetes* (e.g., *Aspergillus*, *Penicillium,* and *Neurospora*) typically consist of a significant amount of glucans. The walls of the opportunistic fungal pathogen *Candida albicans* contain 54–60% glucans (Ruiz-Herrera et al. 2006). Baker's yeast has approximately 60% glucans in its cell wall (Klis 1994), *Schizosaccharomyces pombe* 76–84% (Magnelli et al. 2005), and molds in the genus *Aspergillus* 60–85% glucans (Gastebois et al. 2009). In contrast, in other fungal species cell wall glucans are much less abundant. For example, cell walls of the molds in the lineage *Mucoromycotina* (e.g., *Rhizopus oryzae* and *Phycomyces blakesleeanus*) only contain 3–4% glucans (Mélida et al. 2015).

While β-glucans are characteristic for essentially all true fungi, α-glucans occur only in cell walls of certain fungal species. Consequently, certain enzymes that are essential for the synthesis of cell wall α-glucan are typically missing in lineages and species void of α-glucans in their cell walls, such as the baker's yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, the *Candida* species, *Fusarium graminearum,* and *Ustilago maydis* (Damveld et al. 2005a). Together with chitin, β-glucans build the scaffold for further cell wall structures. For example, galactomannan, a cell wall polymer typically—but not exclusively—found in *Aspergillus* species, is covalently bound to the cell wall β-1,3-glucan (Fontaine et al. 2000). Similarly, mannoproteins in Candida species are covalently bound to the β-1,3-glucan scaffold via short β-1,6-glucan linkers (Kapteyn et al. 1995). These are only some examples of the known cell wall constituents whose linkage to the cell wall will ultimately depend on the β-1,3-glucan scaffold.

Considering the large portion of β-1,3-glucan present in the cell walls of many fungal species and its role as scaffold for other constituents, it is conceivable that the lack thereof may have a devastating effect on growth and viability. In fact,

β-1,3-glucan biosynthesis is currently one of the most important targets for antifungal drugs. The echinocandin class of antifungals (e.g., caspofungin, anidulafungin, and micafungin) specifically inhibits β-1,3-glucan synthesis and is broadly applied in the clinics to treat invasive fungal infections (chapter "Cell wall-modifying antifungal drugs" by David S. Perlin). Notably, the impact of β-1,3-glucan synthesis inhibition clearly depends on the fungal species and obviously reflects the importance of this cell wall polymer in the respective organism. While yeasts such as *S. cerevisiae* and *Candida* spp. typically cannot live without β-1,3-glucan (Douglas et al. 1997; Inoue et al. 1995; Katiyar et al. 2012; Mazur et al. 1995; Mio et al. 1997), *Aspergillus fumigatus* can survive, but is heavily inhibited in growth and suffering from cell lysis (Dichtl et al. 2015). These observations are based on yeast and mold mutants, but are also in line with the activity of the echinocandin antifungals against these important pathogens. While Echinocandins are considered fungicidal against *Candida* species, they are fungistatic against *Aspergillus* species (Perlin 2015).

Being a characteristic and often essential structure in fungi, β-1,3-glucan is a well-conserved pathogen-associated molecular pattern (PAMP). Animals, which inherently lack this structure, developed specific pattern recognition receptors (PRR), such as the human C-type lectins Dectin-1, Langerin, and the collectins SP-A and SP-D, that detect β-1,3- (Dectin-1, Langerin) or β-1,6- (SP-A, SP-D) glucans and trigger an innate immune response (reviewed in Goyal et al. 2018). Variants of these PRRs are conserved from invertebrates to humans and play a major role in the defense of these organisms against fungal infections (chapter "PAMPs of the fungal cell wall and mammalian PRRs" by Remi Hatinguais, Janet A. Willment, and Gordon D. Brown) (Legentil et al. 2015). β-1,3-/β-1,6-glucan typically triggers activation of the host's defense mechanisms. However, inhibition of β-1,3-glucan synthesis has repeatedly and surprisingly been reported to reinforce—and not dampen—the antifungal activity of the innate immune system by paradoxically increasing the exposure of β-1,3-glucans at the cell surface of the fungi (Beyda et al. 2015; Lamaris et al. 2008; Wheeler et al. 2008). Taken together, this suggests that inhibition of β-1,3-glucan synthesis fosters exposure of PAMPs which then boosts activation of the immune defense. It is not clear whether fungal cell wall α-glucans are specifically detected by any PRRs. It was proposed that α-1,4-glucan of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* is a ligand of DC-SIGN (Geurtsen et al. 2009), but α-1,4-glucan is only a minor constituent of the cell walls of α-1,3-glucan-positive fungi. In marked contrast to β-1,3-glucan, α-1,3-glucan is rather a virulence factor than a ligand for innate immunity. There is overwhelming evidence that α-1,3-glucan serves as a stealth polymer itself or as an important linker for other masking structures in various human, animal, and plant pathogenic fungi such as *Cryptococcus neoformans*, *Aspergillus fumigatus*, *Histoplasma capsulatum*, *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis*, *Blastomyces dermatitidis*, and *Magnaporthe grisea* (Beauvais et al. 2013; Fujikawa et al. 2012; Hogan and Klein 1994; Rappleye et al. 2004, 2007; Reese and Doering 2003; San-Blas and Vernet 1977).

2 Biosynthesis of Cell Wall Glucans

Glucans are highly abundant and essential structures of many fungal cell walls. Synthesis of the major fungal cell wall polymers β-1,3-glucan and α-1,3-glucan relies on two specialized and not directly related enzymatic complexes. The proteins representing the presumed catalytic cores of these two complexes were named as *the* β-1,3-glucan synthase or *the* α-1,3-glucan synthase, respectively. However, it should be emphasized that the enzymatic activities of these enzymes most likely rely on a concerted interaction with multiple other enzymes. In addition, it is controversial whether *the* presumed β-1,3-glucan, and α-1,3-glucan synthase enzymes really contain the catalytic domains that synthesize the eponymous glucan polymers.

2.1 β-1,3-Glucan Synthesis

β-1,3-glucans are characteristic for fungal cell walls, but are also found in other eukaryotes such as plants (callose) and protozoa and in certain bacteria. β-1,3-glucan chains have a helical structure that can present either as single-stranded or three-stranded helices (Bohn and BeMiller 1995; Kopecká and Kreger 1986; Laroche and Michaud 2007). This structure confers a remarkable elasticity to the polymer chain (Klis et al. 2006) and forms an optimal basis for the cell wall of a living organism. Besides plain linear β-1,3-glucan chains, modifications thereof are found in fungal cell walls. These present as branched polymers where branches are formed by β-1,6 linkages to the core chain (Klis et al. 2006; Latgé 2007; Lesage and Bussey 2006). The branches restrict the ability to form hydrogen bonds between linear segments of the β-1,3-glucan chains and, therefore, increase the elasticity of the cell wall even further (Morris et al. 1986; Rees and Scott 1971). By modifying these interconnections of the β-1,3-glucan polymers, the cell can vary the properties of the wall according to its needs.

β-1,3-glucan is synthesized by successive addition of glucose molecules generated by hydrolysis from cytoplasmic UDP-glucose [Fig. 1; (Frost et al. 1994)]. One of the direct products of the reaction, UDP, functions as a competitive inhibitor of β-1,3-glucan synthesis (López-Romero and Ruiz-Herrera 1978; Shematek et al. 1980). During in vitro experiments with plasma membranes isolated from *S. cerevisiae*, the nucleoside triphosphates ATP or GTP, glycerol, and bovine serum albumin were required for maximal activity of β-1,3-glucan synthase (Shematek et al. 1980). The glucose entity is added to the non-reducing end of the polysaccharide chain with a resulting product length of 60 residues in average (Shematek et al. 1980). However, determination of the degree of glucan polymerization in vivo had resulted in values of approximately 1500 glucose residues per glucan molecule (Fleet and Manners 1976; Manners et al. 1973). This discrepancy is probably explained by the fact that glucan polymers isolated from baker's yeast cell walls

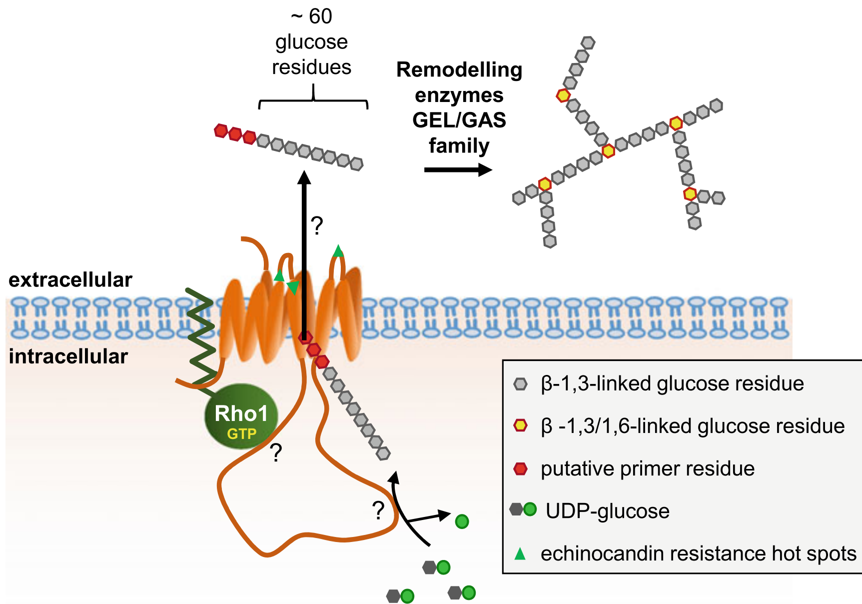


Fig. 1 Fungal β-1,3-glucan synthesis. Two subunits of the fungal β-1,3-glucan synthase complex have been identified, *the* β-1,3-glucan synthase (encoded by *fks* genes) and the Rho GTPase Rho1. The β-1,3-glucan synthase is a membrane protein approx. 1800 amino acids in length. 13 transmembrane helices (TM) span the plasma membrane. The large cytosolic loop between TM6 and TM7 is highly conserved and contains the presumed catalytic site for glucan synthesis and a domain required for interaction with regulating components. Rho1, which is essential for β-1,3-glucan synthesis, might interact with this loop. Some studies suggest a primer structure to initiate β-1,3-glucan synthesis. Cytosolic UDP-glucose is converted into UDP and the elongating β-1,3-glucan polymer. Amino acid exchange at three hot spot regions confers echinocandin resistance. These hot spots are located in the extracellular parts of the protein. Possibly, the β-1,3-glucan synthase forms a pore-like structure to pass the synthesized β-1,3-glucan chains to the outside. Various remodeling enzymes elongate and modify the linear glucan chain to build the cell wall matrix

undergo extensive remodeling upon leaving the β-1,3-glucan synthase and arrival in the extracellular space. This involves a bunch of conserved enzymes that show glucanase or glucanosyltransferase activity which elongate and branch the β-1,3-glucan chains via β-1,3- or β-1,6-glycosidic bonds (also discussed in chapter "Glucanases and Chitinases" by César Roncero and Carlos R. Vázquez de Aldana). For example, proteins of the Gas family have been shown to remodel β-1,3-glucans by cleaving β-1,3-glucan polymers internally and transferring the new reducing end to the non-reducing end of other β-1,3-glucan molecules and thereby elongate existing chains (Mouyna et al. 2000). Since Gas1 is anchored to the membrane only by a glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI) residue (Nuoffer et al. 1991), it might have been lost during isolation of glucan synthase, a membrane embedded protein, for in vitro experiments. Another enzyme, named Bgl2, was identified in *S. cerevisiae* to introduce branches into the glucan chains. It cooperates with Gas1 and increases

branching efficiency in vitro (Aimanianda et al. 2017). In vivo, *BGL2* deletion does not affect cell growth. However, parallel deletion of *GAS1* causes a synthetically sick phenotype (Aimanianda et al. 2017) which indicates that both enzymes fulfill overlapping roles. A homolog from *A. fumigatus*, Gel4, was recombinantly expressed and showed similar results to recombinant Gas1 from *S. cerevisiae* during in vitro branching assays (Aimanianda et al. 2017).

Shematek et al. believed β-1,3-glucan polymers to be synthesized de novo in *S. cerevisiae* since experiments with ^{14}C-labeled UDP-glucose showed the presence of the labeled substrate at the reducing end of the chain (Shematek et al. 1980). In agreement, Quigley and Selitrennikoff could not identify a primer structure for β-1,3-glucan synthesis in *Neurospora crassa* either (Quigley and Selitrennikoff 1987). The lacking requirement for a primer would distinguish this mechanism from that of other glycosyltransferases, which require acceptor molecules such as proteins, lipids, or polysaccharides for the transfer of sugar units (Paulson and Colley 1989). However, these findings do not exclude the possibility that the polysaccharide is formed by transfer to a primer synthesized from ^{14}C UDP-glucose itself by other enzymes in the plasma membrane. Experiments with *C. albicans* showed the inaccessibility of the reducing end of β-1,3-glucan because reducing treatment of the resulting glucan synthase product did not lead to transformation from glucose into sorbitol. This suggests synthesis of β-1,3-glucan on a primer molecule of so far unknown identity (Paulson and Colley 1989).

While the biochemistry and properties of β-1,3-glucan synthesis could be analyzed to some extent with crude cell extracts, the genes encoding the actual β-1,3-glucan synthase remained unknown for a long time. The first gene involved in β-1,3-glucan synthesis (*FKS1*) was identified in 1993 in *S. cerevisiae* in several parallel approaches conducted by independent research groups. One approach was designed to identify alleles in *S. cerevisiae* conferring hypersensitivity to the immunosuppressant tacrolimus (FK506) and cyclosporin A which inhibit the calmodulin-dependent protein phosphatase calcineurin. In this screen, an allele was identified and termed *fks1-1* (FK506 supersensitive) and calcineurin subunit deletion in this background turned out to be lethal (Parent et al. 1993). Sequencing of the gene from a genomic plasmid library that complemented the *fks1-1* mutation revealed a so far uncharacterized ORF that encodes a protein of about 1800 amino acids to be responsible for the observed effects (Eng et al. 1994). Douglas et al. could show that the gene *ETG1*, whose mutation can confer resistance to echinocandin antifungals, is identical to *FKS1* (Douglas et al. 1994). While screening for mutants that rely on the calcineurin-dependent signalling pathway, the *CND1* gene was identified. This gene was also finally found to be identical to *FKS1* (Garrett-Engele et al. 1995). The same allele was described to encode an enzyme that rescues calcofluor white hypersensitivity of the *cwh53-1* mutant (Ram et al. 1995), complements hypersensitivity to chitin synthesis inhibition (el-Sherbeini and Clemas 1995), confers susceptibility to papulacandin B (Castro et al. 1995), and co-purifies with β-1,3-glucan (Inoue et al. 1995). A second β-1,3-glucan synthase with high homology (88% identity) to Fks1, named Fks2, was identified in *S. cerevisiae* by Mazur et al. and Inoue et al. in 1995. This enzyme was shown to be functionally redundant with Fks1 as disruption of only

one of these two orthologues allows survival of the yeast cell; however, lack of both genes is lethal (Inoue et al. 1995; Mazur et al. 1995). Fks2 expression depends on Ca^{2+} in a calcineurin-dependent manner. Since calcineurin is the target of FK506, this explains why the *fks1-1* mutant exhibited FK506 hypersensitivity in the previously mentioned screens. The fact that Fks2 expression is also strongly induced in response to pheromones in a calcineurin-dependent manner, suggests a role for Fks2 in cell wall synthesis during the mating process (Mazur et al. 1995). A third β-1,3-glucan synthase homolog, Fks3, was identified in *S. cerevisiae* by homology search (Mazur et al. 1995) and functionally characterized in more detail by Ishihara and colleagues (Ishihara et al. 2007). Despite its high homology (56%) to Fks1 and Fks2 which clearly complement each others function in vivo, endogenous Fks3 is not sufficient to rescue a *fks1 fks2* double deletion. Further investigation of Fks3 function by phenotypic analysis revealed abnormal spore wall formation in the single *fks3* mutant that could be complemented neither by Fks1 nor Fks2 (Ishihara et al. 2007). Membrane extracts from cells overexpressing hemagglutinin-tagged Fks3 under the *FKS1* promoter with a temperature-sensitive *fks1* mutant protein and *FKS2* deletion in the background showed hardly any glucan synthase activity in vitro. The protein seemed to be lost from the enriched glucan synthase complex. However, in the same experiment also wild-type Fks1 expressed from a plasmid failed to restore full activity and the fact that in the same strain overexpression of hemagglutinin-tagged Fks3 under the *FKS1* promoter could restore growth at restrictive temperature points in the direction that Fks3 can take over glucan synthase function under specific conditions (Ishihara et al. 2007). All three homologs in *S. cerevisiae* are differentially expressed: Fks1 constitutes the main β-1,3-glucan synthase required under normal growth conditions, while Fks2 and Fks3 both seem to be involved in formation of spore walls with the specialty of Fks3 to stabilize active Rho1, the regulating enzyme in the β-1,3-glucan synthase complex (Ishihara et al. 2007; see below). How this stabilization is achieved remains to be elucidated, but one could speculate that an increased binding affinity between Fks3 and active Rho1 might confer elevated stress resistance that cannot be achieved simply by expression of constitutively active Rho1 (Ishihara et al. 2007).

Similar to the three β-1,3-glucan synthases of *S. cerevisiae*, the synthases encoded in other fungal species have a length of about 1600–1900 amino acids. Like baker's yeast, many other fungi harbor several β-1,3-glucan synthase genes. For example, *Phycomyces blakesleeanus* (*Mucoromycotina* lineage), despite the low amount of glucan in its cell wall, and the two pathogenic yeasts *C. albicans* and *C. glabrata* encode three β-1,3-glucan synthase homologs, and the fission yeast *S. pombe* even four. Interestingly, the importance of the individual genes for the respective species differs greatly. Partial redundancy of the synthases is observed in *C. glabrata*. Very similar to the situation in *S. cerevisiae*, *C. glabrata* deleted for *FKS1* or *FKS2* is viable, but Δ*fks1*Δ*fks2* is not (Katiyar et al. 2012). In contrast, viability of *C. albicans* strictly depends on one of the three glucan synthases, Gsc1/Fks1, while the other two synthase homologs are dispensable (Douglas et al. 1997; Mio et al. 1997; Suwunnakorn et al. 2018). *S. pombe* non-redundantly depends on three of the four β-1,3-glucan synthase homologs, namely Bgs1, Bgs3, and Bgs4

(Cortés et al. 2005; Liu et al. 1999, 2000, 2002; Martín et al. 2003). This indicates that each of the three β-1,3-glucan synthase homologs must exert a specific and essential function which cannot be compensated by the others [summarized in (García Cortés et al. 2016)]. Other species like *Cryptococcus neoformans*, *Aspergillus fumigatus,* and *Magnaporthe oryzae* encode only one β-1,3-glucan synthase. Similar to other characterized yeasts, *C. neoformans* is not viable without its β-1,3-glucan synthase (Thompson et al. 1999). β-1,3-glucan was initially thought to be essential for viability of all fungi. However, it became clear that the importance of β-1,3-glucan synthesis merely depends on the individual species and cannot be generalized. In contrast to all other characterized species, *A. fumigatus* can survive upon deletion of the only β-1,3-glucan synthase encoding gene, but shows severe growth defects with cell lysis and a retention of galactosaminogalactan. To compensate the lack of β-1,3-glucan, *Aspergillus* drastically increases the cell wall chitin and essentially depends on the formation of septa (Dichtl et al. 2015; Loiko and Wagener 2017). The compensatory upregulation of cell wall chitin depends on calcineurin signaling but also on other pathways and appears to be a uniform reaction in fungi upon β-1,3-glucan synthesis inhibition because similar observations were made in many different fungal species upon treatment with echinocandins (Fortwendel et al. 2009; Stevens et al. 2006; Walker et al. 2008; reviewed and discussed in Wagener and Loiko 2017). The lack of β-1,3-glucan results in the absence of an important scaffold (Fontaine et al. 2000; Kang et al. 2018). As a consequence, galactomannan, a cell wall polymer characteristic for *Aspergilli*, cannot be linked to the cell wall and is released to the supernatant (Dichtl et al. 2015). Possibly, other fungi which have only minor amounts of β-1,3-glucan in their cell walls (e.g., *Mucorales*; Mélida et al. 2015) and show no in vitro susceptibility to echinocandins (Almyroudis et al. 2007; Vitale et al. 2012) might have even less or no growth defects upon complete inactivation of their β-1,3-glucan synthases.

It was repeatedly questioned whether the *FKS* genes encode indeed the catalytic subunit of the β-1,3-glucan synthase. In vitro glucan synthase assays were performed with membrane fractions from *S. cerevisiae fks1* mutants showing a strongly reduced β-1,3-glucan synthase activity in the mutants compared to wild type (Douglas et al. 1994). Due to high impurity of membrane preparations, this observation could not exclude the possibility that Fks1 is not the enzyme itself but merely a factor required for synthesis. Evidence came from three studies supporting the assumption the catalytic center of the complex is encoded by *FKS1*. In the first study, an antibody raised against the Fks1 homolog Fks2, also recognizing native Fks1, was used to deplete membrane extracts of cells expressing either Fks1 or Fks2 specifically of β-1,3-glucan synthase activity. This resulted in association of β-1,3-glucan synthase activity with the respective precipitate (Mazur and Baginsky 1996) and demonstrates that Fks1 or Fks2 must be present in a protein complex with β-1,3-glucan synthase activity. Further evidence for the *FKS* gene products being part of the β-1,3-glucan synthase complex came from Inoue et al. They generated antibodies against a purified cell fraction with β-1,3-glucan synthase activity. The same antibodies were subsequently able to detect specifically a

200 kDa protein in western blot analysis that was identified by HPLC and subsequent peptide sequencing as Fks1 (Inoue et al. 1995). Finally, Schimoler-O'Rourke et al. were able to photo cross-link a radiolabeled UDP-glucose analog, the β-1,3-glucan synthase substrate, to the Fks1 homolog FKS-1 in *Neurospora crassa*. This demonstrated the direct interaction of FKS with UDP-glucose and strongly supports its catalytic role in β-1,3-glucan synthesis (Schimoler-O'Rourke et al. 2003). Final clarification of the synthase activity will be obtained by reconstituting the system in vitro. These findings in yeast and *N. crassa* were also supported by a study that aimed on identifying the β-1,3-glucan synthase of *A. fumigatus* (Beauvais et al. 2001). In this work, co-localization of Fks1 with newly synthesized β-1,3-glucan at the apex of the germ tube was observed. In addition, product entrapment of the synthase complex allowed the identification of Fks1, Rho1, a membrane H^+-ATPase and a homolog of a bacterial ABC glucan transporter which indicates the functional conservation of Fks1 (Beauvais et al. 2001).

The only known regulatory subunit of the synthase complex, the Rho GTPase Rho1, was identified by further analysis of the co-factors relevant for β-1,3-glucan synthesis. In an extensive in vitro study, Mg^{2+}-dependent ATP hydrolysis was found to be required for β-1,3-glucan synthesis activity while GTP stimulated the reaction by a hydrolysis-independent mechanism (Shematek and Cabib 1980). This suggested that GTP itself acts as a stimulating factor for the β-1,3-glucan synthase. ATP, on the other hand, would be most likely required to phosphorylate a so far unknown activator of the β-1,3-glucan synthase. Separation of cell membrane extracts into a membrane bound and a soluble phase revealed that both contain components that are crucial for β-1,3-glucan synthesis. The previous observation that small amounts of GTP stimulate glucan synthase activity (Shematek and Cabib 1980) and the phenotypic consistency of cell wall mutants with Rho GTPase mutants resulted in them being tested for their role in glucan synthesis. Finally, Rho1 could be confirmed as the activator of the glucan synthase complex (Drgonová et al. 1996). The physical interaction between Fks1 and Rho1 was proven by co-purification of both proteins (Qadota et al. 1996). Rho1 is a GTP binding protein which itself cannot be labeled by UDP-glucose (Mazur and Baginsky 1996) indicating its sole regulatory role during β-1,3-glucan synthesis. Rho1 is able to stimulate β-1,3-glucan synthesis in its de-ribosylated state while ribosylation of Rho1 strongly inhibits Fks activity. This observation was made in vitro with extracts from Δ*fks1* and Δ*fks2* mutants where only one β-1,3-glucan synthase was present (Mazur and Baginsky 1996) demonstrating both, Fks1 and Fks2, can be regulated by Rho1. However, it cannot be excluded that in vivo under certain conditions any of the β-1,3-glucan synthases is additionally regulated by other Rho GTPases than Rho1. The strict requirement of Rho1 for β-1,3-glucan synthase activity establishes a connection between β-1,3-glucan synthesis and the cell wall integrity pathway in which Rho1 functions as signal transducer (see 2.4) (Mazur and Baginsky 1996). The regulatory function of Rho1 appears to be strongly conserved in fungi. For example, in 1996, it was shown that overexpression of *rho1* in *S. pombe* can partially complement a temperature-sensitive β-1,3-glucan synthase mutant (Arellano et al. 1996). Expression of constitutively

active *rho1* alleles resulted in strikingly increased β-1,3-glucan synthase activity and thicker cell walls (Arellano et al. 1996). Repression of *rho1* in *A. fumigatus* results in cell lysis (Dichtl et al. 2012). And like in *S. cerevisiae*, Rho1 of *A. fumigatus* could be co-purified with the β-1,3-glucan synthase Fks1 which is again in agreement with direct interaction of both proteins in the β-1,3-glucan synthase complex (Beauvais et al. 2001).

The β-1,3-glucan synthase is a plasma membrane-integrated enzyme with multiple predicted transmembrane domains (Douglas et al. 1994; Johnson and Edlind 2012; Klis et al. 2006; Lesage and Bussey 2006). Sequence alignments of β-1,3-glucan synthase proteins from various fungi show the highest conservation of the protein in its central domain while N- and C-terminal regions are rather divergent (Johnson and Edlind 2012). The differences in the N- and C-terminal regions are probably linked to their different functional roles and cell cycle specificities observed in various different species. Topology predictions based on different algorithms resulted in varying prognoses concerning the number and positions of the transmembrane domains in yeast Fks1 (Johnson and Edlind 2012). To further investigate the topology of Fks1, a hemagglutinin (HA)-Suc2-His4C fusion assay (Kim et al. 2003) was performed. This assay employed fusions of Fks1 fragments, chosen to end in predicted loop regions between transmembrane domains, to a C-terminal reporter. If the His4C part, which harbors an enzymatic function essential for histidine biosynthesis, is localized to the cytosolic side, the cell is able to grow on medium without histidine. In contrast, when the C-terminus is localized to the extracellular space, the Suc2 moiety will become glycosylated in the endoplasmic reticulum. The glycosylation can be monitored by degradation of glycosyl residues resulting in a migration shift on SDS-PAGE. Based on this elegant assay, Johnson and Edlind could propose an updated topology model for Fks1 which differs in some aspects from the in silico prediction. They could confirm the presence of a soluble cytosolic N-terminus and six subsequent N-terminal helices. The short C-terminus protrudes into the extracellular space preceded by seven C-terminal transmembrane helices (four predicted C-terminal helices could not be experimentally confirmed). N- and C-terminal membrane-integrated domains of the protein are separated by a large and highly conserved cytosolic loop. Interestingly, a previous study by Okado et al. (2010) mapped and correlated certain mutations within the *FKS1* gene to specific phenotypes. It was shown that mutations in the soluble cytoplasmic N-terminus result only in slightly decreased glucan synthase activity in vitro, but cells have a strong defect in incorporation of glucan into the budding daughter cell wall (Okada et al. 2010). Probably, this region is involved in proper targeting or regulation of the enzyme, but solid data supporting these hypotheses are missing. A region within the central cytosolic loop close to the N-terminal transmembrane domains was identified to influence cell morphology and polarity (Okada et al. 2010). Since mutation in the more N-terminal region of the central loop only partially reduces the synthase activity in vitro, it was proposed that this part of the protein is required for interaction with a cell polarity regulating factor (Okada et al. 2010). The nature of this factor, however, remains to be identified.

In baker's yeast, Fks1 expression depends on the cell cycle (Mazur et al. 1995). In agreement with this expression profile and growth defect, one of the β-1,3-glucan synthases in *S. pombe*, Bgs1, was shown to be also involved in cell polarization (Cortés et al. 2002). The catalytic site of Fks1 seems to be located in the more C-terminal part of the central cytosolic loop as mutations in this region strongly decrease the in vitro glucan synthase activity (Okada et al. 2010). Based on the updated topology model of Johnson and Edlind, it was possible to map mutations conferring either resistance or hypersensitivity to echinocandin glucan synthase inhibitors in close proximity to the central loop, importantly, at the external side of the plasma membrane. Of note, some mutations confer specific resistance to particular echinocandins suggesting interaction sites for echinocandin-specific side chains (Johnson et al. 2011). However, all of them are in relatively close proximity to the membrane which is in agreement with the fact, that echinocandins carry a lipid tail that is crucial for their antifungal activity and probably anchor the molecule within the outer membrane leaflet (Denning 2003). Due to the final extracellular localization of β-1,3-glucan, it was suggested that during synthesis the growing, polymer enters the cell wall space guided through the membrane by a channel formed by the transmembrane domains of the enzyme. However, evidence for this hypothesis is still missing despite all studies trying to dissect β-1,3-glucan synthase function.

2.2 β-1,3;1,4- and β-1,6-Glucan Synthesis

Another cell wall glucan which is typically found in yeasts is β-1,6-glucan. Although it represents only approx. 12% of the entire cell wall polysaccharides in baker's yeast (Magnelli et al. 2002), inhibition of β-1,6-glucan synthesis results in a severe growth defect (Roemer et al. 1993). β-1,6-glucan was shown to cross-link chitin to β-1,3-glucans (Kollár et al. 1995) and cell wall anchored mannoproteins to chitin as well as to β-1,3-glucans (Kapteyn et al. 1996, 1997). This important role in anchoring mannoproteins to the yeast cell wall is probably the reason for the strong phenotype observed upon lack of β-1,6-glucan. Analysis of β-1,6-glucan synthesis in vitro employing either membrane preparations or whole permeabilized cells of *S. cerevisiae* revealed that the membrane fraction is sufficient for β-1,3-glucan synthesis, but not for synthesis of β-1,6-glucan (Aimanianda et al. 2009). Several players involved in β-1,6-glucan synthesis have been identified, mainly via screening approaches. One screen was performed to identify mutants with increased resistance to K1 killer toxin (Al-Aidroos and Bussey 1978; Boone et al. 1990). This toxin specifically binds to β-1,6-glucan and thereby permeabilizes the cell membrane to ion passage (Martinac et al. 1990; Pagé et al. 2003). The identified alleles were called killer toxin resistant (KRE) and some of them were investigated in more detail. *KRE5* encodes a putative glycosyl transferase that localizes to the ER (Boone et al. 1990; Meaden et al. 1990) and a *kre5-ts2* mutant was unable to synthesize β-1,6-glucan in an assay with permeabilized yeast cells (Aimanianda et al. 2009).

Kre6, another factor for β-1,6-glucan synthesis identified in these screens (Roemer and Bussey 1991), is a Golgi membrane protein which has a homolog, Skn1, that can complement the Kre6 function (Roemer et al. 1994). Besides this, a cytoplasmic factor involved in this pathway named Kre11 was identified, but again its precise role in β-1,6-glucan synthesis remains elusive (Brown et al. 1993). Only two known players of β-1,6-glucan synthesis localize to the plasma membrane or periplasmic space, the actual site where β-1,6-glucan synthesis takes place (Montijn et al. 1999). Kre9 is a soluble protein and its deletion reduces β-1,6-glucan to 20% of the original amount (Shahinian and Bussey 2000). Also, a *kre9* deletion mutant was tested in an in vitro assay and did not show any β-1,6-glucan synthase activity (Aimanianda et al. 2009). Kre1 is a protein, predicted to be GPI-anchored to the plasma membrane that was proposed for being the actual receptor of the K1 killer toxin (Breinig et al. 2002, 2004). Its deletion resulted in 40% decrease of β-1,6-glucan and in a reduction of the β-1,6-glucan polymer length (Boone et al. 1990). However, it remains to be elucidated whether one of these proteins functions as a β-1,6-glucan synthase or this enzyme remains to be identified. In contrast to yeasts, filamentous fungi like *N. crassa* and *A. fumigatus* completely lack β-1,6-glucan in their cell walls (Fontaine et al. 2000; Maddi and Free 2010). Instead, another polysaccharide species, β-1,3;1,4-glucan, was identified in *A. fumigatus* which comprises approx. 10% of the total β-glucan (Fontaine et al. 2000). So far, only one component was identified to be involved in β-1,3;1,4-glucan biosynthesis. *A. fumigatus* Tft1, a predicted glycosyltransferase, was shown to be essential for β-1,3;1,4-glucan synthesis as knock out of the encoding gene results in complete loss of β-1,3;1,4-glucan. However, the role of β-1,3;1,4-glucan for survival of *A. fumigatus* is unclear as neither depletion nor overexpression of the protein resulted in any growth phenotype (Samar et al. 2015). Surprisingly, deletion of a functional homolog of AfTft1 in *A. nidulans, celA,* that is required for β-1,3;1,4-glucan synthesis was reported to result in a strong growth phenotype reminiscent to other cell wall biosynthesis mutants (Guerriero et al. 2017).

2.3 α-1,3-Glucan Synthesis

Cell wall α-glucans have been identified in many filamentous fungi and some yeasts, including the *Ascomycota Schizosaccharomyces pombe*, *Aspergillus* species, *Histoplasma capsulatum*, *Blastomyces dermatitidis, Paracoccidioides brasiliensis* as well as the plant pathogenic fungi *Magnaporte grisea* and *Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. lycopersici* and in the basidomycetous fungus *Cryptococcus neoformans* (Bull 1970; Fujikawa et al. 2012; Hogan and Klein 1994; Horisberger et al. 1972; Kanetsuna et al. 1969; Manners and Meyer 1977; Reese and Doering 2003; San-Blas et al. 1978; Schoffelmeer et al. 1999). In *Aspergillus* species, α-glucans represent approximately 35–46% of the total cell wall carbohydrates (Gastebois et al. 2009). The fission yeast *S. pombe* contains 18–28% α-glucan in its cell wall

(Manners and Meyer 1977). In contrast and as stated above, cell wall α-glucans are absent from the baker's yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, all *Candida* species, *Fusarium graminearum,* and *Ustilago maydis* (Damveld et al. 2005a).

The chemical structure of cell wall α-glucans have been studied in the fission yeast *S. pombe*, *H. capsulatum*, *Aspergillus* species, and *P. brasiliensis*. Cell wall α-glucans in these fungi actually represent linear polymers consisting of glucose with α-1,3 and α-1,4-glycosidic bonds. α-1,3-glycosidic lined glucans represent the vast majority of these polymers. Grün et al. showed that cell wall α-glucan of *S. pombe* is a linear polysaccharide without branching points composed of approximately 260 glucose residues (Grün et al. 2005). Approximately 90% of these α-glucan polymers are linked by α-1,3-glycosidic bonds and the remaining 10% are linked by α-1,4-glycosidic bonds (Grün et al. 2005). A detailed analysis of these polymers revealed that the α-1,4-glycosidic bonds are not randomly distributed along the α-glucan chain. Instead, they occur at the reducing end of an α-1,3-glucan chain approximately 120 glucose residues in length. Two of these chains are interconnected to form one linear α-glucan polysaccharide macromolecule, having short α-1,4-glucan chains as a linker in between (Grün et al. 2005). A similar architecture was found for cell wall α-glucan from *A. wentii*, *A. nidulans,* and *A. fumigatus* even though the structure was somewhat different. The α-1,3-glucan chains were approximately 200 glucose residues in length and the linearly assembled α-glucan polysaccharide macromolecule consisted of multiple such chains interconnected by short α-1,4-glucan chains (Choma et al. 2013; Latgé 2010; Miyazawa et al. 2018). The average number of interconnected α-1,3-glucan chains per macromolecule varied and were determined to be twenty-five in *A. wentii* and approximately five in *A. nidulans* (Choma et al. 2013; Miyazawa et al. 2018). Apparently, the number of interconnected α-1,3-glucan chains largely depends on the enzymatic properties and expression rates of the individual α-1,3-glucan synthases (Miyazawa et al. 2018). In contrast to α-glucan from *S. pombe*, the reducing ends of α-glucan from *A. wentii* are terminated by α-1,3-glucan and not by α-1,4-glucan (Choma et al. 2013; Grün et al. 2005). Cell wall α-glucan of *P. brasiliensis* might differ significantly from α-glucan of *S. pombe* and *Aspergilli*. It was shown that the macromolecules have about 97% α-1,3-glucan, with some α-1,4-glucan branching points (Sorais et al. 2010).

Of essential importance for cell wall α-glucan synthesis in fungi are the α-1,3-glucan synthases. These enzymes are found in all α-1,3-glucan-positive fungi and were proposed to contain the catalytic domain(s) that synthesize α-glucan chains. The number of α-1,3-glucan synthases encoded in the genomes of different fungal species varies greatly. *S. pombe* and *A. niger* encode five α-1,3-glucan synthases, *A. fumigatus* three, *A. nidulans* two and *C. neoformans* and *H. capsulatum* only one. α-1,3-glucan synthase null mutants have been characterized in *A. nidulans*, *A. fumigatus*, *C. neoformans,* and *H. capsulatum* (He et al. 2014; Henry et al. 2012; Marion et al. 2006; Miyazawa et al. 2018; Reese et al. 2007; Yoshimi et al. 2013). The cell walls of respective single (*H. capsulatum*, *C. neoformans*), double (*A. nidulans*) or triple deletion mutants (*A. fumigatus*) were essentially free of α-1,3-glucan which clearly demonstrates the essential roles of α-1,3-glucan

synthases for α-1,3-glucan synthesis. Comprehensive analyses of the deletion mutants allowed deciphering the role of α-1,3-glucan synthesis for individual fungal species. *Aspergilli* deleted for all encoded α-1,3-glucan synthases hardly show any growth defects on solid medium (Henry et al. 2012; Yoshimi et al. 2013). Prominent phenotypes due to the lack of α-1,3-glucan synthesis in the cell wall of *Aspergillus* spp. appear to be an altered extracellular matrix and a significantly reduced amount of conidial and hyphal adhesion in liquid media (Fontaine et al. 2010; Yoshimi et al. 2013). Importantly, the virulence of the triple α-1,3-glucan synthase mutant of *A. fumigatus* is highly reduced in a murine model of aspergillosis (Beauvais et al. 2013) and the fungus can be early detected by immune cells and more efficiently engulfed by the macrophages of the host compared to wild type strain infections (Beauvais et al. 2013). Besides this, the susceptibility to certain cell wall stress conditions of such mutants is slightly altered (Damveld et al. 2005a; He et al. 2014; Valsecchi et al. 2019). A recent analysis of the cell wall architecture of *A. fumigatus* highlights the structural and functional versatilities of cell wall α-glucan in this mold (Kang et al. 2018), even though the evident minor growth defects of the α-1,3-glucan synthase deletion mutants argue against a major role in cell wall integrity (Henry et al. 2012; Yoshimi et al. 2013). The cell wall α-1,3-glucan synthase of the fungus *C. neoformans* is important for anchoring the polysaccharide capsule of this pathogen (Reese and Doering 2003). Deletion of the α-1,3-glucan synthase of *H. capsulatum* results in several in vitro growth defects, an altered cell wall structure and reduced ability to colonize murine lungs (Rappleye et al. 2004, 2007). In marked contrast to *Aspergillus*, *Cryptococcus* and *Histoplasma*, the fission yeast (*S. pombe*) cannot live upon deletion of its main α-1,3-glucan synthase *ags1* (Hochstenbach et al. 1998; Katayama et al. 1999). Mutants lacking the less important α-1,3-glucan synthases *mok11-14* show no morphological changes or affectations of viability but defects in sporulation (García et al. 2006).

The overall protein structure of the different α-1,3-glucan synthases encoded in the so far characterized species appears to be very similar (Fig. 2). With the exception of Mok14 of *S. pombe* (SpMok14), all α-1,3-glucan synthases have a length of about 2400 amino acids. SpMok14 is significantly shorter (approx. 1300 amino acids). The N-termini of the synthases harbor a secretory signal peptide which is readily predicted by bioinformatic algorithms such as SignalP 5.0 [Sec/SPI; (Almagro Armenteros et al. 2019)]. This is followed by an extracellular domain with similarity to α-amylases [PF00128; (El-Gebali et al. 2019)]. This domain is lacking in SpMok14. After approximately 1100 amino acids, a transmembrane domain is predicted [TMHMM Server v. 2.0; (Krogh et al. 2001)]. The following intracellular protein part shares homology with a starch synthase catalytic domain (PF08323). In case of three α-1,3-glucan synthases of *S. pombe* (Ags1, Mok12, and Mok14) and the α-1,3-glucan synthase of *C. neoformans*, an additional homology with glycosyl transferases (group 1; PF00534) can be found. Apparently, this domain is also present in the other α-1,3-glucan synthases but is currently simply not detected by the PF00534 hidden Markov model. The PF08323 (starch synthase catalytic domain) pattern combined with the PF00534 (glycosyl transferase group 1) pattern next to it encompass approximately 500 amino acids and are

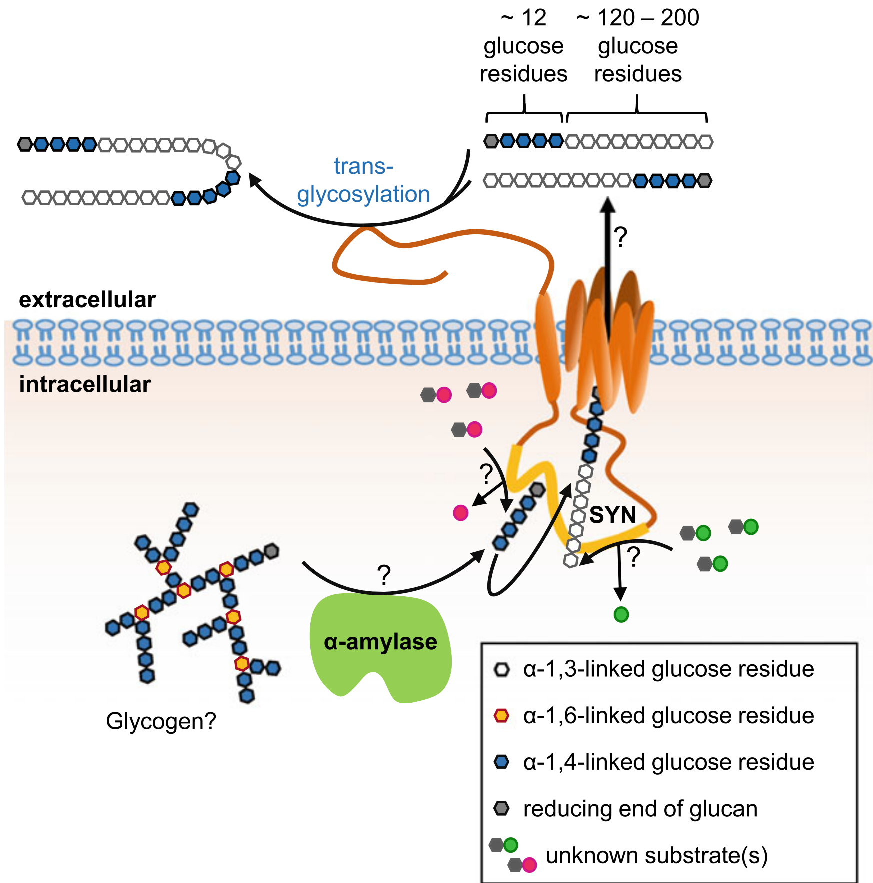


Fig. 2 Fungal α-1,3-glucan synthesis. The α-1,3-glucan synthase is a membrane protein approx. 2400 amino acids in length. The N-terminal part of the protein is approx. 1000 amino acids in length and facing the extracellular side. This domain is involved in linking the exported α-glucan chains to form longer polysaccharide macromolecules. The extracellular part is followed by a transmembrane domain and an intracellular part (approx. 1000 amino acids) which harbors the synthase (SYN) domain. It is controversial whether this part of the protein synthesizes α-1,4-glucan, α-1,3-glucan or both. At least in some fungal species, an intracellular α-amylase is required for synthesis of α-1,4-glucan which probably functions as a primer and is required for efficient α-1,3-glucan synthesis. The substrate(s) for α-1,4-glucan and α-1,3-glucan synthesis are currently not known. The C-terminal multiple membrane-spanning part of the α-1,3-glucan might form a pore-like structure to pass the synthesized α-glucan chains to the outside

commonly found in α-1,4-glucan-synthesizing enzymes such as glycogen and starch synthases. This domain is followed by approximately 400 amino acids that do not share much homology between the different α-1,3-glucan synthases. The respective intracellular part of the protein was denoted as the SYN (synthase) domain (Vos et al. 2007). The final C-terminal approximately 400 amino acids

harbor a multiple membrane-spanning domain. It was proposed that this part of the α-1,3-glucan synthases forms a pore-like structure to pass the α-glucan chains to the outside (Hochstenbach et al. 1998). But experiments that clearly prove this are still lacking.

In consideration of the conserved structure of α-1,3-glucan synthases with an extracellular and intracellular part, it was suggested that the intracellular part of the protein harbors the synthase domain that catalyzes the α-1,3-glucan chain synthesis (Hochstenbach et al. 1998). However, it must be noted that neither any biochemical synthesis activity of the intracellular protein part has been shown in vitro, nor was the substrate for α-glucan synthesis clearly identified. UDP-glucose was proposed to play some direct or indirect role (Hochstenbach et al. 1998; Marion et al. 2006). According to a model proposed by Grün et al., the α-1,3-glucan synthase might not assemble the α-1,3-glucan polymers directly. Instead, a short α-1,4-glucan oligomer ($\sim$12 glucose residues) is required as a primer to initiate α-1,3-glucan synthesis (Grün et al. 2005). The origin of such putative primers is not really clear. Vos et al. suggested that the intracellular SYN domain of the α-1,3-glucan synthase might synthesize α-1,4-glucan by itself (Vos et al. 2007). Indeed, the SYN domain shares significant homology with well-characterized α-1,4-glucan-synthesizing enzymes such as glycogen and starch synthases.

Vos et al. backed their hypothesis with a bunch of experimental results. Overexpression of the α-1,3-glucan synthase Ags1 in *S. pombe* (SpAgs1) results in increased accumulation of α-1,4-glucan (Vos et al. 2007). Importantly, results of this study are based on an iodine vapor staining assay and the assumption that iodine specifically stains α-1,4-glucan (and not other constituents of *S. pombe*). The α-1,3-glucan content was not quantified in this study. Overexpression of a mutant SpAgs1 which lacks the extracellular α-amylase-like domain (ΔTGL) also caused accumulation of α-1,4-glucan while overexpression of mutant SpAgs1 which either lacks the SYN domain or which harbors point mutations in a conserved Glu-X_7-Glu motif in the SYN domain did not result in accumulation of iodine-stainable material (Vos et al. 2007). The red-brownish color shade of the SpAgs1-overexpressing strains after iodine staining allowed Vos et al. to estimate the length of the α-1,4-glucan chains to be between 10 and 40 residues (Vos et al. 2007). This is in agreement with the finding that the α-1,3-glucan polymers are linked by short α-1,4-glucan chains approximately 12 glucose residues in length, which are overproduced upon overexpression of SpAgs1 (Vos et al. 2007).

In a recent study performed by Miyazawa et al., the effects of α-1,3-glucan synthase overexpression were investigated in *A. nidulans* (Miyazawa et al. 2018). This species encodes two α-1,3-glucan synthases (AgsA and AgsB). Overexpression of any of these α-1,3-glucan synthases increased the overall α-glucan amount in the cell wall, including α-1,3-glucan and not specifically α-1,4-glucan. Notably, the lengths of the α-1,3-glucan chains in the α-glucan polysaccharide macromolecules (approx. 200 glucose residues) remained the same (Miyazawa et al. 2018). Taken together, the results of Vos et al. and Miyazawa et al. both support a model where α-glucan synthesis at large depends on the intracellular SYN domain. However, the observation of Miyazawa et al. that

overexpression of the synthases increases cell wall α-1,3- and α-1,4-glucan equally (Miyazawa et al. 2018) somehow challenges the specific conclusion of Vos et al. that the SYN domain synthesizes α-1,4-glucan chains (Vos et al. 2007). If the hypothesis of Vos et al. holds true, it raises the question whether the SYN domain can additionally synthesize α-1,3-glucan chains or whether another unknown enzyme is required to exert this function. Of course, based on the current knowledge and because enzymatic domains that synthesize α-1,3-glucan in fungi are not defined yet, it could also be the other way around.

A possible alternative origin of α-1,4-glucan could involve intracellular α-1,4-amylases. Deletion of the α-1,4-amylase gene *AMY1* in *H. capsulatum* resulted in a mutant with greatly reduced and mislocalized α-1,3-glucan based on immunostaining experiments (Marion et al. 2006). Expression of a homologous protein of *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis* in this mutant restored the quantities and surface localization of α-1,3-glucan (Camacho et al. 2012). Homologs of these α-1,4-amylases were also studied in *Aspergillus*. The number of close homologs varies among the different *Aspergillus* species. While *A. fumigatus* and *A. nidulans* encode only one close homologue (AFUA_1G15150 and AN3309/*amyG*, respectively), *A. niger* and *A. oryzae* encode two (An01g13610/*amyD*, An09g03110/*emyE* and AO090005001193, AO090003001497, respectively). So far, a null mutant has only been characterized in *A. nidulans*. He et al. showed that in *A. nidulans* deletion of *amyG* resulted in a significant decrease of immunostainable α-1,3-glucan (He et al. 2014). In agreement with this microscopy-based result, cell wall analysis of this Δ*amyG* mutant demonstrated that the amount of glucose in the alkali-soluble cell wall fraction (which primarily represents α-1,3-glucan) is drastically reduced to approximately 13% of wild type. However, it is noteworthy that *A. nidulans* mutants that lack the genes encoding the α-1,3-glucan synthases (*agsA* and *agsB*) were found in the same study to exhibit even much less glucose in this fraction (reduced to approx. 1% of wild type) (He et al. 2014). In agreement, very similar results were obtained in a recent independent study in *A. nidulans* with respect to α-glucan-stainability and cell wall composition (Miyazawa et al. 2018). The observation that some mislocalized α-1,3-glucan was still stainable in the *H. capsulatum* Δ*amy1* mutant (Camacho et al. 2012; Marion et al. 2006) and the finding that a significant amount of glucose (i.e., cell wall α-glucan) was still present in the alkali-soluble fraction of the *A. nidulans* Δ*amyG* mutant (He et al. 2014; Miyazawa et al. 2018) suggests that the intracellular α-1,4-amylase contributes to but is not essential for α-1,3-glucan synthesis *per se*. The substrate used by the intracellular α-1,4-amylases to produce the presumed α-1,4-glucan primers for α-1,3-glucan synthesis as well as the enzymes important for the substrate synthesis remain unknown. Interestingly, fission yeast encodes many putative α-amylases, but none of them is a close homologue of *H. capsulatum* Amy1 or *A. nidulans* AmyG. This raises the question which enzyme could be responsible for this apparently important function in α-1,3-glucan synthesis in *S. pombe*.

Upon arrival of the α-glucan chains outside of the cell, the extracellular domain of the α-1,3-glucan synthases comes into play. The function of this domain was studied based on a temperature-sensitive *S. pombe* mutant (*ags1-1^{ts}*). This mutant

harbors a mutation in SpAgs1 that results in an amino acid exchange at position 696 (G696S, positioned in the extracellular domain but outside the α-amylase domain). The *ags1-1^ts^* mutant accumulates much less α-glucan in its cell wall and shows cell lysis at restrictive temperatures (Hochstenbach et al. 1998). Expression of SpAgs1 proteins with mutations in the SYN domain that diminish the ability of the enzyme to synthesize α-glucan chains can complement the temperature sensitivity of the *ags1-1^ts^* mutant. This demonstrates that the growth defect of G696S mutation is most likely linked to the function of the extracellular domain (Vos et al. 2007). Interestingly, the cell wall α-glucan in the *ags1-1^ts^* mutant is not only reduced but the polysaccharide macromolecules also had half the size compared to those of the wild type (Pereira et al. 2000). The lengths of the α-1,3-glucan chains remained similar to those of the wild type and kept some short α-1,4-glucan chains at the reducing end. The authors, therefore, concluded that the extracellular domain links the exported α-glucan chains to form longer polysaccharide macromolecules (Pereira et al. 2000).

2.4 Regulation of Glucan Synthesis

Several signaling pathways have an impact on cell wall biogenesis. Best characterized is the regulatory role of the cell wall integrity (CWI) signaling pathway. Core components of this pathway exist in all fungal species that were characterized so far. Detailed insights regarding its functionality and its crosstalk with other signaling pathways were obtained in baker's yeast (reviewed in Levin 2005, 2011). Several aspects of CWI signaling were also studied *S. pombe* (Pérez and Cansado 2010) and in many other fungal model organisms (e.g., Richthammer et al. 2012; Rodicio et al. 2008) and, in recent years, extensively in many pathogens due to its role in virulence (Chen et al. 2019a, b; Dichtl et al. 2016). The CWI pathway comprises specialized cell wall stress sensors at the cell surface, guanine nucleotide exchange factors, Rho GTPases, GTPase-activating proteins, several kinases and phosphatases, and transcription factors. The cell wall stress sensors are highly glycosylated and membrane-anchored mechanosensors that detect specific alterations in the cell wall. In *S. cerevisiae*, two types of cell wall stress sensors were identified (Wsc1-3; Mid2 and Mtl1) which are also conserved in other fungal species (Dichtl et al. 2012; Rodicio et al. 2008). Upon activation, both sensor types activate guanine nucleotide exchange factors (in *S. cerevisiae*: Rom1 and Rom2) and trigger GDP/GTP exchange at Rho GTPases (Kanno et al. 2015; Levin 2011; Richthammer et al. 2012; Samantaray et al. 2013). In *S. cerevisiae*, clearly the most important Rho GTPase in this context is Rho1 (*Sc*Rho1). In other fungal species, the Rho2 GTPases appear to play an additional key role (Kwon et al. 2011; Pérez and Cansado 2010; Richthammer et al. 2012). Importantly, especially Rho1 is also a central player in multiple other pathways, for example, it is involved in regulation of exocytosis and of the actin cytoskeleton (Levin 2011). A major downstream effector of Rho1 is protein kinase C (in *S. cerevisiae*: Pkc1). This kinase activates a

conserved MAP kinase module (in *S. cerevisiae*: Bck1 (MAPKKK), Mkk1 and Mkk2 (MAPKK), and Mpk1 (a.k.a. Slt2; MAPK), and its homologous pseudokinase Mlp1), but also multiple additional effectors (Dichtl et al. 2016; Levin 2011; Pérez and Cansado 2010). The central MAP kinases (in *S. cerevisiae*: Mpk1, and Mlp1) regulate the transcription of multiple enzymes involved in cell wall biosynthesis and stress response (Fujioka et al. 2007; Levin 2011; Park et al. 2016). The transcription factors regulated by Mpk1 and Mlp1 in *S. cerevisiae* are Rlm1 (*Sc*Rlm1; by Mpk1) and the SBF transcription factor Swi4/Swi6 (by Mpk1 and Mlp1).

While the interaction between the CWI pathway and cell wall biogenesis is well established, the exact regulatory steps and relevance of individual players on a molecular level remain only partially resolved. Regulation of β- and α-glucan synthesis probably occurs at multiple levels. These involve regulation on a transcriptional level and most likely direct regulation of the enzymatic activities of the synthases by protein–protein interactions.

2.4.1 Regulation of β-1,3-Glucan Synthesis

It is generally assumed that the Rho GTPase Rho1 is an essential part of the β-1,3-glucan synthase complex (extensively discussed 2.1). This function appears to be strongly conserved in other characterized fungal species and thereby strongly links the CWI pathway with β-1,3-glucan synthesis (Arellano et al. 1996; Beauvais et al. 2001).

Transcriptional regulation of β-1,3-glucan synthases may also occur via the CWI pathway. At least in *S. cerevisiae*, expression of one of the three β-1,3-glucan synthases, *fks2*, can be induced via the CWI MAP kinase Mpk1 and the downstream SBF transcription factor Swi4/Swi6 (Kim and Levin 2010, 2011). The relevance of the CWI pathway for transcriptional regulation of β-1,3-glucan synthases in other fungal species, e.g., *Aspergillus*, is controversial (Fujioka et al. 2007; Rocha et al. 2016). However, yet another key signaling pathway was identified to control expression of β-1,3-glucan synthases. This is the calcium-calcineurin signaling pathway (Liu et al. 2015). It was shown that the calcineurin inhibitor FK506 can effectively block *FKS2* expression in *S. cerevisiae* (Johnson and Edlind 2012; Mazur et al. 1995). Blocking expression of *FKS2* with FK506 was actually used to identify the first synthase gene (*FKS1*) in baker's yeast (Douglas 2001) (see also 2.1). Induction of *FKS2* expression required the transcription factor Crz1 (Stathopoulos and Cyert 1997). A similar calcineurin-dependency of β-1,3-glucan synthase expression appears to be conserved in other fungal species, e.g., *Candida glabrata* and *A. fumigatus* (Cramer et al. 2008; Katiyar et al. 2012; Kontoyiannis et al. 2003; Steinbach et al. 2007).

Besides this, significant regulation of cell wall synthesis also occurs on a spatio-temporal level by targeted secretion and localization of biosynthetic and regulatory enzymes. β-1,3-glucan synthases specifically localize at sites undergoing cell wall remodeling such as hyphal tips in case of filamentous fungi, budding sites

in case of yeasts and, in some species, at sites of septum formation. For example, the β-1,3-glucan synthase of *N. crassa* (FKS-1) specifically accumulates in certain macrovesicles in the Spitzenkörper and in the plasma membrane of hyphal tips (Sánchez-León and Riquelme 2015). In contrast to *N. crassa* where the β-1,3-glucan synthase is not found at sites of newly formed septa (Sánchez-León and Riquelme 2015), certain β-1,3-glucan synthases of yeasts (*S. pombe*, *S. cerevisiae*) are specifically localized and essentially required at these sites (Cortés et al. 2007; Onishi et al. 2013).

2.4.2 Regulation of α-1,3-Glucan Synthesis

Similar to the β-1,3-glucan synthases, specific and distinct localization patterns were also found for α-1,3-glucan synthases Ags1 and Ags2 by immunostaining in *A. fumigatus* (Beauvais et al. 2005). This suggests that the mechanisms that determine the localization of these enzymes have a significant impact on the regulation of α-1,3-glucan synthesis.

Direct interactions of Rho1 orthologs and α-1,3-glucan synthases were not reported. However, it was shown that Rho2 of *S. pombe* has an impact on cell wall α-glucan synthesis. Overexpression of Rho2 is lethal and also increases cell wall α-glucan but rather not β-1,3-glucan (Calonge et al. 2000; Villar-Tajadura et al. 2008). Both phenotypes depend on the protein kinase C homologue Pck2 (but not on Pck1) as deletion of *pck2* suppressed lethality and the increase of cell wall α-glucan (Calonge et al. 2000). This suggests that Rho2 does not regulate α-1,3-glucan synthases directly by protein–protein interaction. In fact, it was shown that the α-1,3-glucan synthase promoters are conserved targets of *Sc*Rlm1-like transcription factors. The orthologs of *Sc*Rlm1 in *A. niger*, *A. nidulans* and *A. fumigatus*, all were named RlmA, are targets of the CWI pathways of these fungi and control expression of several α-1,3-glucan synthase genes (Damveld et al. 2005a, b; Fiedler et al. 2014; Fujioka et al. 2007; Hagen et al. 2007; Katayama et al. 2015; Meyer et al. 2007; Rocha et al. 2016). Thus, regulation of α-1,3-glucan synthesis in these fungi may occur primarily on a transcriptional level via the Rho GTPase Rho2, the protein kinase C, followed by the downstream MAP kinase module which in turn activates the conserved transcription factor RlmA that binds to α-1,3-glucan synthase promoters.

3 Concluding Remarks

Due to its absence in mammals, the fungal cell wall is an established target for antifungal therapies and diagnosis of fungal infections. The echinocandins, which effectively inhibit the β-1,3-glucan synthesis, represent one of the few available antifungal drug classes suitable to treat life-threatening invasive fungal infections. Ibrexafungerp, the first clinical candidate of a novel class of antifungals, the

triterpene glycoside enfumafungin-derived "fungerps" which also target the β-1,3-glucan synthase, recently entered phase III clinical trials (Davis et al. 2019). These drugs also act by non-competitive inhibition of β-1,3-glucan synthase activity, but apparently bind to a region distinct from that bound by echinocandins which renders them active against echinocandin-resistant strains (Onishi et al. 2000). Serological tests have been developed and are routinely used for diagnosis of invasive fungal infections which apply fungal cell wall β-glucan as a biomarker. The role of β-glucans as central PAMPs for innate immune defense against fungal infections as well as the function of α-glucans as fungal virulence factor just became clear in the recent years. Multiple enzymes essential for α- and for β-glucan synthesis have been identified and characterized in fungi in the last three decades and great efforts have been made to elucidate the mechanisms of cell wall glucan synthesis. Still, many key questions remain unanswered. For example, there are conflicting results regarding the requirements and origin of primers for α- and β-1,3-glucan synthesis initiations. Furthermore, the biosynthesis of β-1,6-glucan, which is essential for linkage of mannoproteins in the cell wall of yeasts, remains mostly unresolved. There is still skepticism whether *the* β-1,3-glucan synthase as well as *the* α-1,3-glucan synthase enzymes really harbor the catalytic domains that synthesize the eponymous glucan polymers. The regulatory traits of cell wall biogenesis are just at the beginning of understanding. When and how does Rho1 interact with *the* β-1,3-glucan synthase? Are the α-1,3-glucan synthases only regulated on a transcriptional level? In which way is β- and α-glucan synthesis regulated on a spatio-temporal level? All these questions are of fundamental importance to understand fungal cell wall biogenesis. In consideration of the many medical implications of cell wall glucans, answers to all the open questions regarding cell wall glucan synthesis will contribute to improving existing and developing new therapeutic concepts.

References

Aimanianda V, Clavaud C, Simenel C, Fontaine T, Delepierre M, Latgé J-P (2009) Cell wall beta-(1,6)-glucan of Saccharomyces cerevisiae: structural characterization and in situ synthesis. J Biol Chem 284:13401–13412

Aimanianda V, Simenel C, Garnaud C, Clavaud C, Tada R, Barbin L, Mouyna I, Heddergott C, Popolo L, Ohya Y et al (2017) The dual activity responsible for the elongation and branching of β-(1,3)-glucan in the fungal cell wall. MBio 8

Al-Aidroos K, Bussey H (1978) Chromosomal mutants of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* affecting the cell wall binding site for killer factor. Can J Microbiol 24:228–237

Almagro Armenteros JJ, Tsirigos KD, Sønderby CK, Petersen TN, Winther O, Brunak S, von Heijne G, Nielsen H (2019) SignalP 5.0 improves signal peptide predictions using deep neural networks. Nat Biotechnol 37:420–423

Almyroudis NG, Sutton DA, Fothergill AW, Rinaldi MG, Kusne S (2007) In vitro susceptibilities of 217 clinical isolates of zygomycetes to conventional and new antifungal agents. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 51:2587–2590

Arellano M, Durán A, Pérez P (1996) Rho 1 GTPase activates the (1-3)beta-D-glucan synthase and is involved in Schizosaccharomyces pombe morphogenesis. EMBO J 15:4584–4591

Beauvais A, Bruneau JM, Mol PC, Buitrago MJ, Legrand R, Latgé JP (2001) Glucan synthase complex of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. J Bacteriol 183:2273–2279

Beauvais A, Maubon D, Park S, Morelle W, Tanguy M, Huerre M, Perlin DS, Latgé JP (2005) Two alpha(1-3) glucan synthases with different functions in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:1531–1538

Beauvais A, Bozza S, Kniemeyer O, Formosa C, Formosa C, Balloy V, Henry C, Roberson RW, Dague E, Chignard M et al (2013) Deletion of the α-(1,3)-glucan synthase genes induces a restructuring of the conidial cell wall responsible for the avirulence of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. PLoS Pathog 9:e1003716

Beyda ND, Liao G, Endres BT, Lewis RE, Garey KW (2015) Innate inflammatory response and immunopharmacologic activity of micafungin, caspofungin, and voriconazole against wild-type and FKS mutant Candida glabrata isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 59:5405–5412

Bohn JA, BeMiller JN (1995) (1→3)-β-D-glucans as biological response modifiers: a review of structure-functional activity relationships. Carbohyd Polym 28:3–14

Boone C, Sommer SS, Hensel A, Bussey H (1990) Yeast KRE genes provide evidence for a pathway of cell wall beta-glucan assembly. J Cell Biol 110:1833–1843

Breinig F, Tipper DJ, Schmitt MJ (2002) Kre1p, the plasma membrane receptor for the yeast K1 viral toxin. Cell 108:395–405

Breinig F, Schleinkofer K, Schmitt MJ (2004) Yeast Kre1p is GPI-anchored and involved in both cell wall assembly and architecture. Microbiology (Reading, Engl.) 150:3209–3218

Brown JL, Kossaczka Z, Jiang B, Bussey H (1993) A mutational analysis of killer toxin resistance in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* identifies new genes involved in cell wall (1→6)-beta-glucan synthesis. Genetics 133:837–849

Bull AT (1970) Chemical composition of wild-type and mutant *Aspergillus nidulans* cell walls. The nature of polysaccharide and melanin constituents. J Gen Microbiol 63:75–94

Calonge TM, Nakano K, Arellano M, Arai R, Katayama S, Toda T, Mabuchi I, Perez P (2000) Schizosaccharomyces pombe rho2p GTPase regulates cell wall alpha-glucan biosynthesis through the protein kinase pck2p. Mol Biol Cell 11:4393–4401

Camacho E, Sepulveda VE, Goldman WE, San-Blas G, Niño-Vega GA (2012) Expression of *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis* AMY1 in a *Histoplasma capsulatum amy1* mutant, relates an α-(1,4)-amylase to cell wall α-(1,3)-glucan synthesis. PLoS ONE 7:e50201

Castro C, Ribas JC, Valdivieso MH, Varona R, del Rey F, Duran A (1995) Papulacandin B resistance in budding and fission yeasts: isolation and characterization of a gene involved in (1,3)beta-D-glucan synthesis in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. J Bacteriol 177:5732–5739

Chen T, Jackson JW, Tams RN, Davis SE, Sparer TE, Reynolds TB (2019a) Exposure of *Candida albicans* β (1,3)-glucan is promoted by activation of the Cek1 pathway. PLoS Genet 15: e1007892

Chen T, Wagner AS, Tams RN, Eyer JE, Kauffman SJ, Gann ER, Fernandez EJ, Reynolds TB (2019b) Lrg1 regulates β (1,3)-glucan masking in *Candida albicans* through the Cek1 MAP kinase pathway. MBio 10

Choma A, Wiater A, Komaniecka I, Paduch R, Pleszczyńska M, Szczodrak J (2013) Chemical characterization of a water insoluble (1→3)-α-D-glucan from an alkaline extract of *Aspergillus wentii*. Carbohydr Polym 91:603–608

Cortés JCG, Ishiguro J, Durán A, Ribas JC (2002) Localization of the (1,3)beta-D-glucan synthase catalytic subunit homologue Bgs1p/Cps1p from fission yeast suggests that it is involved in septation, polarized growth, mating, spore wall formation and spore germination. J Cell Sci 115:4081–4096

Cortés JCG, Carnero E, Ishiguro J, Sánchez Y, Durán A, Ribas JC (2005) The novel fission yeast (1,3)beta-D-glucan synthase catalytic subunit Bgs4p is essential during both cytokinesis and polarized growth. J Cell Sci 118:157–174

Cortés JCG, Konomi M, Martins IM, Muñoz J, Moreno MB, Osumi M, Durán A, Ribas JC (2007) The (1,3)beta-D-glucan synthase subunit Bgs1p is responsible for the fission yeast primary septum formation. Mol Microbiol 65:201–217

Cramer RA, Perfect BZ, Pinchai N, Park S, Perlin DS, Asfaw YG, Heitman J, Perfect JR, Steinbach WJ (2008) Calcineurin target CrzA regulates conidial germination, hyphal growth, and pathogenesis of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Eukaryot Cell 7:1085–1097

Damveld RA, vanKuyk PA, Arentshorst M, Klis FM, van den Hondel CAMJJ, Ram AFJ (2005a) Expression of agsA, one of five 1,3-alpha-D-glucan synthase-encoding genes *in Aspergillus niger*, is induced in response to cell wall stress. Fungal Genet Biol 42:165–177

Damveld RA, Arentshorst M, Franken A, vanKuyk PA, Klis FM, van den Hondel CAMJJ, Ram AFJ (2005b) The *Aspergillus niger* MADS-box transcription factor RlmA is required for cell wall reinforcement in response to cell wall stress. Mol Microbiol 58:305–319

Davis MR, Donnelley MA, Thompson GR (2019) Ibrexafungerp: a novel oral glucan synthase inhibitor. Med Mycol

Denning DW (2003) Echinocandin antifungal drugs. Lancet 362:1142–1151

Dichtl K, Helmschrott C, Dirr F, Wagener J (2012) Deciphering cell wall integrity signalling in *Aspergillus fumigatus*: identification and functional characterization of cell wall stress sensors and relevant Rho GTPases. Mol Microbiol 83:506–519

Dichtl K, Samantaray S, Aimanianda V, Zhu Z, Prévost M-C, Latgé J-P, Ebel F, Wagener J (2015) *Aspergillus fumigatus* devoid of cell wall β-1,3-glucan is viable, massively sheds galactomannan and is killed by septum formation inhibitors. Mol Microbiol 95:458–471

Dichtl K, Samantaray S, Wagener J (2016) Cell wall integrity signalling in human pathogenic fungi. Cell Microbiol 18:1228–1238

Douglas CM (2001) Fungal beta(1,3)-D-glucan synthesis. Med Mycol 39(Suppl 1):55–66

Douglas CM, Foor F, Marrinan JA, Morin N, Nielsen JB, Dahl AM, Mazur P, Baginsky W, Li W, el-Sherbeini M (1994) The *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* FKS1 (ETG1) gene encodes an integral membrane protein which is a subunit of 1,3-beta-D-glucan synthase. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 91:12907–12911

Douglas CM, D'Ippolito JA, Shei GJ, Meinz M, Onishi J, Marrinan JA, Li W, Abruzzo GK, Flattery A, Bartizal K et al (1997) Identification of the FKS1 gene of *Candida albicans* as the essential target of 1,3-beta-D-glucan synthase inhibitors. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 41:2471–2479

Drgonová J, Drgon T, Tanaka K, Kollár R, Chen GC, Ford RA, Chan CS, Takai Y, Cabib E (1996) Rho1p, a yeast protein at the interface between cell polarization and morphogenesis. Science 272:277–279

El-Gebali S, Mistry J, Bateman A, Eddy SR, Luciani A, Potter SC, Qureshi M, Richardson LJ, Salazar GA, Smart A et al (2019) The Pfam protein families database in 2019. Nucleic Acids Res 47:D427–D432

el-Sherbeini M, Clemas JA (1995) Nikkomycin Z supersensitivity of an echinocandin-resistant mutant of Saccharomyces cerevisiae. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 39:200–207

Eng WK, Faucette L, McLaughlin MM, Cafferkey R, Koltin Y, Morris RA, Young PR, Johnson RK, Livi GP (1994) The yeast FKS1 gene encodes a novel membrane protein, mutations in which confer FK506 and cyclosporin A hypersensitivity and calcineurin-dependent growth. Gene 151:61–71

Fiedler MR, Lorenz A, Nitsche BM, van den Hondel CA, Ram AF, Meyer V (2014) The capacity of *Aspergillus niger* to sense and respond to cell wall stress requires at least three transcription factors: RlmA. MsnA and CrzA. Fungal Biol Biotechnol 1:5

Fleet GH, Manners DJ (1976) Isolation and composition of an alkali-soluble glucan from the cell walls of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. J Gen Microbiol 94:180–192

Fontaine T, Simenel C, Dubreucq G, Adam O, Delepierre M, Lemoine J, Vorgias CE, Diaquin M, Latgé JP (2000) Molecular organization of the alkali-insoluble fraction of *Aspergillus fumigatus* cell wall. J Biol Chem 275:27594–27607

Fontaine T, Beauvais A, Loussert C, Thevenard B, Fulgsang CC, Ohno N, Clavaud C, Prevost M-C, Latgé J-P (2010) Cell wall alpha1-3glucans induce the aggregation of germinating conidia of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Fungal Genet Biol 47:707–712

Fortwendel JR, Juvvadi PR, Pinchai N, Perfect BZ, Alspaugh JA, Perfect JR, Steinbach WJ (2009) Differential effects of inhibiting chitin and 1,3-{beta}-D-glucan synthesis in ras and calcineurin mutants of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 53:476–482

Frost DJ, Brandt K, Capobianco J, Goldman R (1994) Characterization of (1,3)-beta-glucan synthase in *Candida albicans*: microsomal assay from the yeast or mycelial morphological forms and a permeabilized whole-cell assay. Microbiology (Reading, Engl.) 140 (Pt 9):2239–2246

Fujikawa T, Sakaguchi A, Nishizawa Y, Kouzai Y, Minami E, Yano S, Koga H, Meshi T, Nishimura M (2012) Surface α-1,3-glucan facilitates fungal stealth infection by interfering with innate immunity in plants. PLoS Pathog 8:e1002882

Fujioka T, Mizutani O, Furukawa K, Sato N, Yoshimi A, Yamagata Y, Nakajima T, Abe K (2007) MpkA-dependent and -independent cell wall integrity signaling in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Eukaryot Cell 6:1497–1510

García I, Tajadura V, Martín V, Toda T, Sánchez Y (2006) Synthesis of alpha-glucans in fission yeast spores is carried out by three alpha-glucan synthase paralogues, Mok12p, Mok13p and Mok14p. Mol Microbiol 59:836–853

García Cortés JC, Ramos M, Osumi M, Pérez P, Ribas JC (2016) The cell biology of fission yeast septation. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 80:779–791

Garrett-Engele P, Moilanen B, Cyert MS (1995) Calcineurin, the Ca2+/calmodulin-dependent protein phosphatase, is essential in yeast mutants with cell integrity defects and in mutants that lack a functional vacuolar H(+)-ATPase. Mol Cell Biol 15:4103–4114

Gastebois A, Clavaud C, Aimanianda V, Latgé J-P (2009) *Aspergillus fumigatus*: cell wall polysaccharides, their biosynthesis and organization. Future Microbiol 4:583–595

Geurtsen J, Chedammi S, Mesters J, Cot M, Driessen NN, Sambou T, Kakutani R, Ummels R, Maaskant J, Takata H et al (2009) Identification of mycobacterial alpha-glucan as a novel ligand for DC-SIGN: involvement of mycobacterial capsular polysaccharides in host immune modulation. J Immunol 183:5221–5231

Goyal S, Castrillón-Betancur JC, Klaile E, Slevogt H (2018) The interaction of human pathogenic fungi With C-type lectin receptors. Front Immunol 9:1261

Grün CH, Hochstenbach F, Humbel BM, Verkleij AJ, Sietsma JH, Klis FM, Kamerling JP, Vliegenthart JFG (2005) The structure of cell wall alpha-glucan from fission yeast. Glycobiology 15:245–257

Guerriero G, Silvestrini L, Legay S, Maixner F, Sulyok M, Hausman J-F, Strauss J (2017) Deletion of the celA gene in *Aspergillus nidulans* triggers overexpression of secondary metabolite biosynthetic genes. Sci Rep 7:5978

Hagen S, Marx F, Ram AF, Meyer V (2007) The antifungal protein AFP from *Aspergillus giganteus* inhibits chitin synthesis in sensitive fungi. Appl Environ Microbiol 73:2128–2134

He X, Li S, Kaminskyj SGW (2014) Characterization of *Aspergillus nidulans* α-glucan synthesis: roles for two synthases and two amylases. Mol Microbiol 91:579–595

Henry C, Latgé J-P, Beauvais A (2012) α1,3 glucans are dispensable in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Eukaryot Cell 11:26–29

Hochstenbach F, Klis FM, van den Ende H, van Donselaar E, Peters PJ, Klausner RD (1998) Identification of a putative alpha-glucan synthase essential for cell wall construction and morphogenesis in fission yeast. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 95:9161–9166

Hogan LH, Klein BS (1994) Altered expression of surface alpha-1,3-glucan in genetically related strains of *Blastomyces dermatitidis* that differ in virulence. Infect Immun 62:3543–3546

Horisberger M, Lewis BA, Smith F (1972) Structure of a (1 leads to 3)-D-glucan (pseudonigeran) of *Aspergillus niger* NNRL 326 cell wall. Carbohydr Res 23:183–188

Inoue SB, Takewaki N, Takasuka T, Mio T, Adachi M, Fujii Y, Miyamoto C, Arisawa M, Furuichi Y, Watanabe T (1995) Characterization and gene cloning of 1,3-beta-D-glucan synthase from *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Eur J Biochem 231:845–854

Ishihara S, Hirata A, Nogami S, Beauvais A, Latge J-P, Ohya Y (2007) Homologous subunits of 1,3-beta-glucan synthase are important for spore wall assembly in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Eukaryot Cell 6:143–156

Johnson ME, Edlind TD (2012) Topological and mutational analysis of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* Fks1. Eukaryot Cell 11:952–960

Johnson ME, Katiyar SK, Edlind TD (2011) New Fks hot spot for acquired echinocandin resistance in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* and its contribution to intrinsic resistance of Scedosporium species. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 55:3774–3781

Kanetsuna F, Carbonell LM, Moreno RE, Rodriguez J (1969) Cell wall composition of the yeast and mycelial forms of *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis*. J Bacteriol 97:1036–1041

Kang X, Kirui A, Muszyński A, Widanage MCD, Chen A, Azadi P, Wang P, Mentink-Vigier F, Wang T (2018) Molecular architecture of fungal cell walls revealed by solid-state NMR. Nat Commun 9:2747

Kanno T, Takekawa D, Miyakawa Y (2015) Analysis of the essentiality of ROM2 genes in the pathogenic yeasts *Candida glabrata* and *Candida albicans* using temperature-sensitive mutants. J Appl Microbiol 118:851–863

Kapteyn JC, Montijn RC, Dijkgraaf GJ, Van den Ende H, Klis FM (1995) Covalent association of beta-1,3-glucan with beta-1,6-glucosylated mannoproteins in cell walls of *Candida albicans*. J Bacteriol 177:3788–3792

Kapteyn JC, Montijn RC, Vink E, de la Cruz J, Llobell A, Douwes JE, Shimoi H, Lipke PN, Klis FM (1996) Retention of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* cell wall proteins through a phosphodiester-linked beta-1,3-/beta-1,6-glucan heteropolymer. Glycobiology 6:337–345

Kapteyn JC, Ram AF, Groos EM, Kollar R, Montijn RC, Van Den Ende H, Llobell A, Cabib E, Klis FM (1997) Altered extent of cross-linking of beta1,6-glucosylated mannoproteins to chitin in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* mutants with reduced cell wall beta1,3-glucan content. J Bacteriol 179:6279–6284

Katayama S, Hirata D, Arellano M, Pérez P, Toda T (1999) Fission yeast alpha-glucan synthase Mok1 requires the actin cytoskeleton to localize the sites of growth and plays an essential role in cell morphogenesis downstream of protein kinase C function. J Cell Biol 144:1173–1186

Katayama T, Ohta A, Horiuchi H (2015) Protein kinase C regulates the expression of cell wall-related genes in RlmA-dependent and independent manners in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 79:321–330

Katiyar SK, Alastruey-Izquierdo A, Healey KR, Johnson ME, Perlin DS, Edlind TD (2012) Fks1 and Fks2 are functionally redundant but differentially regulated in *Candida glabrata*: implications for echinocandin resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 56:6304–6309

Kim K-Y, Levin DE (2010) Transcriptional reporters for genes activated by cell wall stress through a non-catalytic mechanism involving Mpk1 and SBF. Yeast 27:541–548

Kim K-Y, Levin DE (2011) Mpk1 MAPK association with the Paf1 complex blocks Sen1-mediated premature transcription termination. Cell 144:745–756

Kim H, Melén K, von Heijne G (2003) Topology models for 37 *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* membrane proteins based on C-terminal reporter fusions and predictions. J Biol Chem 278:10208–10213

Klis FM (1994) Review: cell wall assembly in yeast. Yeast 10:851–869

Klis FM, Boorsma A, De Groot PWJ (2006) Cell wall construction in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Yeast 23:185–202

Kollár R, Petráková E, Ashwell G, Robbins PW, Cabib E (1995) Architecture of the yeast cell wall. The linkage between chitin and beta(1→3)-glucan. J Biol Chem 270:1170–1178

Kontoyiannis DP, Lewis RE, Osherov N, Albert ND, May GS (2003) Combination of caspofungin with inhibitors of the calcineurin pathway attenuates growth in vitro in *Aspergillus* species. J Antimicrob Chemother 51:313–316

Kopecká M, Kreger DR (1986) Assembly of microfibrils in vivo and in vitro from (1≫3)-beta-D-glucan synthesized by protoplasts of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Arch Microbiol 143:387–395

Krogh A, Larsson B, von Heijne G, Sonnhammer EL (2001) Predicting transmembrane protein topology with a hidden Markov model: application to complete genomes. J Mol Biol 305:567–580

Kwon MJ, Arentshorst M, Roos ED, van den Hondel CAMJJ, Meyer V, Ram AFJ (2011) Functional characterization of Rho GTPases in *Aspergillus niger* uncovers conserved and diverged roles of Rho proteins within filamentous fungi. Mol Microbiol 79:1151–1167

Lamaris GA, Lewis RE, Chamilos G, May GS, Safdar A, Walsh TJ, Raad II, Kontoyiannis DP (2008) Caspofungin-mediated beta-glucan unmasking and enhancement of human polymorphonuclear neutrophil activity against *Aspergillus* and non-*Aspergillus* hyphae. J Infect Dis 198:186–192

Laroche C, Michaud P (2007) New developments and prospective applications for beta (1,3) glucans. Recent Pat Biotechnol 1:59–73

Latgé J-P (2007) The cell wall: a carbohydrate armour for the fungal cell. Mol Microbiol 66:279–290

Latgé J-P (2010) Tasting the fungal cell wall. Cell Microbiol 12:863–872

Legentil L, Paris F, Ballet C, Trouvelot S, Daire X, Vetvicka V, Ferrières V (2015) Molecular interactions of β-(1→3)-glucans with their receptors. Molecules 20:9745–9766

Lesage G, Bussey H (2006) Cell wall assembly in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 70:317–343

Levin DE (2005) Cell wall integrity signaling in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 69:262–291

Levin DE (2011) Regulation of cell wall biogenesis in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*: the cell wall integrity signaling pathway. Genetics 189:1145–1175

Liu J, Wang H, McCollum D, Balasubramanian MK (1999) Drc1p/Cps1p, a 1,3-beta-glucan synthase subunit, is essential for division septum assembly in *Schizosaccharomyces pombe*. Genetics 153:1193–1203

Liu J, Tang X, Wang H, Balasubramanian M (2000) Bgs2p, a 1,3-beta-glucan synthase subunit, is essential for maturation of ascospore wall in *Schizosaccharomyces pombe*. FEBS Lett 478:105–108

Liu J, Tang X, Wang H, Oliferenko S, Balasubramanian MK (2002) The localization of the integral membrane protein Cps1p to the cell division site is dependent on the actomyosin ring and the septation-inducing network in *Schizosaccharomyces pombe*. Mol Biol Cell 13:989–1000

Liu S, Hou Y, Liu W, Lu C, Wang W, Sun S (2015) Components of the calcium-calcineurin signaling pathway in fungal cells and their potential as antifungal targets. Eukaryot Cell 14:324–334

Loiko V, Wagener J (2017) The paradoxical effect of echinocandins in *Aspergillus fumigatus* relies on recovery of the β-1,3-glucan synthase Fks1. Antimicrob, Agents Chemother, p 61

López-Romero E, Ruiz-Herrera J (1978) Properties of beta-glucan synthetase from *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 44:329–339

Maddi A, Free SJ (2010) α-1,6-Mannosylation of N-linked oligosaccharide present on cell wall proteins is required for their incorporation into the cell wall in the filamentous fungus *Neurospora crassa*. Eukaryot Cell 9:1766–1775

Magnelli P, Cipollo JF, Abeijon C (2002) A refined method for the determination of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* cell wall composition and beta-1,6-glucan fine structure. Anal Biochem 301:136–150

Magnelli PE, Cipollo JF, Robbins PW (2005) A glucanase-driven fractionation allows redefinition of *Schizosaccharomyces pombe* cell wall composition and structure: assignment of diglucan. Anal Biochem 336:202–212

Manners DJ, Meyer MT (1977) The molecular structures of some glucans from the cell walls of *Schizosaccharomyces pombe*. Carbohyd Res 57:189–203

Manners DJ, Masson AJ, Patterson JC (1973) The structure of a beta-(1 leads to 3)-D-glucan from yeast cell walls. Biochem J 135:19–30

Marion CL, Rappleye CA, Engle JT, Goldman WE (2006) An alpha-(1,4)-amylase is essential for alpha-(1,3)-glucan production and virulence in *Histoplasma capsulatum*. Mol Microbiol 62:970–983

Martín V, García B, Carnero E, Durán A, Sánchez Y (2003) Bgs3p, a putative 1,3-beta-glucan synthase subunit, is required for cell wall assembly in *Schizosaccharomyces pombe*. Eukaryot Cell 2:159–169

Martinac B, Zhu H, Kubalski A, Zhou XL, Culbertson M, Bussey H, Kung C (1990) Yeast K1 killer toxin forms ion channels in sensitive yeast spheroplasts and in artificial liposomes. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 87:6228–6232

Mazur P, Baginsky W (1996) In vitro activity of 1,3-beta-D-glucan synthase requires the GTP-binding protein Rho1. J Biol Chem 271:14604–14609

Mazur P, Morin N, Baginsky W, el-Sherbeini M, Clemas JA, Nielsen JB, Foor F (1995) Differential expression and function of two homologous subunits of yeast 1,3-beta-D-glucan synthase. Mol Cell Biol 15:5671–5681

Meaden P, Hill K, Wagner J, Slipetz D, Sommer SS, Bussey H (1990) The yeast KRE5 gene encodes a probable endoplasmic reticulum protein required for (1—6)-beta-D-glucan synthesis and normal cell growth. Mol Cell Biol 10:3013–3019

Mélida H, Sain D, Stajich JE, Bulone V (2015) Deciphering the uniqueness of Mucoromycotina cell walls by combining biochemical and phylogenomic approaches. Environ Microbiol 17:1649–1662

Meyer V, Damveld RA, Arentshorst M, Stahl U, van den Hondel CAMJJ, Ram AFJ (2007) Survival in the presence of antifungals: genome-wide expression profiling of *Aspergillus niger* in response to sublethal concentrations of caspofungin and fenpropimorph. J Biol Chem 282:32935–32948

Mio T, Adachi-Shimizu M, Tachibana Y, Tabuchi H, Inoue SB, Yabe T, Yamada-Okabe T, Arisawa M, Watanabe T, Yamada-Okabe H (1997) Cloning of the *Candida albicans* homolog of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* GSC1/FKS1 and its involvement in beta-1,3-glucan synthesis. J Bacteriol 179:4096–4105

Miyazawa K, Yoshimi A, Kasahara S, Sugahara A, Koizumi A, Yano S, Kimura S, Iwata T, Sano M, Abe K (2018) Molecular mass and localization of α-1,3-glucan in cell wall control the degree of hyphal aggregation in liquid culture of *Aspergillus nidulans*. Front Microbiol 9:2623

Montijn RC, Vink E, Müller WH, Verkleij AJ, Van Den Ende H, Henrissat B, Klis FM (1999) Localization of synthesis of beta1,6-glucan in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. J Bacteriol 181:7414–7420

Morris GJ, Winters L, Coulson GE, Clarke KJ (1986) Effect of osmotic stress on the ultrastructure and viability of the yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. J Gen Microbiol 132:2023–2034

Mouyna I, Monod M, Fontaine T, Henrissat B, Léchenne B, Latgé JP (2000) Identification of the catalytic residues of the first family of beta(1-3)glucanosyltransferases identified in fungi. Biochem J 347(Pt 3):741–747

Nuoffer C, Jenö P, Conzelmann A, Riezman H (1991) Determinants for glycophospholipid anchoring of the *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* GAS1 protein to the plasma membrane. Mol Cell Biol 11:27–37

Okada H, Abe M, Asakawa-Minemura M, Hirata A, Qadota H, Morishita K, Ohnuki S, Nogami S, Ohya Y (2010) Multiple functional domains of the yeast l,3-beta-glucan synthase subunit Fks1p revealed by quantitative phenotypic analysis of temperature-sensitive mutants. Genetics 184:1013–1024

Onishi J, Meinz M, Thompson J, Curotto J, Dreikorn S, Rosenbach M, Douglas C, Abruzzo G, Flattery A, Kong L et al (2000) Discovery of novel antifungal (1,3)-beta-D-glucan synthase inhibitors. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 44:368–377

Onishi M, Ko N, Nishihama R, Pringle JR (2013) Distinct roles of Rho1, Cdc42, and Cyk3 in septum formation and abscission during yeast cytokinesis. J Cell Biol 202:311–329

Pagé N, Gérard-Vincent M, Ménard P, Beaulieu M, Azuma M, Dijkgraaf GJP, Li H, Marcoux J, Nguyen T, Dowse T et al (2003) A *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* genome-wide mutant screen for altered sensitivity to K1 killer toxin. Genetics 163:875–894

Parent SA, Nielsen JB, Morin N, Chrebet G, Ramadan N, Dahl AM, Hsu MJ, Bostian KA, Foor F (1993) Calcineurin-dependent growth of an FK506- and CsA-hypersensitive mutant of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. J Gen Microbiol 139:2973–2984

Park J, Hulsman M, Arentshorst M, Breeman M, Alazi E, Lagendijk EL, Rocha MC, Malavazi I, Nitsche BM, van den Hondel CAMJJ et al (2016) Transcriptomic and molecular genetic analysis of the cell wall salvage response of *Aspergillus niger* to the absence of galactofuranose synthesis. Cell Microbiol 18:1268–1284

Paulson JC, Colley KJ (1989) Glycosyltransferases. Structure, localization, and control of cell type-specific glycosylation. J Biol Chem 264:17615–17618

Pereira M, Felipe MS, Brígido MM, Soares CM, Azevedo MO (2000) Molecular cloning and characterization of a glucan synthase gene from the human pathogenic fungus *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis*. Yeast 16:451–462

Pérez P, Cansado J (2010) Cell integrity signaling and response to stress in fission yeast. Curr Protein Pept Sci 11:680–692

Perlin DS (2015) Mechanisms of echinocandin antifungal drug resistance. Ann NY Acad Sci 1354:1–11

Qadota H, Python CP, Inoue SB, Arisawa M, Anraku Y, Zheng Y, Watanabe T, Levin DE, Ohya Y (1996) Identification of yeast Rho1p GTPase as a regulatory subunit of 1,3-beta-glucan synthase. Science 272:279–281

Quigley DR, Selitrennikoff CP (1987) β-Linked disaccharides stimulate, but do not act as primer for, β (1–3) glucan synthase activity of *Neurospora crassa*. Curr Microbiol 15:181–184

Ram AF, Brekelmans SS, Oehlen LJ, Klis FM (1995) Identification of two cell cycle regulated genes affecting the beta 1,3-glucan content of cell walls in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. FEBS Lett 358:165–170

Rappleye CA, Engle JT, Goldman WE (2004) RNA interference in *Histoplasma capsulatum* demonstrates a role for alpha-(1,3)-glucan in virulence. Mol Microbiol 53:153–165

Rappleye CA, Eissenberg LG, Goldman WE (2007) *Histoplasma capsulatum* alpha-(1,3)-glucan blocks innate immune recognition by the beta-glucan receptor. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 104:1366–1370

Rees DA, Scott W (1971) Polysaccharide conformation. Part VI. Computer model-building for linear and branched pyranoglycans. Correlations with biological function. Preliminary assessment of inter-residue forces in aqueous solution. Further interpretation of optical rotation in terms of chain conformation. J Chem Soc B: Phys Org 469–479

Reese AJ, Doering TL (2003) Cell wall alpha-1,3-glucan is required to anchor the *Cryptococcus neoformans* capsule. Mol Microbiol 50:1401–1409

Reese AJ, Yoneda A, Breger JA, Beauvais A, Liu H, Griffith CL, Bose I, Kim M-J, Skau C, Yang S et al (2007) Loss of cell wall alpha(1-3) glucan affects *Cryptococcus neoformans* from ultrastructure to virulence. Mol Microbiol 63:1385–1398

Richthammer C, Enseleit M, Sanchez-Leon E, März S, Heilig Y, Riquelme M, Seiler S (2012) RHO1 and RHO2 share partially overlapping functions in the regulation of cell wall integrity and hyphal polarity in *Neurospora crassa*. Mol Microbiol 85:716–733

Rocha MC, Fabri JHTM, Franco de Godoy K, Alves de Castro P, Hori JI, Ferreira da Cunha A, Arentshorst M, Ram AFJ, van den Hondel CAMJJ, Goldman GH et al (2016) *Aspergillus fumigatus* MADS-box transcription factor rlmA is required for regulation of the cell wall integrity and virulence. G3 (Bethesda) 6:2983–3002

Rodicio R, Buchwald U, Schmitz H-P, Heinisch JJ (2008) Dissecting sensor functions in cell wall integrity signaling in *Kluyveromyces lactis*. Fungal Genet Biol 45:422–435

Roemer T, Bussey H (1991) Yeast beta-glucan synthesis: KRE6 encodes a predicted type II membrane protein required for glucan synthesis in vivo and for glucan synthase activity in vitro. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 88:11295–11299

Roemer T, Delaney S, Bussey H (1993) SKN1 and KRE6 define a pair of functional homologs encoding putative membrane proteins involved in beta-glucan synthesis. Mol Cell Biol 13:4039–4048

Roemer T, Paravicini G, Payton MA, Bussey H (1994) Characterization of the yeast (1→6)-beta-glucan biosynthetic components, Kre6p and Skn1p, and genetic interactions between the PKC1 pathway and extracellular matrix assembly. J Cell Biol 127:567–579

Ruiz-Herrera J, Elorza MV, Valentín E, Sentandreu R (2006) Molecular organization of the cell wall of *Candida albicans* and its relation to pathogenicity. FEMS Yeast Res 6:14–29

Samantaray S, Neubauer M, Helmschrott C, Wagener J (2013) Role of the guanine nucleotide exchange factor Rom2 in cell wall integrity maintenance of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Eukaryot Cell 12:288–298

Samar D, Kieler JB, Klutts JS (2015) Identification and deletion of Tft1, a predicted glycosyltransferase necessary for cell wall β-1,3;1,4-glucan synthesis in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. PLoS ONE 10:e0117336

San-Blas G, Vernet D (1977) Induction of the synthesis of cell wall alpha-1,3-glucan in the yeastlike form of *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis* strain IVIC Pb9 by fetal calf serum. Infect Immun 15:897–902

San-Blas G, Ordaz D, Yegres FJ (1978) *Histoplasma capsulatum*: chemical variability of the yeast cell wall. Sabouraudia 16:279–284

Sánchez-León E, Riquelme M (2015) Live imaging of β-1,3-glucan synthase FKS-1 in *Neurospora crassa* hyphae. Fungal Genet Biol 82:104–107

Schimoler-O'Rourke R, Renault S, Mo W, Selitrennikoff CP (2003) *Neurospora crassa* FKS protein binds to the (1,3)beta-glucan synthase substrate, UDP-glucose. Curr Microbiol 46:408–412

Schoffelmeer EA, Klis FM, Sietsma JH, Cornelissen BJ (1999) The cell wall of *Fusarium oxysporum*. Fungal Genet Biol 27:275–282

Shahinian S, Bussey H (2000) Beta-1,6-glucan synthesis in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Mol Microbiol 35:477–489

Shematek EM, Cabib E (1980) Biosynthesis of the yeast cell wall. II. Regulation of beta-(1 leads to 3)glucan synthetase by ATP and GTP. J Biol Chem 255:895–902

Shematek EM, Braatz JA, Cabib E (1980) Biosynthesis of the yeast cell wall. I. Preparation and properties of beta-(1 leads to 3)glucan synthetase. J Biol Chem 255:888–894

Sorais F, Barreto L, Leal JA, Bernabé M, San-Blas G, Niño-Vega GA (2010) Cell wall glucan synthases and GTPases in *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis*. Med Mycol 48:35–47

Stathopoulos AM, Cyert MS (1997) Calcineurin acts through the CRZ1/TCN1-encoded transcription factor to regulate gene expression in yeast. Genes Dev 11:3432–3444

Steinbach WJ, Cramer RA, Perfect BZ, Henn C, Nielsen K, Heitman J, Perfect JR (2007) Calcineurin inhibition or mutation enhances cell wall inhibitors against *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 51:2979–2981

Stevens DA, Ichinomiya M, Koshi Y, Horiuchi H (2006) Escape of Candida from caspofungin inhibition at concentrations above the MIC (paradoxical effect) accomplished by increased cell wall chitin; evidence for beta-1,6-glucan synthesis inhibition by caspofungin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 50:3160–3161

Suwunnakorn S, Wakabayashi H, Kordalewska M, Perlin DS, Rustchenko E (2018) FKS2 and FKS3 genes of opportunistic human pathogen *Candida albicans* influence echinocandin susceptibility. Antimicrob, Agents Chemother, p 62

Thompson JR, Douglas CM, Li W, Jue CK, Pramanik B, Yuan X, Rude TH, Toffaletti DL, Perfect JR, Kurtz M (1999) A glucan synthase FKS1 homolog in *Cryptococcus neoformans* is single copy and encodes an essential function. J Bacteriol 181:444–453

Valsecchi I, Dupres V, Michel J-P, Duchateau M, Matondo M, Chamilos G, Saveanu C, Guijarro JI, Aimanianda V, Lafont F et al (2019) The puzzling construction of the conidial outer layer of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Cell Microbiol 21:e12994

Villar-Tajadura MA, Coll PM, Madrid M, Cansado J, Santos B, Pérez P (2008) Rga2 is a Rho2 GAP that regulates morphogenesis and cell integrity in *S. pombe*. Mol Microbiol 70:867–881

Vitale RG, de Hoog GS, Schwarz P, Dannaoui E, Deng S, Machouart M, Voigt K, van de Sande WWJ, Dolatabadi S, Meis JF et al (2012) Antifungal susceptibility and phylogeny of opportunistic members of the order mucorales. J Clin Microbiol 50:66–75

Vos A, Dekker N, Distel B, Leunissen JAM, Hochstenbach F (2007) Role of the synthase domain of Ags1p in cell wall alpha-glucan biosynthesis in fission yeast. J Biol Chem 282:18969–18979

Wagener J, Loiko V (2017) Recent insights into the paradoxical effect of echinocandins. J Fungi (Basel) 4

Walker LA, Munro CA, de Bruijn I, Lenardon MD, McKinnon A, Gow NAR (2008) Stimulation of chitin synthesis rescues *Candida albicans* from echinocandins. PLoS Pathog 4:e1000040

Wheeler RT, Kombe D, Agarwala SD, Fink GR (2008) Dynamic, morphotype-specific *Candida albicans* beta-glucan exposure during infection and drug treatment. PLoS Pathog 4:e1000227

Yoshimi A, Sano M, Inaba A, Kokubun Y, Fujioka T, Mizutani O, Hagiwara D, Fujikawa T, Nishimura M, Yano S et al (2013) Functional analysis of the α-1,3-glucan synthase genes agsA and agsB in *Aspergillus nidulans*: agsB is the major α-1,3-glucan synthase in this fungus. PLoS ONE 8:e54893

Chitin: A "Hidden Figure" in the Fungal Cell Wall

Hannah E. Brown, Shannon K. Esher, and J. Andrew Alspaugh

Contents

1 Introduction 84
2 Chitin and Chitosan and the Fungal Cell Architecture 86
3 Chitin Synthases 88
4 Chitin in Fungal Cell Replication and Stress Response 91
5 How the Host Responds to Chitin 93
6 Chitin Receptor 94
7 Chitin and Chitosan Immunostimulation 96
8 Size-Dependent Immune Response 97
9 Mammalian Chitinases 99
10 Biomedical Applications of Chitin and Chitosan 101
11 Conclusions 102
References 103

Abstract Chitin and chitosan are two related polysaccharides that provide important structural stability to fungal cell walls. Often embedded deeply within the cell wall structure, these molecules anchor other components at the cell surface. Chitin-directed organization of the cell wall layers allows the fungal cell to effectively monitor and interact with the external environment. For fungal pathogens, this interaction includes maintaining cellular strategies to avoid excessive detection by the host innate immune system. In turn, mammalian and plant hosts have developed their own strategies to process fungal chitin, resulting in chitin fragments of varying molecular size. The size-dependent differences in the immune activation behaviors of variably sized chitin molecules help to explain how chitin and related

H. E. Brown · J. A. Alspaugh (✉)
Department of Medicine, Department of Molecular Genetics and Microbiology,
Duke University School of Medicine, 303 Sands Research Building, DUMC, 102359,
Durham 27710, NC, USA
e-mail: andrew.alspaugh@duke.edu

S. K. Esher
Department of Microbiology and Immunology, Tulane University School of Medicine,
New Orleans, LA, USA

Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology (2020) 425: 83–111
https://doi.org/10.1007/82_2019_184
© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2019
Published Online: 6 December 2019

chitooligomers can both inhibit and activate host immunity. Moreover, chitin and chitosan have recently been exploited for many biomedical applications, including targeted drug delivery and vaccine development.

1 Introduction

Chitin is one of the most common polysaccharides in nature, second only to cellulose in abundance. Found in all fungal species, as well as many insects and invertebrates, chitin has a simple primary structure. Chitin is a homopolymer composed of β-(1-4)-linked *N*-acetylglucosamine (GlcNAc) subunits (Latgé and Calderone 2005). Interestingly, chitin and cellulose are very similar in structure, differing only in the alkyl group side chain of the monosaccharide subunits that compose these two important polymers. In many fungi, chitin synthesis is accomplished by a family of related chitin synthases (Niño-vega et al. 2004; Roncero 2002). Although there is some degree of functional redundancy among these enzymes, fungal chitin synthases can be divided into distinct functional classes, with each class responsible for the production of distinct chitin subspecies at distinct locations in the cell. Accordingly, many of these enzymes are specifically localized to regions of the fungal cell corresponding to the site of action for individual types of chitin (Treitschke et al. 2010; Weber et al. 2006).

Chitin makes up about 1–15% of the fungal cell mass with yeasts containing the lowest percentage of overall chitin and filamentous fungi containing a higher concentration of chitin in their cell walls. In the model ascomycete yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, chitin comprises 1–2% of the cell wall mass (Lesage and Bussey 2006). The cell walls of other yeasts such as *Candida albicans* are composed of 2–5% chitin. The filamentous fungi contain higher percentages of overall chitin, comprising 4% of the biomass of the cell wall in *Neurospora crassa* and 7–15% *Aspergillus fumigatus* (Gastebois et al. 2009; Maddi and Free 2010). Interestingly, the budding yeast *Schizosaccharomyces pombe* does not contain any measurable chitin in its vegetative cells, but chitin is present in the conidia (Magnelli et al. 2005; Matsuo et al. 2004).

Although the primary structure of chitin is that of a simple, linear polysaccharide, the higher structural features of this molecule provide chitin with many of its most interesting biological properties (Fig. 1a). The chitin homopolymer forms antiparallel beta-sheets that are stabilized by intramolecular hydrogen bonds (Fig. 1b). In this way, the molecule becomes exceptionally rigid, with greater intrinsic strength than many other structural elements found in nature, including bone. The rigidity and resilience of these chitin microfibrils allow them to serve as a structural backbone for the fungal cell wall (Fig. 1c), as well as a rigid component of the exoskeleton of higher organisms.

In addition to its intrinsic molecular strength, chitin also exists in different polymer lengths. The size of individual chitin molecules is primarily determined by processes occurring after its production, rather than as a function of its biosynthesis.

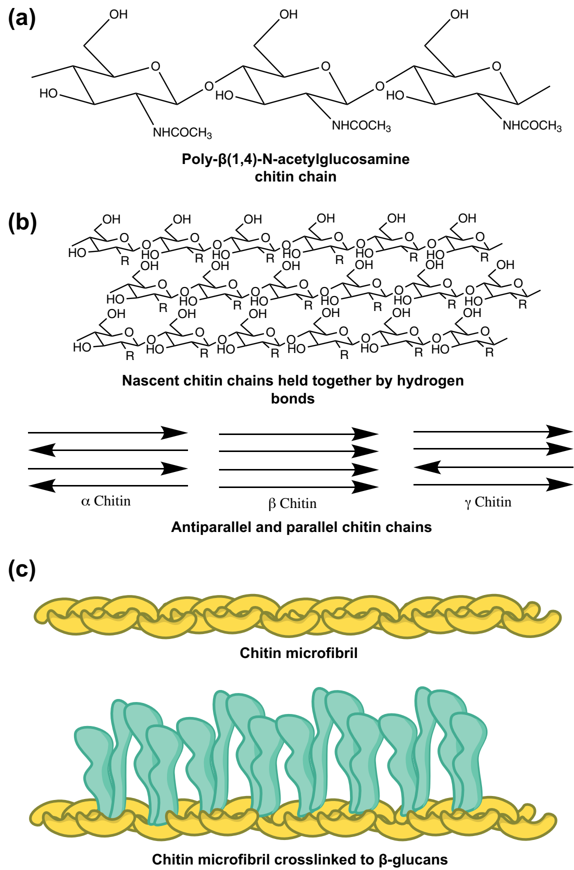


Fig. 1 **a** Chitin begins as a poly-β-(1,4)-*N*-acetylglucosamine chain that folds to form **b** nascent chains held together by hydrogen bonds. This folding can occur in an antiparallel (α and γ) or parallel (β) manner. **c** Chitin microfibrils are crosslinked to β-(1,3)-glucan to form the inner cell wall architecture [Adapted from Aranaz et al. (2009), Lenardon et al. (2010a)]

For example, chitinases are mammalian enzymes that interact with exogenously produced chitin to cleave large chitin molecules into smaller forms (Vega and Kalkum 2012). Recent studies have indicated that different sized chitin molecules have distinct biological features, including differential activation of host immune cells. Chitin fragments at their smallest measure less than 2 μm in length and at their largest can be up to 100 μm. This large size range has been subdivided further into categories of fragment sizes that correspond to differences in immune activation responses (Da Silva et al. 2009).

Additional post-synthetic modifications of chitin also result in changes in its biological functions. For example, varying degrees of chitin deacetylation result in its conversion to chitosan or deacetylated chitin. This process is regulated by a family of related enzymes known as chitin deacetylases (Baker et al. 2011; Upadhya et al. 2018). Like the chitin synthases, the different chitin deacetylases are localized at specific regions of the fungal cell, perhaps directing the formation of

different types of chitosan required at specific cellular sites. Together, chitin and chitosan form an important structural layer of the fungal cell wall, responsible for its physical integrity as well as helping to direct its interaction with the environment.

2 Chitin and Chitosan and the Fungal Cell Architecture

The external architecture of the fungal cell is complex, layered, and dynamic. Composed of a plasma membrane, a cell wall, a multitude of surface proteins, and a variably present external layer of polysaccharides, the fungal cell exterior has evolved intricate and adaptive mechanisms to protect the integrity of the cell. The most internal of these structures is the phospholipid bilayer that comprises the fungal plasma membrane. Importantly, this organelle maintains a distinct asymmetry between the inner and outer leaflets of the lipid bilayer. The enrichment of distinctly charged and sized phospholipids in each leaflet allows for transmembrane proteins to localize to specific microdomains within the membrane and to sense and internalize extracellular cues (Brown et al. 2018; Curto et al. 2014; van Meer 2011). The most negatively charged and bulky phospholipids are often directed to the cytosolic leaflet in order to hide them from the external environment, including from host immune cells that might recognize these lipids as molecular patterns for immune activation (Sheetz and Singer 1974; Shor et al. 2016). This asymmetry also allows for the cell membrane to maintain a precise curvature and to provide a scaffolding base for the remaining layers of the fungal cell surface.

The next, more external layer of the fungal cell is the cell wall, a complex and well-ordered structure composed of a backbone of polysaccharides, including chitin/chitosan and α/β-glucans, (galacto)-mannans, and glycosylated proteins (Fig. 2a). The cell wall carbohydrates are maintained in a distinct and ordered manner to direct structural stability, environmental sensing, and immune avoidance. Chitin and chitosan occupy the deepest layer of the cell wall (Figs. 1 and 2a) (Gow et al. 2017; Latgé 2007). Chitin molecules fold together to form nascent GlcNAc chains and orient themselves in either a parallel or antiparallel manner relative to other chains, classified as either α-, β- or γ-chitin polymorphs accordingly (Fig. 1b) (Minke and Blackwell 1978; Sugiyama et al. 1999). Intramolecular hydrogen bonds form along the GlcNAc polymeric chain, adding tremendous structural stability to this molecule (Fig. 1b). The tensile strength and integrity of chitin have been best studied in crab exoskeletons (Ifuku et al. 2009; Yen et al. 2009) and fleshy fungi such as mushrooms (Ifuku et al. 2011), as well as in the cell walls of pathogenic fungal species (Lopez-Romero and Ruiz-Herrera 1986). One study investigating chitin nanofibers extracted from crustaceans concluded that the strength of isolated exoskeletons was directly correlated with high chitin content (Mushi et al. 2014). Similarly, the structural stability of the fungal cell wall provided by the inner layers of chitin and chitosan allows it to perform a vast array of functions ranging from shielding the cell from extracellular stress to housing essential proteins embedded in the cell wall and membrane.

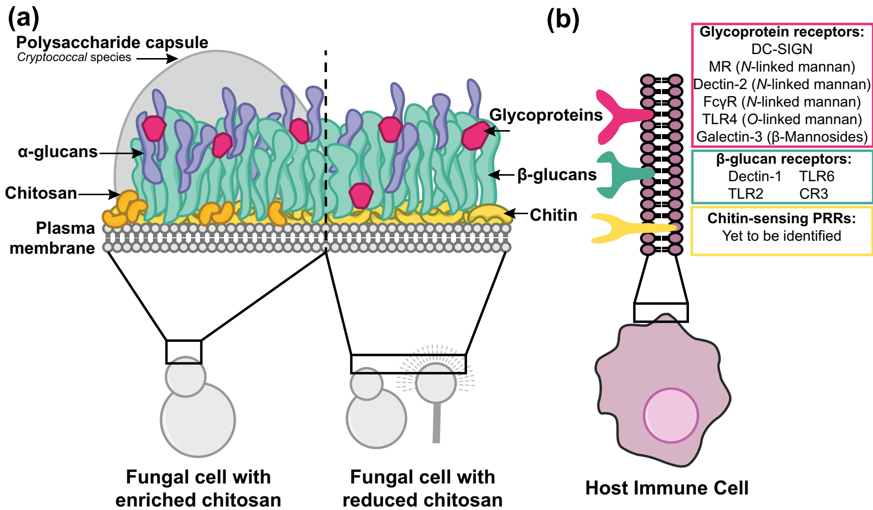


Fig. 2 **a** Outer cell wall components (α-glucans and various glycoproteins) build upon the foundation of chitin (and chitosan) and β-glucan crosslinking. **b** Host immune cell receptors have evolved to recognize various fungal cell wall components [Adapted from Esher et al. (2018), Perez-Garcia et al. (2011)]

Although fungal chitin is a relatively simple homopolymer, it possesses diversity in structure and function through variations in the size and structure of the microfibrils (Fig. 1c) as well as in its polymer length and degree of acetylation (Da Silva et al. 2009; Muszkieta et al. 2014). Sufficiently deacetylated forms of chitin (i.e., chitosan) are chemically distinct from the parent molecule. Although fully deacetylated forms of chitosan can be derived through ex vivo chemical reactions (He et al. 2016), most biological forms of chitosan in fungi consist of a glucosamine backbone with different degrees of deacetylation. Following chitin synthesis by chitin synthase enzymes, chitin deacetylases remove approximately 70–80% of the acetyl groups to form chitosan (Klis et al. 2006). Chitosan is therefore structurally similar to chitin, working to maintain cell barrier functions and integrity during vegetative growth.

In most fungal species, chitin is less abundant than other cell wall carbohydrates such as the α- and β-glucans. Additionally, chitosan is present in very low concentrations in the cell walls of many fungal species, especially some of the more frequently studied model ascomycete yeasts such as *C. albicans* in which approximately only 5% of the cell wall chitin will eventually be enzymatically converted into chitosan (Gharieb et al. 2015). However, other fungi, including many basidiomycetes and zygomycetes, possess much higher relative levels of chitosan. For example, in the basidiomycete fungus *Cryptococcus neoformans*, the relatively high chitosan levels help to direct cell wall integrity, bud separation, melanin production, and pigment retention, all of which are essential for cell survival, especially in the

context of an infected host (Baker et al. 2007). Accordingly, *C. neoformans* chitosan-deficient mutants were less virulent than isogenic wild-type strains in a murine model of cryptococcal infection (Baker et al. 2011; Upadhya et al. 2018). In addition to being required for full virulence in a mouse model, chitosan was also demonstrated to be important for cryptococcal infection persistence and retained fungal viability in mouse lungs (Baker et al. 2011).

Zygomycete fungi, such as *Mucor rouxii*, *Cunninghamella elegans*, and various *Rhizopus* species, also produce relatively high levels of chitosan compared to other fungal species, using this molecule in similar ways to strengthen the cell wall. In fact, in many zygomycete fungi, chitosan concentrations exceed that of chitin by three-fold, and it is thought to protect against hydrolysis by chitin-targeting mammalian chitinases (Gharieb et al. 2015; Gholizadeh Aghdam 2010; Klis et al. 2006). This wide range of chitosan concentrations implies that, for some fungal species, chitosan plays an important role in either cell viability or pathogenesis.

The deep layer of chitooligomers within the fungal cell wall creates a three-dimensional web-like structure on which the more superficially localized glucans are chemically crosslinked (Bowman and Free 2006). In *S. cerevisiae,* β-(1,3)-glucans are covalently attached to chitin (Figs. 1c and 2a), anchoring this more peripheral layer of the cell wall in a structured manner (Klis et al. 2006). Similarly in the filamentous fungus *A. fumigatus*, chitin covalently binds β-(1,3)-glucans (Chai et al. 2011; Muszkieta et al. 2019). In *C. neoformans*, chitin and chitin-derived structures have also been implicated in localizing the polysaccharide capsule and melanin to the cell wall (Fig. 2a). Rodrigues et al. (2008) demonstrated that the chitooligomer-binding lectin wheat germ agglutinin (WGA) bound to structures linking the cell wall to the polysaccharide capsule (Rodrigues et al. 2008). They further demonstrated that chitinase treatment caused the release of glucuronoxylomannan (GXM), the major component of the cryptococcal capsule (Rodrigues et al. 2008). Furthermore, *C. neoformans* strains lacking chitosan have a "leaky" melanin phenotype, indicating that they have defects in retaining their melanin or melanin-producing enzymes (Baker et al. 2007; Banks et al. 2005; Walton et al. 2005).

3 Chitin Synthases

Fungal chitin is synthesized from its monosaccharide precursor by a family of related chitin synthase (Chs) enzymes. Fungal genomes typically contain multiple genes encoding chitin synthases, and the number of *CHS* genes in a given species roughly correlates with the amount of chitin present in the cell wall. For example, *S. pombe* has only one *CHS* gene in its genome (*SpCHS1*), and its cell wall contains unmeasurably low amounts of chitin. In this species, chitin is only present during sporulation (Arellano et al. 2000). *S. cerevisiae* contains three *CHS* genes, and approximately 2% of its cell wall is composed of chitin. In contrast, filamentous ascomycetes and fungi in the Basidiomycota and Mucoromycota tend to have an

expanded *CHS* gene family (Free 2013; Mélida et al. 2015). Thirty-eight *CHS* genes have been identified in *Allomyces macrogynus*, a member of the Blastocladiomycota, an early emerging phylum among the fungi, and twenty-six have been identified in *Rhizopus oryzae* of the filamentous fungal class Mucoromycotina (Gonçalves et al. 2016). These fungal species also tend to have higher chitin and chitosan concentrations in their cell walls (Liu et al. 2017; Ruiz-Herrera and Ortiz-Castellanos 2010).

Many classification schemes have been developed to organize chitin synthases into functional classes based on predicted structural features, subcellular patterns of localization, and function inferred by loss-of-function mutations (Bowen et al. 1992; Roncero 2002; Nino-Vega 2004; Goncalves 2016). However, there is no consensus regarding Chs classification or consistency in organizational nomenclature. For example, the phylogenetic classification of fungal Chs proteins by Niño-Vega divides the enzymes into two families and seven classes. In contrast, a more recent study proposed a different classification scheme using a phylogenetic comparison of predicted *CHS* genes from over 130 fungal genomes (Gonçalves et al. 2016). These investigators divided the predicted fungal Chs proteins into three divisions and several subclasses. We chose to follow the Niño-Vega classification since it is limited to fungal genes.

Fungal Family I chitin synthases. The Chs proteins in fungal Family I contain a conserved catalytic domain and six C-terminal transmembrane domains (Fig. 3) (Gonçalves et al. 2016). Class I *CHS* genes appear to encode mostly redundant functions or enzymes expressed at low levels, as mutants in this class typically display negligible changes in Chs activity or cell wall chitin levels. One exception is the *S. cerevisiae CHS1* gene that plays a role in cellular repair after cytokinesis (Cabib et al. 1992).

The Class II *CHS* genes are present in most fungal species. In *S. cerevisiae* and *C. albicans*, the *ScCHS2* and *CaCHS1* genes are important for the primary septum formation in cell division (Munro et al. 2001a, b; Shaw et al. 1991). In contrast, mutations in many Class II *CHS* genes in filamentous fungi have less notable reductions in total cell Chs activity or morphological consequences (Roncero 2002).

The Class III *CHS* genes in fungal Family I appear to have been lost among many ascomycete yeasts, but this family is expanded in filamentous ascomycetes such as *Aspergillus* and *Neurospora* species (Mellado et al. 1996; Rogg et al. 2011). Consistent with the predominant hyphal morphogenesis among these fungal species, mutants in genes encoding Class III chitin synthases tend to have defects in polarized growth and hyphal tip extension, resulting in colonies of reduced size with tip-splitting defects (Mellado et al. 1996).

Fungal Family II chitin synthases. The Chs proteins in fungal Family II tend to be broadly present in diverse fungal species, and they are divided into several classes. Although the most active enzymes may differ between individual fungi, many of these Chs proteins play major roles in growth and morphogenesis, as assessed by loss-of-function mutants. The Class IV proteins are widely distributed among many fungal species. These include the Chs3 proteins in the ascomycetous yeasts *S. cerevisiae* and *C. albicans*. Although not essential for survival, *ScCHS3* and *CaCHS3* are the major chitin synthases in these species, and loss-of-function

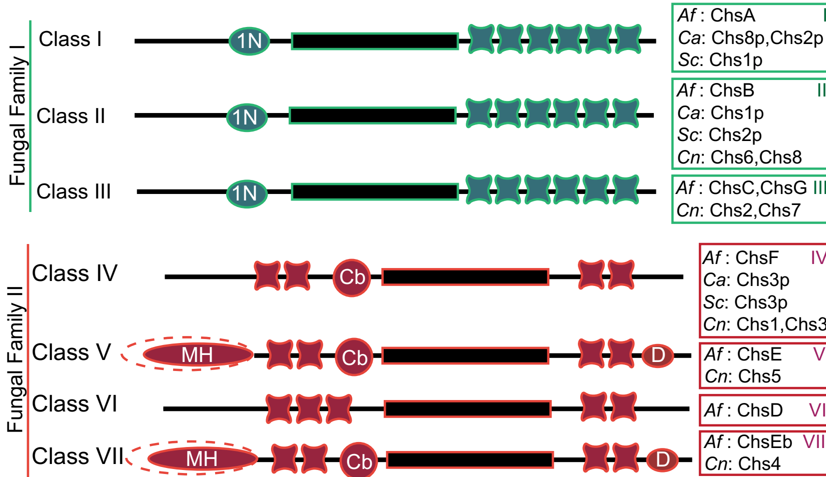


Fig. 3 Two families of fungal chitin synthases. Family I (teal) consists of Classes I–III Chs enzymes, which have conserved chitin synthase domains (rectangles), 6 C-terminal transmembrane domains (molar structures), and a chitin synthase N-terminal domain (1 N). Family II (burgundy) Chs proteins consist of Classes IV–VII and also have these same conserved chitin synthase domains (rectangles) and varying numbers of transmembrane domains on both the N and C terminus. The Class V and Class VII enzymes have myosin head domains (MH) and DEK C-terminal domains. Classes IV, V, and VII have cytochrome b domains (Cb). Examples from each of the big four fungal species [*Aspergillus fumigatus* (Af), *Candida albicans* (Ca), *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (Sc), and *Cryptococcus neoformans* (Cn)] are listed to the right of each class. The domain prediction and structure analysis were adapted from (Gonçalves et al. 2016), and the fungal-specific Chs examples were adapted from (Rogg et al. 2012)

mutations result in very reduced chitin levels (Bulawa et al. 1995; Shaw et al. 1991; Valdivieso et al. 1991). Interestingly, the closest homologs by DNA sequence in filamentous fungi tend to result in less severe phenotypic alterations when mutated (Munro and Gow 2001).

In contrast, the Class V Chs proteins are present primarily in filamentous fungi, providing the bulk of chitin synthase activity in these species. Accordingly, loss-of-function mutations in Class V *CHS* genes have implicated these proteins in cell wall assembly, septum formation, and virulence (Amnuaykanjanasin and Epstein 2003; Gonçalves et al. 2016; Munro et al. 2004). Additionally, the Class V Chs proteins have predicted myosin-like domains fused to the end of the N-terminus. Mutational analysis has demonstrated that this domain is involved in actin-directed subcellular localization of these proteins to regions of active chitin synthesis, often in a cell cycle-dependent manner (Treitschke et al. 2010; Weber et al. 2006).

The proteins in both Family II Classes IV and V contain similar structural features, including catalytic domains, one or two transmembrane domains, and a cytochrome-b-like domain in the N-terminus (Fig. 3). Despite the similarity in structure between enzymes in these two subclasses, it appears that, in general, the

main chitin synthases in yeast-like fungi group together in phylogenetic Class IV, whereas Class V enzymes provide the main chitin synthase activity for fungi that grow predominantly as molds. Interestingly, the fungal Chs Class III (Family I), as well as Classes V, VI, and VII (Family II) are only present in filamentous fungi, perhaps related to the complex morphological transitions in these fungal species that require precise cytoskeletal and cell wall coordination (Muszkieta et al. 2014).

Other less widely conserved fungal *CHS*-like genes include those in Classes VI and VII (Niño-vega et al. 2004) as well as virus-like *CHS* genes such as *Ectocarpis siliculosus* virus-like CHS (ESV) and the *Chlorovirus*-like CHS (CV) genes (Fig. 3) (Gonçalves et al. 2016). No function has yet been assigned to the ESV genes, but the CV genes have been associated with host interaction and pathogenicity of plant fungal pathogens such as *Fusarium graminearum* (Zhang et al. 2016).

4 Chitin in Fungal Cell Replication and Stress Response

In addition to its role in anchoring an orderly array of fungal cell wall polysaccharides, chitin has been shown to aid in the cellular response to environmental stress and to assist the cell in replication (Gottlieb et al. 1991; Rodrigues et al. 2008; Segal et al. 1988). Chitin synthesis is localized at specific subcellular locations during the cell cycle. During yeast cell budding and early cell growth, chitin is enriched at the vulnerable bud tip, presumably to protect the emerging nascent cell. Following budding, chitin is more evenly distributed throughout the entire daughter cell wall during the period of rapid, isotropic cell growth (Sheu et al. 2000). Following complete cell division, chitin remains enriched at the site of the prior mother–bud interface, forming a permanent bud scar. Subsequently, enhanced chitin synthesis, via the activity of chitin synthase (Chs) enzymes, polarizes once again at the site of bud emergence as a new round of replication begins (Fischer et al. 2008). In the model yeast *S. cerevisiae*, researchers have demonstrated that this polarization of chitin synthesis is directed by the regulated localization of specific chitin synthases, such as that seen with relocation of Chs3p to the bud neck region to aid in cytokinesis (Bulik et al. 2003). Chs3p is maintained at a steady-state level within internal chitosome reservoirs and at the plasma membrane, from which it is trafficked by clathrin-dependent mechanisms involving additional Chs and septin proteins for recycling and relocalization to the cell surface (Chuang and Schekman 1996; DeMarini et al. 1997; Valdivia et al. 2002; Ziman et al. 1996). In addition, phosphorylation has been shown to play a role in the proper localization of these enzymes throughout the cell cycle in both *S. cerevisiae* and *C. albicans* (Lenardon et al. 2010a; Martínez-Rucobo et al. 2009; Teh et al. 2009).

This dynamic pattern of highly localized and regulated chitin synthesis is similar to the pattern of cyclical actin localization and delocalization that occurs during the yeast cell cycle. Similar to chitin, actin localizes in a highly polarized manner at the site of imminent bud formation and daughter cell emergence. While the daughter

cell symmetrically increases in size during the period of isotropic growth, both actin and chitin are more diffusely distributed throughout the cell surface. As the attached daughter cell reaches maturity, both actin and chitin are enriched at the site of cell separation (Munro et al. 2001a, b).

This process is similarly directed in fungi that grow predominantly as hyphae and in which chitin synthases and actin localization are concentrated at the apical tip and at the septa (Sánchez-León et al. 2011). The CHS-1 chitin synthase in the filamentous fungus *Neurospora crassa* is enriched at regions of active cell wall synthesis, such as the apical tip, developing septum, and the Spitzenkorper. In this species, and likely in other fungi that predominantly grow as hyphae, actin microfilaments help to direct specific chitin synthases to areas of the cell that require higher levels of chitin. Accordingly, a fluorescently tagged *N. crassa* CHS-1 fusion protein [CHS-1-green fluorescent protein (GFP)] was mislocalized by actin inhibitors and not by microtubule inhibitors (Sánchez-León et al. 2011).

Similarly, in the filamentous ascomycete fungus *Aspergillus nidulans*, the Class V chitin synthase CsmA contains a myosin-like domain that is required for proper protein localization and function. Given the interaction of myosin proteins and actin, these studies further support actin-mediated subcellular localization of specific chitin synthase activities during various stages of fungal development (Takeshita et al. 2005, 2015). Filamentous actin tracks are also involved in the polarized secretion of chitin synthases in the plant fungal pathogen *Ustilago maydis*, directing its proper hyphal development (Schuster et al. 2012).

In the opportunistic pathogen and filamentous fungus *A. fumigatus,* a relatively large group of eight fungal chitin synthases offer functional redundancy and flexibility in the cellular adaptation to stress. For example, strains with combinations of mutations of all Family 1 *CHS* chitin synthase genes only demonstrated growth defects due to loss of CHSG activity. However, virulence in animal models of invasive aspergillosis was retained even in the absence of all Family I genes. Hyphal morphology and conidiation were more severely affected by mutation of Family II *CHS* genes, especially *CSGA* (Muszkieta et al. 2014).

In many pathogenic fungi including *A. fumigatus*, *C. albicans*, and *C. neoformans*, chitin synthase gene expression and activity, as well as overall chitin production, while always required for basal growth, are increased in response to external stimuli that induce cell wall stress. These stresses include, but are not limited to, lytic enzyme activity, antifungal agents, and respiratory bursts within host immune cells (Lenardon et al. 2010b). For example, in *C. albicans*, the stress caused by treatment with cell wall-targeting drugs such as echinocandins leads to an increase in the activity of its four chitin synthases, as well as an overall increase in chitin levels. In fact, this increase in chitin provides protection against echinocandin treatment; elevated chitin in the cell wall *of C. albicans* reduced its susceptibility to caspofungin (Walker et al. 2008). Caspofungin treatment of *A. fumigatus* triggers a similar increase in the activity of its eight chitin synthases, as well as overall chitin levels (Fortwendel et al. 2009). *C. neoformans*, which has inherently low susceptibility to echinocandins, induces eight chitin synthases to generate high levels of chitin in response to increased temperature and a range of cell wall destabilizers

(Congo Red, caffeine, and SDS) (Banks et al. 2005). Increased cell wall chitin content resulting from enhanced chitin synthase activity protects these pathogenic fungi from external stresses.

Chitin's role in modifying the cell wall as a means of responding to stress has also been observed in non-pathogenic yeast including *S. cerevisiae,* in which its three chitin synthases become highly active in stressful growth environments (Bulik et al. 2003). In fact, chitin synthase activity, such as that due to the Chs3 protein in *S. cerevisiae*, can be induced either by the presence of extracellular stress or by adding additional glucosamine as a substrate for chitin production. Interestingly, the increase in chitin synthase activity in response to glucosamine was not associated with increased *CHS3* gene transcription nor increased Chs3 protein levels, suggesting that this enzyme has the ability to rapidly increase its functional capacity in response to the needs of the cell (Bulik et al. 2003). Alternatively, this could be explained by the increase in expression of other *CHS* genes and/or production of these enzymes as has been shown in *C. albicans*. In the absence of *C. albicans* Chitin Synthases 1 and 3 (Chs1 and Chs3), this organism is able to survive intense cell wall stress through the increased activity of the Chs2 and Chs8 enzymes, which are regulatory activators of chitin synthesis pathways (Walker et al. 2008).

5 How the Host Responds to Chitin

As one of the most external features of the fungal cell, the cell wall acts as an important immunological interface between fungal pathogens and the infected host. Many investigators have therefore studied the role of individual cell wall components on the initiation of an immune response by various host cells, especially those of the innate immune system. Many cell wall epitopes act as pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) (Fig. 2b). PAMPs are common patterns displayed on microbes that are innately recognized by host cells through surface pattern recognition receptors (PRRs). This interaction leads to a host cell response, resulting in defense against potential environmental threats without the necessity of a prior encounter.

Many investigators have studied how the immune system is regulated in response to chitin exposure. Interestingly, these studies often present somewhat conflicting results. For example, introducing chitin to the host through either an intranasal or intraperitoneal route of infection results in priming of the immune system, suggesting that many of the host immune cells, such as alveolar macrophages and NK cells, are "preactivated" to elicit a response due to the immune-modulatory effects of chitin and its derivatives (Muzzarelli 2010; Rizzetto et al. 2016). Once these cells are primed by chitin exposure, they more readily secrete IFN-γ, IL-12, and TNF-α in response to other inflammatory stimuli (Shibata et al. 1997a, b) (Muzzarelli 2010; Ozdemir et al. 2006; Strong et al. 2002). Furthermore, when chitin and chitosan are administered as immune adjuvants, they

elicit enhanced Th1 immune responses reminiscent of those induced by well-known adjuvants, such as heat-killed *Mycobacterium bovis* (Shibata et al. 2000).

Similarly, chitin microparticles were able to alter the Th2-mediated allergic responses in models of ovalbumin-induced asthma and *A. fumigatus*-induced allergic sensitivity (Muzzarelli 2010; Ozdemir et al. 2006; Strong et al. 2002). Other groups have also shown that chitin elicits a robust Th1 immune response through the induction of IL-1, increasing both antibody levels and anti-tumor activities; however, these specific results may have been confounded by impure chitin preparations (Nishimura et al. 1986a, b). Chitin has also been shown to elicit a direct allergic response in the airways characterized by increases in tissue eosinophils and basophils, as well as elevated expression of the Th2 cytokine, IL-4 (Reese et al. 2007; Van Dyken et al. 2011). Furthermore, Da Silva et al. (2008) discovered that IL-17, a pro-inflammatory cytokine, was increased in expression and activity in murine lung macrophages that had been exposed to chitin. This IL-17 elevation was further shown to be dependent on Toll-like receptor 2 (TLR2) in that TLR2-deficient mice did not demonstrate a pulmonary inflammatory response to chitin exposure (Da Silva et al. 2008). In contrast, "ultra-purified" chitin has the ability to inhibit T-cell proliferation and induce the selective secretion of the anti-inflammatory cytokine IL-10 in a *C. albicans* model of infection, potentially acting as a signal to dampen immune activation during the clearing phase of a systemic fungal infection (Wagener et al. 2014). In this study, chitin was prepared in a pyrogen-free and microbiologically sterile manner with a purity of over 98% as analyzed by HPLC in an attempt to remove potentially confounding additional cell wall components from these assays. Therefore, a large body of investigators demonstrates varying degrees of immune activation by chitin and its associated biomolecules.

However, most recent analyses of these data suggest that there are important factors to be considered in evaluating studies exploring chitin as a regulator of immunity. First, the specific chemical forms of chitin, including polymer size and degree of acetylation, might dramatically affect interactions with host cells (Bueter et al. 2011; Da Silva et al. 2009, 2008). Additionally, chitin is often chemically associated with proteins and other polysaccharides when purified from different species. For example, fungal cell wall chitin is often covalently linked to beta-glucans (Fig. 1c). Therefore, varying degrees of chemically pure chitin derived from different biological sources have limited the interpretation of some studies exploring immune activation by chitin. Additionally, mammalian chitinases and chitotriosidases, enzymes that degrade and modify chitin molecules, might also affect the host response to chitin-bearing organisms.

6 Chitin Receptor

Although chitin is very abundant in nature, the identity of a singular and unique chitin-detecting PRR has not yet been established. Over the past few decades, several mammalian cell surface receptors have been shown to have a strong

association with chitin and to control various cellular responses to this molecule. For example, to explore mechanisms for how chitin is so readily phagocytosed by macrophages once it encounters the host immune system (Bueter et al. 2011), investigators searched for mammalian surface receptors that might directly interact with chitin as candidate chitin-sensing PRRs (Fig. 2b). Cell surface proteins that demonstrated in vitro chitin binding included Galectin-3, a lectin that is known to bind β-galactosides (Seetharaman et al. 1998), and NKR-P1, an activating receptor on natural killer (NK) cells (Semenuk et al. 2001). Furthermore, a secreted C-type lectin receptor, RegIIIγ, found in the Paneth cells of the gastrointestinal tract and known to bind to peptidoglycan, was identified as a candidate mediator of the chitin immunological response (Cash et al. 2006). Peptidoglycan and chitin are chemically related polysaccharides that both contain *N*-acetylglucosamine (Xu et al. 2008), providing some rationale for common recognition by RegIIIγ. More recently, a transmembrane receptor, FIBCD1, has been shown to bind chitin with a high affinity in a calcium- and acetylation-dependent manner, suggesting that this receptor would not recognize or bind to chitosan, the deacetylated form of chitin (Schlosser et al. 2009). If confirmed, this observation would suggest distinct mechanisms for recognition of chitin and chitosan by the host immune system, a potentially very important factor for immune interactions with the host by fungi possessing chitosan-rich cell walls.

Other well-established pattern recognition receptors, such as Dectin-1, have also been predicted to regulate host immune activation in response to chitin exposure (Mora-Montes et al. 2011). In these studies, the investigators prepared ultra-purified chitin in a pyrogen-free and microbiologically sterile manner with a purity of over 98% as analyzed by HPLC. This chitin preparation blocked the cytokine response in human peripheral blood mononuclear cells to *C. albicans* cells in a Dectin-1-dependent manner. Interestingly, Dectin-1 did not directly bind chitin in these assays. Moreover, other PRRs, such as TLR2, TLR4, and Mincle (macrophage-inducible C-type lectin), also did not interact with chitin in these assays. These results suggest a model in which chitin, though not typically exposed on the surface of *C. albicans*, was able to inhibit the ability of this fungal pathogen to engage and activate host innate immunity in a Dectin-1-dependent manner but without directly binding to common PRRs.

The observation that chitin might actually act to block immune activation by fungal cells was extended by studies in a *C. albicans* model of infection in which chitin inhibited T-cell proliferation and elicited the selective secretion of IL-10, a key anti-inflammatory cytokine (Wagener et al. 2014). In these same studies, chitin reduced inflammation caused by LPS exposure in vivo, leading the investigators to propose that chitin exposure by dying fungal cells might be one mechanism by which the host turns off immune response signals and resolves immune activation following challenge with a pathogen (Wagener et al. 2014). This study also found that digested chitin, prevalent in later stages of this interaction, was recognized by the mannose receptor (MR), resulting in uptake and further intracellular stimulation of TLR9 and NOD2 (Wagener et al. 2014). Although none of these receptors/mediators have been shown to directly bind to chitin in the setting of an infection,

these studies provide evidence that chitin significantly contributes to the varied aspects of host innate immune cell activation.

7 Chitin and Chitosan Immunostimulation

Chitin and chitosan, as previously mentioned, can have immunostimulatory effects on varying parts of the immune system. Because of this, many fungal organisms have developed ways to shield these molecules from host immune cells and avoid recognition. In *C. neoformans*, the polysaccharide capsule serves to mask these immunogenic cell wall components, and capsule-deficient mutants are highly attenuated in murine models of cryptococcal infection (Fig. 2a). However, strains with mutations in the alkaline-responsive Rim signaling pathway were found to be paradoxically hypervirulent in murine models of infection, despite the loss of surface polysaccharide capsule (O'Meara et al. 2010, 2013). This observation was explained by studies that demonstrated that the *rim101*Δ mutant cell wall is highly disorganized with increased exposure of chitin and chitosan. This poorly ordered cell wall directed an excessive immune reaction characterized by enhanced Th1- and Th17-mediated inflammation, with host damage primarily due to immune pathology (O'Meara et al. 2013; Ost et al. 2017). Relatedly, the *C. neoformans* *mar1*Δ mutant has increased cell wall chitooligomer exposure due to cell trafficking defects and reduced glucan and mannan content in the cell wall. Like the *rim* pathway mutants, the *mar1*Δ mutant, a strain with cell wall enzyme trafficking defects, was found to hyper-activate macrophages in vitro (Esher et al. 2018). Furthermore, *C. neoformans* mutant strains with high levels of chitooligomer exposure stimulated macrophage responses in a TLR2/MyD88- and Dectin-1/Card9-dependent manner (Esher et al. 2018; Ost et al. 2017). These studies highlight the importance of strict organization within the fungal cell wall in host–pathogen interactions, demonstrating how the more superficial layers can serve as an immunological shield, preventing immune recognition of the deeper and more immunogenic cell wall components.

Studies in human keratinocytes indicated that chitin was able to elicit activation of these skin cells in a manner characterized by the induction of TLR4, both at the transcript and protein level (Koller et al. 2011). Blocking TLR2 in the keratinocytes inhibited this induction. However, no direct binding of chitin by TLR2 or TLR4 has been demonstrated. While these results did not reveal a direct chitin-binding PRR, they did extend growing observations of the roles of chitooligomers as immune modulators.

Glycoproteins in yeast species such as *Candida albicans* are glycosylated with mannose chains, and these mannoproteins account for 30–50% of the cell wall mass (Brown and Catley 1992). In filamentous fungi, glycoproteins constitute between 15 and 30% of the cell wall dry weight and can be glycosylated with both galactose and mannose chains, resulting in galactomannan proteins that can directly interact

with the immune system (Bowman and Free 2006; Bowman et al. 2006). These glycosylated proteins can include chitin-modifying enzymes such as chitin deacetylases in *C. neoformans*, as well as adhesins in the human commensal fungus *C. albicans* (Huang et al. 2002; Rieg et al. 1998). Although the complex, branching carbohydrate structures attached to these proteins are hypothesized to aid in immune avoidance for fungal pathogens, glycosylated proteins on the fungal cell surface can also serve as immunodominant epitopes for a host immune response. In fact, glycoproteins have been used as the basis for fungal vaccine strategies (Schmidt et al. 2012; Specht et al. 2017). Cell wall proteins, including all modified versions of these highly abundant glycoproteins, work in tandem with chitin within the cell wall to protect the cell shape and size, guard from extracellular stress, mediate molecule absorption, regulate signal transmission, and participate in regenerating the cell wall itself.

In some filamentous fungi, such as *A. fumigatus*, there is an even more external layer rich in galactosaminogalactan (GAG) that is released by the mycelium. Production of GAG is especially important for filamentous fungi because this antigenic polysaccharide is released during infection and favors in vivo proliferation of the fungus through promoting immunosuppressive effects (Beauvais et al. 2007; Fontaine et al. 2011; Loussert et al. 2010). GAG and related cell surface carbohydrates may therefore serve to shield filamentous fungi from immune recognition, especially those with higher cell wall chitin content (Gastebois et al. 2009; Maddi and Free 2010).

The immunomodulatory roles of chitosan have also been studied. The deacetylated state of chitosan allows this molecule to interact with different components of the host immune system compared to chitin. For example, in *C. neoformans*, chitosan stimulates the NLRP3 inflammasome in a phagocytosis-dependent manner (Bueter et al. 2011, 2014). This is a chitosan-specific type of immunostimulation as chitin does not activate the inflammasome to the same extent (Bueter et al. 2011, 2014). This activation of the inflammasome by chitosan elicits specific cytokine responses that would not be accomplished through chitin alone, indicating that these molecules work together to differentially stimulate the host immune system.

8 Size-Dependent Immune Response

One of the most important observations regarding the role of chitin as an immune regulatory molecule is the relationship between the size of the chitin particles and the immunological response that is subsequently initiated. This relationship was originally identified through observation of the divergent immune responses that are elicited between small, easily phagocytosed chitin particles and larger, non-phagocytosable chitin (Shibata et al. 1997). Prior to this observation, it was

known that foreign structures, such as yeast cells, zymosan, or chitin/chitosan, were internalized by macrophages through initial binding to mannose receptors on the plasma membrane of the immune cells (Warr 1980). However, the size- and phagocytosis-dependent differences in immune cell activation were not fully appreciated until investigators demonstrated that small chitin and chitosan particles actually primed alveolar macrophages to initiate a significantly more robust immune response and oxidative burst compared to larger chitin particles (Shibata et al. 1997). This size-dependent activation of the immune system by various macromolecules is similarly observed in the detection of hyaluronic acid by TLR4. Hyaluronan fragments are produced following tissue injury and are subsequently and quickly cleared in order to avoid further damaging inflammation. These molecules were found to stimulate chemokine production by macrophages in a size-dependent and TLR4-dependent manner, similar to what has been reported for chitin fragments (Jiang et al. 2005).

More recent studies have further investigated the chitin size-dependent activation of inflammation. Chitin particles of varying sizes differentially stimulate IL-17 production by macrophages in a TLR2- and MyD88-dependent manner (Da Silva et al. 2008). In these studies, the investigators defined big chitin (BC) as those molecules ranging in length from 70 to 100 μm, with intermediate chitin (IC) fragments ranging from 40 to 70 μm, small chitin (SC) being smaller than 40 μm, and super small chitin (SSC) fragments being approximately 2 μm or smaller (Da Silva et al. 2009). When exposed to intermediate chitin (IC) and small chitin (SC), murine lung macrophages displayed a robust immune activation phenotype, characterized by increased TNF-α production. In contrast, exposure of these cells to BC or SSC molecules did not result in measurable activation, suggesting that chitin is recognized as a size-dependent PAMP (Da Silva et al. 2009). Similar to prior studies, this macrophage activation response was dependent on TLR2 and Dectin-1. Additionally, both IC and SC resulted in activation of downstream immune effectors such as NFkB and spleen tyrosine kinase (Syk), as well as an increase in p65 nuclear staining. These events are commonly observed after macrophage activation of TNF-α pathways by TLR2 stimulation. Interesting, SC, but not IC, also elicited an anti-inflammatory IL-10 cytokine response, which was inhibited through blockages of Dectin-1 and phagocytosis (Da Silva et al. 2009). Another dissimilarity between the response to SC and IC is that SC immune activation was dependent on the mannose receptor (Da Silva et al. 2009).

These results began to clarify prior observations of the differential effects of chitin in different models of immune activation: Perhaps, some of these effects were dependent on the size and form of the chitin molecules introduced into the system. Since the molecular size of chitin is dependent on post-synthesis cleavage events, these studies also emphasized the potential importance of chitin-modifying enzymes in the interaction of fungi with their environment.

Chitosan also displays a similar size-dependent immune activation. The studies mentioned previously, that identified a chitosan-specific activation of the inflammasome, also found that smaller chitosan molecules stimulated macrophages better

than larger ones, inducing more IL-1β cleavage and release (Bueter et al. 2011, 2014). This size-dependent immune activation could be explained by the ease at which macrophages can engulf smaller chitosan molecules compared to larger ones.

9 Mammalian Chitinases

While humans and other mammalian hosts do not actively make chitin, they do produce chitin-degrading enzymes or chitinases. As mentioned previously, these enzymes are crucial to the processing and cleavage of chitin encountered by the immune system and may play a role in the immune response and ultimate pathogen clearance (Elias et al. 2005; Gorzelanny et al. 2010; Zhu et al. 2004). Interestingly, the induction of chitinase activity occurs as a part of a generalized inflammatory response. However, the presence of these enzymes and their roles in chitin processing provide further support for chitooligomers as important molecules encountered in the external environment (Vega and Kalkum 2012).

Chitinases are members of the glycosyl hydrolase 18 family, and there are six known mammalian chitinase enzyme homologs (Boot et al. 2005; Kzhyshkowska et al. 2007). The two most well-studied are chitotriosidase (CHIT1) and acidic mammalian chitinase (AMCase) (Boot et al. 2001; Renkema et al. 1997), which are the only mammalian chitinases known to be catalytically active. The remaining four enzymes are chitinase homologs, but these proteins contain amino acid substitutions in their active sites, potentially explaining their lack of enzymatic activity. They have been annotated as chitinase-3-like protein 1 (CHI3Li, also referred to as YKL-40, Hcgp39, or GP39), stabilin-1 interacting chitinase-like protein (SI-CLP), chitinase-3-like protein 2 (YKL-39), and oviductin (Kzhyshkowska et al. 2007).

The first identified, enzymatically active chitinase, CHIT1, was identified in the plasma of patients with Gaucher’s disease, a genetic disorder that results in the cellular accumulation of glucosylceramide (Hollak et al. 1994). Following the successful cloning and characterization of CHIT1, a second chitinase, AMCase, was identified (Boot et al. 2001). Although very similar to CHIT1 in both structure and function, it is mostly active in acidic environments such as the stomach (Boot et al. 2001).

Shortly following the discovery of CHIT1, this enzyme was detected as both a marker of *A. fumigatus* infections and of macrophage activation (Overdijk et al. 1996; Renkema et al. 1997), suggesting that CHIT1 could be used as a diagnostic biomarker for severe mycoses. However, further studies revealed that additional stimuli, including IFN-γ, TNF-α, and LPS, can stimulate CHIT1 activity. Therefore, CHIT1 activity is better viewed as a non-specific marker of inflammation, rather than a specific biomarker for individual fungal infections (Malaguarnera et al. 2005).

Subsequent studies have further explored the role of chitinases in many inflammatory conditions. For example, single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) in the CHIT1 gene were found to lead to decreased expression of chitinase and increased susceptibility to allergic conditions such as asthma, as well as infections

due to the filarial parasite *Wuchereria bancrofti* (Bierbaum et al. 2006; Sibylle Bierbaum et al. 2005; Choi et al. 2001). AMCase activity was also similarly associated with allergic diseases such as asthma, rhinosinusitis, and nasal polyposis (Boot et al. 2001, 2005; Ramanathan et al. 2006). Further studies revealed that CHIT1 is highly expressed by macrophages, and CHIT1 mRNA levels are increased when macrophages are treated with phorbol 12-myristate 13-acetate (PMA), a stimulus that induces macrophage differentiation and priming (Boot et al. 2005; Pham et al. 2007; van Eijk et al. 2005).

The discovery that chitinase expression and activation were so tightly linked with innate immune activation led many to hypothesize that chitin sensing and processing by the immune system might be an innate mechanism for defense against invasive fungal infections (IFIs). One study using a murine inhalational model of *C. neoformans* infection demonstrated increased AMCase activity in the airways (Vicencio et al. 2008). The induction of this acidic chitinase in a tissue that is generally maintained at a nearly neutral pH suggests that this enzyme may be secreted for activity within acidic microenvironments in the lung, including regions of local hypoxia on the acidic phagolysosome. In a different study, rat lungs were inoculated with zymosan, a chitin-containing extract of the cell walls of *S. cerevisiae*. In this model, host CHIT1 activity was increased, suggesting an active role for cell wall material in inducing chitinases (Korolenko et al. 2000). Another study demonstrated that overexpression of chitinases in transgenic tobacco resulted in the relative resistance of these plants to fungal infections (Jach et al. 1995), further supporting a link between chitinases and chitin processing with host immunity to mycoses.

In studies investigating the immune response to degraded chitooligomers in *C. neoformans* (Gorzelanny et al. 2010), investigators identified that host-derived chitinases were responsible for cleaving chitin through a process of “processivity,” resulting in a robust macrophage response due to the creation of small and diffusible chitooligomer fragments. Furthermore, this processivity and immune activation led to a further increase in chitinase production, specifically mammalian CHIT1 (Gorzelanny et al. 2010). This work supported prior studies characterizing chitinase activity as a primary effector in the size-dependent immune activation by chitin. In a positive feedback loop, specific recognition of IC and SC by the immune system is enhanced by the host chitinase response, and in turn, the chitinase response is maintained by continuous exposure to cleaved chitin molecules.

Chitosanases are enzymes that catalyze the hydrolytic degradation of chitosan, but they are not found in mammals and seem to be only present in soil microorganisms (bacteria and fungi) and plants (Li et al. 2008; Rodríguez-Martín et al. 2010). Glucosaminidases can also convert chitosan into glucosamine, but these enzymes have only been isolated from fungal species (Ike et al. 2006). Chitinases can also function as chitosan-degrading enzymes, but this is dependent on the degree of acetylation. Chitinases need GlcNAc in the −1 position in order to catalytically cleave the substrate (Somashekar and Joseph 1996). Therefore, the role of chitosanases on mammalian–fungal interactions remains unclear.

10 Biomedical Applications of Chitin and Chitosan

Due to the importance of chitin synthesis on fungal growth and pathogenesis, targeting this process has been proposed as an effective way to treat infections and clear fungal disease. To date, there have been no chitin synthase (Chs) inhibitors approved for clinical trials. However, compounds targeting Class I Chs proteins in vitro have been developed, and these include the competitive enzyme inhibitors nikkomycin Z and other polyoxins. However, when first tested in vivo, these compounds failed to target other classes of chitin synthase enzymes, and they did not inhibit fungal growth when tested in a *C. albicans* model of infection (Munro 1995). Since those original studies, researchers have tried to expand the breadth of therapeutically promising Chs inhibitors. One drug that seemed promising, RO-09-3143, was fungistatic against wild-type *C. albicans* and fungicidal against strains with a mutation in the *CHS2* chitin synthase gene. This finding suggested a complicated mechanism of chitin synthesis with both overlapping and distinct functions for various Chs proteins (Munro et al. 2001a, b; Sudoh et al. 2000).

Given the compensatory increases in fungal cell wall chitin content in response to various cell stresses, other investigators have proposed using Chs inhibitors in combination with other antifungals, especially glucan synthase inhibitors. Targeting pathogens such as *C. albicans* and *A. fumigatus* with both glucan synthase and Chs inhibitors proved to be significantly more effective at fungal killing than treatment with either inhibitor alone (Fortwendel et al. 2009; Walker et al. 2008). In *C. albicans*, the compensatory increase in cell wall chitin as a response to echinocandins was inhibited by pre-treatment with the Chs inhibitor nikkomycin Z. Accordingly, strong antifungal synergy was observed in this species using nikkomycin Z in combination with glucan synthase inhibition (Walker et al. 2008). In contrast, *A. fumigatus* cell wall chitin was not decreased by treatment with nikkomycin Z alone, suggesting that this compound is not a highly effective inhibitor of the complex array of chitin synthases in this species. However, the combination of nikkomycin Z and caspofungin still resulted in synergistic antifungal activity (Fortwendel et al. 2009). In *C. neoformans*, no synergy was observed using nikkomycin Z and caspofungin in combination, despite a conserved compensatory chitin response to echinocandin therapy (Pianalto et al. 2019). However, in contrast to *C. albicans* and *A. fumigatus*, neither drug demonstrates striking primary anticryptococcal activity. The development of new antifungal compounds with different mechanisms of Chs inhibition would likely be a very attractive addition to current combination antifungal strategies. Given the central role for Class IV and V Chs enzymes in the growth and development of diverse fungal species, these classes of enzymes would be especially exciting new targets.

In addition to their roles as potential targets for antifungal therapy, chitin and chitosan have proven to be useful in novel vaccine design platforms. Mucosal vaccines that used chitosan as an adjuvant for human challenge studies with influenza antigens resulted in enhanced serum antibody production compared to historical, non-adjuvanted controls (Read et al. 2005). Additionally, chitosan

mucosal delivery systems for a detoxified diphtheria toxoid vaccination induced potent Th2-mediated immune responses in human subjects (McNeela et al. 2004).

In addition to using chitooligomers to shape immune responses, investigators have also used chitin-modifying enzymes as vaccine immunogens themselves. These studies build upon prior observations that mannosylated surface proteins, such as chitin deacetylases, often act as immunodominant epitopes after fungal exposure, resulting in measurable serum antibodies against these proteins (Huang et al. 2002). For example, investigators used a prime-boost strategy of intramuscular immunization with *C. neoformans* chitin deacetylase antigens (Cda1 and Cda2) in the context of glucan particles derived from *S. cerevisiae*. Preimmunization with these cryptococcal proteins provided protection from subsequent challenges with either *C. neoformans* or *Cryptococcus gattii* (Specht et al. 2017). A different vaccine strategy used a live attenuated a strain of *C. neoformans* that lacks all three chitin deacetylases (Cda1, Cda2, and Cda3). Infection with this hypovirulent mutant strain protected mice against subsequence challenges with the virulent wild-type isolate (Upadhya et al. 2018). These studies were especially compelling since *C. neoformans* infections do not typically induce secondary immunity against subsequent infections. Therefore, determining the mechanisms by which this type of mutant strain provides an immunizing effect will substantially inform the direction of new investigations promoting antifungal immunity.

11 Conclusions

Chitin is one of the most common molecules in nature, found in the majority of fungi, as well as in many insect and invertebrate species. Although it is a relatively simple homopolymer of *N*-acetylglucosamine, chitin and its deacetylated partner chitosan serve as the structural backbone of the fungal cell wall, acting as a matrix onto which the outer polysaccharide and glycoprotein layers are linked. These "hidden figures" within the fungal cell wall provide the architectural strength to ensure cell integrity in the face of stress, while also allowing the cell to minimize detection by the host immune system. Chitin synthesis is tightly regulated and intimately involved in growth during the cell cycle, as well as the response to cell stress, and the localization of chitin synthase enzymes is dynamic and highly organized. The interaction between chitin and the immune system is complex, and the outcome depends on many factors, including the type and size of chitin encountered. While no single PRR has been directly characterized as a chitin receptor, several mammalian cell surface receptors have been demonstrated to play a role in the host response to chitin. These responses include the production of chitin-degrading chitinase enzymes. Finally, in addition to their role the fungal cell wall and lifecycle, chitin and chitosan have a large number of potential biomedical applications, including serving as biosensors, diagnostic tools, drug delivery

devices, vaccine adjuvants, and in enhancers of wound healing. These findings, combined with recent efforts in chitin synthase classification and targeting, will help elucidate the many ways in which this biopolymer directs fungal physiology and environmental adaptation.

References

Amnuaykanjanasin A, Epstein L (2003) A class V chitin synthase gene, chsA is essential for conidial and hyphal wall strength in the fungus *Colletotrichum graminicola (Glomerella graminicola*). Fungal Genet Biol 38(3):272–285. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1087-1845(02)00563-7

Aranaz I, Mengíbar M, Harris R, Paños I, Miralles B, Acosta N, Galed G, Heras Á (2009) Functional characterization of chitin and chitosan. Curr Chem Biol 3

Arellano M, Cartagena-Lirola H, Nasser Hajibagheri MA, Duran A, Henar Valdivieso M (2000) Proper ascospore maturation requires the chs1$^+$ chitin synthase gene in *Schizosaccharomyces pombe*. Mol Microbiol 35(1):79–89. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1365-2958.2000.01678.x

Baker LG, Specht CA, Donlin MJ, Lodge JK (2007) Chitosan, the deacetylated form of chitin, is necessary for cell wall integrity in *Cryptococcus neoformans*. Eukaryot Cell 6(5):855–867. https://doi.org/10.1128/EC.00399-06

Baker LG, Specht CA, Lodge JK (2011) Cell wall chitosan is necessary for virulence in the opportunistic pathogen *Cryptococcus neoformans*. Eukaryot Cell 10(9):1264–1268. https://doi.org/10.1128/EC.05138-11

Banks I, Specht C, Donlin M, Gerik K, Levitz S, Lodge J (2005) A chitin synthase and its regulator protein are critical for chitosan production and growth of the fungal pathogen *Cryptococcus neoformans*. Eukaryot Cell 4(11):1902–1912. https://doi.org/10.1128/EC.4.11.1902

Beauvais A, Schmidt C, Guadagnini S, Roux P, Perret E, Henry C, Latgé JP (2007) An extracellular matrix glues together the aerial-grown hyphae of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Cell Microbiol 9(6):1588–1600. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1462-5822.2007.00895.x

Bierbaum S, Superti-Furga A, Heinzmann A (2006) Genetic polymorphisms of chitotriosidase in Caucasian children with bronchial asthma. Int J Immunogenet 33(3):201–204. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1744-313X.2006.00597.x

Bierbaum S, Nickel R, Koch A, Lau S, Deichmann KA, Wahn U, Superti-Furga A, Heinzmann A (2005) Polymorphisms and haplotypes of acid mammalian chitinase are associated with bronchial asthma. https://doi.org/10.1164/rccm.200506-890OC

Boot RG, Blommaart EF, Swart E, Ghauharali-van der Vlugt K, Bijl N, Moe C, Aerts JM (2001) Identification of a novel acidic mammalian chitinase distinct from chitotriosidase. J Biol Chem 276(9):6770–6778. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M009886200

Boot Rolf G, Bussink AP, Verhoek M, De Boer PAJ, Moorman AFM, Aerts JMFG (2005) Marked differences in tissue-specific expression of chitinases in mouse and man. J Histochem Cytochem 53(10):1283–1292. https://doi.org/10.1369/jhc.4A6547.2005

Bowen AR, Chen-Wu JL, Momany M, Young R, Szaniszlo PJ, Robbins PW (1992) Classification of fungal chitin synthases. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 89(2):519–523. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.89.2.519

Bowman SM, Free SJ (2006) The structure and synthesis of the fungal cell wall. BioEssays: News Rev Mol Cell Dev Biol 28(8):799–808. https://doi.org/10.1002/bies.20441

Bowman SM, Piwowar A, El M, Dabbous A, Vierula J, Free SJ (2006) Mutational analysis of the Glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI) anchor pathway demonstrates that GPI-anchored proteins are required for cell wall biogenesis and normal hyphal growth in *Neurospora crassa*. Eukaryot Cell 5(3):587–600. https://doi.org/10.1128/EC.5.3.587-600.2006

Brown HE, Ost KS, Esher SK, Pianalto KM, Saelens JW, Guan Z, Alspaugh JA (2018) Identifying a novel connection between the fungal plasma membrane and pH-sensing. Mol Microbiol. https://doi.org/10.1111/mmi.13998

Brown JA, Catley BJ (1992) Monitoring polysaccharide synthesis in *Candida albicans*. Carbohyd Res 227:195–202. https://doi.org/10.1016/0008-6215(92)85071-7

Bueter CL, Lee CK, Rathinam VAK, Healy GJ, Taron CH, Specht CA, Levitz SM (2011) Chitosan but not chitin activates the inflammasome by a mechanism dependent upon phagocytosis. J Biol Chem 286(41):35447–35455. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M111.274936

Bueter CL, Lee CK, Wang JP, Ostroff GR, Specht CA, Levitz SM (2014) Spectrum and mechanisms of inflammasome activation by chitosan. J Immunol (Baltimore, Md. : 1950), 192 (12):5943–5951. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1301695

Bulawa CE, Miller DW, Henry LK, Becker JM (1995) Attenuated virulence of chitin-deficient mutants of *Candida albicans*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 92(23):10570–10574. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.92.23.10570

Bulik DA, Olczak M, Lucero HA, Osmond BC, Robbins PW, Specht CA (2003) Chitin synthesis in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* in response to supplementation of growth medium with glucosamine and cell wall stress. Eukaryot Cell 2(5):886–900. https://doi.org/10.1128/EC.2.5.886-900.2003

Cabib E, Silverman SJ, Shaw Ja (1992) Chitinase and chitin synthase 1: counterbalancing activities in cell separation of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. J Gen Microbiol 138(1):97–102. https://doi.org/10.1099/00221287-138-1-97

Cash HL, Whitham CV, Behrendt CL, Hooper LV (2006) Symbiotic bacteria direct expression of an intestinal bactericidal lectin. Science (New York, N.Y.) 313(5790):1126–1130. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1127119

Chai LYA, Vonk AG, Kullberg BJ, Verweij PE, Verschueren I, van der Meer JWM, Netea MG (2011) *Aspergillus fumigatus* cell wall components differentially modulate host TLR2 and TLR4 responses. Microbes Infect 13(2):151–159. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.micinf.2010.10.005

Choi E, Zimmerman P, Foster C, Zhu S, Kumaraswami V, Nutman T, Chanock S (2001) Genetic polymorphisms in molecules of innate immunity and susceptibility to infection with *Wuchereria bancrofti* in South India. Genes Immun 2(5):248–253. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.gene.6363767

Chuang JS, Schekman RW (1996) Differential trafficking and timed localization of two chitin synthase proteins, Chs2p and Chs3p. J Cell Biol 135(3):597–610. https://doi.org/10.1083/jcb.135.3.597

Curto M-Á, Sharifmoghadam MR, Calpena E, De León N, Hoya M, Doncel C, Valdivieso M-H (2014) Membrane organization and cell fusion during mating in fission yeast requires multipass membrane protein Prm1. Genetics 196(4):1059–1076. https://doi.org/10.1534/genetics.113.159558

Da Silva CA, Chalouni C, Williams A, Hartl D, Lee CG, Elias JA (2009) Chitin is a size-dependent regulator of macrophage TNF and IL-10 production. J Immunol 182(6):3573–3582. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.0802113

Da Silva CA, Hartl D, Liu W, Lee CG, Elias JA (2008) TLR-2 and IL-17A in chitin-induced macrophage activation and acute inflammation. J Immunol 181(6):4279–4286. Retrieved from http://www.pubmedcentral.nih.gov/articlerender.fcgi?artid=2577310&tool=pmcentrez&rendertype=abstract

DeMarini DJ, Adams AEM, Fares H, De Virgilio C, Valle G, Chuang JS, Pringle JR (1997) A septin-based hierarchy of proteins required for localized deposition of chitin in the *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* cell wall. J Cell Biol 139(1):75–93. https://doi.org/10.1083/jcb.139.1.75

Elias JA, Homer RJ, Hamid Q, Lee CG (2005) Chitinases and chitinase-like proteins in TH2 inflammation and asthma. J Allergy Clin Immunol 116(3):497–500. https://doi.org/10.1016/J.JACI.2005.06.028

Esher SK, Ost KS, Kohlbrenner MA, Pianalto KM, Telzrow CL, Campuzano A, Alspaugh JA (2018) Defects in intracellular trafficking of fungal cell wall synthases lead to aberrant host

immune recognition. PLoS Pathog 14(6):e1007126. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.ppat.1007126

Fischer R, Zekert N, Takeshita N (2008) Polarized growth in fungi—interplay between the cytoskeleton, positional markers and membrane domains. Mol Microbiol 68(4):813–826. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2958.2008.06193.x

Fontaine T, Delangle A, Simenel C, Coddeville B, van Vliet SJ, van Kooyk Y, Latgé J-P (2011) Galactosaminogalactan, a new immunosuppressive polysaccharide of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. PLoS Pathog 7(11):e1002372. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.ppat.1002372

Fortwendel JR, Juvvadi PR, Pinchai N, Perfect BZ, Alspaugh JA, Perfect JR, Steinbach WJ (2009) Differential effects of inhibiting chitin and 1,3-{beta}-D-glucan synthesis in ras and calcineurin mutants of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 53(2):476–482. https://doi.org/10.1128/AAC.01154-08

Free SJ (2013) Fungal cell wall organization and biosynthesis. Adv Genet 81:33–82. https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-12-407677-8.00002-6

Gastebois A, Clavaud C, Aimanianda V, Latgé JP (2009) *Aspergillus fumigatus*: cell wall polysaccharides, their biosynthesis and organization. Future Microbiol 4:583–595. https://doi.org/10.2217/fmb.09.29

Gharieb MM, Sabha, El-Sabbagh M, Shalaby MA, Darwesh OM (2015) Production of chitosan from different species of zygomycetes and its antimicrobial activity. Int J Sci Eng Res 6(4). Retrieved from http://www.ijser.org

Gholizadeh Aghdam M (2010) Title: extraction of chitosan from fungal cell wall by sulfuric acid-studying the effect of deacetylation degree and temperature on recovery chitosan author. Retrieved from http://www.diva-portal.org/smash/get/diva2:1312010/FULLTEXT01.pdf

Gonçalves IR, Brouillet S, Soulié MC, Gribaldo S, Sirven C, Charron N, Choquer M (2016) Genome-wide analyses of chitin synthases identify horizontal gene transfers towards bacteria and allow a robust and unifying classification into fungi. BMC Evol Biol 16(1):1–17. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12862-016-0815-9

Gorzelanny C, Pöppelmann B, Pappelbaum K, Moerschbacher BM, Schneider SW (2010) Human macrophage activation triggered by chitotriosidase-mediated chitin and chitosan degradation. Biomaterials 31(33):8556–8563. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biomaterials.2010.07.100

Gottlieb S, Altboum Z, Savage D, Segal E (1991) Adhesion of *Candida albicans* to epithelial cells effect of polyoxin D. Mycopathologia 115(3):197–205. Retrieved from http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1749403

Gow NAR, Latge J-P, Munro CA (2017). The fungal cell wall: structure, biosynthesis, and function. Microbiol Spectr 5(3). https://doi.org/10.1128/microbiolspec.funk-0035-2016

He X, Li K, Xing R, Liu S, Hu L, Li P (2016) The production of fully deacetylated chitosan by compression method. Egypt J Aquat Res 42(1):75–81. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejar.2015.09.003

Hollak CE, van Weely S, van Oers MH, Aerts JM (1994) Marked elevation of plasma chitotriosidase activity. A novel hallmark of Gaucher disease. J Clin Invest 93(3):1288–1292. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI117084

Huang C, Nong S, Mansour MK, Specht CA, Levitz SM (2002) Purification and characterization of a second immunoreactive mannoprotein from *Cryptococcus neoformans* that stimulates T-cell responses. Infect Immun 70(10):5485–5493. https://doi.org/10.1128/IAI.70.10.5485-5493.2002

Ifuku S, Nogi M, Abe K, Yoshioka M, Morimoto M, Saimoto H, Yano H (2009) Preparation of Chitin nanofibers with a uniform width as α-chitin from crab shells. Biomacromol 10(6):1584–1588. https://doi.org/10.1021/bm900163d

Ifuku S, Nomura R, Morimoto M, Saimoto H (2011) Preparation of chitin nanofibers from mushrooms. Materials 4(8):1417–1425. https://doi.org/10.3390/ma4081417

Ike M, Isami K, Tanabe Y, Nogawa M, Ogasawara W, Okada H, Morikawa Y (2006) Cloning and heterologous expression of the exo-β-D-glucosaminidase-encoding gene (*gls93*) from a filamentous fungus, *Trichoderma reesei* PC-3-7. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 72(4):687–695. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00253-006-0320-y

Jach G, Görnhardt B, Mundy J, Logemann J, Pinsdorf E, Leah R., … Maas, C. (1995). Enhanced quantitative resistance against fungal disease by combinatorial expression of different barley antifungal proteins in transgenic tobacco. Plant J: Cell Mol Biol 8(1):97–109. Retrieved from http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7655510

Jiang D, Liang J, Fan J, Yu S, Chen S, Luo Y, Noble PW (2005) Regulation of lung injury and repair by toll-like receptors and hyaluronan. Nat Med 11(11):1173–1179. https://doi.org/10.1038/nm1315

Klis FM, Boorsma A, De Groot PWJ (2006) Cell wall construction in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Yeast 23(3):185–202. https://doi.org/10.1002/yea.1349

Koller B, Müller-Wiefel AS, Rupec R, Korting HC, Ruzicka T (2011) Chitin modulates innate immune responses of keratinocytes. PLoS ONE 6(2):e16594. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0016594

Korolenko TA, Zhanaeva SY, Falameeva OV, Kaledin VI, Filyushina EE, Buzueva II, Paul GA (2000) Chitotriosidase as a marker of macrophage stimulation. Bull Exp Biol Med 130(4):948–950. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF02682034

Kzhyshkowska J, Gratchev A, Goerdt S (2007) Human chitinases and chitinase-like proteins as indicators for inflammation and cancer. Biomarker Insights 2:128–146. Retrieved from http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19662198

Latgé JP, Calderone R (2005) The fungal cell wall. In: Kües U, Fischer R (eds) The mycota I. Growth, differentiation and sexuality. Springer-Verlag, pp 79–104

Latgé JP (2007) The cell wall: a carbohydrate armour for the fungal cell. Mol Microbiol 66:279–290. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2958.2007.05872.x

Lenardon MD, Munro CA, Gow NAR (2010) Chitin synthesis and fungal pathogenesis. Curr Opin Microbiol 13(4):416–423. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mib.2010.05.002

Lesage G, Bussey H (2006) Cell wall assembly in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 70(2):317–343. https://doi.org/10.1128/mmbr.00038-05

Li S, Chen L, Wang C, Xia W (2008) Expression, purification and characterization of endo-type chitosanase of *Aspergillus* sp. CJ22-326 from *Escherichia coli*. Carbohydr Res 343(17):3001–3004. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carres.2008.08.032

Liu R, Xu C, Zhang Q, Wang S, Fang W (2017) Evolution of the chitin synthase gene family correlates with fungal morphogenesis and adaption to ecological niches. Sci Rep 7. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep44527

Lopez-Romero E, Ruiz-Herrera J (1986) The role of chitin in fungal growth and morphogenesis. In: Chitin in nature and technology, pp 55–62. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4613-2167-5_8

Loussert C, Schmitt C, Prevost M-C, Balloy V, Fadel E, Philippe B, Beauvais A (2010) In vivo biofilm composition of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Cell Microbiol 12(3):405–410. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1462-5822.2009.01409.x

Maddi A, Free SJ (2010) α-1,6-mannosylation of N-linked oligosaccharide present on cell wall proteins is required for their incorporation into the cell wall in the filamentous fungus *Neurospora crassa*. Eukaryot Cell 9(11):1766–1775. https://doi.org/10.1128/EC.00134-10

Magnelli PE, Cipollo JF, Robbins PW (2005) A glucanase-driven fractionation allows redefinition of *Schizosaccharomyces pombe* cell wall composition and structure: assignment of diglucan. Anal Biochem 336(2):202–212. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ab.2004.09.022

Malaguarnera L, Musumeci M, Di Rosa M, Scuto A, Musumeci S (2005) Interferon-gamma, tumor necrosis factor-alpha, and lipopolysaccharide promote chitotriosidase gene expression in human macrophages. J Clin Lab Anal 19(3):128–132. https://doi.org/10.1002/jcla.20063

Martínez-Rucobo FW, Eckhardt-Strelau L, Terwisscha van Scheltinga AC (2009) Yeast chitin synthase 2 activity is modulated by proteolysis and phosphorylation. Biochem J 417(2):547–554. https://doi.org/10.1042/BJ20081475

Matsuo Y, Tanaka K, Nakagawa T, Matsuda H, Kawamukai M (2004) Genetic analysis of *chs*1^+ and *chs*2^+ encoding chitin synthases from *Schizosaccharomyces pombe*. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 68(7):1489–1499. https://doi.org/10.1271/bbb.68.1489

McNeela EA, Jabbal-Gill I, Illum L, Pizza M, Rappuoli R, Podda A, Mills KHG (2004) Intranasal immunization with genetically detoxified diphtheria toxin induces T cell responses in humans:

enhancement of Th2 responses and toxin-neutralizing antibodies by formulation with chitosan. Vaccine 22(8):909–914. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.vaccine.2003.09.012

Mélida H, Sain D, Stajich JE, Bulone V (2015) Deciphering the uniqueness of *Mucoromycotina* cell walls by combining biochemical and phylogenomic approaches. Environ Microbiol 17 (5):1649–1662. https://doi.org/10.1111/1462-2920.12601

Mellado E, Aufauvre-Brown A, Gow NAR, Holden DW (1996) The *Aspergillus fumigatus* chsC and chsG genes encode Class III chitin synthases with different functions. Mol Microbiol 20 (3):667–679. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1365-2958.1996.5571084.x

Minke R, Blackwell J (1978) The structure of α-chitin. J Mol Biol 120(2):167–181. https://doi.org/10.1016/0022-2836(78)90063-3

Mora-Montes HM, Netea MG, Ferwerda G, Lenardon MD, Brown GD, Mistry AR, Gow NAR (2011) Recognition and blocking of innate immunity cells by *Candida albicans* chitin. Infect Immun 79(5):1961–1970. https://doi.org/10.1128/IAI.01282-10

Munro CA, Gow NAR (1995). Chitin biosynthesis as a target for antifungals. In: Dixon GK, Copping LG, Hollomon DW (eds) Antifungal agents: discovery and mode of action. Bios Scientific, Oxford, pp 161–171

Munro CA, Gow NAR (2001) Chitin synthesis in human pathogenic fungi. Medical Mycol Suppl 39:41–53. https://doi.org/10.1080/mmy.39.1.41.53

Munro CA, Winter K, Buchan A, Henry K, Becker JM, Brown AJ, Bulawa CE, Gow NA (2001) Chs1 of *Candida albicans* is an essential chitin synthase required for synthesis of the septum and for cell integrity. Mol Microbiol 39(5):1414–1426. Retrieved from http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11251855

Munro CA, Winter K, Buchan A, Henry K, Becker JM, Brown AJP, Gow NAR (2001b) Chs1 of *Candida albicans* is an essential chitin synthase required for synthesis of the septum and for cell integrity. Mol Microbiol 39(5):1414–1426. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1365-2958.2001.02347.x

Munro CA, Winter K, Buchan A, Henry K, Becker JM, Brown AJP, Gow NAR (2004) Chs1 of *Candida albicans* is an essential chitin synthase required for synthesis of the septum and for cell integrity. Mol Microbiol 39(5):1414–1426. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1365-2958.2001.02347.x

Mushi NE, Butchosa N, Salajkova M, Zhou Q, Berglund LA (2014) Nanostructured membranes based on native chitin nanofibers prepared by mild process. Carbohyd Polym 112:255–263. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carbpol.2014.05.038

Muszkieta L, Aimanianda V, Mellado E, Gribaldo S, Alcàzar-Fuoli L, Szewczyk E, Latgé JP (2014) Deciphering the role of the chitin synthase families 1 and 2 in the in vivo and in vitro growth of *Aspergillus fumigatus* by multiple gene targeting deletion. Cell Microbiol 16 (12):1784–1805. https://doi.org/10.1111/cmi.12326

Muszkieta L, Fontaine T, Beau R, Mouyna I, Vogt MS, Trow J, Cormack BP, Essen LO, Jouvion G, Latgé J-P (2019) The Glycosylphosphatidylinositol-anchored DFG family is essential for the insertion of galactomannan into the β-(1,3)-glucan–chitin core of the cell wall of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. https://doi.org/10.1128/mSphere.00397-19

Muzzarelli RA (2010). Chitins and chitosans as immunoadjuvants and non-allergenic drug carriers. Mar Drugs 8(2):292–312. https://doi.org/10.3390/md8020292

Niño-vega GA, Carrero L, San-Blas G (2004) Isolation of the *CHS4* gene of *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis* and its accommodation in a new class of chitin synthases. Med Mycol 42(1):51–57. https://doi.org/10.1080/13693780310001538II

Nishimura K, Ishihara C, Ukei S, Tokura S, Azuma I (1986a) Stimulation of cytokine production in mice using deacetylated chitin. Vaccine 4(3):151–156. https://doi.org/10.1016/0264-410X(86)90002-2

Nishimura K, Nishimura S-I, Seo H, Nishi N, Tokura S, Azuma I (1986b) Macrophage activation with multi-porous beads prepared from partially deacetylated chitin. J Biomed Mater Res 20 (9):1359–1372. https://doi.org/10.1002/jbm.820200910

O'Meara TR, Holmer SM, Selvig K, Dietrich F, Alspaugh JA (2013) *Cryptococcus neoformans* Rim101 is associated with cell wall remodeling and evasion of the host immune responses. MBio 4(1). https://doi.org/10.1128/mBio.00522-12

O'Meara TR, Norton D, Price MS, Hay C, Clements MF, Nichols CB, Alspaugh JA (2010) Interaction of *Cryptococcus neoformans* Rim101 and protein kinase A regulates capsule. PLoS Pathog 6(2):e1000776. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.ppat.1000776

Ost KS, Esher SK, Leopold Wager CM, Walker L, Wagener J, Munro C, Wormley FL, Alspaugh JA (2017) Rim pathway-mediated alterations in the fungal cell wall influence immune recognition and inflammation. MBio 8(1):e02290-16. https://doi.org/10.1128/mBio.02290-16

Overdijk B, Van Steijn GJ, Odds FC (1996) Chitinase levels in guinea pig blood are increased after systemic infection with *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Glycobiology 6(6):627–634. Retrieved from http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8922958

Ozdemir C, Yazi D, Aydogan M, Akkoc T, Bahceciler NN, Strong P, Barlan IB (2006) Treatment with chitin microparticles is protective against lung histopathology in a murine asthma model. Clin Exp Allergy 36(7):960–968. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2222.2006.02515.x

Perez-Garcia LA, Diaz-Jimenez DF, Lopez-Esparza A, Mora-Montes HM (2011) Role of cell wall polysaccharides during recognition of *Candida albicans* by the innate immune system. J Glycobiology 1(1). https://doi.org/10.4172/2168-958X.1000102

Pham T-H, Langmann S, Schwarzfischer L, El Chartouni C, Lichtinger M, Klug M, Rehli M (2007) CCAAT enhancer-binding protein beta regulates constitutive gene expression during late stages of monocyte to macrophage differentiation. J Biol Chem 282(30):21924–21933. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M611618200

Pianalto KM, Billmyre RB, Telzrow CL, Alspaugh JA (2019) Roles for stress response and cell wall biosynthesis pathways in caspofungin tolerance in *Cryptococcus neoformans*. Genetics genetics.302290.2019. https://doi.org/10.1534/genetics.119.302290

Ramanathan M, Lee W-K, Lane AP (2006) Increased expression of acidic mammalian chitinase in chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps. Am J Rhinol 20(3):330–335. https://doi.org/10.2500/ajr.2006.20.2869

Read RC, Naylor SC, Potter CW, Bond J, Jabbal-Gill I, Fisher A, Jennings R (2005) Effective nasal influenza vaccine delivery using chitosan. Vaccine 23(35):4367–4374. https://doi.org/10.1016/J.VACCINE.2005.04.021

Reese TA, Liang H, Tager AM, Luster AD, Van Rooijen N, Voehringer D, Locksley RM (2007) Chitin induces accumulation in tissue of innate immune cells associated with allergy. Nature 447(7140):92–96. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature05746

Renkema GH, Boot RG, Strijland A, Donker-Koopman WE, Berg M, Muijsers AO, Aerts JMFG (1997) Synthesis, sorting, and processing into distinct isoforms of human macrophage chitotriosidase. Eur J Biochem 244(2):279–285. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1432-1033.1997.00279.x

Rieg N, Fonzi WA, Belanger PH, Fu Y, Rieg G, Fonzi WA, Filler SG (1998) Expression of the *Candida albicans* gene ALS1 in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* induces adherence to endothelial and epithelial cells. Infect Immun 66(4):1783–1786

Rizzetto L, Ifrim DC, Moretti S, Tocci N, Cheng SC, Quintin J, Cavalieri D (2016) Fungal chitin induces trained immunity in human monocytes during cross-talk of the host with *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. J Biol Chem 291(15):7961–7972. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M115.699645

Rodrigues ML, Alvarez M, Fonseca FL, Casadevall A (2008) Binding of the wheat germ lectin to *Cryptococcus neoformans* suggests an association of chitinlike structures with yeast budding and capsular glucuronoxylomannan. Eukaryot Cell 7(4):602–609. https://doi.org/10.1128/EC.00307-07

Rodríguez-Martín A, Acosta R, Liddell S, Núñez F, Benito MJ, Asensio MA (2010) Characterization of the novel antifungal chitosanase PgChP and the encoding gene from *Penicillium chrysogenum*. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 88(2):519–528. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00253-010-2767-0

Rogg LE, Fortwendel JR, Juvvadi PR, Lilley A, Steinbach WJ (2011) The chitin synthase genes *chsA* and *chsC* are not required for cell wall stress responses in the human pathogen *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 411(3):549–554. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbrc.2011.06.180

Rogg LE, Fortwendel JR, Juvvadi PR, Steinbach WJ (2012) Regulation of expression, activity and localization of fungal chitin synthases. Med Mycol 50(1):2–17. https://doi.org/10.3109/13693786.2011.577104

Roncero C (2002) The genetic complexity of chitin synthesis in fungi. Curr Genet 41(6):367–378. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00294-002-0318-7

Ruiz-Herrera J, Ortiz-Castellanos L (2010) Analysis of the phylogenetic relationships and evolution of the cell walls from yeasts and fungi. FEMS Yeast Res 10:225–243. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1567-1364.2009.00589.x

Sánchez-León E, Verdín J, Freitag M, Roberson RW, Bartnicki-Garcia S, Riquelme M (2011) Traffic of chitin synthase 1 (CHS-1) to the spitzenkörper and developing septa in hyphae of *Neurospora crassa*: actin dependence and evidence of distinct microvesicle populations. Eukaryot Cell 10(5):683–695. https://doi.org/10.1128/EC.00280-10

Schlosser A, Thomsen T, Moeller JB, Nielsen O, Tornøe I, Mollenhauer J, Holmskov U (2009) Characterization of FIBCD1 as an acetyl group-binding receptor that binds chitin. J Immunol 183(6):3800–3809. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.0901526

Schmidt CS, White CJ, Ibrahim AS, Filler SG, Fu Y, Yeaman MR, Hennessey JP (2012) NDV-3, a recombinant alum-adjuvanted vaccine for *Candida* and *Staphylococcus aureus*, is safe and immunogenic in healthy adults. Vaccine 30(52):7594–7600. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.vaccine.2012.10.038

Schuster M, Treitschke S, Kilaru S, Molloy J, Harmer NJ, Steinberg G (2012) Myosin-5, kinesin-1 and myosin-17 cooperate in secretion of fungal chitin synthase. EMBO J 31(1):214–227. https://doi.org/10.1038/emboj.2011.361

Seetharaman J, Kanigsberg A, Slaaby R, Leffler H, Barondes SH, Rini JM (1998) X-ray crystal structure of the human galectin-3 carbohydrate recognition domain at 2.1-A resolution. J Biol Chem 273(21):13047–13052. https://doi.org/10.1074/JBC.273.21.13047

Segal E, Gottfried L, Lehrer N (1988) Candidal vaginitis in hormone-treated mice: prevention by a chitin extract. Mycopathologia 102(3):157–163. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF00437398

Semenuk T, Krist P, Pavlícek J, Bezouska K, Kuzma M, Novák P, Kren V (2001) Synthesis of chitooligomer-based glycoconjugates and their binding to the rat natural killer cell activation receptor NKR-P1. Glycoconj J *18*(10):817–826. Retrieved from http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12441671

Shaw JA, Mol PC, Bowers B, Silverman SJ, Valdivieso MH, Durán A, Cabib E (1991) The function of chitin synthases 2 and 3 in the *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* cell cycle. J Cell Biol 114 (1):111–123. https://doi.org/10.1083/jcb.114.1.111

Sheetz MP, Singer SJ (1974) Biological membranes as bilayer couples. A molecular mechanism of drug-erythrocyte interactions. Proc Nat Acad Sci USA 71(11):4457–4461. Retrieved from http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4530994

Sheu YJ, Barral Y, Snyder M (2000) Polarized growth controls cell shape and bipolar bud site selection in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Mol Cell Biol 20(14):5235–5247. Retrieved from http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10866679

Shibata Y, Foster LA, Metzger WJ, Myrvik QN (1997) Alveolar macrophage priming by intravenous administration of chitin particles, polymers of *N*-acetyl-D-glucosamine, in mice. Infect Immun 65(5):1734–1741. Retrieved from http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9125555

Shibata Y, Foster LA, Bradfield JF, Myrvik QN (2000) Oral administration of chitin down-regulates serum IgE levels and lung eosinophilia in the allergic mouse. J Immunology (Baltimore, Md. : 1950) 164(3):1314–1321

Shibata Y, Metzger WJ, Myrvik QN (1997) Chitin particle-induced cell-mediated immunity is inhibited by soluble mannan: mannose receptor-mediated phagocytosis initiates IL-12

production. J Immunol (Baltimore, Md. : 1950), 159(5):2462–2467. Retrieved from http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9278339

Shor E, Wang Y, Perlin DS, Xue C (2016) *Cryptococcus* flips its lid—membrane phospholipid asymmetry modulates antifungal drug resistance and virulence. Microbial Cell (Graz, Austria), 3(8):358–360. https://doi.org/10.15698/mic2016.08.521

Somashekar D, Joseph R (1996) Chitosanases—properties and applications: a review. Biores Technol 55(1):35–45. https://doi.org/10.1016/0960-8524(95)00144-1

Specht CA, Lee CK, Huang H, Hester MM, Liu J, Luckie BA, Levitz SM (2017). Vaccination with recombinant *cryptococcus* proteins in glucan particles protects mice against cryptococcosis in a manner dependent upon mouse strain and *Cryptococcal* species. MBio 8(6): e01872-17. https://doi.org/10.1128/MBIO.01872-17

Strong P, Clark H, Reid K (2002) Intranasal application of chitin microparticles down-regulates symptoms of allergic hypersensitivity to *Dermatophagoides pteronyssinus* and *Aspergillus fumigatus* in murine models of allergy. Clin Exp Allergy 32(12):1794–1800. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1365-2222.2002.01551.x

Sudoh M, Yamazaki T, Masubuchi K, Taniguchi M, Shimma N, Arisawa M, Yamada-Okabe H (2000) Identification of a novel inhibitor specific to the fungal chitin synthase. Inhibition of chitin synthase 1 arrests the cell growth, but inhibition of chitin synthase 1 and 2 is lethal in the pathogenic fungus *Candida albicans*. J Biol Chem 275(42):32901–32905. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M003634200

Sugiyama J, Boisset C, Hashimoto M, Watanabe T (1999) Molecular directionality of β-chitin biosynthesis. J Mol Biol 286(1):247–255. https://doi.org/10.1006/jmbi.1998.2458

Takeshita N, Ohta A, Horiuchi H (2005) CsmA, a class V chitin synthase with a myosin motor-like domain, is localized through direct interaction with the actin cytoskeleton in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Mol Biol Cell 16(4):1961–1970. https://doi.org/10.1091/mbc.E04-09-0761

Takeshita N, Wernet V, Tsuizaki M, Grün N, Hoshi HO, Ohta A, Fischer R, Horiuchi H (2015) Transportation of *Aspergillus nidulans* class III and V chitin synthases to the hyphal tips depends on conventional kinesin. PLoS ONE 10(5). https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0125937

Teh EM, Chai CC, Yeong FM (2009). Retention of Chs2p in the ER requires N-terminal CDK1-phosphorylation sites. Cell Cycle (Georgetown, Tex.) 8(18):2964–2974. Retrieved from http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19713768

Treitschke S, Doehlemann G, Schuster M, Steinberga G (2010) The myosin motor domain of fungal chitin synthase v is dispensable for vesicle motility but required for virulence of the maize pathogen *Ustilago maydis*. Plant Cell 22(7):2476–2494. https://doi.org/10.1105/tpc.110.075028

Upadhya R, Baker LG, Lam WC, Specht CA, Donlin MJ, Lodge JK (2018) *Cryptococcus neoformans* cda1 and its chitin deacetylase activity are required for fungal pathogenesis. MBio 9(6). https://doi.org/10.1128/mBio.02087-18

Valdivia RH, Baggott D, Chuang JS, Schekman RW (2002) The yeast clathrin adaptor protein complex 1 is required for the efficient retention of a subset of late Golgi membrane proteins. Dev Cell 2(3):283–294. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1534-5807(02)00127-2

Valdivieso MH, Mol PC, Shaw JA, Cabib E, Duran A (1991) CAL1, a gene required for activity of chitin synthase 3 in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. J Cell Biol 114(1):101–109. https://doi.org/10.1083/jcb.114.1.101

Van Dyken SJ, Garcia D, Porter P, Huang X, Quinlan PJ, Blanc PD, Corry DB, Locksley RM (2011) Fungal chitin from asthma-associated home environments induces eosinophilic lung infiltration. J Immunol (Baltimore, Md. : 1950), 187(5):2261–2267. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1100972

van Eijk M, van Roomen CPAA, Renkema GH, Bussink AP, Andrews L, Blommaart EFC, Aerts JMFG (2005) Characterization of human phagocyte-derived chitotriosidase, a component of innate immunity. Int Immunol 17(11):1505–1512. https://doi.org/10.1093/intimm/dxh328

van Meer G (2011) Dynamic transbilayer lipid asymmetry. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol 3 (5):1–11. https://doi.org/10.1101/cshperspect.a004671

Vega K, Kalkum M (2012) Chitin, chitinase responses, and invasive fungal infections. Int J Microbiol 2012:920459. https://doi.org/10.1155/2012/920459

Vicencio AG, Narain S, Du Z, Zeng WY, Ritch J, Casadevall A, Goldman DL (2008) Pulmonary cryptococcosis induces chitinase in the rat. Respir Res 9(1):40. https://doi.org/10.1186/1465-9921-9-40

Wagener J, Malireddi RKS, Lenardon MD, Köberle M, Vautier S, MacCallum DM, Gow NAR (2014) Fungal chitin dampens inflammation through IL-10 induction mediated by NOD2 and TLR9 activation. PLoS Pathog 10(4):e1004050. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.ppat.1004050

Walker LA, Munro CA, de Bruijn I, Lenardon MD, McKinnon A, Gow NAR (2008) Stimulation of chitin synthesis rescues *Candida albicans* from echinocandins. PLoS Pathog 4(4):e1000040. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.ppat.1000040

Walton FJ, Idnurm A, Heitman J (2005) Novel gene functions required for melanization of the human pathogen *Cryptococcus neoformans*. Mol Microbiol 57(5):1381–1396. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2958.2005.04779.x

Warr GA (1980) A macrophage receptor for (mannose/glucosamine)-glycoproteins of potential importance in phagocytic activity. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 93(3):737–745. https://doi.org/10.1016/0006-291X(80)91139-0

Weber I, Aßmann D, Thines E, Steinberg G (2006) Polar localizing class V myosin chitin synthases are essential during early plant infection in the plant pathogenic fungus *Ustilago maydis*. Plant Cell 18(1):225–242. https://doi.org/10.1105/tpc.105.037341

Xu X-L, Lee RTH, Fang H-M, Wang Y-M, Li R, Zou H, Wang Y (2008) Bacterial peptidoglycan triggers *Candida albicans* hyphal growth by directly activating the adenylyl cyclase Cyr1p. Cell Host Microbe 4(1):28–39. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.chom.2008.05.014

Yen M-T, Yang J-H, Mau J-L (2009) Physicochemical characterization of chitin and chitosan from crab shells. Carbohyd Polym 75(1):15–21. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carbpol.2008.06.006

Zhang Y-Z, Chen Q, Liu C-H, Liu Y-B, Yi P, Niu K-X, Zheng Y-L (2016) Chitin synthase gene FgCHS8 affects virulence and fungal cell wall sensitivity to environmental stress in *Fusarium graminearum*. Fungal Biol 120(5):764–774. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.funbio.2016.02.002

Zhu Z, Zheng T, Homer RJ, Kim Y-K, Chen NY, Cohn L, Hamid Q, Elias JA (2004) Acidic mammalian chitinase in asthmatic Th2 inflammation and IL-13 pathway activation. Science (New York, N.Y.), 304(5677):1678–1682. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1095336

Ziman M, Chuang JS, Schekman RW (1996) Chs1p and Chs3p, two proteins involved in chitin synthesis, populate a compartment of the *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* endocytic pathway. Mol Biol Cell 7(12):1909–1919. https://doi.org/10.1091/mbc.7.12.1909

Control of Actin and Calcium for Chitin Synthase Delivery to the Hyphal Tip of *Aspergillus*

Norio Takeshita

Contents

1 Introduction 114
2 Chitin Biosynthesis 114
3 Transport of Chitin Synthase 116
4 Super-resolution Imaging and Cluster Analysis of Chitin Synthase 118
5 Pulse-Chase Analysis of mEosFP-ChsB After Photoconversion 119
6 Oscillation of Fungal Tip Growth 121
7 Ca^{2+} Oscillation 122
8 Biological Meaning of Oscillations 123
9 Conclusion and Perspective 124
References 125

Abstract Filamentous fungi are covered by a cell wall consisting mainly of chitin and glucan. The synthesis of chitin, a β-1,4-linked homopolymer of *N*-acetylglucosamine, is essential for hyphal morphogenesis. Fungal chitin synthases are integral membrane proteins that have been classified into seven classes. ChsB, a class III chitin synthase, is known to play a key role in hyphal tip growth and has been used here as a model to understand the cell biology of cell wall biosynthesis in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Chitin synthases are transported on secretory vesicles to the plasma membrane for new cell wall synthesis. Super-resolution localization imaging as a powerful biophysical approach indicated dynamics of the Spitzenkörper where spatiotemporally regulated exocytosis and cell extension, whereas high-speed pulse-chase imaging has revealed ChsB transport mechanism mediated by kinesin-1 and myosin-5. In addition, live imaging analysis showed correlations among intracellular Ca^{2+} levels, actin assembly, and exocytosis in

N. Takeshita (✉)
Microbiology Research Center for Sustainability (MiCS), Faculty of Life and Environmental Sciences, University of Tsukuba, Tsukuba, Japan
e-mail: takeshita.norio.gf@u.tsukuba.ac.jp

Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology (2020) 425: 113–129
https://doi.org/10.1007/82_2019_193
© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2019
Published Online: 24 January 2020

growing hyphal tips. This suggests that pulsed Ca^{2+} influxes coordinate the temporal control of actin assembly and exocytosis, which results in stepwise cell extension. It is getting clear that turgor pressure and cell wall pressure are involved in the activation of Ca^{2+} channels for Ca^{2+} oscillation and cell extension. Here the cell wall synthesis and tip growth meet again.

1 Introduction

Filamentous fungi grow as highly polarized tubular cells called hyphae that extend the cell body at one end in a process called 'tip growth.' Cell extension sites are maintained at hyphal tips, where simultaneous actin assembly, exocytosis, and tip extension occur (Fischer et al. 2008; Riquelme et al. 2011; Takeshita et al. 2014; Riquelme et al. 2018). Several filamentous fungi that extend cells in this manner are excellent systems for analyzing this process (Lopez-Franco et al. 1994). Some filamentous fungi are pathogenic to animals and plants and invade host cells via hyphal growth (Perez-Nadales et al. 2014). Others have uses in biotechnology and food production such as enzyme production and fermentation, respectively, as they secrete large amounts of enzymes (Kobayashi et al. 2007; Punt et al. 2002). Both the pathogenicity and enzyme secretory ability of fungi are closely associated with hyphal growth. Thus, understanding polarized growth in filamentous fungi can provide insights that are important to medicine, agriculture, and biotechnology.

2 Chitin Biosynthesis

The cell wall not only imparts physical strength to the cell but also plays a role in transmitting information about the natural or artificial environmental conditions to the inside of the cell. The cell walls of *Aspergillus fumigatus* are composed of β-(1,3)-glucan, chitin, β-(1,3)-/β-(1,4)-glucan, ∝-(1,3)-glucan, galactomannan (GM), galactosaminogalactan (GAG), and proteins (Latge et al. 2017). Most cell wall proteins are modified by *N*-glycan, *O*-glycan, and/or a glycosylphosphatidylinositol anchor. These components are complexly intertwined to form the three-dimensional structure of cell walls (Fig. 1a). During hyphal tip growth, various glycan synthases, including β-(1,3)-glucan synthases, chitin synthases, and ∝-(1,3)-glucan synthases, are transported to the tips by secretory vesicles. The transported glycan synthases generate the corresponding glycans, which then penetrate into the interstices of the cell wall skeleton, where they act like cement. Thus, the hyphae grow by forming a complicated three-dimensional structure.

Chitin, a β-(1,4)-linked polymer of *N*-acetylglucosamine (GlcNAc), is a major skeletal component of the cell wall of *A. fumigatus* and gives the wall mechanical rigidity. The higher amount of chitin (>10%) present in the walls of *Aspergillus* sp. as compared to yeast (Blumenthal and Roseman 1957; Johnston 1965) indicates

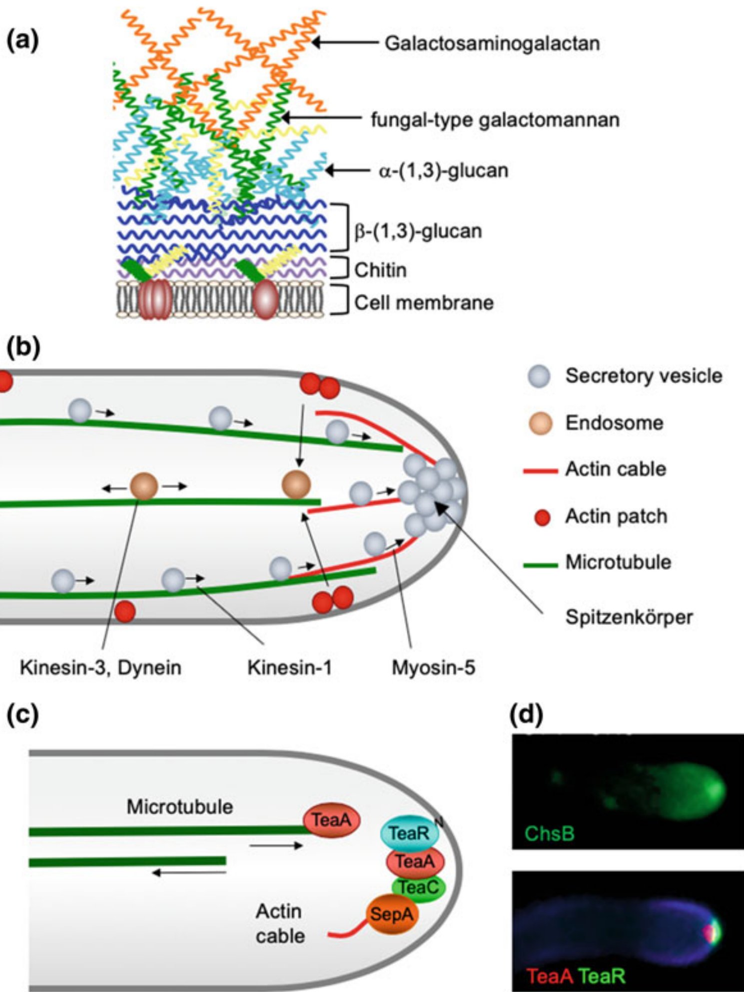


Fig. 1 Scheme of tip growth in *A. nidulans* hyphae. **a** Schematic representation of structural organization of the cell surface of *Aspergillus.* The different polysaccharides have their roles; glucans are the most abundant compounds in the fungal cell walls and an amorphous gel-like matrix, chitin as a cell wall skeleton. **b** Secretory vesicle trafficking via the microtubule and actin cytoskeleton depending on kinesin-1 and myosin-5, respectively. Before fusion with the plasma membrane, secretion vesicles accumulate at Spitzenkörper. **c** Scheme of the function of cell end markers in *A. nidulans*. **d** Localization of GFP-ChsB at Spitzenkörper (upper). Localization of cell end markers mRFP1-TeaA and GFP-TeaR at the hyphal tip (lower)

that the synthesis of chitin is essential for hyphal morphogenesis (Rogg et al. 2012). Chitin is biosynthesized by several chitin synthases localized at the plasma membrane; these are responsible for the sequential synthesis of GlcNAc using UDP-GlcNAc as a sugar donor.

Fungal chitin synthases are integral membrane proteins that have been classified into seven classes and three divisions according to their structural properties (Lenardon et al. 2010a, b; Gonçalves et al. 2016). *Aspergillus fumigatus* and *Aspergillus nidulans* have eight different chitin synthases (ChsA-ChsD, ChsF, ChsG, CsmA, and CmsB in *A. nidulans*) (Horiuchi 2009; de Groot et al. 2009). Among these, ChsB, a class III chitin synthase, is known to play a key role in hyphal tip growth, maintenance of cell wall integrity, and development (Yanai et al. 1994; Borgia et al. 1996; Fukuda et al. 2009). The *chsB* disruptant hyphae have enlarged tips, a high degree of branching, and disorganized lateral walls (Borgia et al. 1996). Class III chitin synthases are important for hyphal morphology, cell wall integrity, and pathogenicity in other filamentous fungi as well (Rogg et al. 2012; Muszkieta et al. 2014). Meanwhile, ChsA and ChsC are required for the formation of the septum and a normal conidiophore (Motoyama et al. 1994; Fujiwara et al. 2000; Ichinomiya et al. 2005). CsmA and CsmB, that are widely distributed in filamentous fungi and dimorphic yeasts but lacking in *S. cerevisiae* and *S. pombe,* have myosin motor-like domains (Fujiwara et al. 1997). The myosin motor-like domains bind to actin filaments, suggesting a direct link between the actin cytoskeleton and polarized cell wall synthesis (Takeshita et al. 2005, 2006). ChsB has been used as a model to understand the vesicles trafficking in chitin synthesis.

3 Transport of Chitin Synthase

Polarized growth of fungal hyphae is sustained by the continuous delivery of vesicles loaded with biomolecules to the hyphal tips (Rittenour et al. 2009; Sudvery 2008; Schuster et al. 2016; Takeshita 2016; Riquelme et al. 2018; Zhou et al. 2018). Vesicle trafficking supplies the required proteins and lipids via actin, as well as microtubule cytoskeletons and their corresponding motor proteins (Fig. 1b) (Taheri-Talesh et al. 2008; Steinberg 2011; Egan et al. 2012; Penalva et al. 2017; Renshaw et al. 2016). Microtubules serve as tracks of secretory vesicles for long-distance transport to hyphal tips and are important for rapid hyphal growth (Horio and Oakley 2005; Seiler et al. 1997). Actin cables formed from the hyphal tip in the retrograde direction are involved in exocytosis and secretory vesicle accumulation before exocytosis (Berepiki et al. 2011; Bergs et al. 2016). These vesicles accumulate at the apices prior to fusion with the membrane. They form a structure called Spitzenkörper (Harris 2009), which is thought to act as a vesicle supply center, a site where cargo for the hyphal tip is sorted (Riquelme and Sánchez-León 2014).

Besides their role as tracks for vesicle traffic, microtubules are necessary to maintain the direction of hyphal growth (Riquelme et al. 1998). Polar organization of the actin cytoskeleton is mediated mainly by microtubule-dependent positioning of polarity marker proteins (Fig. 1c). One polarity marker in *Aspergillus nidulans* (TeaA) is specifically delivered to the apex by growing microtubules, and it is anchored to the apical membrane by direct interaction with another polarity marker

(TeaR) at the plasma membrane (Fig. 1c) (Fischer et al. 2008; Takeshita et al. 2008). Their interdependent interaction at the apical membrane initiates the recruitment of additional components including the formin which polymerizes actin cables for targeted cargo delivery (Higashitsuji et al. 2009). Defective polarity markers result in hyphae that are curved or zigzagged instead of straight (Takeshita et al. 2008).

In *A. nidulans*, microtubules extend all the way to the hyphal tip, whereas actin cables are found mostly near the hyphal tip (Bergs et al. 2016). Vesicles containing components of the growth machinery are transported along microtubules from posterior sites to the apical region, transferred to actin cables, and finally delivered to the apical cortex of the hypha (Egan et al. 2012; Fischer et al. 2008; Pantazopoulou et al. 2014; Taheri-Talesh et al. 2008; Takeshita et al. 2014). These secretory vesicles (SVs) are released from the trans-Golgi network after maturation (Pantazopoulou et al. 2014; Pinar et al. 2015). Since gene deletion of kinesin-1 or myosin-5 decreases the amount of SVs at the hyphal tips, resulting in growth retardation, SVs are believed to be transported along microtubules by kinesin-1 and further along actin filaments by myosin-5 to the hyphal tip for exocytosis (Pantazopoulou et al. 2014; Seiler et al. 1997; Taheri-Talesh et al. 2012). However, localization analysis reported that kinesin-1 diffuses in the cytoplasm and myosin-5 accumulates at the hyphal tip (Requena et al. 2001; Taheri-Talesh et al. 2012). SV transport was not directly observed, probably due to the small size and fast motion. Early endosomes (EEs) are easier to track, so their bi-directional transport along microtubules by kinesin-3 and dynein has been thoroughly studied (Abenza et al. 2009, 2010; Egan et al. 2012; Lenz et al. 2006; Schuster et al. 2011).

Chitin synthases are thought to be transported on SVs to the plasma membrane for new cell wall synthesis (Fig. 1d), where they are subsequently internalized by endocytosis and transported on EEs for degradation in vacuoles, or recycled back to the plasma membrane (Sacristan et al. 2012). Actin patches are peripheral punctate structures, where the endocytic machinery is probably located (Araujo-Bazán et al. 2008). Kinesin-1 is required for transport of ChsB to the subapical region. However, mechanistic details could not be resolved due to high background fluorescence near the hyphal tip, insufficient time resolution to resolve fast motions, and the inability to distinguish between SVs and EEs (Takeshita et al. 2015).

An essential role for chitin synthase phosphorylation in the polarized biosynthesis of fungal cell walls is demonstrated in the polymorphic human pathogen *Candida albicans* (Lenardon et al. 2010a, b). Class III chitin synthase (Chs3) is localized at the tips of growing buds and hyphae, and at the septum. A phospho-proteome analysis of *C. albicans* revealed that Chs3 is phosphorylated. Mutation of this site showed the phosphorylation is required for the correct localization and function of Chs3.

4 Super-resolution Imaging and Cluster Analysis of Chitin Synthase

ChsB localizes to hyphal tips and concentrates at the Spitzenkörper in *A. nidulans* (Fukuda et al. 2009). In recent study, super-resolution localization imaging and high-speed pulse-chase imaging as a powerful biophysical approach have been used to analyze ChsB transport and dynamics of the Spitzenkörper (Zhou et al. 2018). The resolution of conventional light microscopy techniques is limited to around 250–300 nm due to light diffraction. Super-resolution microscopy techniques, such as STORM, PALM, etc., have overcome the diffraction limit, resulting in lateral image resolution as high as 20 nm, providing a powerful tool to investigate protein localization in high detail (Sahl and Moerner 2013).

To quantitatively analyze the spatio-temporal development of the Spitzenkörper with very high resolution, hyphae expressing ChsB was imaged as a fusion protein with mEosFPthermo (Wiedenmann et al. 2011). The thermostable monomeric green fluorescent chromophore can be permanently photoconverted to red with near-UV irradiation (Nienhaus et al. 2005, 2006). That is widely employed for fluorescence imaging, pulse-chase experiments, and super-resolution photoactivation localization microscopy (PALM) (Betzig et al. 2006; Hess et al. 2006). PALM uses photoswitchable fluorophores to achieve temporal control of the emission through conversion between fluorescent 'on/red' and 'off/green' states. When sample excitation is a sufficient low intensity, only a random sparse fluorophore subset will be in the 'on/red' state at any time, allowing these molecules to be imaged individually, precisely localized. Such strategy leads to the construction of a super-resolution image.

Single-molecular imaging-based localization microscopy revealed a pronounced fluorescent cluster of mEos-ChsB at the hyphal apex, representing the Spitzenkörper, and multiple speckles mostly near the plasma membrane (Fig. 2a) (Zhou et al. 2018). ChsB accumulation at the hyphal tip was classified by cluster analysis, where more than 10 molecules within 50 nm are defined as a cluster (Fig. 2b). Cluster images of 2.5 s time intervals were generated for a total period of 120 s with a moving window binning technique (500 frames binning with 50 frames shift) (Fig. 2c) (Ishitsuka et al. 2015). Each cluster is shown in different colors. The cluster areas and numbers of ChsB molecules within each cluster were calculated over the time course of the experiment (Fig. 2d). The green cluster of 0.1 μm^2 containing ~100 molecules is visible from 7.5–60 s. It grows via fusion with the blue cluster and evolves into the pink, crescent-shaped cluster of ~0.2 μm^2 containing ~200 molecules, visible from 62.5–80 s. Subsequently, this cluster breaks up into two smaller ones (~0.05–0.1 μm^2, ~50–100 molecules), depicted in light green and light blue. The shape change of the cluster from globular to crescent reflects the transition from vesicle accumulation prior to exocytosis to vesicle fusion with the apical plasma membrane during exocytosis.

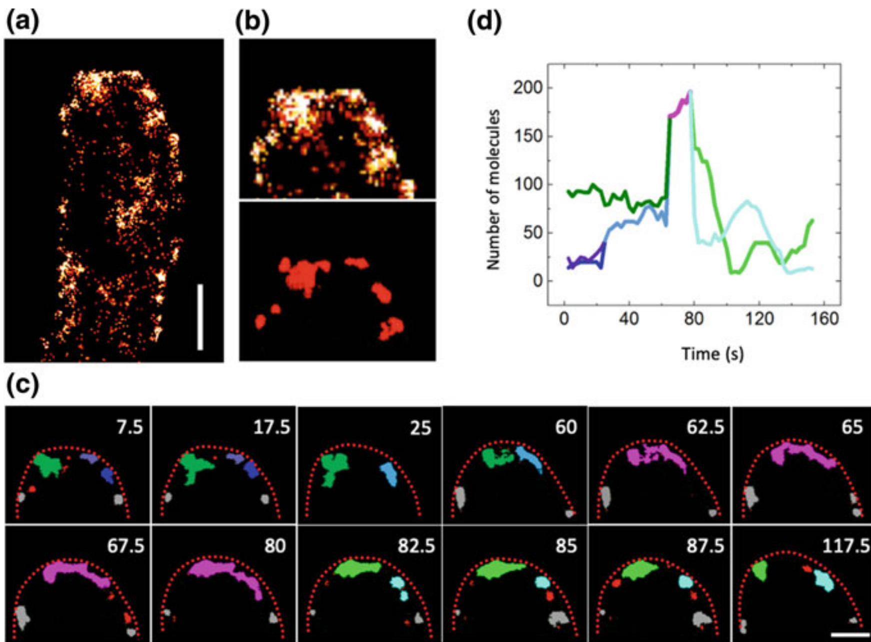


Fig. 2 Super-resolution imaging of Spitzenkörper dynamics. **a** Localization image of a hypha with mEosFP-ChsB clusters (constructed with 500 frames for 25 s). Scale bars; 1 µm. **b** Top: image of the hyphal tip. Each dot indicates single molecule. Bottom: ChsB accumulations classified by cluster analysis; more than ten molecules within 50 nm are defined as a cluster. **c** Sequence of ChsB cluster images (clusters in different colors) rendered from images reconstructed by time-lapse PALM (2.5 s interval by moving window binning for 120 s). Scale bars; 300 nm. **d** Time courses of number of ChsB molecules. Lines are drawn in colors corresponding to the clusters in (**c**) (modified Zhou et al. 2018)

5 Pulse-Chase Analysis of mEosFP-ChsB After Photoconversion

High-speed pulse-chase imaging of mEos-ChsB after photoconversion was employed to monitor its transport (Zhou et al. 2018). After photobleaching all red-emitting molecules with a 561 nm laser, a spot ~5 µm behind the hyphal tip was irradiated for 1 s with a tightly focused 405 nm laser beam to locally photoconvert mEos-ChsB to its red-emitting form (Fig. 3a). In Fig. 3b, image '0' shows the red fluorescence excited by the 405 nm laser, marking the local photoconversion spot. Then, the 561 nm laser was again switched on (image '1'), and images were acquired for 15–30 s with a dwell time of 50 ms. A large red-emitting spot appeared at the site of photoconversion, which gradually faded and dispersed due to vesicle transport away from the photoconversion region. By taking advantage of the low background in this pulse-chase imaging scheme, both anterograde (from back to tip) and retrograde (from tip to back) vesicle movements are easily observed in a kymograph along the axis of the hypha (Fig. 3c). The typical linear vesicle displacements were occasionally interrupted by brief stops, and there were also some

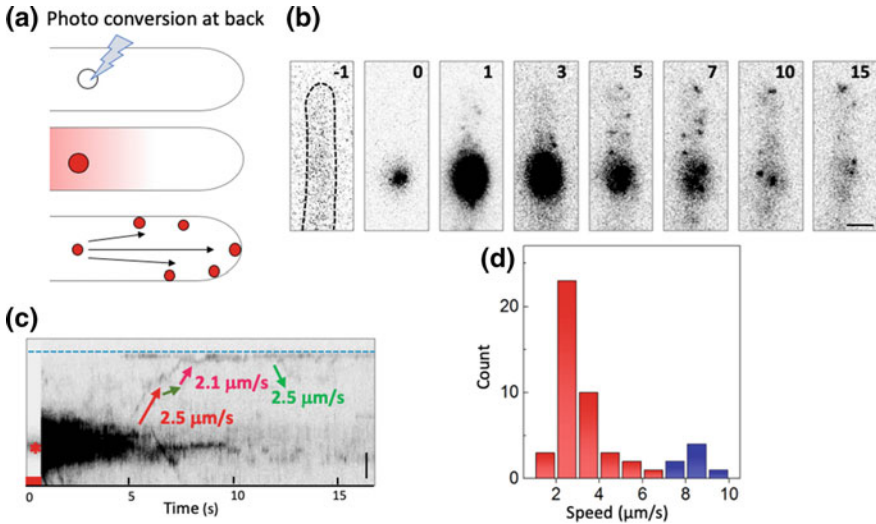


Fig. 3 High-speed pulse-chase analysis of mEos-ChsB transport. **a** Sequence of pulse-chase analysis of mEosFP-ChsB after photoconversion at back of hyphae. **b** Images of mEosFP-ChsB prior to photoconversion (−1), with 405-nm light applied at the spot marked by the dashed line for 1 s (0) and after photoconversion for 15 s. **c** Kymograph calculated from panel (**b**); arrows indicate anterograde and retrograde transport. The blue dashed line and the red asterisk mark the positions of the hyphal tip and the photoconversion locus, respectively; the red square indicates the photoconversion interval. **d** Speed distribution of anterograde transport. Slow anterograde (red) and fast anterograde (blue) transport (mean ± SD; n = 42, and 7, respectively) (modified Zhou et al. 2018)

immobile spots. We further noticed that the fluorescence from the hyphal tip stayed constant beyond ~5 s after photoconversion.

The slopes of the lines in the kymograph encode the speed of ChsB vesicle movement. From observations of a large number of hyphae, we noticed that most displacements occurred at speeds of 2–4 µm s^{-1}; however, there were also clearly faster processes with speeds of 7–10 µm s^{-1}. Accordingly, the speed histogram of anterograde movements appears to consist of two sub-distributions (Fig. 3d), a predominant distribution associated with slow transport centered on 3.0 ± 1.0 µm s^{-1} and a smaller distribution representing fast transport centered on 8.3 ± 0.7 µm s^{-1}. By comparison with the transport of EE and SV markers, the slow transport and fast transport were unambiguously assigned to ChsB associated with EEs and SVs, respectively. In fungi, EEs are 4–5 times larger than SVs (Gibeaux et al. 2013; Lin et al. 2016). Therefore, the slower transport of EEs is probably caused by the size of the cargo. Of note, in cultured mammalian cells, the speeds of kinesin-1 and kinesin-3 are similar, ~1–2 µm s^{-1} (Hammond et al. 2009; Tanenbaum et al. 2014). Comparative analysis using motor protein deletion mutants allowed us to assign the fast movements (7–10 µm s^{-1}) to transport of secretory vesicles by kinesin-1, and the slower ones (2–7 µm s^{-1}) to transport by kinesin-3 on early endosomes (Zhou et al. 2018). These results show how motor proteins ensure the supply of vesicles to the hyphal tip, where temporally regulated exocytosis results in stepwise tip extension.

6 Oscillation of Fungal Tip Growth

Time-lapse super-resolution PALM (photoactivation localization microscopy) analysis revealed that membrane-associated polarity marker TeaR in *A. nidulans* transiently assembles (approximately 120 nm) at the hyphal tip membrane and

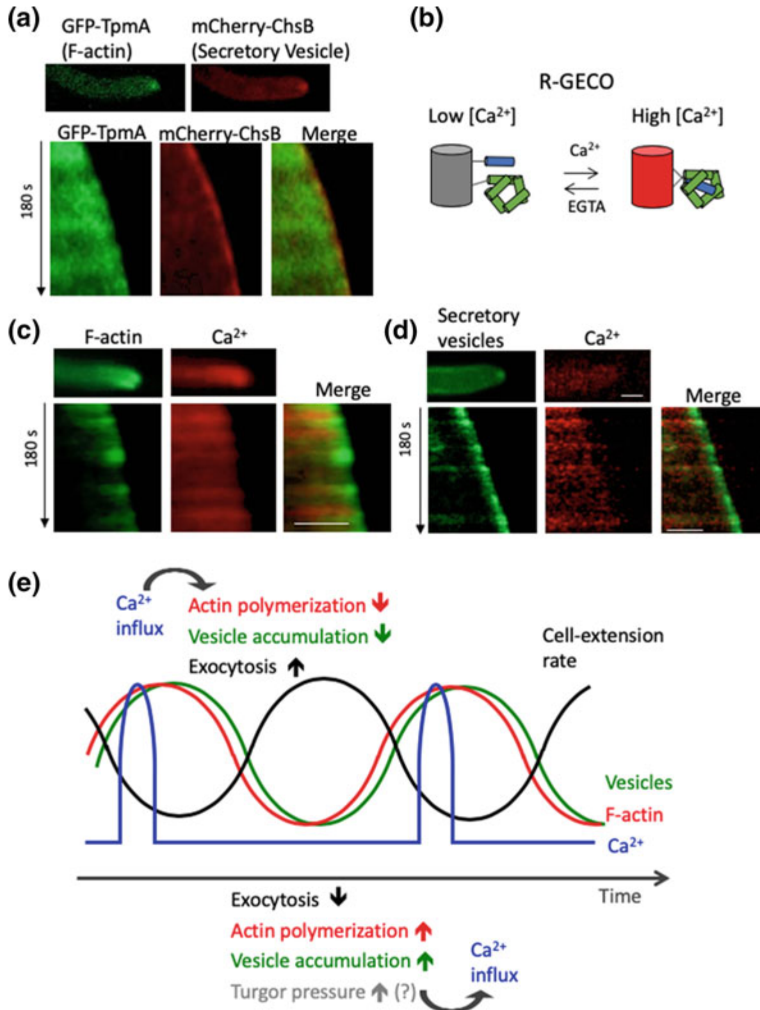


Fig. 4 Pulses of Ca^{2+} coordinate actin assembly and exocytosis. **a** Fluorescence image of F-actin and SV visualized by GFP-TpmA and mCherry-ChsB, respectively, in the growing hypha. Kymographs of F-actin (green) and SV (red) along the growth axis in the growing hypha. Total 180 s. **b** Scheme of the Ca^{2+} biosensor, R-GECO. **c**, **d** Fluorescence images and kymographs along the growth axis of F-actin (GFP-TpmA) (**c**) or secretory vesicles (GFP-BglA) (**d**) and Ca^{2+} (R-GECO). Total 180 s. Scale bar: 2 µm. (e) Scheme of oscillation in fungal tip growth coordinated by Ca^{2+} influx (modified Takeshita et al. 2017)

disperses along the membrane after exocytosis, which inserts a new membrane that results in local membrane extension (Ishitsuka et al. 2015). These findings gave rise to a 'transient polarity assembly model' to explain how fungal tip cells extend through repeated cycles of TeaR assembly/disassembly, actin polymerization, and exocytosis, rather than by constant elongation (Ishitsuka et al. 2015; Takeshita 2016). The findings of colocalization studies further support the notion that TeaR clusters represent zones of exocytosis and are prerequisite for apical membrane extension. In line with this model, recent work on *Neurospora crassa* has identified bursts of exocytotic events at various sites within the apical membrane rather than a persistent exocytosis site (Riquelme et al. 2014).

F-actin and secretory vesicles (SV) were visualized by fluorescence of GFP-tagged tropomyosin (TpmA) and mCherry-tagged ChsB, respectively (Fig. 4a) (Takeshita et al. 2017). Prominent signals were visible at the hyphal tip, and time-resolved recording and frame analysis by kymographs revealed that the signal intensity oscillated. The mean interval of the intensity of F-actin peaks was 29 ± 8 s, whereas the mean interval of peaks of SV was comparable to the one of F-actin, 30 ± 7 s. The temporal relationship between the presence of F-actin and SV was calculated as the normalized cross-correlation of their signal intensities, revealing the central peak is 0.50, indicative of a positive correlation between the signals of F-actin (green) and SV (red) (1 and -1 represent perfect positive and negative correlations, respectively). There were a few second delays in the signals of SV in comparison to the signals of F-actin, indicating that SV accumulate during actin polymerization phases and SV are depleted due to exocytosis during actin depolymerization.

7 Ca^{2+} Oscillation

Intracellular Ca^{2+} levels regulate actin assembly and vesicle fusion (Janmey 1994; Schneggenburger and Neher 2005). The red-fluorescent Ca^{2+} biosensor R-GECO was produced in *A. nidulans* (Fig. 4b) (Takeshita et al. 2017). Pulses of the R-GECO signal were observed: The mean interval between peaks was 26 ± 7 s. The R-GECO signal appeared as a tip-high gradient and diffused backwards. Such R-GECO pulses continued for multiple times before they disappeared (max. $n = 8$ in 180 s), probably due to a limited turnover of R-GECO. The fluorescence of R-GECO could not be detected in media without CaCl2 or with 1 μM CaCl2 + 10 mM EGTA, indicating that the increase of the intracellular Ca^{2+} level is induced by the influx of Ca^{2+} to the cells at hyphal tips.

The signals of R-GECO and GFP-TpmA (F-actin) or BglA-GFP (∝-glycosidase, secreted protein as a marker for SV) showed oscillation in kymographs along the growth axis indicated temporal changes of signal intensities (Fig. 4c, d). The signal intensities of F-actin (green) and the Ca^{2+} concentration (red) at the tip indicated that oscillations of peak intensities had similar periods (29 ± 8 and 26 ± 7 s, respectively) and were synchronized. Normalized cross-correlation analysis yielded

a positive correlation between the concentrations of F-actin (green) and Ca^{2+} (red), with the central peak at 0.40 and indicated that the peaks of Ca^{2+} appeared a few seconds earlier than those of F-actin. These results are in agreement with the notion that Ca^{2+} influx at the growing hypha induces actin depolymerization. Hyphae producing R-GECO and BglA-GFP (SV) also showed oscillations of the GFP intensity at the tip and R-GECO pulses (Fig. 4d), with similar periods (30 ± 7 and 26 ± 7 s, respectively), which were synchronized. Normalized cross-correlation analysis yielded a positive correlation with a central peak value of 0.43 and a few seconds delay of BglA-GFP, indicating that Ca^{2+} influx affords exocytosis mediated by fusion of SV with the plasma membrane as well as actin depolymerization.

The oscillation of Ca^{2+} levels at the hyphal tips of filamentous fungi suggested the stepwise extension of hyphal tips (Kim et al. 2012). Indeed, critical correlations were shown between intracellular Ca^{2+} levels, actin polymerization, exocytosis, and cell extension at fungal tips (Takeshita et al. 2017). Thus, the pulsed Ca^{2+} influx coordinates the temporally controlled actin polymerization and exocytosis that drive stepwise cell extension (Fig. 4e). Several Ca^{2+} channels, pumps, and transporters, such as the plasma membrane, ER, Golgi, mitochondria, and vacuoles function in fungal organelles (Zelter et al. 2004). The Ca^{2+} channels at the plasma membrane of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, Mid1 and Cch1p, share a single pathway that responds to environmental stressors and ensures cellular Ca^{2+} homeostasis (Iida et al. 1994; Locke et al. 2000; Paidhungat and Garrett 1997). Deletion of the orthologs *midA* and *cchA* from *A. nidulans* causes defective polarized growth and cell wall synthesis (Wang et al. 2012). Proper tip growth and the oscillation of F-actin, secretory vesicles, and growth rates require Ca^{2+} channels (Takeshita et al. 2017). The oscillatory model explains how transient Ca^{2+} influx depolymerizes F-actin at the cortex, stimulates secretory vesicles to fuse with the plasma membrane, and extends the cell tip faster. After Ca^{2+} diffusion, F-actin and secretory vesicles accumulate at hyphal tips.

The key event appears to be the activation of Ca^{2+} channels. One attractive notion is that the Ca^{2+} channels could be stretch-activated. Cells gradually build up turgor pressure against the membrane and the cell wall during slow growth phases, and Ca^{2+} channels might be activated when membrane tension exceeds a threshold. The entry of Ca^{2+} into the cell promotes exocytosis and leads to cell extension, which in turn decreases turgor pressure and inactivates the channels. Indeed, the ortholog Mid1 of *S. cerevisiae* is stretch-activated (Kanzaki et al. 1999). The next items to address would be missing links between turgor pressure and cell wall extension.

8 Biological Meaning of Oscillations

Relationships between cellular responses and receptor stimuli are encoded by the spatial and temporal dynamics of downstream signaling networks (Kholodenko 2006). Positive feedback, alone or in combination with negative feedback, can

trigger oscillations, for example, the Ca^{2+} oscillations that arise from Ca^{2+}-induced Ca^{2+} release (Goldbeter 2002). The shape of oscillations is characterized by their amplitude and phase. The frequency modulation of Ca^{2+} oscillations provides an efficient means to differentiate intracellular biological responses (Smedler and Uhlen 2014).

The oscillation of cortical F-actin presumably follows that of Ca^{2+} and correlates with the oscillations of vesicle secretion. These coordinated steps result in growth oscillation (Takeshita 2018). A feedback cycle might be efficient for all these steps to continuously proceed. In addition, oscillatory cell growth allows cells to respond more rapidly and frequently to internal and external cues such as chemical or mechanical environmental signals. Indeed, Ca^{2+} influx by Ca^{2+} channels is involved in the control of directional hyphal growth in *C. albicans* (Brand et al. 2007). The influx of Ca^{2+} promotes Cdc42 GTPase trafficking and amplifies Cdc42-mediated directional growth signals (Brand et al. 2014). Stepwise growth coordinated by a transient Ca^{2+} influx might link growth with chemotropism and chemotaxis. Cell–cell fusion is essential for colony development in *N. crassa* (Herzog et al. 2015). Before growing partners fuse in a tip-to-tip manner, the cells coordinately switch between two physiological stages via the oscillatory recruitment of a MAP kinase (MAK-2) and a protein of unknown molecular function (SO) to the apical plasma membrane of growing fusion tips (Fleissner et al. 2009; Serrano et al. 2017). The oscillation of signaling, which is probably related to signal sending and signal receiving, allows cells to coordinate their behavior and achieve efficient cell fusion (Goryachev et al. 2012).

9 Conclusion and Perspective

The dynamic responses to external and internal signals are fundamental to the increased understanding of chemotropism, cell–cell fusion, microbial interaction, and the fungal penetration of plant and animal cells. The pulsed Ca^{2+} influx coordinates the temporally controlled actin polymerization and exocytosis that drive stepwise cell extension of filamentous fungi. Besides them, to understand the hyphal tip growth, we need to pay attention to the balance between turgor pressure and cell wall pressure, which is regulated by cell wall synthesis, degradation, and maturation. The filamentous fungus elongates hyphae by tip growth while forming a cell wall comprising a complex three-dimensional structure. Understanding the cell wall biosynthesis is very important in understanding the interaction with other microorganisms and the infection mechanism of filamentous fungi to plants and animals. Recent studies have identified many glycosyltransferase genes involved in biosynthesis of constituent polysaccharides. Next open questions are the formation mechanism of the polysaccharide structure which changes according to the environmental changes and the cell wall formation mechanism at the time of differentiation, also how all the chitin and glucan synthases and cell wall relating proteins are trafficking coordinated in the formation of the cell wall skeletons.

References

Abenza JF, Galindo A, Pantazopoulou A, Gil C, de los Rios V, Penalva MA (2010) *Aspergillus* RabB Rab5 integrates acquisition of degradative identity with the long distance movement of early endosomes. Mol Biol Cell 21:2756–69

Abenza JF, Pantazopoulou A, Rodriguez JM, Galindo A, Penalva MA (2009) Long-distance movement of *Aspergillus nidulans* early endosomes on microtubule tracks. Traffic 10:57–75

Araujo-Bazan L, Penalva MA, Espeso EA (2008) Preferential localization of the endocytic internalization machinery to hyphal tips underlies polarization of the actin cytoskeleton in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Mol Microbiol 67:891–905

Berepiki A, Lichius A, Read ND (2011) Actin organization and dynamics in filamentous fungi. Nat Rev Microbiol 9:876–887

Bergs A, Ishitsuka Y, Evangelinos M, Nienhaus GU, Takeshita N (2016) Dynamics of actin cables in polarized growth of the filamentous fungus *Aspergillus nidulans*. Front Microbiol 7:682

Betzig E, Patterson GH, Sougrat R, Lindwasser OW, Olenych S et al (2006) Imaging intracellular fluorescent proteins at nanometer resolution. Science 313:1642–1645

Blumenthal HJ, Roseman S (1957) Quantitative estimation of chitin in fungi. J Bacteriol 74:222–224

Borgia PT, Iartchouk N, Riggle PJ, Winter KR, Koltin Y, Bulawa CE (1996) The *chsB* gene of *Aspergillus nidulans* is necessary for normal hyphal growth and development. Fungal Genet Biol 20:193–203

Brand A, Shanks S, Duncan VM, Yang M, Mackenzie K, Gow NA (2007) Hyphal orientation of *Candida albicans* is regulated by a calcium-dependent mechanism. Curr Biol 17:347–352

Brand AC, Morrison E, Milne S, Gonia S, Gale CA, Gow NA (2014) Cdc42 GTPase dynamics control directional growth responses. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 111:811–816

de Groot PW, Brandt BW, Horiuchi H, Ram AF, de Koster CG, Klis FM (2009) Comprehensive genomic analysis of cell wall genes in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Fungal Genet Biol 46:S72–S81

Egan MJ, Tan K, Reck-Peterson SL (2012) Lis1 is an initiation factor for dynein-driven organelle transport. J Cell Biol 197:971–982

Fischer R, Zekert N, Takeshita N (2008) Polarized growth in fungi—interplay between the cytoskeleton, positional markers and membrane domains. Mol Microbiol 68:813–826

Fleissner A, Leeder AC, Roca MG, Read ND, Glass NL (2009) Oscillatory recruitment of signaling proteins to cell tips promotes coordinated behavior during cell fusion. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 106:19387–19392

Fukuda K, Yamada K, Deoka K, Yamashita S, Ohta A, Horiuchi H (2009) Class III chitin synthase ChsB of *Aspergillus nidulans* localizes at the sites of polarized cell wall synthesis and is required for conidial development. Eukaryot Cell 8:945–956

Fujiwara M, Horiuchi H, Ohta A, Takagi M (1997) A novel fungal gene encoding chitin synthase with a myosin motor-like domain. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 236:75–78

Fujiwara M, Ichinomiya M, Motoyama T, Horiuchi H, Ohta A, Takagi M (2000) Evidence that the *Aspergillus nidulans* class I and class II chitin synthase genes, *chsC* and *chsA*, share critical roles in hyphal wall integrity and conidiophore development. J Biochem 127:359–366

Gibeaux R, Hoepfner D, Schlatter I, Antony C, Philippsen P (2013) Organization of organelles within hyphae of *Ashbya gossypii* revealed by electron tomography. Eukaryot Cell 12: 1423–1432

Goldbeter A (2002) Computational approaches to cellular rhythms. Nature 420:238–245

Gonçalves I, Brouillet S, Soulie MC, Gribaldo S, Sirven C, Charron N, Boccara M, Choquer M (2016) Genome-wide analyses of chitin synthases identify horizontal gene transfers towards bacteria and allow a robust and unifying classification into fungi. BMC Evol Biol 16:252

Goryachev AB, Lichius A, Wright GD, Read ND (2012) Excitable behavior can explain the "ping-pong" mode of communication between cells using the same chemoattractant. BioEssays 34:259–266

Hammond JW, Cai D, Blasius TL, Li Z, Jiang Y et al (2009) Mammalian Kinesin-3 motors are dimeric in vivo and move by processive motility upon release of autoinhibition. PLoS Biol 7: e72

Harris SD (2009) The Spitzenkörper: a signalling hub for the control of fungal development? Mol Microbiol 73:733–736

Herzog S, Schumann MR, Fleissner A (2015) Cell fusion in *Neurospora crassa*. Curr Opin Microbiol 28:53–59

Hess ST, Girirajan TP, Mason MD (2006) Ultra-high resolution imaging by fluorescence photoactivation localization microscopy. Biophys J 91:4258–4272

Higashitsuji Y, Herrero S, Takeshita N, Fischer R (2009) The cell end marker protein TeaC is involved in growth directionality and septation in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Eukaryot Cell 8:957–967

Horio T, Oakley BR (2005) The role of microtubules in rapid hyphal tip growth of *Aspergillus nidulans*. Mol Biol Cell 16:918–926

Horiuchi H (2009) Functional diversity of chitin synthases of *Aspergillus nidulans* in hyphal growth, conidiophore development and septum formation. Med Mycol 47(Suppl 1):S47–S52

Ichinomiya M, Yamada E, Yamashita S, Ohta A, Horiuchi H (2005) Class I and class II chitin synthases are involved in septum formation in the filamentous fungus *Aspergillus nidulans*. Eukaryot Cell 4:1125–1136

Iida H, Nakamura H, Ono T, Okumura MS, Anraku Y (1994) MID1, a novel *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* gene encoding a plasma membrane protein, is required for Ca^{2+} influx and mating. Mol Cell Biol 14:8259–8271

Ishitsuka Y, Savage N, Li Y, Bergs A, Grun N, Kohler D, Donnelly R, Nienhaus GU, Fischer R, Takeshita N (2015) Superresolution microscopy reveals a dynamic picture of cell polarity maintenance during directional growth. Sci Adv 1:e1500947

Janmey PA (1994) Phosphoinositides and calcium as regulators of cellular actin assembly and disassembly. Annu Rev Physiol 56:169–191

Johnston IR (1965) The composition of the cell wall of *Aspergillus niger*. Biochem J 96:651–658

Kanzaki M, Nagasawa M, Kojima I, Sato C, Naruse K et al (1999) Molecular identification of a eukaryotic, stretch-activated nonselective cation channel. Science 285:882–886

Kholodenko BN (2006) Cell-signalling dynamics in time and space. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 7:165–176

Kim HS, Czymmek KJ, Patel A, Modla S, Nohe A et al (2012) Expression of the Cameleon calcium biosensor in fungi reveals distinct Ca(2+) signatures associated with polarized growth, development, and pathogenesis. Fungal Geneti Biol 49:589–601

Kobayashi T, Abe K, Asai K, Gomi K, Juvvadi PR et al (2007) Genomics of *Aspergillus oryzae*. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 71:646–670

Latgé JP, Beauvais A, Chamilos G (2017) The cell wall of the human fungal pathogen *Aspergillus fumigatus*: biosynthesis, organization, immune response, and virulence. Annu Rev Microbiol 71:99–116

Lenardon MD, Munro CA, Gow NAR (2010a) Chitin synthesis and fungal pathogenesis. Curr Opin Microbiol 13:416–423

Lenardon MD, Milne SA, Mora-Montes HM, Kaffarnik FA, Peck SC, Brown AJ, Munro CA, Gow NA (2010b) Phosphorylation regulates polarisation of chitin synthesis in *Candida albicans*. J Cell Sci 123:2199–2206

Lenz JH, Schuchardt I, Straube A, Steinberg G (2006) A dynein loading zone for retrograde endosome motility at microtubule plus-ends. EMBO J 25:2275–2286

Lin C, Schuster M, Guimaraes SC, Ashwin P, Schrader M et al (2016) Active diffusion and microtubule-based transport oppose myosin forces to position organelles in cells. Nat Commun 7:11814

Locke EG, Bonilla M, Liang L, Takita Y, Cunningham KW (2000) A homolog of voltage-gated Ca(2+) channels stimulated by depletion of secretory Ca(2+) in yeast. Mol Cell Biol 20:6686–6694

Lopez-Franco R, Bartnicki-Garcia S, Bracker CE (1994) Pulsed growth of fungal hyphal tips. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 91:12228–12232

Motoyama T, Kojima N, Horiuchi H, Ohta A, Takagi M (1994) Isolation of a chitin synthase gene (*chsC*) of *Aspergillus nidulans*. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 58:2254–2257

Muszkieta L, Aimanianda V, Mellado E, Gribaldo S, Alcàzar-Fuoli L, Szewczyk E, Prevost MC, Latgé JP (2014) Deciphering the role of the chitin synthase families 1 and 2 in the in vivo and in vitro growth of *Aspergillus fumigatus* by multiple gene targeting deletion. Cell Microbiol 16:1784–1805

Nienhaus GU, Nienhaus K, Holzle A, Ivanchenko S, Renzi F et al (2006) Photoconvertible fluorescent protein EosFP: biophysical properties and cell biology applications. Photochem Photobiol 82:351–358

Nienhaus K, Nienhaus GU, Wiedenmann J, Nar H (2005) Structural basis for photo-induced protein cleavage and green-to-red conversion of fluorescent protein EosFP. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 102:9156–9159

Paidhungat M, Garrett S (1997) A homolog of mammalian, voltage-gated calcium channels mediates yeast pheromone-stimulated Ca^{2+} uptake and exacerbates the cdc1(Ts) growth defect. Mol Cell Biol 17:6339–6347

Pantazopoulou A, Pinar M, Xiang X, Penalva MA (2014) Maturation of late Golgi cisternae into RabE(RAB11) exocytic post-Golgi carriers visualized in vivo. Mol Biol Cell 25:2428–2443

Penalva MA, Zhang J, Xiang X, Pantazopoulou A (2017) Transport of fungal RAB11 secretory vesicles involves myosin-5, dynein/dynactin/p25 and kinesin-1 and is independent of kinesin-3. Mol Biol Cell 28:947–961

Perez-Nadales E, Nogueira MF, Baldin C, Castanheira S, El Ghalid M et al (2014) Fungal model systems and the elucidation of pathogenicity determinants. Fungal Genet Biol 70:42–67

Pinar M, Arst HN, Jr., Pantazopoulou A, Tagua VG, de los Rios V et al (2015) TRAPPII regulates exocytic Golgi exit by mediating nucleotide exchange on the Ypt31 ortholog RabERAB11. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 112:4346–51

Punt PJ, van Biezen N, Conesa A, Albers A, Mangnus J, van den Hondel C (2002) Filamentous fungi as cell factories for heterologous protein production. Trends Biotechnol 20:200–206

Riquelme M, Aguirre J, Bartnicki-García S, Braus GH, Feldbrügge M, Fleig U, Hansberg W, Herrera-Estrella A, Kämper J, Kück U, Mouriño-Pérez RR, Takeshita N, Fischer R (2018) Fungal morphogenesis, from the polarized growth of hyphae to complex reproduction and infection structures. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 82:e00068–17

Renshaw H, Vargas-Muñiz JM, Richards AD, Asfaw YG, Juvvadi PR, Steinbach WJ (2016) Distinct roles of myosins in *Aspergillus fumigatus* hyphal growth and pathogenesis. Infect Immun 84:1556–1564

Requena N, Alberti-Segui C, Winzenburg E, Horn C, Schliwa M et al (2001) Genetic evidence for a microtubule-destabilizing effect of conventional kinesin and analysis of its consequences for the control of nuclear distribution in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Mol Microbiol 42:121–132

Riquelme M, Bredeweg EL, Callejas-Negrete O, Roberson RW, Ludwig S et al (2014) The *Neurospora crassa* exocyst complex tethers Spitzenkörper vesicles to the apical plasma membrane during polarized growth. Mol Biol Cell 25:1312–1326

Riquelme M, Reynaga-Pena CG, Gierz G, Bartnicki-Garcia S (1998) What determines growth direction in fungal hyphae? Fungal gGenet Biol 24:101–109

Riquelme M, Sanchez-Leon E (2014) The Spitzenkörper: a choreographer of fungal growth and morphogenesis. Curr Opin Microbiol 20:27–33

Riquelme M, Yarden O, Bartnicki-Garcia S, Bowman B, Castro-Longoria E et al (2011) Architecture and development of the *Neurospora crassa* hypha—a model cell for polarized growth. Fungal Biol 115:446–474

Rittenour WR, Si H, Harris SD (2009) Hyphal morphogenesis in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Fungal Biol Rev 23:20–29

Rogg LE, Fortwendel JR, Juvvadi PR, Steinbach WJ (2012) Regulation of expression, activity and localization of fungal chitin synthases. Med Mycol 50:2–17

Sacristan C, Reyes A, Roncero C (2012) Neck compartmentalization as the molecular basis for the different endocytic behaviour of Chs3 during budding or hyperpolarized growth in yeast cells. Mol Microbiol 83:1124–1135

Sahl SJ, Moerner WE (2013) Super-resolution fluorescence imaging with single molecules. Curr Opin Struct Biol 23:778–787

Schneggenburger R, Neher E (2005) Presynaptic calcium and control of vesicle fusion. Curr Opin Neurobiol 15:266–274

Schuster M, Kilaru S, Fink G, Collemare J, Roger Y, Steinberg G (2011) Kinesin-3 and dynein cooperate in long-range retrograde endosome motility along a nonuniform microtubule array. Mol Biol Cell 22:3645–3657

Schuster M, Martin-Urdiroz M, Higuchi Y, Hacker C, Kilaru S, Gurr SJ, Steinberg G (2016) Co-delivery of cell-wall-forming enzymes in the same vesicle for coordinated fungal cell wall formation. Nat Microbiol 1:16149

Seiler S, Nargang FE, Steinberg G, Schliwa M (1997) Kinesin is essential for cell morphogenesis and polarized secretion in *Neurospora crassa*. EMBO J 16:3025–3034

Serrano A, Hammadeh HH, Herzog S, Illgen J, Schumann MR et al (2017) The dynamics of signal complex formation mediating germling fusion in *Neurospora crassa*. Fungal Genet Biol 101:31–33

Smedler E, Uhlen P (2014) Frequency decoding of calcium oscillations. Biochim Biophys Acta 1840:964–969

Steinberg G (2011) Motors in fungal morphogenesis: cooperation versus competition. Current Opin Microbiol 14:660–667

Sudvery PE (2008) Regulation of polarized growth in fungi. Fungal Biol Rev 22:44–55

Taheri-Talesh N, Horio T, Araujo-Bazan L, Dou X, Espeso EA et al (2008) The tip growth apparatus of *Aspergillus nidulans*. Mol Biol Cell 19:1439–1449

Taheri-Talesh N, Xiong Y, Oakley BR (2012) the Functions of myosin II and myosin V homologs in tip growth and septation in *Aspergillus nidulans*. PLoS ONE 7:e31218

Takeshita N (2016) Coordinated process of polarized growth in filamentous fungi. Biosci Biotech Biochem 80:1693–1699

Takeshita N (2018) Oscillatory fungal cell growth. Fungal Genet Biol 110:10–14

Takeshita N, Evangelinos M, Zhou L, Serizawa T, Somera-Fajardo RA et al (2017) Pulses of Ca^{2+} coordinate actin assembly and exocytosis for stepwise cell extension. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 114:5701–5706

Takeshita N, Higashitsuji Y, Konzack S, Fischer R (2008) Apical sterol-rich membranes are essential for localizing cell end markers that determine growth directionality in the filamentous fungus *Aspergillus nidulans*. Mol Biol Cell 19:339–351

Takeshita N, Manck R, Grun N, de Vega SH, Fischer R (2014) Interdependence of the actin and the microtubule cytoskeleton during fungal growth. Curr Opin Microbiol 20:34–41

Takeshita N, Ohta A, Horiuchi H (2005) CsmA, a class V chitin synthase with a myosin motor-like domain, is localized through direct interaction with the actin cytoskeleton in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Mol Biol Cell 16:1961–1970

Takeshita N, Yamashita S, Ohta A, Horiuchi H (2006) *Aspergillus nidulans* class V and VI chitin synthases CsmA and CsmB, each with a myosin motor-like domain, perform compensatory functions that are essential for hyphal tip growth. Mol Microbiol 59:1380–1394

Takeshita N, Wernet V, Tsuizaki M, Grun N, Hoshi HO et al (2015) Transportation of *Aspergillus nidulans* class III and V chitin synthases to the hyphal tips depends on conventional kinesin. PLoS ONE 10:e0125937

Tanenbaum ME, Gilbert LA, Qi LS, Weissman JS, Vale RD (2014) A protein-tagging system for signal amplification in gene expression and fluorescence imaging. Cell 159:635–646

Wang S, Cao J, Liu X, Hu H, Shi J et al (2012) Putative calcium channels CchA and MidA play the important roles in conidiation, hyphal polarity and cell wall components in *Aspergillus nidulans*. PLoS ONE 7:e46564

Wiedenmann J, Gayda S, Adam V, Oswald F, Nienhaus K et al (2011) From EosFP to mIrisFP: structure-based development of advanced photoactivatable marker proteins of the GFP-family. J Biophotn 4:377–390

Yanai K, Kojima N, Takaya N, Horiuchi H, Ohta A, Takagi M (1994) Isolation and characterization of two chitin synthase genes from *Aspergillus nidulans*. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 58:1828–1835

Zelter A, Bencina M, Bowman BJ, Yarden O, Read ND (2004) A comparative genomic analysis of the calcium signaling machinery in *Neurospora crassa, Magnaporthe grisea*, and *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Fungal Genet Biol 41:827–841

Zhou L, Evangelinos M, Wernet V, Eckert AF, Ishitsuka Y, Fischer R, Nienhaus GU, Takeshita N (2018) Superresolution and pulse-chase imaging reveal the role of vesicle transport in polar growth of fungal cells. Sci Adv 4:e1701798

Glucanases and Chitinases

César Roncero and Carlos R. Vázquez de Aldana

Contents

1 The Fungal Cell Wall and Its Components 132
1.1 Glucans 132
1.2 Chitin 133
2 Fungal Glucanases 134
2.1 General Features of Glucan-Hydrolysing Enzymes 134
2.2 Function of Fungal α- and β-Glucanases 136
3 Fungal Chitinases 150
3.1 Organising the Action: From Chitin to *N*-Acetylglucosamine 150
3.2 Structure and Diversity Between Fungal Chitinases 151
3.3 The Biological Roles of Fungal Chitinases 153
3.4 The Role of Chitinases in Fungal Morphogenesis: From Yeasts to Filamentous Cells 155
3.5 The Far Side of Chitinases in Fungal Cells 158
4 Concluding Remarks 159
References 160

Abstract In many yeast and fungi, β-(1,3)-glucan and chitin are essential components of the cell wall, an important structure that surrounds cells and which is responsible for their mechanical protection and necessary for maintaining the cellular shape. In addition, the cell wall is a dynamic structure that needs to be remodelled along with the different phases of the fungal life cycle or in response to extracellular stimuli. Since β-(1,3)-glucan and chitin perform a central structural role in the assembly of the cell wall, it has been postulated that β-(1,3)-glucanases and chitinases should perform an important function in cell wall softening and remodelling. This review focusses on fungal glucanases and chitinases and their role during fungal morphogenesis.

C. Roncero · C. R. Vázquez de Aldana (✉)
Instituto de Biología Funcional Y Genómica (IBFG), Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas/Universidad de Salamanca, Salamanca, Spain
e-mail: cvazquez@usal.es

C. Roncero
e-mail: crm@usal.es

Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology (2020) 425: 131–166
https://doi.org/10.1007/82_2019_185
© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2019
Published Online: 6 December 2019

1 The Fungal Cell Wall and Its Components

The cell wall is the outer structure that surrounds the fungal cell and is essential for the mechanical protection of the cell and to maintain the cellular shape. In spite of their rigidity and mechanical properties, fungal cell walls are highly dynamic structures required to maintain cell viability, and their composition and structure changes in response to environmental growth conditions and extracellular stresses. In addition, it needs to be remodelled during diverse morphogenetic processes, such as cell growth, cytokinesis or the development of specialised types of fungal cells (reviewed in Latgé 2007; Levin 2011; Free 2013; Gow et al. 2017; Hopke et al. 2018). During fungal infections, the cell wall is the interface of the pathogen that interacts with host cells, therefore playing a key role in fungal pathogenicity and virulence (reviewed in Erwig and Gow 2016; Geoghegan et al. 2017; Latgé et al. 2017). The cell wall provides adherent properties that are vital for an invasion of the host tissues and protects against the defensive machinery of the host (reviewed in Lipke 2018).

Most fungal cell walls have a similar multi-layered structure, with an innermost layer built of a matrix of long chains of structural polysaccharides to which a variety of proteins and other superficial components are added to form the outer layers, which are more heterogeneous and sometimes species-specific (reviewed in Latgé 2007; Orlean 2012; Free 2013; Klis et al. 2014; Latgé and Beauvais 2014; Gow et al. 2017). The inner layer in most fungi is composed of branched β-(1,3)-glucan, with both β-(1,6)-glucan and some chitin being connected to the non-reducing ends (NREs) of the glucan filament, whereas the outer layers are more varied and contain many glycoproteins that are covalently attached to the glucan network (reviewed in Klis et al. 2001, 2002; Lesage and Bussey 2006; Latgé 2007; Cabib and Arroyo 2013). Fungal cells contain a large collection of carbohydrate active enzymes required for the assembly and modification of this structure along the life cycle and also in response to environmental stresses. These include multigene families of chitin and glucan synthases as well as remodelling enzymes such as glycohydrolases (glucanases, chitinases) and transglycosidases.

1.1 Glucans

The main glucan of the inner layer is β-(1,3)-glucan, composed of glucose monomers linked by β-(1,3) bonds, although there are also β-(1,6), α-(1,3) and α-(1,4)-glucans. β-(1,3)-glucan is usually the most abundant glucan, accounting for 65–90% of the total cell wall β-glucans. Depending on the organism, β-(1,3)-glucan represents between 25–30% of the total cell wall in *Aspergillus fumigatus* to 50–55% in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* and *Schizosaccharomyces pombe* (Lipke and Ovalle 1998; Gastebois et al. 2009; Orlean 2012). This polymer is mainly composed of a β-(1,3)-glucan backbone periodically branched with β-(1,6)-linked β-(1,3)-glucan side

chains. The frequency of β-(1,6) branches varies depending on the organism (reviewed in Latgé 2007; Orlean 2012; Gow et al. 2017).

The fungal cell walls also contain a lower proportion of β-(1,6)-glucan, ranging from 5 to 12% in *S. cerevisiae* to 21% in *Candida albicans* (Manners et al. 1973; Klis et al. 1997; Lipke and Ovalle 1998; Lesage and Bussey 2006; Orlean 2012). The structure and degree of branching are highly variable depending on the fungi. *S. pombe* is the organism that contains a higher degree of branched β-(1,6)-glucan (Magnelli et al. 2005), whereas linear β-(1,6)-glucan is absent in *A. fumigatus*. β-(1,6)-glucan acts as a glue to covalently bind β-(1,3)-glucan, chitin and glycoproteins (Kollar et al. 1995; Kapteyn et al. 1996; Kollar et al. 1997; Fontaine et al. 2000; Iorio et al. 2008). β-(1,6)-glucan is also important for the assembly of cell wall proteins (CWPs) to the β-(1,3)-glucan–chitin skeleton, acting as a linker that attaches the proteins via a glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI) remnants (Klis et al. 2001).

α-(1,3)-glucan is also important in the organisation of the cell wall of yeast and moulds human pathogens (*Cryptococcus neoformans* and *A. fumigatus*), as well as in *S. pombe,* but is absent from budding yeasts like *S. cerevisiae* or *C. albicans*. The fraction of this polymer is variable, ranging from 28 to 46% (reviewed in Yoshimi et al. 2017). α-(1,3)-glucan is crucial for the virulence of several fungal pathogens. Thus, it has been shown that the absence of α-(1,3)-glucan results in the loss of the surface capsule and prevents fungal pathogenesis in *C. neoformans* (Reese et al. 2007), and that deletion of the three α-(1,3)-glucan synthase genes in *A. fumigatus* produces extensive structural modifications of the conidial cell wall and decreased virulence (Beauvais et al. 2013).

1.2 Chitin

Chitin is an *N*-acetylglucosamine (GlcNAc) polymer in which the monomers are linked by β-(1,4) bonds. The microfibrils are stabilised through hydrogen bonds, resulting in a huge tensile strength (Gow et al. 2017). Chitin is present in the cell wall of all fungal species except *S. pombe*, although the proportion varies greatly. In budding yeast, it only represents around 1–3% of the cell wall, whereas it is around 10–20% in *A. fumigatus* and *Neurospora crassa* (Kapteyn et al. 1997; Bowman and Free 2006; Lesage and Bussey 2006).

Even though chitin is a minor component of the cell wall in budding yeast, it is essential for cell survival since it plays an important role in cell division (reviewed in Cabib and Arroyo 2013). A fraction of the chitin is attached to β-(1,3)-glucan, and another fraction is free (Kollar et al. 1997). In yeasts, chitin is attached to β-(1,6)-glucan through a β-(1,3)-linked glucose branch and to the NRE terminal glucose of β-(1,3)-glucan. A detailed analysis of the binding status of chitin in budding yeasts has shown differences depending on the cell wall position (Cabib and Durán 2005). Thus, most of the bound chitin at the bud neck is linked to β-(1,3)-glucan, in lateral walls the attachment to β-(1,6)-glucan predominates, and most of the chitin in the primary septum is free.

2 Fungal Glucanases

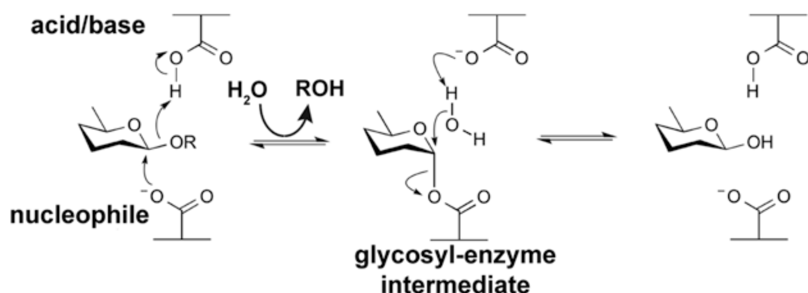
2.1 General Features of Glucan-Hydrolysing Enzymes

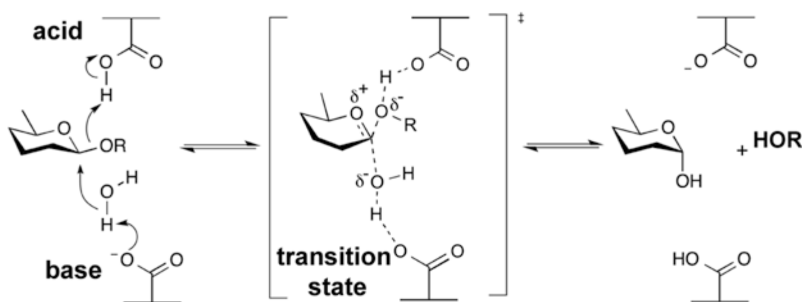
Glucan-hydrolysing enzymes, also known as glycoside hydrolases (GH) or glycosidases, are enzymes that catalyse the hydrolytic cleavage of glycosidic bonds, leading to the formation of a sugar hemiacetal. Glucan-hydrolysing enzymes are present in many different organisms, including fungi, bacteria, archaea, algae, molluscs and higher plants (reviewed in Pitson et al. 1993; Martin et al. 2007). These enzymes catalyse the hydrolysis of glycosidic bonds via general acid catalysis, and they require a proton donor and nucleophile/base for activity, which are provided by two amino acids, typically glutamate or aspartate. Two reaction mechanisms are found for these enzymes, leading to the retention or inversion of the anomeric configuration (Davies and Henrissat 1995) (Fig. 1a). In both mechanisms, the position of the proton donor is identical, but the nucleophilic base is in close proximity to the sugar anomeric carbon in retaining enzymes, while it is more distant in inverting enzymes which must accommodate a water molecule between the base and the sugar (McCarter and Withers 1994).

Hydrolysis with the retention of configuration is normally achieved via two steps, double-displacement mechanism involving a covalent glycosyl enzyme intermediate. In the first step, the nucleophile attacks the anomeric centre to displace the aglycone and forms a glycosyl enzyme intermediate. In the second step, the glycosyl enzyme is hydrolysed by water. Hydrolysis with the inversion of the anomeric configuration occurs in one step by a single-displacement mechanism involving oxocarbenium ion-like transition states.

2.1.1 Modes of Action of Fungal Glucanases

GHs can be classified in many different ways. Glucanases have been systematically classified by the type of glycosidic linkages that they hydrolyse and their action pattern. Two major groups are recognised: exo- and endo-hydrolases. The terms *exo*- and *endo*- refer to the ability of a GH to cleave the substrate at the end (usually the NRE) or within the middle of a chain (Fig. 1b) (Davies and Henrissat 1995). Exo-hydrolases cleave glucose residues from the NRE, generating glucose as the only product, while endo-hydrolases cleave internal linkages at apparently random sites, releasing smaller oligosaccharides as products. In the context of the cell wall, some fungal glucanases can also function as glucosyltransferases (Fontaine et al. 1997a; Mouyna et al. 1998). Glucanases may cleave a single glucan chain several times before being freed from their substrate for further hydrolysis or can function by a multi-chain single attack strategy, where another glucan chain is attacked soon after the initial glucan chain is cleaved, as has been described for exo-β-(1,3)-glucanase in *A. fumigatus* (Fontaine et al. 1997a).





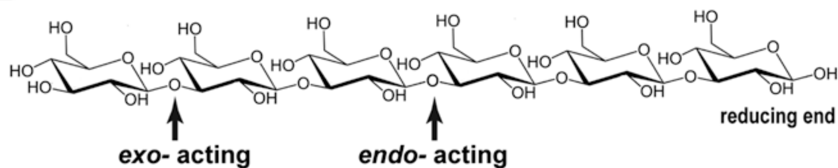


Fig. 1 Mechanism of action of glucanases. **a** Glycoside hydrolases catalyse the hydrolysis of glycosidic bonds via general acid catalysis. Two reaction mechanisms are most commonly found for these enzymes, leading to the retention or the inversion of the anomeric configuration. Hydrolysis with retention of configuration is achieved via two steps, double-displacement mechanism involving a covalent glycosyl enzyme intermediate. Hydrolysis with inversion of the anomeric configuration occurs in one step by a single-displacement mechanism. **b** Exo-hydrolases hydrolyse the glucan chain by cleaving glucose residues from the non-reducing end, generating glucose as the only hydrolysis product. Endo-hydrolases cleave internal linkages along the polysaccharide chain, releasing smaller oligosaccharides as hydrolysis products

Another classification of GHs is based on EC codes assigned by the Enzyme Commission number. This is a numerical classification of enzymes based solely on the chemical reactions that they catalyse. All of the enzymes that catalyse the same reaction receive the same EC number, and when an enzyme can catalyse different reactions, it can bear more than one EC number. For instance, glycoside hydrolases belong to the EC 3.2.1-class, and this includes enzymes hydrolysing *O*- and *S*-glucosyl compounds.

2.1.2 Sequence-Based Classification of Fungal Glucanases: CAZy Database

A classification of glycoside hydrolases based on sequence and structural data was developed several years ago by Henrissat (1991), which uses algorithmic methods to assign sequences to various families. GHs have been classified into more than 160 families (Bourne and Henrissat 2001), with a classification that is permanently updated and available through the carbohydrate active enzyme (CAZy, http://www.cazy.org/) database (Lombard et al. 2014) and the associated CAZypedia (CAZypedia_Consortium 2018). Each GH family contains proteins that are related by sequence and/or structure, which indicates a similar mechanism of action and a similar geometry around the glycosidic bond (Henrissat et al. 1995). GH families are grouped into larger groups, termed “clans” (Davies and Henrissat 1995; Henrissat and Bairoch 1996). Therefore, this classification reveals the possible phylogenetic relationship between different families based on structural features rather than a common mechanism of action. For example, enzymes with glucan exo-β-(1,3)-glucosidase activity (E.C.3.2.1.58) are found in families 3, 5, 16, 17 and 55, while those with glucan endo-β-(1,3)-glucosidase activity (E.C.3.2.1.39) are present in families 17 and 55, but also in families 16, 64, 81, 128, 152, 157 and 158.

2.2 Function of Fungal α- and β-Glucanases

The fungal cell wall is a complex network in which abundant branching and extensive cross-linking between chitin, glucan and other wall components exist (Cabib et al. 2001; Klis et al. 2002). In spite of its mechanical strength, the cell wall is a highly dynamic structure that is constantly being remodelled during the life cycle of fungi, such as during cell expansion and cell separation in yeasts, and during spore germination, hyphal branching or septum formation in filamentous fungi (reviewed in Adams 2004; Roncero and Sánchez 2010; Mouyna et al. 2013). In addition, environmental signals, such as nutrients or pH, can modulate cell wall composition and architecture, as shown in *C. albicans* (Ene et al. 2015; Sherrington et al. 2017).

Glucan and chitin biosynthetic enzymes generate long, linear chains of β-(1,3)-glucose or β-(1,4)-*N*-acetylglucosamine, respectively. Therefore, branching and cross-linking of the different components and cell wall remodelling during

morphogenetic processes depend on the activity of additional enzymatic activities associated with the fungal cell wall. Many fungal cell wall-associated proteins have been characterised to date, and they have different catalytic activities, such as glucanase or chitinase activity and some of them also function as transglycosidases. These enzymes therefore contribute to the remodelling of cell wall components during growth and morphogenesis, breaking and re-forming bonds within and between polymers.

Yeast and fungi contain a wide range of endo- and exo-glucanases belonging to different CAZy families. In most cases, they are multigene families which code for redundant proteins with similar catalytic activity, making the analysis of the function of each individual gene difficult. In some cases, proteins from the same family have different spatial or temporal regulation, either because they have different localisation signals or because they are differentially expressed, suggesting that the proteins perform their function at specific regions of the cell or at particular moments. Most of the fungal β-glucanases are secreted proteins that contain a signal sequence for secretion and either remain associated with the cell wall or are released to the surrounding medium where they exert their function. However, there are also examples of glucanases that lack a signal sequence and are present in the cytoplasm of cells, either as diffuse cytoplasmic proteins such as the *S. pombe* exo-glucanase SpExg3 or associated with the endocytic machinery, as is the case of the endo-glucanase SpEng2 (Dueñas-Santero et al. 2010; Encinar del Dedo et al. 2014).

This chapter is focused on hydrolase activities that are associated with the cell wall and have a defined role in fungal morphogenesis. In both saprophytic and mycoparasitic fungi, β-glucanases have an important nutritional role, where they are part of the biochemical machinery required for cell wall degradation. For example, mycoparasitic *Trichoderma* species secrete β-(1,3) and β-(1,6)-glucanases that efficiently hydrolyse other fungal cell walls (de la Cruz et al. 1995; Kim et al. 2002). These enzymes might also serve to degrade callose during plant parasitic attack (Moy et al. 2002). These enzymes are not discussed here (see Martin et al. 2007 for additional discussion).

2.2.1 Family GH5 Exo-Glucanases

Family GH5 is one of the largest groups of hydrolases with different substrate specificities such as β-glucosidase (EC 3.2.1.21), glucan β-(1,3)-glucosidase (EC 3.2.1.58), endo β-(1,4)-glucanase/cellulase (EC 3.2.1.4) or endo-β-(1,3)-glucanase/ laminarinase (EC 3.2.1.39). They are widely distributed across Archaea, bacteria and eukaryotes, notably fungi and plants, although there are no known human enzymes, and they have been classified into 51 different subfamilies (Aspeborg et al. 2012). We will focus on proteins belonging to Subfamily GH5_9, which includes a group of cell wall modifying enzymes present in yeast and fungi with glucan (1,3)-β-glucosidase (EC 3.2.1.58), endo-β-(1,6)-glucanase (EC 3.2.1.75) or β-glucosidase (EC 3.2.1.21) activity, and that are thought to function in fungal cell

wall modification. All of them contain a GH5 domain accompanied by different localisation signals: some contain a signal sequence, some contain a GPI-anchor at the C-terminus or a single transmembrane domain (TM) for membrane association and others appear to be intracellular.

Members of this subfamily are present in most yeast and fungi, often as a family of redundant enzymes. *S. cerevisiae* contains three related exo-β-(1,3)-glucanases known as ScExg1, ScExg2 and ScSsg1. According to the InterPro Database (Mitchell et al. 2019), the three contain a GH5 domain after a signal sequence but have different functions in the life cycle. ScExg1 is an extracellular protein while ScExg2 is bound to the membrane via a GPI-anchor (Fig. 2a and Table 1) (Vázquez de Aldana et al. 1991; Larriba et al. 1995). *SSG1* (also known as *SPR1*) codes for a sporulation-specific exo-β-(1,3)-glucanase present in sporulating diploids, and its deletion produces a delay in the formation of mature asci and reduces spore thermoresistance (Muthukumar et al. 1993; San Segundo et al. 1993).

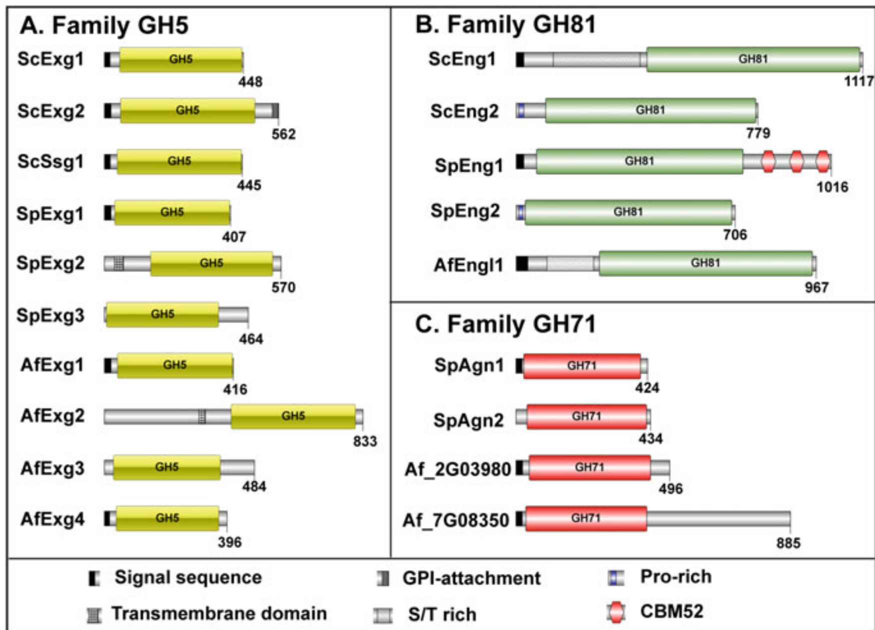


Fig. 2 Domain organisation of GH5, GH81 and GH71 glucanases. **a** Schematic representation of the domain organisation of GH5 hydrolases from *S. cerevisiae, S. pombe* and *A. fumigatus*. Protein domains were identified using the InterPro database (http://www.ebi.ac.uk/interpro/) and are drawn to scale. Proteins in this family have a Glycoside hydrolase family 5 domain (IPR001547) and different localisation signals. Length of the protein is indicated at the C-terminus. **b** GH81 proteins contain a glycosyl hydrolase family 81 domain (IPR040451 and IPR040720), preceded by a signal sequence or a Pro-rich region. In *S. pombe*, SpEng1 has three repeats of the carbohydrate-binding module family CBM52 (IPR018909) at the C-terminus of the protein. **c** α-glucanases contain a Glycoside hydrolase family 71 domain (IPR005197). Only two of the *A. fumigatus* GH71 α-glucanases (AFUA_2G03980 and AFUA_7G08350) are shown

In contrast, no growth phenotype for the single *exg1*Δ and *exg2*Δ mutants has been observed (Vázquez de Aldana et al. 1991; Larriba et al. 1995), and the triple *ssg1*Δ *exg1*Δ *exg2*Δ mutant is similar to the *ssg1*Δ mutant in sporulation (San Segundo et al. 1993).

C. albicans also contains three GH5 proteins, known as CaXog1, CaExg2 and CaSpr1. CaXog1 is similar in organisation to ScExg1, whereas CaExg2 and CaSpr1 contain a putative GPI-attachment site. *xog1*Δ null mutants have no growth or filamentation defects, indicating that the enzyme is not essential in *C. albicans*, although the mutant is slightly more sensitive to glucan synthesis inhibitors and more resistant to chitin biosynthesis inhibitors than the parental strain (González et al. 1997).

S. pombe contains three orthologues that have been characterised (Dueñas-Santero et al. 2010). SpExg1 is a secreted protein; SpExg2 has a TM domain, and it remains associated with the membrane; and SpExg3 is a cytoplasmic protein (Fig. 2a and Table 1). The phenotype of the triple *exg1*Δ *exg2*Δ *exg3*Δ mutant is similar to the parental strain, but overexpression of SpExg2 produces an increase in cell wall material at the poles and septum (Dueñas-Santero et al. 2010).

The *A. fumigatus* genome contains four GH5 proteins (AfExg1 to AfExg4) with different predicted localisations (Mouyna et al. 2013) (Fig. 2a and Table 1) although their function is unknown, since none of the genes has been deleted.

Characterisation of the biochemical activity of the proteins indicated that ScExg1 and CaXog1 are able to degrade β-(1,3)-glucans (Vázquez de Aldana et al. 1991; Chambers et al. 1993). However, *S. cerevisiae exg1*Δ mutants were found to be more sensitive to the K1 killer toxin while *EXG1* overexpression led to resistance (Jiang et al. 1995). Increased resistance to this toxin often correlates with low levels of β-(1,6)-glucan, which is the receptor molecule (Shahinian and Bussey 2000). Furthermore, *EXG1* overexpression also resulted in a modest reduction in the cell wall β-(1,6)-glucan while disruption of the gene led to a small increase in this component. Therefore, it was suggested that ScExg1 may have a functional role in cell wall glucan metabolism and might function in vivo as a β-(1,6)-glucanase (Jiang et al. 1995). Interestingly, recombinant ScExg1 is able to cleave β-(1,3)-linkages as well as β-(1,6)-linkages (Suzuki et al. 2001). The activity of CaXog1 was also characterised and has marked specificity for β-(1,3)-linkages, and it also acts as a transglycosylase in the presence of high concentrations of laminari-oligosaccharides (Stubbs et al. 1999). Analysis of the enzymatic activity of the *S. pombe* proteins shows that SpExg1 and SpExg3 are only active on β-(1,6)-glucans with an endo-hydrolytic mode of action while no enzymatic activity was detected for SpExg2 (Dueñas-Santero et al. 2010). The *exg1*$^{+}$ gene has periodic expression during the cell cycle, with a maximum coincident with the septation process and SpExg1 localises to the septum region, suggesting a possible function in the assembly or remodelling of this structure.

Table 1 Cell wall glucanases and chitinases present in yeast and fungi

Glucanases				
Family	*S. cerevisiae*	*C. albicans*	*S. pombe*	*A. fumigatus*
GH3	–	Bgl22 (CR_09420C_A) Ngs1 (CR_00190W_A)	SPBC1683.04	Exg12 (AFUA_1G05770) Exg13 (AFUA_7G06140) Exg14 (AFUA_7G00240) Exg15 (AFUA_1G17410) Exg16 (AFUA_8G02100) Exg17 (AFUA_6G14490) Exg18 (AFUA_5G07190) Exg19 (AFUA_6G11910) Exg20 (AFUA_6G08700) Exg21 (AFUA_6G03570)
GH5	Exg1 (YLR300w) Exg2 (YDR261c) Ssg1/Spr1 (YOR190w)	Xog1 (C1_02990C_A) Exg2 (C1_02630C_A) Spr1 (C2_06840W_A)	Exg1 (SPBC1105.05) Exg2 (SPAC12B10.11) Exg3 (SPBC2D10.05)	Exg1 (AFUA_1G03600) Exg2 (AFUA_6G09250) Exg3 (AFUA_7G05610) Exg4 (AFUA_2G09350)
GH16	–	–	SPBC21B10.07	Eng2 (AFUA_2G14360) Eng3 (AFUA_1G05290) Eng4 (AFUA_5G02280) Eng5 (AFUA_4G13360) Eng6 (AFUA_6G14540) Eng7 (AFUA_3G03080) Eng8 (AFUA_5G14030)
GH55	–	–	–	Exg5 (AFUA_6G11980) Exg6 (AFUA_6G13270) Exg7 (AFUA_3G07520) Exg8 (AFUA_1G14450) Exg9 (AFUA_2G00430) Exg10 (AFUA_4G03350)
GH71	–	–	Agn1 (SPAC14C4.09) Agn2 (SPBC646.06c)	AFUA_2G03980 AFUA_5G03940 AFUA_7G08510 AFUA_1G03340 AFUA_1G00650 AFUA_8G06030 AFUA_7G08350
GH81	Eng1/Dse4 (YNR067c) Eng2/Acf2 (YLR144c)	Eng1 (C1_03680W_A) Eng2 (C1_03680W_A)	Eng1 (SPAC821.09) Eng2 (SPAC23D3.10c)	Engl1 (AFUA_1G04260)
GH132 G. I	Sun4/Scw3 (YNL2411w) Uth1 (YKR042w) Sim1 (YIL123w) Nca3 (YJL116c)	Sun41 (C6_00820W_A) Sun42 (C1_13940W_A)	Psu1 (SPAC1002.13c) SPBC2G2.17c	Sun1 (AFUA_7G05450)
G. II	YMR244w	C3_04450C_A	Adg3 (SPCC18.01c)	Sun2 (AFUA_1G13940)

Table 1 Cell wall glucanases and chitinases present in yeast and fungi

Chitinases (Family GH18)			
	Class A	Class B	Class C
S. cerevisiae	Cts2 (YDR371 W)	Cts1 (YLR286C)	
C. albicans	Cht4 (C2_02010C_A)	Cht1 (CR_00180C_A) Cht2 (C5_04130C_A) Cht3 (CR_10110W_A)	
U. maydis	Cts1 (UMAG_10419) Cts3 (UMAG_06190)	Cts2 (UMAG_02758)	
N. crassa	Ncgh18-2 (NCU03209) Ncgh18-3 (NCU03026) Ncgh18-4 (NCU04883) Ncgh18-5 (NCU04554) Ncgh18-7 (NCU06020)	Ncgh18-1 (NCU04500) Ncgh18-10 (NCU01393) Ncgh18-11 (NCU12033) Ncchit-1 (NCU02184)	Ncgh18-6 (NCU05317) Ncgh18-8 (NCU07484) Ncgh18-9 (NCU07035)
A. fumigatus	AFUA_1G02800 AFUA_8G01410 AFUA_7G08490 AFUA_3G11280 AFUA_1G00310 AFUA_3G07160	AFUA_5G03960 AFUA_5G06840 AFUA_6G13720 AFUA_5G01400 AFUA_6G09310 AFUA_6G09780	Chi1 (AFUA_5G03760) Chi2 (AFUA_8G00700) Chi3 (AFUA_7G05140) Chi4 (AFUA_5G03530) Chi5 (AFUA_3G07110)

The common name of the protein and the systematic name of the gene are indicated. Group I (G. I) and Group II (G. II) glucanases are indicated in family GH132

2.2.2 Family GH81 Endo-Glucanases

Family GH81 contains proteins with endo-β-(1,3)-glucanase (EC 3.2.1.39) activity. Two orthologues are present in *S. cerevisiae*, *S. pombe* and *C. albicans*, known as Eng1 and Eng2, while a single member is present in *A. fumigatus* (*ENGL1*) (Table 1). AfEngl1 was initially isolated as a glycosylated protein from *A. fumigatus* autolysates (Fontaine et al. 1997a) and represents 10–15% of the β-(1,3)-glucanase activity of *A. fumigatus* cell walls. The active site of the enzyme recognises five glucose units linked by a β-(1,3) bond. The activity of ScEng1, SpEng1 and SpEng2 was also characterised, and they have the same enzymatic activity as that described for AfEngl1 (Baladrón et al. 2002; Martín-Cuadrado et al. 2008b).

GH81 endo-glucanases have different localisations. Eng1 proteins in *S. cerevisiae*, *C. albicans* and *A. fumigatus* have a signal sequence followed by a Ser/Thr-rich region and the C-terminal GH81 domain, suggesting that they are secreted proteins (Fig. 2b). In *S. pombe,* SpEng1 contains a C-terminal carbohydrate-binding module (CBM) consisting of three repeats of 50 amino acids, each belonging to family CBM52, which are essential for catalytic activity against insoluble substrates and for in vivo localisation (Martín-Cuadrado et al. 2003, 2008a). Eng2 proteins lack any secretion signal and only contain the GH81 domain. They are cytoplasmic enzymes containing a Pro-rich region near the N-terminus.

Their function has been analysed in yeast and fungi. Deletion of *ENG1* in *S. cerevisiae* results in the formation of clumps of cells, suggesting that ScEng1, like

the ScCts1 chitinase, is involved in the dissolution of the mother–daughter septum during cell separation (Baladrón et al. 2002); a similar function has been described for CaEng1 (Esteban et al. 2005). CaEng1 partially complements the separation defect of the *S. cerevisiae eng1*Δ mutant, suggesting a close functional relationship between them. ScEng1 asymmetrically localises to the daughter side of the septum, since *ENG1* is one of the daughter-specific genes regulated by the ScAce2 transcription factor (Colman-Lerner et al. 2001; Baladrón et al. 2002).

In *S. pombe*, the absence of SpEng1 produces defects in cell separation, since mutant cells fail to degrade the primary septum (Martín-Cuadrado et al. 2003). The septum in fission yeast is different to that of budding yeast, and the primary septum is mainly composed of linear β-(1,3)-glucan instead of chitin (reviewed in Sipiczki 2007; García-Cortés et al. 2016). Thus, SpEng1 has the same function as chitinase ScCts1 in *S. cerevisiae*, which provides the main catalytic activity required for primary septum dissolution. SpEng1 is secreted to the septum, forming a ring that surrounds it; its localisation requires a functional exocyst and septins, as well as CBM52 (Martín-Cuadrado et al. 2005, 2008a).

The gene encoding a GH81 endo-β-(1,3)-glucanase in *A. fumigatus* was cloned and named *ENGL1* (Mouyna et al. 2002). Initial studies indicated that this endo-β-(1,3)-glucanase has no relevant morphogenetic function, since the Δ*engl1* deletion mutant has no apparent phenotype, consistent with the fact that *A. fumigatus* is a filamentous fungus that does not require cell separation. However, recent studies have shown that AfEngl1 is expressed in resting conidia and during germination, and that AfEngl1, together with four other endo-β-(1,3)-glucanases from Family GH16, contributes separation of the conidia (Mouyna et al. 2016) (see 2.2.7. Family GH16 glucanases).

The function of the cytoplasmic Eng2 has been characterised in *S. pombe.* SpEng2 has also endo-β-(1,3)-glucanase (Martín-Cuadrado et al. 2008b) and performs its function after sporulation, being required for degradation of the ascus wall and for spore release (Encinar del Dedo et al. 2009). Later, it was shown that SpEng2 plays an additional function during vegetative growth, which is unrelated to its enzymatic activity, suggesting that it is a new "moonlighting protein" (reviewed in Gancedo and Flores 2008; Royle 2011). Depletion of SpEng2 causes profound defects in endocytic uptake, which are not due to the absence of the glucanase activity but require the N-terminal Pro-rich region (Encinar del Dedo et al. 2014). It was proposed that SpEng2 is a component of a novel endocytic module, which probably couples the endocytic coat to the actin module during endocytosis. Interestingly, its orthologue in *S. cerevisiae* might have a similar function, since it is also known as ScAcf2 (Assembly Complimenting Factor 2), and it was originally identified as a factor required for the polymerisation of cortical actin patches in semi-permeabilised cells (Lechler and Li 1997).

2.2.3 Family GH71 α-Glucanases

α-(1,3)-glucanases (mutanases, EC3.2.1.59) hydrolyse α-(1,3)-glucan and these enzymes are grouped into two GH families, GH71 glucanases present in fungi and

GH87 enzymes from bacteria (for a review, see Suyotha et al. 2016). Blast searches and phylogenetic analyses showed a high number of proteins containing GH71 domains in Basidiomycota and Pezizomycotina, but not in Saccharomycotina (Sipiczki et al. 2014). The lack of GH71 proteins in Saccharomycotina species, such as *S. cerevisiae* or *C. albicans,* is associated with the lack of α-(1,3)-glucan in the cell walls of these yeasts.

Fungal α-(1,3)-glucanases are divided into two subgroups based on the physiological roles. The first group is α-(1,3)-glucanases from *Trichoderma,* a mycoparasitic fungi that secrete many cell wall degrading enzymes with a nutritional role, hydrolysing extracellular carbohydrates for assimilation as carbon sources and will not be discussed further here. The typical example of the second group are the SpAgn1 and SpAgn2 α-(1,3)-glucanases from *S. pombe* (Fig. 2c and Table 1). SpAgn1 is only active against (1,3)-α-glucan, and the main reaction products are oligosaccharides with a degree of polymerisation of 2–7, and the same substrate specificity and mechanism of action was described for SpAgn2 (Dekker et al. 2004, 2007), indicating that both enzymes are α-(1,3)-glucanases with an endo-hydrolytic mode of action.

SpAgn1 and SpAgn2 are paralogues involved in different cellular processes. The deletion of $agn1^{+}$ results in the formation of clumps of cells that remain attached by cell wall material, an indication that it is involved in the hydrolysis of the cell wall α-(1,3)-glucan that surrounds the septum (the septum edging) (Dekker et al. 2004). SpAgn1 contains a signal sequence (Fig. 2c), and its correct localisation to the septum region requires the exocyst and septins (Martín-Cuadrado et al. 2005). Therefore, the complementary action of the β-glucanase SpEng1 and the α-glucanase SpAgn1 is necessary for the efficient degradation of the primary septum and the α- and β-glucans of the septum edging, allowing the two daughter cells to become two independent entities (Martín-Cuadrado et al. 2003; Dekker et al. 2004; García et al. 2005).

SpAgn2 is required for the endolysis of ascus cell wall, since the *agn2*Δ mutant has a defect in the release of the ascospores (Dekker et al. 2007). Therefore, the SpEng2 β-glucanase and the SpAgn2 α-glucanase form another pair of complementary enzymes with similar functions during sporulation. The fact that the deletion of either of these enzymes results in the same phenotype indicates that α-(1,3)-glucan and β-(1,3)-glucan from the diploid cell wall must be hydrolysed for ascospores to be efficiently released by the concerted action of SpAgn2 and SpEng2.

Paracoccidioides brasiliensis is a human systemic pathogen with clinical relevance in the Latin America area. The outermost layer of the cell wall is composed of α-(1,3)-glucan, and it is believed that it plays a protective role against host defence mechanisms (San-Blas et al. 1977). A single gene belonging to GH71 family has been identified and termed *AGN1*. Its transcription is sharply increased under growth conditions that induce α-(1,3)-glucan synthesis, suggesting a role in α-(1,3)-glucan remodelling (Villalobos-Duno et al. 2013). Interestingly, expression of *AGN1* in *S. pombe* was able to complement the separation defect of the *agn1*Δ mutant, indicating that it might have a similar function and be involved in the remodelling of the *P. brasiliensis* cell wall.

In *A. nidulans,* the α-(1,3)-glucanase *mutA* (AN7349) was identified as a gene that is differentially expressed during sexual development (Wei et al. 2001). In this organism, α-(1,3)-glucan is considered the main reserve material accumulated during vegetative growth and consumed during sexual development. However, the Δ*mutA* strain shows reduced degradation of α-(1,3)-glucan but it is able to form cleistothecia, probably because of genetic redundancy within this family of proteins. A similar function has been proposed for the *A. niger agnB* gene (van Munster et al. 2015). In *A. fumigatus*, seven proteins belonging to family GH71 are present (Fig. 2c and Table 1). All of them contain a signal sequence for secretion, but their function is currently unknown.

2.2.4 Family GH132 Exo-Glucanases

Family GH132 contains a group of fungal proteins that were initially annotated as β-glucosidases based on their sequence similarity to the BglA β-glucosidase of *Candida wickerhamii* (Skory and Freer 1995). Their biochemical activity was completely unknown until AfSun1 and CaSun41 were purified and characterised (Gastebois et al. 2013). Both are active against β-(1,3)-glucans but not against p-nitrophenyl-glucose (pNPG), confirming that they are not β-glucosidases. AfSun1 and CaSun41 act as exo-β-(1,3)-glucanases that degrade substrates from laminaribiose to insoluble β-(1,3)-glucans. Interestingly, a minor transferase activity was also detected. Based on these results, this group of proteins, which are also known as SUN proteins, were included in family GH132 in the CAZy database.

The SUN family was originally identified in *S. cerevisiae,* and it is composed of four paralogous genes: *SIM1*, *UTH1*, *NCA3* and *SUN4.* The proteins share a common structure that includes a signal peptide, a low complexity region rich in serine and threonine, and a conserved SUN domain characterised by a C-X5-C-X3-C-X24-C motif predicted to bind iron based on similarities to Fe-S proteins, although there are no experimental evidences indicating that iron is required for enzymatic activity (Fig. 3a) (Bandara et al. 1998). Phylogenetic analysis showed that they can be classified into two groups. Proteins from Group I have the described structure, whereas members of Group II have a shorter N-terminal region and different spacing between the third and fourth cysteines of the SUN domain (Firon et al. 2007).

SUN proteins were first described to be involved in different cellular processes in *S. cerevisiae*, such as yeast-ageing, resistance to various stresses, prolonged replicative lifespan or mitochondrial function (Pelissier et al. 1995; Bandara et al. 1998; Camougrand et al. 2004). Indeed, some proteins have a dual localisation in the cell wall and in the mitochondrial membrane (Velours et al. 2002). *S. cerevisiae* contains four GH132 proteins from Group I encoded by *SUN4/SCW3, UTH1, SIM1* and *NCA3* and a Group II protein (Ymr244w) (Table 1 and Fig. 3a). ScSun4 (ScScw3) was initially identified as a cell wall protein released from intact cells by dithiothreitol (Cappellaro et al. 1998), and it was shown to function during cell separation since the *sun4*Δ strain often possesses more than one bud, and daughter

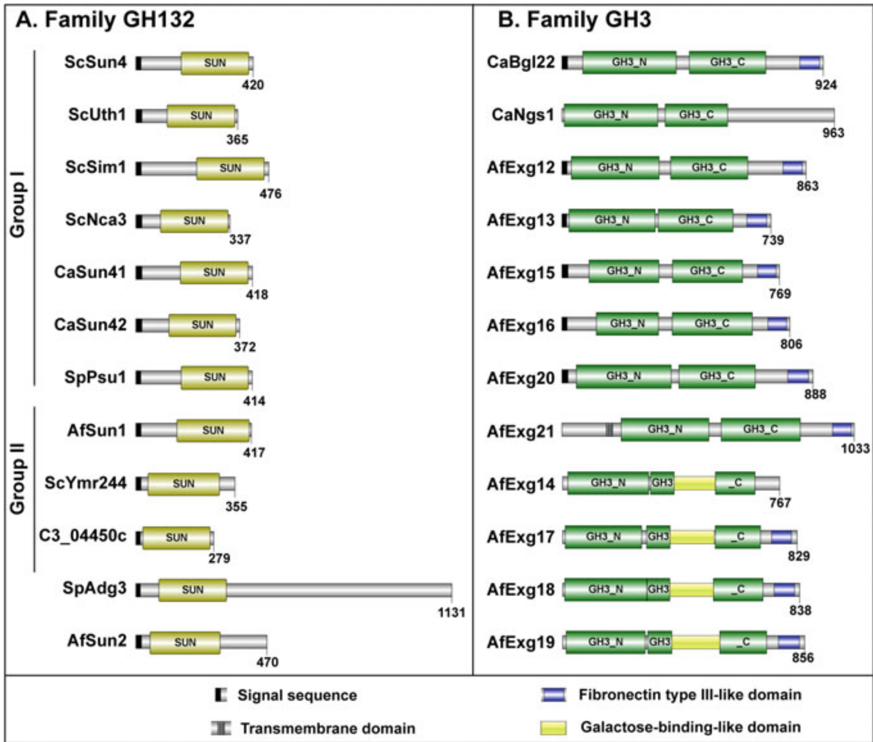


Fig. 3 Domain organisation of GH132 and GH3 glucanases. **a** GH132 glucanases or SUN proteins have been classified into two groups. Proteins from group I have a common structure that include a signal secretion peptide, a low complexity region rich in serine and threonine residues and a conserved C-terminal SUN domain (IPR005556) containing a C-X5-C-X3-C-X24-C motif. Members of group II have a shorter N-terminal region and a different spacing between the third and fourth cysteines of the SUN domain. **b** Schematic representation of the domain organisation of GH3 glucanases from *C. albicans* (CaBgl22 and CaNgs1) and *A. fumigatus* (AfExg12 to AfExg21). The GH3 is composed of two independent signatures in the InterPro database, the Glycoside hydrolase family 3, N-terminal domain (IPR001764) and the Glycoside hydrolase family 3, C-terminal domain (IPR002772). Most of the proteins contain a Fibronectin type III-like domain (IPR026891) near the C-terminus. The four *A. fumigatus* proteins that lack a secretion signal (AfExg14, AfExg17, AfExg18 and AfExg19) contain an insertion in the C-terminal GH3 domain that corresponds to a galactose-binding-like domain(IPR040502)

cells remain attached to the mother cell (Mouassite et al. 2000). More recently, ScSun4 was shown to localise to the daughter side of the bud neck together with ScDse2 and ScEgt2 and was involved in the separation of the daughter from the mother cell (Kuznetsov et al. 2016). ScUth1 may also affect the function of the cell wall, since the β-glucan and chitin composition of the *uth1*Δ mutant is different from that of the wild-type, and it is more resistant to zymolyase treatment (Ritch et al. 2010). Little is known about the function of the other three members of SUN family.

In *C. albicans*, there are three SUN proteins known as CaSun41, CaSun42 and C3_04450C_A (Table 1 and Fig. 3a). Deletion of *CaSUN41* also results in a separation defect, whereas the double deletion of *CaSUN41* and *CaSUN42* is synthetically lethal due to the lysis of mother cells after septation, and this phenotype is rescued by osmotic protection (Firon et al. 2007). Cell wall defects seen in this double mutant are mainly localised in the region surrounding the septa in mother yeast cells and subapical hyphal compartments. CaSun41 is also important for cell attachment to a substrate and for biofilm formation. The *sun41*Δ strain forms aberrant hyphae and has decreased virulence (Hiller et al. 2007; Norice et al. 2007). All of these observations led to the proposal that *C. albicans* SUN proteins could be involved in cell wall remodelling linked to the maintenance of cell integrity during cell division (Firon et al. 2007).

In *S. pombe*, there are three proteins containing a SUN domain, SpPsu1, SpAdg3 and SPBC2G2.17c. Deletion of the Group I gene *psu1*$^+$ results in cell wall defects during cell separation, generating swollen cells that eventually undergo lysis (Omi et al. 1999). SpAdg3 is one of the genes whose transcription is regulated by SpAce2, and the protein is required for efficient cell separation (Alonso-Nuñez et al. 2005).

A. fumigatus contains two *SUN* proteins, the Group I AfSun1 and Group II AfSun2 (Gastebois et al. 2013). The expression of *AfSUN1* is strongly induced during conidial swelling and mycelial growth, whereas *AfSUN2* is not expressed. Accordingly, the deletion of *AfSUN1* produces defects during hyphal growth and conidiation. Hyphal cells lacking AfSun1 have swollen hyphae, leaky tips and a double cell wall, indicating that this protein is also involved in cell wall biogenesis in *A. fumigatus*, like in yeast. Furthermore, the Δ*Afsun1* had intrahyphal hyphae and many Woronin bodies in the septal region, an indication of difficulties in the completion/closure of the septum that suggests a role of *Af*Sun1 during septation. In contrast, the deletion of *AfSUN2* had no apparent phenotype. In spite of the initial reports on the role of SUN proteins in various cellular process not cell wall associated, there is increasing evidence suggesting that SUN proteins play indeed a role in cell wall biogenesis, septum integrity and cell separation in yeast and fungi (Mouassite et al. 2000; Ritch et al. 2010; Gastebois et al. 2013).

2.2.5 Family GH3 Exo-Glucanases

Family GH3 contains exo-hydrolases that act on different substrates and display a variety enzymatic activities, such as β-glucosidase (EC 3.2.1.21), glucan β-(1,3)-glucosidase (EC 3.2.1.58), glucan β-(1,4)-glucosidase (EC 3.2.1.74) or exo-β-(1,3)-(1,4)-glucanase (EC 3.2.1.-) among others. In filamentous fungi, there is a large degree of redundancy and several proteins are present in the genome (from 5 to 11). In contrast, *C. albicans* contains two GH3 proteins (CaBgl22 and CaNgs1), *S. pombe* only one (SPBC1683.04) and no orthologues are present in *S. cerevisiae* (Fig. 3b and Table 1).

There is little information about the function of these proteins in fungal cells. The only protein whose enzymatic activity has been characterised is the

A. fumigatus glucanase known as ExoGII (encoded by *EXG12*). ExoGII was isolated from cell wall autolysates and characterised as a protein with activity against β-(1,3)-glucan, β-(1,6)-glucan and also acting on pNPG (Fontaine et al. 1997b). In addition to ExoGII, *A. fumigatus* contains another nine proteins from this family, named AfExg13 to AfExg21 (Table 1) (Mouyna et al. 2002). All of them contain the N-terminal and C-terminal glycoside hydrolase family 3 signatures (Fig. 3b), but a phylogenetic tree constructed with GH3 fungal proteins showed the existence of two main groups (Mouyna et al. 2013). The first group is composed of the five proteins that contain a signal sequence (AfExg12, AfExg13, AfExg15, AfExg16 and AfExg20) and AfExg21, which contains a putative TM domain. The second phylogenetic group contains the remaining proteins that lack any secretion signal or TM domains, and the C-terminal GH3 signature is separated into two fragments by a galactose-binding-like domain (Fig. 3b). In addition, all of them, except AfEgx14, contain an additional Fibronectin type III-like domain (FnIII) at the C-terminus. Fibronectin (FN) is a protein able to bind simultaneously to cell surface receptors, collagen, proteoglycans and other FN molecules (Maurer et al. 2015), although the function of the Fibronectin-like domain in GH3 proteins is unknown.

C. albicans contains two GH3 proteins, known as CaBgl22 and CaNgs1 (Fig. 3b). Deletion of *BGL22* is viable, and its function is not known. CaNgs1 has a modular structure slightly different, since it lacks a secretion signal and only contains the N-terminal domain of GH3 proteins. Recent work might shed light on the function of cytoplasmic GH3 proteins. CaNgs1 has been identified as a GlcNAc sensor and transducer important for GlcNAc-induced hyphal development (Su et al. 2016). The N-terminal GH3 domain acts as an *N*-acetyl glucosaminidase that can bind GlcNAc, and this binding activates its C-terminal domain necessary for down-regulation of the Nrg1 repressor.

The *S. pombe* SPBC1683.04 protein also contains the GH3 domain and the C-terminal FnIII domain but lacks a secretion signal. Little is known about its function, although the mutant has been identified in a large-scale screen searching for morphological abnormalities during sexual reproduction (Dudin et al. 2017). The null mutant forms a mating projection with a longer tip than normal and shows incomplete cell wall disassembly at the site of cell–cell fusion, suggesting that it might function in cell wall reorganisation during conjugation.

2.2.6 Family GH55 Exo-Glucanases

Family GH55 contains proteins with exo-β-(1,3)-glucanase (EC 3.2.1.58) and endo-β-(1,3)-glucanase (EC 3.2.1.39) activity present in bacteria and filamentous fungi, but are absent in the genome of *S. cerevisiae*, *C. albicans* or *S. pombe*. *A. fumigatus* contains six GH55 proteins that have been named AfExg5 to AfExg10 (Table 1) (Mouyna et al. 2013).

Similar to other GH families, the *A. fumigatus* proteins have different localisation signals (Fig. 4a). All of them contain two repeats of a domain similar to the pectate lyase 3 domain, although this is only inferred by sequence similarity and

might not reflect a similar function. Indeed, the only enzymatic activity characterised in *A. fumigatus* corresponds to AfExg6, and it has been shown that it is the exo-β-(1,3)-glucanase isolated several years ago from cell wall autolysates and named ExoGI (Fontaine et al. 1997b). This enzyme exclusively hydrolyses β-(1,3)-glucans and has a minimal substrate size of four glucose residues. Recently, it has been shown that GH55 family proteins are essential for the proper organisation and structuring of the conidial cell wall, and conidia maturation, normal dissemination and germination (Millet et al. 2019). A sextuple mutant lacking *AfEXG5* to *AfEXG10* has defects in conidial cell wall maturation that result in abnormal shape, becoming ovoid and unable to separate.

Interestingly, the function of a GH55 glucanase in *N. crassa* has been described and it is similar to that mentioned for *A. fumigatus*. A proteomic analysis of the conidial cell wall identified the *CGL-1* β-(1,3)-glucanase (NCU07523) and the *NAG-1* exo-chitinase (NCU10852) as components of cell wall (Ao et al. 2016). Analysis of the phenotype of the deletion mutants of both genes showed that the conidia failed to properly separate. These results suggest that the exo-chitinase and the glucanase are required for the remodelling of the conidial cell wall, which is necessary for the conidia to separate from one another and facilitate dispersal.

More recently, the activity of *H. capsulatum* Exg8 was characterised, and it acts as an exo-glucanase that produces mono-, di- and trisaccharides from laminarin, suggesting a minimal substrate size similar to that of AfExg6 (Garfoot et al. 2017).

2.2.7 Family GH16 Endo-Glucanases

Family GH16 is a large family in the CAZy database that contains proteins active on β-(1,4) or β-(1,3) glycosidic bonds in various glucans and galactans. A wide variety of enzymatic activities are included in this family, such as endo-β-(1,3)-glucanase (EC 3.2.1.39), endo-β(1,3) (4)-glucanase (EC 3.2.1.6), xyloglucan xyloglucosyltransferase (EC 2.4.1.207), keratan-sulphate endo-β(1,4)-galactosidase (EC 3.2.1.103), licheninase (EC 3.2.1.73), β-agarase (EC 3.2.1.81) or xyloglucanase (EC 3.2.1.151).

Even though GH16 proteins have diverged significantly in their primary sequences, they all feature a common fold (a classical sandwich-like β-jelly roll) and a common catalytic motif, justifying their inclusion in the same CAZy family. However, phylogenetic analysis indicates that this family could be divided into different subfamilies (Mertz et al. 2009). In the Conserved Domain Database (CDD, https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Structure/cdd/cdd.shtml) (Marchler-Bauer et al. 2017), it contains six different subfamilies: *GH16_lichenases* (cd02175), *GH16_kappa_carrageenases* (cd02177), *GH16_XETs* (Xyloglucan endotransglycosylase, cd02176), *GH16_β_agarases* (cd02178), *GH16_fungal_CRH1_transglycosilase* (cd02183) and *GH16_laminarinase_like* (cd08023).

Fungal endo-β-(1,3)-glucanases are included in subfamily *GH16_laminarinase_like*, and are mainly present in filamentous fungi, with numbers ranging from one in *Magnaporthe grisea* to eight in *A. fumigatus*. *S. pombe* is the only yeast that possesses a GH16 glucanase (SPBC21B10.07), since they are absent in the genome of *S. cerevisiae* or *C. albicans*. The seven GH16 glucanases in *A. fumigatus* have been named AfEng2 to AfEng8 (Mouyna et al. 2013) (Table 1, Fig. 4b). All of them seem to be extracellular proteins, since they contain either a signal peptide or a TM domain in the middle of the protein, suggesting that they localise to the plasma membrane with the active domain pointing towards the cell wall.

The biochemical activity of AfEng2 was characterised by its expression in *Pichia pastoris* (Hartl et al. 2011). The recombinant protein acts on β-(1,3)-glucans and lichenan but not on β-(1,6) substrates. AfEng2 preferentially acts on soluble polymers like laminarin and shorter β-(1,3) oligosaccharides and showed a slight transferase activity. Deletion of the *ENG2* gene showed that the mutant has no phenotype, and it is similar to the parental strain, suggesting that AfEng2 alone does not play an essential role in fungal morphogenesis (Hartl et al. 2011). However, a deletion of four of the GH16 genes (*ENG2* to *ENG5*) in combination with a deletion of the endo-β-(1,3)-glucanase Engl1 (Family GH81) resulted in a defect in conidial

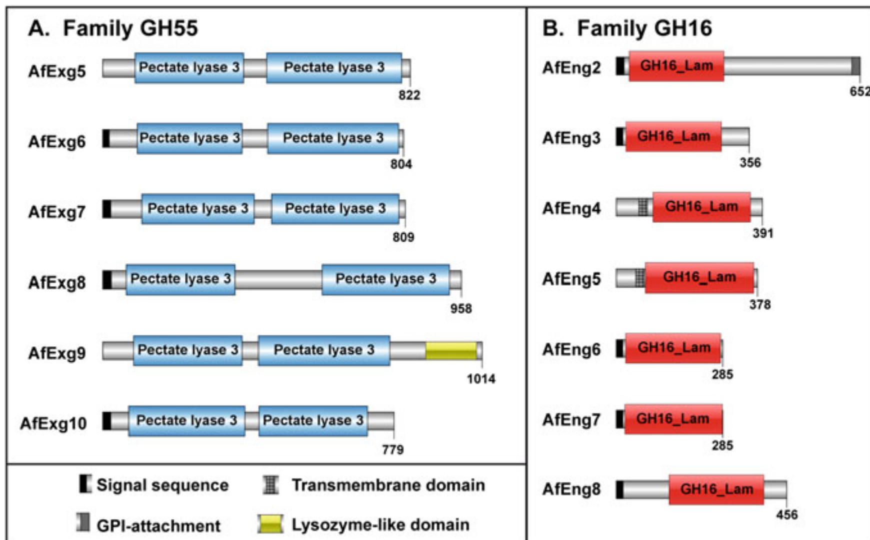


Fig. 4 Domain organisation of GH55 and GH16 glucanases. **a** *A. fumigatus* exo-β-(1,3)-glucanases belonging to family GH55 share a common structural organisation, containing two repeats of the pectate lyase superfamily domain (IPR024535). Four of them contain a signal sequence, whereas AfExg5 and AfExg9 lack this localisation signal. AfExg9 is the largest of all of them and contains a C-terminal Lysozyme-like domain (IPR023346). **b** Schematic representation of the domain organisation of GH16 endo-β-(1,3)-glucanases from *A. fumigatus* (AfEng2 to AfEng8). The proteins contain a Glycoside hydrolase family 16 domain (IPR000757) accompanied by different localisation signals

morphogenesis (Mouyna et al. 2016). The quintuple mutant Δ*eng1,2,3,4,5* formed linear chains of conidia that were unable to separate, but the germination rate was not affected. Thus, endo β-(1,3)-glucanases from families GH16 and GH81 are essential for proper conidial cell wall assembly and for conidia separation after conidiation is complete in a filamentous fungus.

3 Fungal Chitinases

3.1 Organising the Action: From Chitin to N-*Acetylglucosamine*

The breakdown of chitin in the fungal cell wall is promoted by a number of chitinolytic enzymes including lytic polysaccharide monooxygenases (LPMOs), chitinases and *N*-acetylglucosaminidases (NAGAs), all of them working in a coordinated manner for efficient degradation (Langner and Göhre 2016). These enzymes will act co-ordinately on chitin following the simple scheme depicted in Fig. 5. LPMOs and endo-acting chitinases produce strand breaks at random positions within the chitin chains, this cleavage generating free reducing and

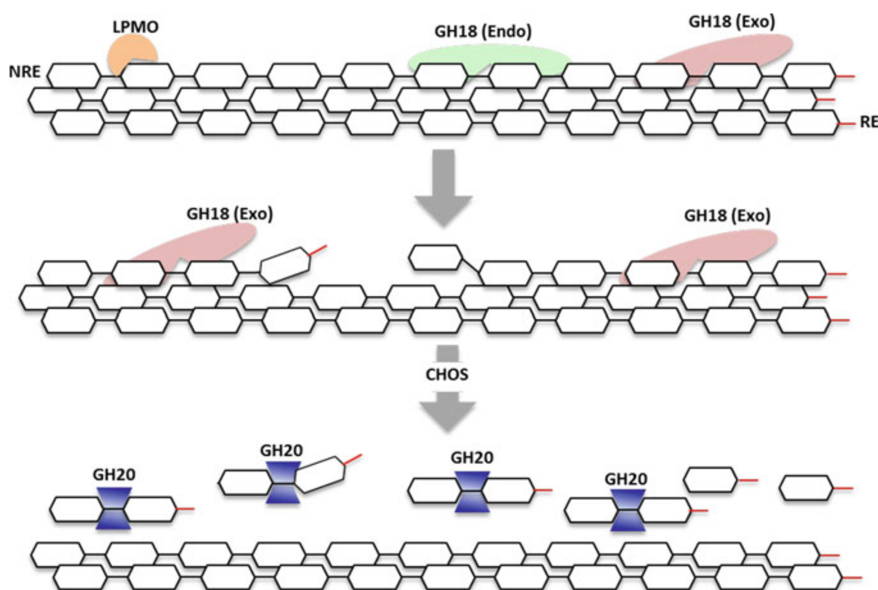


Fig. 5 Hierarchical machinery involved in chitin degradation. Chitin chains are fragmented by LPMOs and endo-chitinases to serve as substrates for the action of exo-chitinases that released Chito-oligosaccharides, which are further processed to *N*-Acetyl glucosamine monomers by the action of *N*-Acetylglucosaminidases belonging to family GH20

non-reducing ends. The free ends will serve as targets for processive exo-acting chitinases, which release short chito-oligosaccharides (CHOS), mainly $(GlcNAc)_2$ and $(GlcNAc)_3$, from either the reducing or non-reducing end, leading to the complete decomposition of the strand (Horn et al. 2006). CHOS, mainly $(GlcNAc)_2$, are the preferred substrates for *N*-acetylglucosaminidases, which catalyse the further degradation to GlcNAc from NRE (Chen et al. 2015).

These three types of enzymes belong to different CAZy groups. LPMO enzymes have only been recently described and are classified as auxiliary enzymes belonging to A9-15 classes (Levasseur et al. 2013), and they have been found in most fungal groups (CAZy, http://www.cazy.org/). Their mechanism of action is still not fully understood, but accumulating evidence shows that it involves binding of a copper ion that will enable the transport of an electron to molecular oxygen, thereby creating a superoxo-intermediate which then initiates the cleavage of the polymer (reviewed in Courtade and Aachmann 2019). These types of enzymes could have an important biotechnological interest, but their role in fungal biology is unknown; therefore, they are out of the scope of this review.

Chitinases, in contrast, have been studied for years, and their mechanism of action is well known. All fungal chitinases belong to CAZy family GH18 and use a substrate-assisted retaining mechanism (van Aalten et al. 2001) in which a conserved glutamate of the catalytic diad (D–E) serves as the general acid/base. During hydrolysis, the anomeric configuration of the substrate is retained. Their processivity separates them in endo-acting and processive (exo-acting) chitinases, a characteristic that directly depends on the tridimensional architecture of the binding cleft of the enzyme, which is organised in a rather open conformation in the non-processive, endo-acting chitinases clearly different from the "tunnel-shaped" conformation attained by the processive enzymes.

N-acetylglucosaminidases belong to family GH20, and their mode of action is similar to that of GH18 proteins previously described (Chen et al. 2015).

3.2 Structure and Diversity Between Fungal Chitinases

The chitinases, although they share a unique catalytic domain, are a rather complex group of enzymes that include proteins with a very different organisation. Some proteins are secreted by means of a signal peptide while others lack a canonical sequence and are secreted by alternative and poorly studied secretion mechanisms. Some of them are expected to be integral membrane proteins due to the presence in their sequence of TM domains. Most of them are glycosylated, and some are also modified by the addition of GPI modules. Moreover, some chitinases contain different CBMs that can be arranged in multiple copies (Tzelepis et al. 2012). On top of that, the number of chitinase genes presented in each fungal family differs radically, from a single gene in *S. pombe* to more than 30 genes in different phytopathogenic species of the *Trichoderma* genus (Karlsson and Stenlid 2008).

Based on this complexity, the classification of chitinases is difficult and the most comprehensive classification is based exclusively on their GH18 catalytic domains, which are relatively well conserved. Based on this, they are classified into two big clusters (reviewed in Karlsson and Stenlid 2008). Cluster A includes the enzymes classified as exo-chitinases and can be subdivided into 6 groups, A-II to A-V and C-I and C-II. Groups A-II to A-V showed the highest degree of amino acid conservation, whereas C-I and C-II displayed the lowest levels of amino acid conservation. The catalytic domain of the cluster B showed intermediate levels of conservation, although the catalytic domain of sub-classes B-V can be considered as one of the most conserved. All of the enzymes belonging to cluster B display endo-chitinase activity and many have been linked to morphogenetic processes (see below). Interestingly, not all chitinase groups are uniformly distributed among fungi and the subgroups A-II, C-I and C-II appear to be unique for filamentous ascomycetes. Moreover, subgroups C-I and C-II have been identified as the most likely targets for the observed expansion of chitinases between filamentous fungi. These C-subgroups of chitinases share extensive homology with the α-toxin of the yeast killer system from *K. lactis* (Butler et al. 1991), which facilitates internalisation of the catalytic component of this toxin, the gamma subunit, by the permeabilisation of the cell wall and membrane of the susceptible strains (Jablonowski et al. 2001). This has led to the suggestion that C-I and C-II chitinases would be involved in competitive fungal–fungal interactions.

The data presented above clearly reflect a very significant expansion in size of the chitinase gene families included in GH18, suggesting that this gene family has been important for species fitness during evolution, probably by facilitating adaptation to specific natural environments. It is difficult to know exactly how many chitinase genes were present in the original fungal ancestor, although it has been estimated that 5 chitinase genes were already present in this extant ancestral species (Karlsson and Stenlid 2008) whose origin can be placed around 800 million years ago, after the divergence of the Chytridiomycetes (Stajich et al. 2009). From this original number, gene expansion took place to produce an average number of 12–15 different genes. Figure 6 shows a schematic representation of the diversity of fungal chitinases using *N. crassa* as a model (Tzelepis et al. 2012). However, other expansion processes should have occurred between the filamentous ascomycetes, mostly through the C-I and C-II subgroups. This expansion has a maximum between mycoparasitic fungi, probably associated with a specific role of these new enzymes in this lifestyle. Interestingly, not only has the expansion phenomena been found, but also significant contractions as well. Between filamentous ascomycetes, the contraction of the subgroup C-II observed in human pathogenic species is noteworthy, as this led to the absence of this type of enzyme in organisms like *Coccidioides immitis* or *H. capsulatum* (Karlsson and Stenlid 2008), a clear indication for the irrelevance of this type of enzyme for the human pathogenic lifestyle. It is also relevant the reduced number of chitinase genes present in fungi living as yeast, independently of their phylogenetic relationship. With the exception of *S. pombe*, having a strong contraction to only a single group B chitinase gene, these yeast-like fungi contain typically between 2 and 3 chitinase genes, belonging

always to clusters A and B. This reduced number of genes has made them very suitable models for the study of the biological function of these enzymes (see below).

3.3 The Biological Roles of Fungal Chitinases

As explained above, the problems with the establishment of a coherent classification of fungal chitinases are translated into the identification of the biological function of these proteins. Gene redundancy has made extremely difficult to create fungal strains in which complete families of chitinases have been eliminated; therefore, most of our knowledge is based on the characterisation of single and double mutants complemented with more general studies of gene expression. In order to approach this chapter, we will refer as study model to the filamentous fungi *N. crassa,* which contains an intermediate number chitinase genes (Tzelepis et al. 2012) and to several yeast-like fungi, for what multiple gene deletion strains have been extensively characterised. In general, chitinases are believed to participate in at least 4 clear biological functions:

1. **Nutrition**. Chitinases are used for fungi to thrive in nature using chitinous substrates. This role is achieved by the coordinated action of LPMOs, chitinases and NAGA enzymes to produce single carbohydrates as carbon source (Langner and Göhre 2016). This function correlates with the fact that the expression of several chitinase genes is strongly regulated by the carbon source and induced upon growth in chitinous-based media. In our referred model, *N. crassa*, the expression of type A *gh18-7* and *gh18-5* and type C *gh18-9* and *gh18-8* chitinases has been shown to be under nutritional control; these are expected to perform nutritional functions, although individual mutants in the *gh18-5* and *gh18-8* genes did not show apparent phenotypes (Tzelepis et al. 2012). Moreover, *N*-acetyl hexosaminidases *Nag1* and *Nag2* are essential for growth in chitin or chitobiose in *T. atroviride* (Brunner et al. 2003), and a clear indication that full degradation of the chitinous material is required to become an effective carbon source.
2. **Cellular Antagonism**. Fungal cells normally compete in nature in specific environments, and cellular antagonism has been described between them. Moreover, some fungi have also been described as mycoparasites. Considering that most fungi contain high levels of chitinous material in their cell wall, it is not surprising that chitinase production would affect interaction between fungal cells. Accordingly, the *N. crassa* exo-chitinases *gh18-7*, *gh18-3*, *gh18-4*, *gh18-6* and *gh18-8* and endo-chitinases *gh18-11* and *chit-1* are induced during competitive interaction with other fungi (Tzelepis et al. 2012). In other mycoparasitic fungi like *T. atroviridae,* the chitinases *ech42* and *ech37* are induced in the presence of fungal cell walls, but the induction of *ech42* also depends on the *N*-acetyl hexosaminidase *Nag1*, linking this induction to the presence of free

GlcNAc and thus linking the *N*-acetyl hexosaminidase activity to mycoparasitism (Brunner et al. 2003). In other fungi, the induction of these types of enzymes depends on the biological origin of the cell walls used as inductor, which in fact indicates a crosstalk between competitor fungi (Tzelepis et al. 2014). The nature of this interaction is not fully understood, but it probably relies in the different nature of the fungal cell walls and in the capacity of the different chitinases for their degradation and for the associated release of molecular inductors. It is generally believed that class C exo-chitinases have an important role in cellular antagonism and mycoparasitism because of their similarity with *K. lactis* toxin, although their expression patterns are rather complex and probably their action involved self and non-self cell wall degradation (Tzelepis et al. 2014).

It should be noticed the close relationship between the cellular antagonism and the cellular nutritional program; therefore, it is not surprising to find that the expression of multiple chitinase enzymes potentially involved in fungal competition is also regulated through carbon catabolite repression.

3. **Autolysis**. Autolysis is the natural process of self-digestion of aged hyphal cultures. It has considerable interest from an application point of view as a way of increasing product yields from fungal cells or as a mechanism of promoting cell death during fungal infections. However, autolysis is also extremely important in nature cycles as a way of releasing nutrients from death cells to provide nutrients for other cells present in the same environment. In this respect, autolysis would have an important nutritional impact affecting fungal growth under nutritional depletion but also for fungal competition. Therefore, this function is intimately linked to previous ones and the chitinase enzymes involved in fungal autolysis are those described in previous epigraphs, whose production is nutritionally regulated.
4. **Morphogenesis**. Fungal cells are able to grow based on a delicate balance between the strength and plasticity of their cell walls; therefore, it has been assumed for many years that a balance between synthesis and degradation of structural polymers as chitin is required for fungal cell expansion (Riquelme et al. 2018). Accordingly, it has been proposed that a discrete action of chitinases at the hyphal tip favours fungal cell expansion and growth; similarly, yeast cells need to separate after cytokinesis; therefore, chitinases are expected to act at the latest step of the yeast cell cycle. While these models are conceptually very sound, only the latter has been experimentally confirmed to show that chitinases are required for cell separation in different cellular systems (Kuranda and Robbins 1991). A direct involvement of chitinases in hyphal growth is still under debate due to the absence of conclusive experimental evidence showing that the absence of chitinases affects hyphal development.

An additional aspect of fungal morphogenesis is fungal sexual and asexual development, where chitinases could exert also defined functions beyond indirect effects through the nutritional program. In yeast, the role of some chitinases during

sporulation has been established, but in filamentous fungi the evidence for a function of some chitinases in spore development is scarce and therefore still under debate.

In conclusion, while some roles of chitinases in fungal morphogenesis are well established, these roles are not general and will require additional evidence. We will discuss the different aspects of these roles in more detail in Sect. 3.4.

An important issue common to the biological functions associated with chitinases is the accessibility of these enzymes to the different substrates, which would dictate whether they could have deleterious or positive effects by participating in self and non-self cell wall degradation (Gruber and Seidl-Seiboth 2012). It is assumed that most chitinases are secreted either by conventional or unconventional routes depending on the presence of signal peptides on their sequence. Secretion to the periplasmic space will facilitate their interaction with its own cell wall and its further participation in fungal cell wall morphogenesis (see below). This interaction would be facilitated by additional modules that retain these enzymes in the periplasmic space, like TM domains or GPI-anchor sequences. Moreover, some chitinases had also CBMs that would favour their interaction with high molecular weight polysaccharides (Fig. 6). However, most chitinases lack these domains and the major pool of these enzymes are located in the culture supernatant, strongly suggesting that they act from the outer side of the cell wall. How can chitinases discriminate the own cell wall from those of potential fungal competitors? Although the discrimination mechanisms are not fully understood, it was suggested that the accessibility of chitin within the fungal cell wall could be a major determinant in these processes (reviewed in Gow et al. 2017). In healthy hyphae, accessibility may be limited by the protection conferred by the outermost face of the cell walls, formed by distinct proteins. This hypothesis is supported by the fact that a chitinolytic mixture from autolytic extracts of *T. atroviride* spores does not inhibit the germination of its own spores but strongly affects spore germination of other fungi like *T. reesei*, *N. crassa* and *A. niger* (Hartl et al. 2012). Accordingly, the induction of chitinase production in fungi by cell wall extracts depends on the biological origin of the cell walls (Tzelepis et al. 2014), which will be necessarily linked to the capacity of its enzymes to degrade the foreign cell wall and produce the appropriated inductor molecules. The increased expression of these enzymes will favour fungal competition, not only by killing competitor cells (cellular antagonism), but also by degrading their cell walls, providing additional nutritional resources (nutrition).

3.4 The Role of Chitinases in Fungal Morphogenesis: From Yeasts to Filamentous Cells

As explained above, the number of chitinase-encoding genes is rather variable due to a strong genetic expansion in some fungi, especially filamentous fungi.

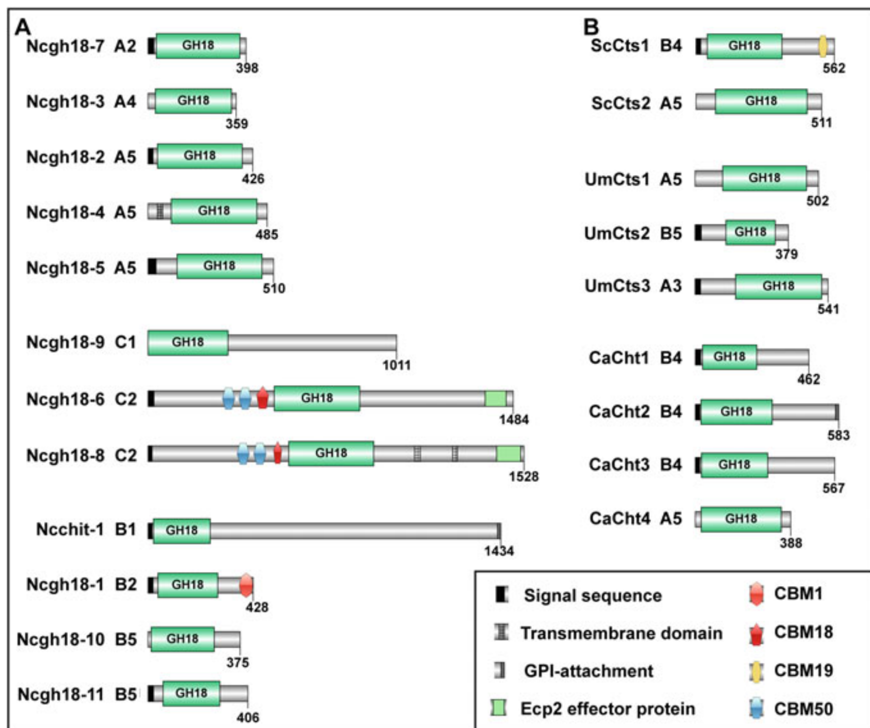


Fig. 6 Structural diversity of GH18 chitinases in *Neurospora crassa* (a) and in several yeast-like fungi (b). The domains present in each protein are indicated as well as the chitinase class to what each protein belong (based on Karlsson and Stenlid 2008). All the proteins contain a glycoside hydrolase family 18 catalytic domain (IPR001223) accompanied by different localisation signals and/or CBM modules: CBM1 (IPR000254), CBM18 (IPR036861), CBM19 (IPR005089) or CBM50 (IPR036779). Ncgh18-6 and Ncgh18-8 also contain an Ecp2 effector protein domain (IPR029226) near the C-terminus

Therefore, the number of multiple mutants characterised is limited, which compromises the interpretation of the physiological data due to the possible redundancy between similar genes. Accordingly, most of our knowledge about the role of chitinases in fungal morphogenesis comes from studies of fungi with a limited repertoire of chitinase genes, mostly yeasts, independent of their capacity to form filaments under some conditions.

The first report linking chitinase activity to morphogenesis was obtained by Cabib's group, showing that *S. cerevisiae* yeast cells were lysed in acidic media in the absence of the chitin synthase *CHS1*, a lysis that was prevented by the chemical inhibition of the chitinase activity with allosamidin (Cabib et al. 1989). Later it was shown that deletion of the *CTS1* gene encoding a class B endo-chitinase activity prevents cell separation (Kuranda and Robbins 1991) and that ScChs1 synthase activity counterbalances ScCts1 chitinase activity during cell separation, acting as a

repair activity (Cabib et al. 1992). In agreement with these results, a deleterious effect of chitinase activity has also been shown in mutants defective in the synthesis of the chitin ring (Gómez et al. 2009). Very similar results have been described for the chitinase encoded by the *CHT3* from *C. albicans,* including a functional heterologous complementation (Dünkler et al. 2005). In *U. maydis,* a double deletion *cts1*Δ *cts2*Δ also produced a cellular separation defect (Langner et al. 2015). Interestingly, *S. cerevisiae* and *U. maydis* contain a unique endo-chitinase-encoding gene, but *C. albicans* contains three *CHT1*, *CHT2* and *CHT3* although only *CHT3* appears to encode a biological functional endo-chitinase. Based on this evidence, it can be concluded that endo-chitinases have an important morphogenetic role in yeasts. Their expression is cell cycle regulated, and it is dependent on the Ace2 transcription factor, which promotes their specific expression in daughter cells (Colman-Lerner et al. 2001; Kelly et al. 2004). This localised expression promotes the specific secretion to the septum zone only from the daughter side leading to a limited degradation of the cell wall, which eventually produces cell separation without cell lysis (Ufano et al. 2004). In this degradative effort, the action of chitinases is complemented by the action of specific endo-glucanases as described above in this same chapter (2.2.2. Family GH81). The mechanisms that direct this differential secretion as well that those involved in the limited action of these enzymes are out of the scope of this review.

The class B chitinase group is one of the best conserved in GH18, and these chitinases are present in most fungi in variable numbers; therefore, it has been tempting to speculate with a general function of this type of enzymes along with fungal kingdom. This would be consistent with the hyphal tip localisation of the type B chitinase ChiA in A. *nidulans* (Yamazaki et al. 2008). Surprisingly, individual mutants of different class B chitinases did not show apparent morphological phenotypes. In *N. crassa,* Δ*gh18-10* and Δ*chi-1* mutants have normal morphology but show delayed growth under different experimental conditions. While the effect of the Δ*chi-1* mutation has been tentatively interpreted as a consequence of a reduced cell wall plasticity at the hyphal tip, the effect of the absence of *gh18-10* is more difficult to interpret. The phenotype of this Δ*gh18-10* mutant has been explained by a nutritional role of this chitinase, but also by a potential role of this enzyme at the ER as a deglycosylating activity (Tzelepis et al. 2012). More importantly, an *A. fumigatus* strain lacking the 5 class B endo-chitinases present in this fungi has been constructed to show that, despite a significant reduction in chitinase activity, its physiology is very similar to the control in the multiple aspects tested (Alcazar-Fuoli et al. 2011). Additional individual mutants generated in other filamentous fungi also lacked morphogenetic phenotypes. Moreover, a triple *cts1*Δ *cts2*Δ *cts3*Δ mutant of *U. maydis* formed normal infective filaments (Langner et al. 2015) and the strictly filamentous fungi *Ashbya gossypii* lacks any endo-chitinase-encoding gene (Dünkler et al. 2008). In this context, it is also relevant that the addition of allosamidin, a potent inhibitor of chitinase activity, has no effect on filamentous fungi but strongly affects the growth of yeast cells (Sakuda et al. 2013). Altogether, the multiple evidences from several systems argue against any role of endo-chitinases in the morphogenesis of the fungal hyphae, although

this hypothesis can always be questioned by the potential functional redundancy with other type of chitinases.

Fungal cells contain also a varied panoply of exo-chitinases belonging to classes A and C that could have an impact on cell morphogenesis. Therefore, multiple individual mutants have been constructed in order to characterise their phenotypes. In general, it can be stated that none of the mutants obtained in different fungi showed significant morphogenetic alterations, although the growth of some mutant strains is affected, probably because of nutritional reasons. The strong genetic redundancy between these classes of enzymes had been frequently invoked to explain the absence of clear phenotypes; however, in yeast-like fungi, which contain a single class A exo-chitinase, the deletion of these genes did not promote either apparent phenotypes, arguing against a general role for this type of enzymes in hyphal morphogenesis.

It should be noted, however, that some individual exo-chitinase mutants showed some alterations in spore formation. The *A. gossypii cts2*Δ mutant produces spores with aberrant cell walls, a defect that can be suppressed by the heterologous expression of equivalent exo-chitinases from *S. cerevisiae* or *C. albicans*. Moreover, a quadruple chitinase mutant in *C. neoformans* is defective in sexual development but not in vegetative growth (Baker et al. 2009) and some individual mutants of *N. crassa* also showed altered patterns of perithecial formation (Tzelepis et al. 2012). However, the importance of nutrition in sporulation made extremely difficult to discriminate between a direct defect of these mutants on cellular morphogenesis or an indirect effect through nutritional signalling.

In conclusion, despite extensive efforts along the years, the role of chitinases in fungal morphogenesis is unclear beyond yeast cells and their interest as potential antifungal targets has diminished over the years.

3.5 The Far Side of Chitinases in Fungal Cells

We have centred until now on the role of chitinases in fungal biology, but it should be noted that chitinases are ubiquitous in nature and are also produced by plants and animal cells. In this case, foreign chitinases would degrade fungal cell walls potentially acting as true antifungal agents. The mechanism involved in this antifungal response is well studied in plant, and in general, plant chitinases do not act directly lysing fungal cells but promoting limited degradation of chitin to produce chitin-derived inductors that trigger strong cellular responses in plant cells including Ca^{2+} spiking, ROS production, activation of the MAPK cascade, up-regulation of defence gene expression, callose deposition and molecular flux via plasmodesmata (Langner and Göhre 2016). Similarly, animal cells are also infected by fungi and the recognition of these pathogens through chitin-derived molecules is critical to trigger effective responses.

4 Concluding Remarks

In these pages, we have highlighted the enormous repertoire of glycosyl hydrolases in fungal cells. This large repertoire is the consequence of multiple gene expansion processes and unveils the importance of these enzymes for the adaptive fitness of the different fungal species to specific environments. The genetic expansion of the different families has produced an important degree of genetic redundancy that had made it difficult to establish the real importance of these enzymes in the physiology of the fungi, and convincing data on the role of these enzymes on fungal morphogenesis had been reported for yeast cells in most cases. Figure 7 is an attempt to summarise the known functions of glucanases and chitinases described in this review in the life cycle of yeast and fungi. The proposed functions are mainly based on the phenotypes reported for mutants lacking a either a single gene or the whole family of redundant genes. It is interesting to note that in both yeast and fungi, these hydrolases are preferentially involved in cell separation (mother–daughter cells in yeasts and conidium in fungi) rather than for plasticizing the cell wall, as it was suggested in the past. Perhaps the high degree of redundancy, not only in the number of genes belonging to a single a family, but also the redundant glycosylase and transglycosylase activities present in the cells makes it difficult to find clear phenotypes associated with cell wall softening. Another interesting difference between yeast and fungi is that fungi contain a large number of hydrolases that are

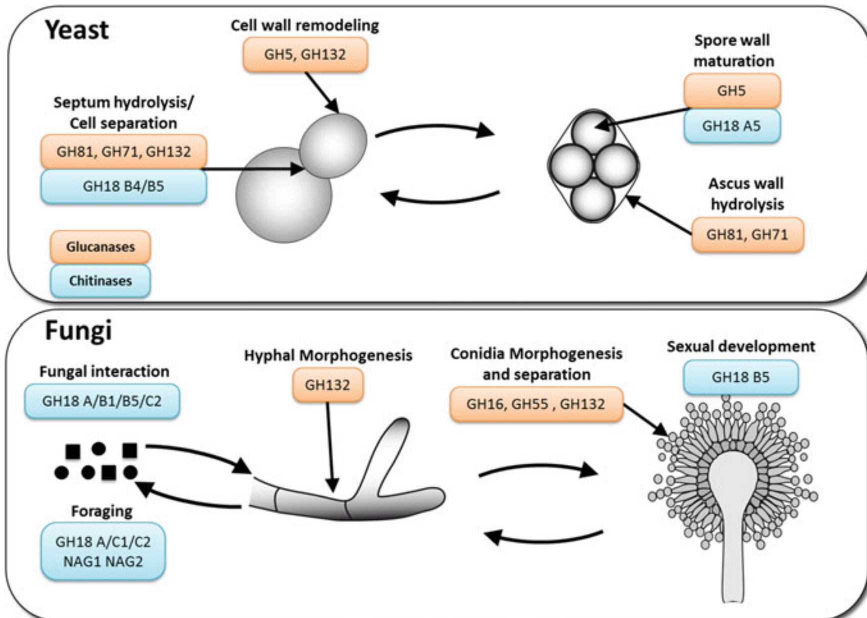


Fig. 7 A general overview of the function of glucanases and chitinases in yeast and moulds

secreted to catabolise complex polysaccharides for nutrition (which is not the case for yeast). This expansion of the different chitinase families probably reflects the general requirement of moulds for thriving in complex natural environments where competence for nutrients is higher.

The importance of these enzymes goes beyond the limits of the cells, since the wall of the fungal cells is the interface through which they interact with the environment and a direct target for the host in fungal pathogenesis. Accordingly, the production of glycosyl hydrolases from the host side favours the recognition of the pathogen and the triggering of the appropriate cellular responses to control it.

Acknowledgements This work was supported by grants from the Spanish Government to CR (BFU2017-84508-P) and CRV (BIO2015-70195-C2-1-R) and from Junta de Castilla y León to CR (SA116G19). The IBFG is supported by Programa "Escalera de Excelencia" from Junta de Castilla y León (CLU-2017-03) and University of Salamanca. All Spanish funding is co-sponsored by the European Union FEDER programme.

References

Adams DJ (2004) Fungal cell wall chitinases and glucanases. Microbiology 150:2029–2035

Alcazar-Fuoli L, Clavaud C, Lamarre C et al (2011) Functional analysis of the fungal/plant class chitinase family in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Fungal Genet Biol 48:418–429

Alonso-Nuñez ML, An H, Martín-Cuadrado AB et al (2005) Ace2p controls the expression of genes required for cell separation in *Schizosaccharomyces pombe*. Mol Biol Cell 16:2003–2017

Ao J, Aldabbous M, Notaro MJ et al (2016) A proteomic and genetic analysis of the *Neurospora crassa* conidia cell wall proteins identifies two glycosyl hydrolases involved in cell wall remodeling. Fungal Genet Biol 94:47–53

Aspeborg H, Coutinho PM, Wang Y et al (2012) Evolution, substrate specificity and subfamily classification of glycoside hydrolase family 5 (GH5). BMC Evol Biol 12:186

Baker LG, Specht CA, Lodge JK (2009) Chitinases are essential for sexual development but not vegetative growth in *Cryptococcus neoformans*. Eukaryot Cell 8:1692–1705

Baladrón V, Ufano S, Dueñas E et al (2002) Eng1p, an endo-1,3-β-glucanase localized at the daughter side of the septum, is involved in cell separation in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Eukaryot Cell 1:774–786

Bandara PD, Flattery-O'Brien JA, Grant CM et al (1998) Involvement of the *Saccharomyces cerevisiae UTH1* gene in the oxidative-stress response. Curr Genet 34:259–268

Beauvais A, Bozza S, Kniemeyer O et al (2013) Deletion of the α-(1,3)-glucan synthase genes induces a restructuring of the conidial cell wall responsible for the avirulence of Aspergillus fumigatus. PLoS Pathog 9:e1003716

Bourne Y, Henrissat B (2001) Glycoside hydrolases and glycosyltransferases: families and functional modules. Curr Opin Struct Biol 11:593–600

Bowman SM, Free SJ (2006) The structure and synthesis of the fungal cell wall. BioEssays 28:799–808

Brunner K, Peterbauer CK, Mach RL et al (2003) The Nag1 *N*-acetylglucosaminidase of *Trichoderma atroviride* is essential for chitinase induction by chitin and of major relevance to biocontrol. Curr Genet 43:289–295

Butler AR, O'Donnell RW, Martin VJ et al (1991) *Kluyveromyces lactis* toxin has an essential chitinase activity. Eur J Biochem 199:483–488

Cabib E, Arroyo J (2013) How carbohydrates sculpt cells: chemical control of morphogenesis in the yeast cell wall. Nat Rev Microbiol 11:648–655
Cabib E, Durán A (2005) Synthase III-dependent chitin is bound to different acceptors depending on location on the cell wall of budding yeast. J Biol Chem 280:9170–9179
Cabib E, Roh DH, Schmidt M et al (2001) The yeast cell wall and septum as paradigms of cell growth morphogenesis. J Biol Chem 276:19679–19682
Cabib E, Sburlati A, Bowers B et al (1989) Chitin synthase 1, an auxiliary enzyme for chitin synthesis in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. J Cell Biol 108:1665–1672
Cabib E, Silverman SJ, Shaw JA (1992) Chitinase and chitin synthase 1: counterbalancing activities in cell separation of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. J Gen Microbiol 138:97–102
Camougrand N, Kissova I, Velours G et al (2004) Uth1p: a yeast mitochondrial protein at the crossroads of stress, degradation and cell death. FEMS Yeast Res 5:133–140
Cappellaro C, Mrsa V, Tanner W (1998) New potential cell wall glucanases of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* and their involvement in mating. J. Bacteriol. 180: 5030–3037
CAZypedia_Consortium (2018) Ten years of CAZypedia: a living encyclopedia of carbohydrate-active enzymes. Glycobiology 28:3–8
Colman-Lerner A, Chin TE, Brent R (2001) Yeast Cbk1 and Mob2 activate daughter-specific genetic programs to induce asymmetric cell fates. Cell 107:739–750
Courtade G, Aachmann FL (2019) Chitin-Active Lytic Polysaccharide Monooxygenases. Adv Exp Med Biol 1142:115–129
Chambers RS, Broughton MJ, Cannon RD et al (1993) An exo-β-(1,3)-glucanase of *Candida albicans*: purification of the enzyme and molecular cloning of the gene. J Gen Microbiol 139:325–334
Chen F, Chen XZ, Qin LN et al (2015) Characterization and homologous overexpression of an *N*-acetylglucosaminidase Nag1 from *Trichoderma reesei*. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 459:184–188
Davies G, Henrissat B (1995) Structures and mechanisms of glycosyl hydrolases. Structure 3:853–859
de la Cruz J, Pintor-Toro JA, Benitez T et al (1995) A novel endo-β-1,3-glucanase, BGN13.1, involved in the mycoparasitism of Trichoderma harzianum. J Bacteriol 177:6937–6945
Dekker N, Speijer D, Grün CH et al (2004) Role of the α-glucanase Agn1p in fission-yeast cell separation. Mol Biol Cell 15:3903–3914
Dekker N, van Rijssel J, Distel B et al (2007) Role of the α-glucanase Agn2p in ascus-wall endolysis following sporulation in fission yeast. Yeast 24:279–288
Dudin O, Merlini L, Bendezu FO et al (2017) A systematic screen for morphological abnormalities during fission yeast sexual reproduction identifies a mechanism of actin aster formation for cell fusion. PLoS Genet 13:e1006721
Dueñas-Santero E, Martín-Cuadrado AB, Fontaine T et al (2010) Characterization of glycoside hydrolase family 5 proteins in *Schizosaccharomyces pombe*. Eukaryot Cell 9:1650–1660
Dünkler A, Jorde S, Wendland J (2008) An *Ashbya gossypii cts2* mutant deficient in a sporulation-specific chitinase can be complemented by *Candida albicans CHT4*. Microbiol Res 163:701–710
Dünkler A, Walther A, Specht CA et al (2005) *Candida albicans CHT3* encodes the functional homolog of the Cts1 chitinase of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Fungal Genet Biol 42:935–947
Encinar del Dedo J, Dueñas E, Arnáiz Y et al (2009) β-glucanase Eng2 is required for ascus wall endolysis after sporulation in the fission yeast Schizosaccharomyces pombe. Eukaryot Cell 8:1278–1286
Encinar del Dedo J, Idrissi FZ, Arnáiz-Pita Y et al (2014) Eng2 is a component of a dynamic protein complex required for endocytic uptake in fission yeast. Traffic 15:1122–1142
Ene IV, Walker LA, Schiavone M et al (2015) Cell wall remodeling enzymes modulate fungal cell wall elasticity and osmotic stress resistance. mBio 6:e00986
Erwig LP, Gow NA (2016) Interactions of fungal pathogens with phagocytes. Nat Rev Microbiol 14:163–176

Esteban PF, Ríos I, García R et al (2005) Characterization of the CaENG1 gene encoding an endo-1,3-β-glucanase involved in cell separation in *Candida albicans*. Curr Microbiol 51:385–392

Firon A, Aubert S, Iraqui I et al (2007) The *SUN41* and *SUN42* genes are essential for cell separation in *Candida albicans*. Mol Microbiol 66:1256–1275

Fontaine T, Hartland RP, Beauvais A et al (1997a) Purification and characterization of an endo-1,3-β-glucanase from Aspergillus fumigatus. Eur J Biochem 243:315–321

Fontaine T, Hartland RP, Diaquin M et al (1997b) Differential patterns of activity displayed by two exo-β-1,3-glucanases associated with the Aspergillus fumigatus cell wall. J Bacteriol 179:3154–3163

Fontaine T, Simenel C, Dubreucq G et al (2000) Molecular organization of the alkali-insoluble fraction of *Aspergillus fumigatus* cell wall. J Biol Chem 275:27594–27607

Free SJ (2013) Fungal cell wall organization and biosynthesis. Adv Genet 81:33–82

Gancedo C, Flores CL (2008) Moonlighting proteins in yeasts. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 72:197–210

García-Cortés JC, Ramos M, Osumi M et al (2016) The cell biology of fission yeast septation. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 80:779–791

García I, Jiménez D, Martín V et al (2005) The α-glucanase Agn1p is required for cell separation in *Schizosaccharomyces pombe*. Biol Cell 97:569–576

Garfoot AL, Dearing KL, VanSchoiack AD et al (2017) Eng1 and Exg8 are the major β-Glucanases secreted by the fungal pathogen *Histoplasma capsulatum*. J Biol Chem 292:4801–4810

Gastebois A, Aimanianda V, Bachellier-Bassi S et al (2013) SUN proteins belong to a novel family of β-(1,3)-glucan-modifying enzymes involved in fungal morphogenesis. J Biol Chem 288:13387–13396

Gastebois A, Clavaud C, Aimanianda V et al (2009) *Aspergillus fumigatus:* cell wall polysaccharides, their biosynthesis and organization. Future Microbiol 4:583–595

Geoghegan I, Steinberg G, Gurr S (2017) The role of the fungal cell wall in the infection of plants. Trends Microbiol 25:957–967

Gómez A, Pérez J, Reyes A et al (2009) Slt2 and Rim101 contribute independently to the correct assembly of the chitin ring at the budding yeast neck in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Eukaryot Cell 8:1449–1459

González MM, Díez-Orejas R, Molero G et al (1997) Phenotypic characterization of a *Candida albicans* strain deficient in its major exoglucanase. Microbiology 143:3023–3032

Gow NAR, Latgé JP, Munro CA (2017) the fungal cell wall: structure, biosynthesis, and function. Microbiol Spectr 5

Gruber S, Seidl-Seiboth V (2012) Self versus non-self: fungal cell wall degradation in *Trichoderma*. Microbiology 158:26–34

Hartl L, Gastebois A, Aimanianda V et al (2011) Characterization of the GPI-anchored endo β-1,3-glucanase Eng2 of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Fungal Genet Biol 48:185–191

Hartl L, Zach S, Seidl-Seiboth V (2012) Fungal chitinases: diversity, mechanistic properties and biotechnological potential. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 93:533–543

Henrissat B (1991) A classification of glycosyl hydrolases based on amino acid sequence similarities. Biochem J 280:309–316

Henrissat B, Bairoch A (1996) Updating the sequence-based classification of glycosyl hydrolases. Biochem J 316:695–696

Henrissat B, Callebaut I, Fabrega S et al (1995) Conserved catalytic machinery and the prediction of a common fold for several families of glycosyl hydrolases. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 92:7090–7094

Hiller E, Heine S, Brunner H et al (2007) *Candida albicans* Sun41p, a putative glycosidase, is involved in morphogenesis, cell wall biogenesis, and biofilm formation. Eukaryot Cell 6:2056–2065

Hopke A, Brown AJP, Hall RA et al (2018) Dynamic fungal cell wall architecture in stress adaptation and immune evasion. Trends Microbiol 26:284–295

Horn SJ, Sorbotten A, Synstad B et al (2006) Endo/exo mechanism and processivity of family 18 chitinases produced by *Serratia marcescens*. FEBS J 273:491–503

Iorio E, Torosantucci A, Bromuro C et al (2008) *Candida albicans* cell wall comprises a branched β-D-(1–6)-glucan with β-D-(1–3)-side chains. Carbohydr Res 343:1050–1061

Jablonowski D, Fichtner L, Martin VJ et al (2001) *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* cell wall chitin, the *Kluyveromyces lactis* zymocin receptor. Yeast 18:1285–1299

Jiang B, Ram AF, Sheraton J et al (1995) Regulation of cell wall β-glucan assembly: PTC1 negatively affects PBS2 action in a pathway that includes modulation of EXG1 transcription. Mol Gen Genet 248:260–269

Kapteyn JC, Montijn RC, Vink E et al (1996) Retention of Saccharomyces cerevisiae cell wall proteins through a phosphodiester-linked β-1,3-/β-1,6-glucan heteropolymer. Glycobiology 6:337–345

Kapteyn JC, Ram AF, Groos EM et al (1997) Altered extent of cross-linking of β-1,6-glucosylated mannoproteins to chitin in Saccharomyces cerevisiae mutants with reduced cell wall β-1,3-glucan content. J Bacteriol 179:6279–6284

Karlsson M, Stenlid J (2008) Comparative evolutionary histories of the fungal chitinase gene family reveal non-random size expansions and contractions due to adaptive natural selection. Evol Bioinform Online 4:47–60

Kelly MT, MacCallum DM, Clancy SD et al (2004) The *Candida albicans CaACE2* gene affects morphogenesis, adherence and virulence. Mol Microbiol 53:969–983

Kim DJ, Baek JM, Uribe P et al (2002) Cloning and characterization of multiple glycosyl hydrolase genes from *Trichoderma virens*. Curr Genet 40:374–384

Klis FM, Caro LH, Vossen JH et al (1997) Identification and characterization of a major building block in the cell wall of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Biochem Soc Trans 25:856–860

Klis FM, de Groot P, Hellingwerf K (2001) Molecular organization of the cell wall of *Candida albicans*. Med Mycol 39(Suppl 1):1–8

Klis FM, de Koster CG, Brul S (2014) Cell wall-related bionumbers and bioestimates of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* and *Candida albicans*. Eukaryot Cell 13:2–9

Klis FM, Mol P, Hellingwerf K et al (2002) Dynamics of cell wall structure in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. FEMS Microbiol Rev 26:239–256

Kollar R, Petrakova E, Ashwell G et al (1995) Architecture of the yeast cell wall. The linkage between chitin and β(1–3)-glucan. J Biol Chem 270:1170–1178

Kollar R, Reinhold BB, Petrakova E et al (1997) Architecture of the yeast cell wall. β(1–6)-glucan interconnects mannoprotein, β(1–3)-glucan, and chitin. J Biol Chem 272:17762–17775

Kuranda MJ, Robbins PW (1991) Chitinase is required for cell separation during growth of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. J Biol Chem 266:19758–19767

Kuznetsov E, Vachova L, Palkova Z (2016) Cellular localization of Sun4p and its interaction with proteins in the yeast birth scar. Cell Cycle 15:1898–1907

Langner T, Göhre V (2016) Fungal chitinases: function, regulation, and potential roles in plant/pathogen interactions. Curr Genet 62:243–254

Langner T, Ozturk M, Hartmann S et al (2015) Chitinases are essential for cell separation in *Ustilago maydis*. Eukaryot Cell 14:846–857

Larriba G, Andaluz E, Cueva R et al (1995) Molecular biology of yeast exoglucanases. FEMS Microbiol Lett 125:121–126

Latgé JP (2007) The cell wall: a carbohydrate armour for the fungal cell. Mol Microbiol 66:279–290

Latgé JP, Beauvais A (2014) Functional duality of the cell wall. Curr Opin Microbiol 20:111–117

Latgé JP, Beauvais A, Chamilos G (2017) The cell wall of the human fungal pathogen *Aspergillus fumigatus*: biosynthesis, organization, immune response, and virulence. Annu Rev Microbiol 71:99–116

Lechler T, Li R (1997) In vitro reconstitution of cortical actin assembly sites in budding yeast. J Cell Biol 138:95–103

Lesage G, Bussey H (2006) Cell wall assembly in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 70:317–343

Levasseur A, Drula E, Lombard V et al (2013) Expansion of the enzymatic repertoire of the CAZy database to integrate auxiliary redox enzymes. Biotechnol Biofuels 6:41

Levin DE (2011) Regulation of cell wall biogenesis in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae:* the cell wall integrity signaling pathway. Genetics 189:1145–1175

Lipke P (2018) What we do not know about fungal cell adhesion molecules. J Fungi 4:59

Lipke P, Ovalle R (1998) Cell wall architecture in yeast: new structure and new challenges. J Bacteriol 180:3735–3740

Lombard V, Golaconda Ramulu H, Drula E et al (2014) The carbohydrate-active enzymes database (CAZy) in 2013. Nucleic Acids Res 42:D490–D495

Magnelli PE, Cipollo JF, Robbins PW (2005) A glucanase-driven fractionation allows redefinition of *Schizosaccharomyces pombe* cell wall composition and structure: assignment of diglucan. Anal Biochem 336:202–212

Manners DJ, Masson AJ, Patterson JC et al (1973) The structure of a β-(1–6)-D-glucan from yeast cell walls. Biochem J 135:31–36

Marchler-Bauer A, Bo Y, Han L et al (2017) CDD/SPARCLE: functional classification of proteins via subfamily domain architectures. Nucleic Acids Res 45:D200–D203

Martín-Cuadrado AB, Dueñas E, Sipiczki M et al (2003) The endo-β-1,3-glucanase Eng1p is required for dissolution of the primary septum during cell separation in Schizosaccharomyces pombe. J Cell Sci 116:1689–1698

Martín-Cuadrado AB, Encinar del Dedo J, de Medina-Redondo M et al (2008a) The *Schizosaccharomyces pombe* endo-1,3-β-glucanase Eng1 contains a novel carbohydrate binding module required for septum localization. Mol Microbiol 69:188–200

Martín-Cuadrado AB, Fontaine T, Esteban PF et al (2008b) Characterization of the endo-β-1,3-glucanase activity of *S. cerevisiae* Eng2 and other members of the GH81 family. Fungal Genet Biol 45:542–553

Martín-Cuadrado AB, Morrell JL, Konomi M et al (2005) Role of septins and the exocyst complex in the function of hydrolytic enzymes responsible for fission yeast cell separation. Mol Biol Cell 16:4867–4881

Martin K, McDougall BM, McIlroy S et al (2007) Biochemistry and molecular biology of exocellular fungal β-(1,3)- and β-(1,6)-glucanases. FEMS Microbiol Rev 31:168–192

Maurer LM, Ma W, Mosher DF (2015) Dynamic structure of plasma fibronectin. Crit Rev Biochem Mol Biol 51:213–227

McCarter JD, Withers SG (1994) Mechanisms of enzymatic glycoside hydrolysis. Curr Opin Struct Biol 4:885–892

Mertz B, Gu X, Reilly PJ (2009) Analysis of functional divergence within two structurally related glycoside hydrolase families. Biopolymers 91:478–495

Millet N, Moya-Nilges M, Sachse M, et al (2019) *Aspergillus fumigatus* exo β(1–3)glucanases family GH55 are essential for conidial cell wall morphogenesis. Cell Microbiol:e13102

Mitchell AL, Attwood TK, Babbitt PC et al (2019) InterPro in 2019: improving coverage, classification and access to protein sequence annotations. Nucleic Acids Res 47:D351–D360

Mouassite M, Camougrand N, Schwob E et al (2000) The 'SUN' family: yeast *SUN4/SCW3* is involved in cell septation. Yeast 16:905–919

Mouyna I, Aimanianda V, Hartl L et al (2016) GH16 and GH81 family β-(1,3)-glucanases in *Aspergillus fumigatus* are essential for conidial cell wall morphogenesis. Cell Microbiol 18:1285–1293

Mouyna I, Harland RP, Fontaine T et al (1998) A 1,3-β-glucanosyltransferase isolated from the cell wall of Aspergillus fumigatus is a homologue of the yeast Bgl2p. Microbiology 144:3171–3180

Mouyna I, Hartl L, Latgé JP (2013) β-1,3-glucan modifying enzymes in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Front Microbiol 4:81

Mouyna I, Sarfati J, Recco P et al (2002) Molecular characterization of a cell wall-associated β(1–3)endoglucanase of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Med Mycol 40:455–464

Moy M, Li HM, Sullivan R et al (2002) Endophytic fungal *b*-1,6-glucanase expression in the infected host grass. Plant Physiol 130:1298–1308

Muthukumar G, Suhng SH, Magee PT et al (1993) The *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* SPR1 gene encodes a sporulation-specific exo-1,3-β-glucanase which contributes to ascospore thermoresistance. J Bacteriol 175:386–394

Norice CT, Smith FJ Jr, Solis N et al (2007) Requirement for *Candida albicans* Sun41 in biofilm formation and virulence. Eukaryot Cell 6:2046–2055

Omi K, Sonoda H, Nagata K et al (1999) Cloning and characterization of *psu1*(+), a new essential fission yeast gene involved in cell wall synthesis. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 262:368–374

Orlean P (2012) Architecture and biosynthesis of the *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* cell wall. Genetics 192:775–818

Pelissier P, Camougrand N, Velours G et al (1995) *NCA3,* a nuclear gene involved in the mitochondrial expression of subunits 6 and 8 of the Fo-F1 ATP synthase of *S. cerevisiae*. Curr Genet 27:409–416

Pitson SM, Seviour RJ, McDougall BM (1993) Noncellulolytic fungal β-glucanases: their physiology and regulation. Enzyme Microb Technol 15:178–192

Reese AJ, Yoneda A, Breger JA et al (2007) Loss of cell wall α(1–3) glucan affects *Cryptococcus neoformans* from ultrastructure to virulence. Mol Microbiol 63:1385–1398

Riquelme M, Aguirre J, Bartnicki-Garcia S et al (2018) Fungal morphogenesis, from the polarized growth of hyphae to complex reproduction and infection structures. Microbiol Mol Biol, Rev, p 82

Ritch JJ, Davidson SM, Sheehan JJ et al (2010) The *Saccharomyces SUN* gene, *UTH1*, is involved in cell wall biogenesis. FEMS Yeast Res 10:168–176

Roncero C, Sánchez Y (2010) Cell separation and the maintenance of cell integrity during cytokinesis in yeast: the assembly of a septum. Yeast 27:521–530

Royle SJ (2011) Mitotic moonlighting functions for membrane trafficking proteins. Traffic 12:791–798

Sakuda S, Inoue H, Nagasawa H (2013) Novel biological activities of allosamidins. Molecules 18:6952–6968

San-Blas G, San-Blas F, Serrano LE (1977) Host-parasite relationships in the yeastlike form of *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis* strain IVIC Pb9. Infect Immun 15:343–346

San Segundo P, Correa J, Vázquez de Aldana CR et al (1993) SSG1, a gene encoding a sporulation-specific 1,3-β-glucanase in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. J Bacteriol 175:3823–3837

Shahinian S, Bussey H (2000) β-1,6-glucan synthesis in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Mol Microbiol 35:477–489

Sherrington SL, Sorsby E, Mahtey N et al (2017) Adaptation of *Candida albicans* to environmental pH induces cell wall remodelling and enhances innate immune recognition. PLoS Pathog 13:e1006403

Sipiczki M (2007) Splitting of the fission yeast septum. FEMS Yeast Res 7:761–770

Sipiczki M, Balazs A, Monus A et al (2014) Phylogenetic and comparative functional analysis of the cell-separation α-glucanase Agn1p in Schizosaccharomyces. Microbiology 160:1063–1074

Skory CD, Freer SN (1995) Cloning and characterization of a gene encoding a cell-bound, extracellular β-glucosidase in the yeast *Candida wickerhamii*. Appl Environ Microbiol 61:518–525

Stajich JE, Berbee ML, Blackwell M et al (2009) The fungi. Curr Biol 19:R840–R845

Stubbs HJ, Brasch DJ, Emerson GW et al (1999) Hydrolase and transferase activities of the β-1,3-exoglucanase of Candida albicans. Eur J Biochem 263:889–895

Su C, Lu Y, Liu H (2016) *N*-acetylglucosamine sensing by a GCN5-related *N*-acetyltransferase induces transcription via chromatin histone acetylation in fungi. Nat Commun 7:12916

Suyotha W, Yano S, Wakayama M (2016) α-1,3-Glucanase: present situation and prospect of research. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 32:30

Suzuki K, Yabe T, Maruyama Y et al (2001) Characterization of recombinant yeast exo-β-1,3-glucanase (Exg1p) expressed in *Escherichia coli* cells. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 65:1310–1314

Tzelepis G, Hosomi A, Hossain TJ et al (2014) Endo-β-*N*-acetylglucosamidases (ENGases) in the fungus *Trichoderma atroviride*: possible involvement of the filamentous fungi-specific cytosolic ENGase in the ERAD process. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 449:256–261

Tzelepis GD, Melin P, Jensen DF et al (2012) Functional analysis of glycoside hydrolase family 18 and 20 genes in *Neurospora crassa*. Fungal Genet Biol 49:717–730

Ufano S, Pablo ME, Calzada A et al (2004) Swm1p subunit of the APC/cyclosome is required for activation of the daughter-specific gene expression program mediated by Ace2p during growth at high temperature in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. J Cell Sci 117:545–557

van Aalten DM, Komander D, Synstad B et al (2001) Structural insights into the catalytic mechanism of a family 18 exo-chitinase. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 98:8979–8984

van Munster JM, Dobruchowska JM, Veloo R et al (2015) Characterization of the starvation-induced chitinase CfcA and α-1,3-glucanase AgnB of Aspergillus niger. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 99:2209–2223

Vázquez de Aldana CR, Correa J, San Segundo P et al (1991) Nucleotide sequence of the exo-1,3-β-glucanase gene, EXG1, of the yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Gene 97:173–182

Velours G, Boucheron C, Manon S et al (2002) Dual cell wall/mitochondria localization of the 'SUN' family proteins. FEMS Microbiol Lett 207:165–172

Villalobos-Duno H, San-Blas G, Paulinkevicius M et al (2013) Biochemical characterization of *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis* α-1,3-glucanase Agn1p, and its functionality by heterologous expression in *Schizosaccharomyces pombe*. PLoS ONE 8:e66853

Wei H, Scherer M, Singh A et al (2001) *Aspergillus nidulans* α-1,3 glucanase (mutanase), mutA, is expressed during sexual development and mobilizes mutan. Fungal Genet Biol 34:217–227

Yamazaki H, Tanaka A, Kaneko J et al (2008) *Aspergillus nidulans ChiA* is a glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI)-anchored chitinase specifically localized at polarized growth sites. Fungal Genet Biol 45:963–972

Yoshimi A, Miyazawa K, Abe K (2017) Function and biosynthesis of cell wall α-1,3-glucan in fungi. J Fungi (Basel) 3:63

GPI Anchored Proteins in *Aspergillus fumigatus* and Cell Wall Morphogenesis

Marketa Samalova, Paul Carr, Mike Bromley, Michael Blatzer, Maryse Moya-Nilges, Jean-Paul Latgé, and Isabelle Mouyna

Contents

1 Introduction ... 168
2 Identification of putative GPI anchored proteins in the ***A. fumigatus*** genome ... 168
3 Comparative genomic analysis ... 169
4 Functions of GPI anchored proteins ... 169
5 Investigating the role of newly identified GPI anchored proteins in cell wall morphogenesis ... 176
6 Discussion and Conclusion ... 180
7 Electronic supplementary material ... 182
References ... 182

Abstract Glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI) anchored proteins are a class of proteins attached to the extracellular leaflet of the plasma membrane via a post-translational modification, the glycolipid anchor. GPI anchored proteins are expressed in all eukaryotes, from fungi to plants and animals. They display very diverse functions ranging from enzymatic activity, signaling, cell adhesion, cell wall metabolism, and immune response. In this review, we investigated for the first time

---

Electronic supplementary material The online version of this chapter (https://doi.org/10.1007/82_2020_207) contains supplementary material, which is available to authorized users.

M. Samalova · M. Blatzer · J.-P. Latgé · I. Mouyna (✉)
Aspergillus Unit, Institut Pasteur, 25 Rue Du Docteur Roux, 75015 Paris, France
e-mail: isabelle.mouyna@pasteur.fr

P. Carr · M. Bromley
Division of Infection, Immunity and Respiratory Medicine, Manchester Fungal Infection Group, Faculty of Biology, Medicine and Health, University of Manchester, Manchester, UK

M. Moya-Nilges
Unité Technologie et Service Bioimagerie Ultrastructurale (UTechS UBI), Institut Pasteur, 28 Rue Du Docteur Roux, 75015 Paris, France

Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology (2020) 425: 167–186
https://doi.org/10.1007/82_2020_207
© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
Published Online: 17 May 2020

an exhaustive list of all the GPI anchored proteins present in the *Aspergillus fumigatus* genome. An *A. fumigatus* mutant library of all the genes that encode in silico identified GPI anchored proteins has been constructed and the phenotypic analysis of all these mutants has been characterized including their growth, conidial viability or morphology, adhesion and the ability to form biofilms. We showed the presence of different fungal categories of GPI anchored proteins in the *A. fumigatus* genome associated to their role in cell wall remodeling, adhesion, and biofilm formation.

1 Introduction

The fungal cell wall is composed of polysaccharides and glycoproteins. The main central core of this cell wall is very similar in all fungal species but the nature of the carbohydrates and the degree and type of bridges between polysaccharides vary from one species to another. Synthases responsible for the biogeneration of linear polysaccharides are transmembrane proteins acting alone or in protein complexes (Latgé et al. 2017). The neosynthesized polysaccharides are extruded through the plasma membrane via as yet, undefined mechanisms. They are modified in the periplasmic space by remodeling enzymes. Many of the cell wall associated proteins responsible for the remodeling of these polysaccharides are anchored to the plasma membrane by a **g**lycosylphosphatidyl**I**nositol (GPI) anchor and designed as GPI anchored proteins.

The role of GPI anchored proteins has been previously investigated in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* and *Candida albicans* (Caro et al. 1997; Plaine et al. 2008). In silico analysis suggested that *C. albicans* possesses 115 putative GPI anchored proteins, almost twice the number reported for *S. cerevisiae*. Moreover, it has been shown previously that some of the GPI anchored proteins play a major enzymatic role in cell wall morphogenesis like, for example, the elongation of β-(1–3)-glucans in yeasts and molds (Popolo and Vai 1999; Mouyna et al. 2000a; Gastebois et al. 2010a), whereas in yeast, it was also mentioned that these proteins are covalently bound to the cell wall polysaccharide (Caro et al. 1997; Kapteyn et al. 2000; Frieman et al. 2002). Herein, we describe our in silico analysis to provide comprehensive role of the cohort of genes that encode GPI anchored proteins in *A. fumigatus* genome. To aid our understanding of the role of these GPI proteins in the construction of the cell wall, we have generated and characterized null mutants for all of the genes we identified in this study.

2 Identification of putative GPI anchored proteins in the *A. fumigatus* genome

The identification of putative GPI anchored proteins in the *A. fumigatus* genome (AF293; http://fungi.ensembl.org/Aspergillusfumigatus/Info/Index) has been undertaken using the prediction programs PredGPI (http://gpcr.biocomp.unibo.it/

predgpi/proteome.htm) and big PI (http://mendel.imp.ac.at/sat/gpi/gpi_server.html) (Eisenhaber et al. 2004). In total, 86 proteins have been identified and predicted as being GPI anchored (see Table 1).

3 Comparative genomic analysis

By performing BLAST analysis (https://www.yeastgenome.org/blast-fungal and https://blast.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Blast.cgi?PAGE=Proteins) with these proteins, we were able to show that all had orthologues in a second *A. fumigatus* isolate A1163. Orthologues of only 28 proteins (32.5%) were commons to the yeasts *S. cerevisiae* and *C. albicans* and filamentous fungi and a further 38 proteins (44%) were restricted to filamentous fungal species. Interestingly, 20 GPI anchored proteins (23.5%) were found exclusively in the genomes of the *Aspergilli* (Table 1).

4 Functions of GPI anchored proteins

Of the GPI anchored proteins that we have identified, the role of 34 proteins has been previously characterized either in *A. fumigatus* or in other fungi. In the following section, we describe their known roles.

(a) GPI anchored common to yeast and filamentous fungi acting on cell wall morphogenesis

Among the GPI anchored proteins previously described, several enzymes, *GEL*, *BGT2*, *DFG*, *SUN,* and *CRH*, have been well studied and shown to have functions associated with remodeling cell wall polysaccharides. The GPI anchors on these proteins result in them being co-localized with other cell membrane proteins that have direct roles in cell wall biogenesis and hence allow them to modify neosynthesized polysaccharides. The most extensively studied of these enzymes belong to the *GEL* family (GH72 in the CaZy database http://www.cazy.org/ which describes families of structurally related catalytic and carbohydrate-binding modules). Seven members of this family are encoded in the *A. fumigatus* genome, whereas *S. cerevisiae* (GAS) and *C. albicans* (PHR) have five members each (Rolli et al. 2011; Popolo et al. 2017). *GEL/GAS/PHR* family enzymes are responsible for the elongation of β-(1,3)-glucans, which is an essential activity given that deletion of *GEL4* in *A. fumigatus* is lethal (Hartland et al. 1996; Mouyna et al. 2000a, b; Gastebois et al. 2010a). It was recently shown that some members of this family have a dual activity that allows them not only to elongate but also to branch the neo elongated β-(1,3)-glucan (Aimanianda et al. 2017). This branching activity is only seen in enzymes that have the carbohydrate-binding module, CBM43, and loss of this motif abolishes β-(1,3)-glucan branching (Aimanianda et al. 2017).

Table 1 List of predictive GPI anchored proteins

AFUB number	AFUA.number	Gene name or function	Phenotype	Fungi	References
AFUB_018250	AFUA_2G01170	GEL1 §	no	Yeast and Filamentous	Hartland et al. (1996); Mouyna et al. (2000a, b)
AFUB_077400	AFUA_6G11390	GEL2 §	Conidia, Growth, S-D	Yeast and Filamentous	Mouyna et al. (2005)
AFUB_028470	AFUA_2G12850	GEL3	no phenotype	Yeast and Filamentous	Gastebois et al. (2010a
AFUB_022370	AFUA_2G05340	GEL4	Growth, S-D	Yeast and Filamentous	Gastebois et al. (2010a)
AFUB_084480	AFUA_8G02130	GEL5	no	Yeast and Filamentous	Gastebois et al. (2010a)
AFUB_036000	AFUA_3G13200	GEL6	no	Yeast and Filamentous	Gastebois et al. (2010a)
AFUB_078410	AFUA_6G12410	GEL7	no	Yeast and Filamentous	Gastebois et al. (2010a)
AFUB_048180	AFUA_3G00270	BGT2	no	Yeast and Filamentous	Gastebois et al. (2010b); Millet et al. (2018)
AFUB_002130	AFUA_1G01730	DFG1	no	Yeast and Filamentous	Muszkieta et al. (2019)
AFUB_017760	AFUA_2G00680	DFG2	no	Yeast and Filamentous	Muszkieta et al. (2019)
AFUB_048110	AFUA_3G00340	DFG3	Growth, S-D	Yeast and Filamentous	Muszkieta et al. (2019)
AFUB_047740	AFUA_3G00700	DFG4	no	Yeast and Filamentous	Muszkieta et al. (2019)
AFUB_101170	AFUA_4G00620	DFG5	no	Yeast and Filamentous	Muszkieta et al. (2019)
AFUB_100440	AFUA_4G02710	DFG7	no	Yeast and Filamentous	Muszkieta et al. (2019)
AFUB_013430	AFUA_1G13940	SUN2	no	Yeast and Filamentous	Gastebois et al. (2013)
AFUB_095070	AFUA_6G03230	CRH1 §	no	Yeast and Filamentous	Fang et al. (2019)
AFUB_020180	AFUA_2G03120	CRH2 §	no	Yeast and Filamentous	Fang et al. (2019)
AFUB_074470	AFUA_6G08510	CRH4	no	Yeast and Filamentous	Fang et al. (2019)
AFUB_015530	AFUA_1G16190	CRH5	no	Yeast and Filamentous	Fang et al. (2019)
AFUB_029980	AFUA_2G14360	ENG2	no	Yeast and Filamentous	Hartl et al. (2011)
AFUB_034540	AFUA_3G14680	PBL3	no	Yeast and Filamentous	Shen et al. (2004)
AFUB_052270	AFUA_5G03760	Chitinase A1	no	Yeast and Filamentous	Alcazar-Fuoli et al. (2011)
AFUB_063890	AFUA_4G06820	Ecm33 §	Conidia,virulence	Yeast and Filamentous	Chabane et al. (2006)

(continued)

Table 1 (continued)

AFUB number	AFUA.number	Gene name or function	Phenotype	Fungi	References
AFUB_076480	AFUA_6G10430	CDA6	no	Yeast and Filamentous	Mouyna et al (2020)
AFUB_092930	AFUA_6G05350	OPSB	no	Yeast and Filamentous	
AFUB_064130	AFUA_4G07040	CTSD	no	Yeast and Filamentous	Vickers et al. (2007)
AFUB_042000	AFUA_3G07050		no	Yeast and Filamentous	
AFUB_056560	AFUA_5G09020		no	Yeast and Filamentous	
AFUB_020300	AFUA_2G03230	AmylaseA	no	Filamentous fungi***	
AFUB_047500	AFUA_3G00900	Amylase	conidia, Growth,conidiation	Filamentous fungi***	
AFUB_000660	AFUA_6G14090	CFEMA	no	Filamentous Fungi	Vaknin et al. (2014)
AFUB_076620	AFUA_6G10580	CFEMB	no	Filamentous Fungi	Vaknin et al. (20201414)
AFUB_072620	AFUA_6G06690	CFEMC	no	Filamentous Fungi	Vaknin et al. (2014)
AFUB_057130	AFUA_5G09580	RODA #	Conidia,virulence	Filamentous Fungi	Aimanianda et al. (2009); Valsecchi et al. (2017a)
AFUB_016640	AFUA_1G17250	RODB #	no	Filamentous Fungi	Valsecchi et al. (2017a)
AFUB_042020	AFUA_3G07030	Glutaminase	no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_081470	AFUA_8G06030	α(1-3) glucanase	no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_097010	AFUA_6G00500	chitosanase	no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_003980	AFUA_1G03570	PhoA §	no	Filamentous Fungi	Bernard et al. (2002)
AFUB_022180	AFUA_2G05150	AfMP2	Biofilm	Filamentous Fungi	Woo et al. (2018)
AFUB_099880	AFUA_4G03240	AFMP1	no	Filamentous Fungi	Woo et al. (2018)
AFUB_006180	AFUA_1G05790		Biofilm	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_087030	AFUA_7G00450		Biofilm	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_001030	AFUA_6G13710		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_004040	AFUA_1G03630		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_008960	AFUA_1G09510		no	Filamentous Fungi	

(continued)

Table 1 (continued)

AFUB number	AFUA.number	Gene name or function	Phenotype	Fungi	References
AFUB_009040	AFUA_1G09590		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_009100	AFUA_1G09650		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_018780	AFUA_2G01710		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_035550	AFUA_3G13640		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_036090	AFUA_3G13110		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_044890	AFUA_3G03370		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_047260	AFUA_3G01150		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_047510	AFUA_3G00880		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_050450	AFUA_5G01920		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_056330	AFUA_5G08800		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_057570	AFUA_5G09960		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_057610	AFUA_5G10010		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_069330	AFUA_4G12370		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_082130	AFUA_8G05410		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_083170	AFUA_8G04370		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_084140	AFUA_8G02450		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_085740	AFUA_8G00830		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_088990	AFUA_7G02440		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_089500	AFUA_7G03970		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_095500	AFUA_6G02800		no	Filamentous Fungi	
AFUB_010650	AFUA_1G11220		Conidia, S-D	Aspergillus	
AFUB_066710	AFUA_4G09600		conidia, conidiation	Aspergillus	
AFUB_096850	AFUA_6G00620		Conidia	Aspergillus	
AFUB_099690	AFUA_4G03360		Conidia	Aspergillus	
AFUB_018220	AFUA_2G01140		Conidia	Aspergillus	

(continued)

Table 1 (continued)

AFUB number	AFUA.number	Gene name or function	Phenotype	Fungi	References
AFUB_040120	AFUA_3G08990	CSPA	Conidia, adhesion	Aspergillus	Levdansly et al. (2010); Valsecchi et al. (2017b)
AFUB_019530	AFUA_2G02440		no	Aspergillus	
AFUB_031860	AFUA_2G16180		no	Aspergillus	
AFUB_044000	AFUA_3G03960		no	Aspergillus	
AFUB_084580	AFUA_8G02030		no	Aspergillus	
AFUB_087170	AFUA_7G00580		no	Aspergillus	
AFUB_087560	AFUA_7G00970		no	Aspergillus	
AFUB_000740	AFUA_6G14010		no	Aspergillus	
AFUB_082630	AFUA_8G04860		no	Aspergillus	
AFUB_030420	AFUA_2G14780		no	Aspergillus*	
AFUB_037960	AFUA_3G11190		no	Aspergillus*	
AFUB_089000	AFUA_7G02460		no	Aspergillus*	
AFUB_016760	AFUA_1G17390		no	Aspergillus*	
AFUB_066570	AFUA_4G09450		no	Aspergillus*	
AFUB_084830	AFUA_8G01770		Conidia, Growth, S-D	Aspergillus*	Mouyna et al. (2020) in preparation

List of the putative GPI-anchored proteins identified by the two softwares in the A. fumigatus genome including the corresponding AFUB and AFUA number (http://fungi.ensembl.org/Aspergillus_fumigatus/Info/Index), the gene name when identified, the phenotype of the mutant and their presence in the other genomes. Yeast and Filamentous: Proteins which are present in *C. albicans*, *S. cerevisiae*, *A. fumigatus* and others filamentous fungi; Filamentous Fungi: proteins present in filamentous fungi and not in the yeast genome; Filamentous Fungi***: these proteins are not present in the *S. cerevisiae* and C. albicans genome but they are present in the S. pombe and C. neoformans genome. Aspergillus: proteins only present in *Aspergillus* species; *Aspergillus**: proteins only present in few species of Aspergillus like *A. clavatus*, *A. lentulus*, *A. thermomutatus*, and the *A. turcosus* species; S-D: sensitivity to drugs. The GPI mutant library was screened for the growth on different media (Malt or Minimal medium), or Minimal medium (MM) including calcofluor white (40mg/ml), or congo red (50mg/ml) after 48h at 37°C, conidial morphology, conidial viability as described by (Millet et al. 2018), adhesion (104 conidia were incubated at 37°C on MM medium + 0.01% tween 20 on plates TPP for 24h) as described by Fontaine et al., (2010) and the ability to form biofilm on agar plates on MM medium after 22h of growth at 37° as described by (Beauvais et al., 2007). NB: no=no phenotype; S-D: higher sensitivity to drugs; Conidia: mutants which are affected in their conidia (shape, linear chains); Conidiation: mutants which are affected in conidiation. # RODA and RODB predicted to be GPI in silico but proved biochemically to be non GPI. [§] Proteins proved to be GPI biochemically

The GH17 family in *A. fumigatus* contains five members (*BGT1–3, SCW4 and SCW11)*; however, *BGT2* is the only member of this family that is GPI anchored. Bgt1 transfers the donor β-(1,3)-glucan on the non-reducing end of the chain (Mouyna et al. 1998), whereas Bgt2 preferentially transfers within the β-(1,3)-glucan chain (Gastebois et al. 2010b). No phenotype has been associated to the deletion of *BGT2* alone in *A. fumigatus* or its ortholog *BGL2* in the yeast *S. cerevisiae* (Cappellaro et al. 1998). However, Millet et al. (2018) and Sestak et al. (2004) showed that in *A. fumigatus* and *S. cerevisiae,* the non-GPI-members of the

GH17 family, especially Scw4, Scw11, and Bgt3 and Scw4, Scw10, and Scw11, are important for cell wall integrity. The enzymatic activity of Scw4, Scw11, and Bgt3 is still unknown but the analysis of the quintuple null mutant showed that Scw4, Scw11, and Bgt3 have antagonistic and distinct functions to Bgt2 and Bgt1.

Recently, it has been shown in *A. fumigatus* that the *DFG* family (GH76 CaZy family) is involved in the covalent binding of Galactomannan (GM) to the β-(1,3)-glucan–chitin core of the cell wall. This family contains seven members in *A. fumigatus*, all of which are GPI anchored proteins, except *DFG6* (Muszkieta et al. 2019). The single mutant Dfg3 is playing the major role in the association of the GM to the glucan core. However, the phenotype defect was enhanced in the septuple *DFG* deleted mutant, such as highly reduced growth with hyper-branched hyphae and higher sensitivity to drugs, showing that Dfgs have additional activities on structural properties of the cell wall (Muszkieta et al. 2019). In both, *S. cerevisiae* and *C. albicans*, although single knockouts of *DFG5* and *DCW1* are viable, a double knockout is synthetically lethal (Kitagaki et al. 2002; Spreghini et al. 2003). Interestingly as yeasts do not have galactomannan in their cell wall, the biochemical function of these remodeling enzymes remains to be discovered.

The *SUN* family *in A. fumigatus* (also known as the GH132 CaZy family) comprises two members, *SUN1* and *SUN2* which is the only one predicted to be GPI anchored in *A. fumigatus*. They are so called as they encode a SUN domain originally identified in the yeast proteins *SIM1*, *UTH1*, *NCA3,* and *SUN4*. The SUN domain is closely related, at the sequence level, to a β-glucosidase of *Candida wickerhamii;* however, the yeast proteins have no detectable β-glucosidase activity. The deletion of *SUN2*, which is most closely related to the uncharacterized protein YMR244W in *S. cerevisiae*, did not induce any morphological alterations. In contrast, the deletion of the *SUN1* genes in yeasts and molds has been shown to exhibit defects in septum closure (Hiller et al. 2007; Norice et al. 2007; Firon et al. 2007; Gastebois et al. 2013) However, the baker's yeast *SUN1* and their ortholog in *C. albicans SUN41/SUN42,* which encodes an exo β-(1,3)-glucanase but are not a GPI anchored protein, play a role in cell wall morphogenesis. Inactivation of *SUN1* genes and orthologs leads to a defect in the separation of daughter cells from mother cells, and simultaneous inactivation of *SUN41* and *SUN42* is lethal in the absence of osmotic protection. Like for *A. fumigatus*, cell wall defects seen in this double mutant are mainly localized in the region surrounding the septa in mother yeast cells and subapical hyphal compartments. The role taken by each SUN protein remains unknown as well as the role of the GPI anchor in the function of *A. fumigatus SUN2* in the cell.

The *CRH* (for Congo Red Hypersensitivity) GH16 CaZy family has been associated to glucan/chitin linkage in yeast *S. cerevisiae* (Rodríguez-Peña et al. 2000; Cabib et al. 2008; Blanco et al. 2012; Arroyo et al. 2016). In *A. fumigatus*, five members are present in the genome (four proteins being GPI anchored proteins). The phenotype of the quintuple mutant is very weak and not associated to congo red resistance. Congo red toxicity is pleiopropic with this molecule acting not only on cell wall biosynthesis but also in oxido-reduction pathways. Moreover, the biochemical function of the Crh proteins has not been demonstrated and there is

not a definite proof that these genes could be essential for the establishment of chitin–glucan linkages (Fang et al. 2019).

Members of the *SPS2* family (which are not assigned to a CaZy family) play an essential role in the formation of the ascospore cell wall in *S. cerevisiae* (Coluccio et al. 2004), whereas the ortholog in *A. fumigatus*, *ECM33*, is important for conidial morphogenesis and virulence (Chabane et al. 2006). However, its enzymatic function remains unknown.

Three GPI anchored proteins, CFEM (A-C), containing fungal-specific CFEM domains (Common in Fungal Extracellular Membrane) are characterized by spaced cysteine residues (Kulkarni et al. 2003). Most CFEM-containing cell wall proteins studied to date have been shown to be involved in host-pathogen interactions and virulence. In *C. albicans*, deletion of the three GPI anchored-CFEM-encoding genes in the genome (Rbt5/Rbt51/Csa1) results in an increased sensitivity to cell wall damaging agents and a reduced ability to form a biofilm (Pérez et al. 2006, 2011). In contrast, in *A. fumigatus*, (Vaknin et al. 2014) showed that these proteins, even though their respective mutants display a higher sensitivity to congo red and calcofluor white than their parental strain, did not play any role in cell wall morphogenesis or virulence.

Finally, no phenotype has been associated to the endo β-(1,3)-glucanase *ENG2* (Hartl et al. 2011) or the chitinase A1 (Alcazar-Fuoli et al. 2011) and the chitin deacetylase *CDA6* (Mouyna et al. 2020), which are the only GPI members in their respective family. However, the sequential deletion of *ENG2–5* belonging to the GH16 family altogether with *ENG1* (GH81) showed conidiogenesis defects, with linear chains of conidia unable to separate while the germination rate was not affected (Mouyna et al. 2016).

(b) GPI anchored proteins only found in filamentous fungi which are associated to cell wall structures

In addition to the GPI anchored proteins common to yeast and filamentous fungi which have been shown to be biochemically associated to cell wall construction, other GPI anchored proteins identified in silico are present only in the cell wall of filamentous fungi and are involved in adhesion and biofilm formation (Table 1).

The outer layer of the conidium is composed of melanin covered by a rodlet layer that confers hydrophobic properties to *A. fumigatus* conidia. This rodlet layer is exclusively composed of hydrophobins, which are low molecular weight proteins rich in cysteins residues. This rodlet layer masks conidial recognition by the human innate immune system (Aimanianda et al. 2009). Recently, (Valsecchi et al. 2017a) showed that seven hydrophobins (RodA–RodG) are present in the genome of *A. fumigatus*. RodA and RodB were identified as putative GPI anchored protein based on our in silico analysis. However, two lines of evidence indicate that the proteins are probably not GPI anchored: the predicted ω cleavage site which is the amino acid immediately upstream of the putative site of GPI anchor addition (the omega site) is located between Cys-residues C7 and C8, which would disrupt a conserved disulfide bridge that is important to stabilize the structure of the proteins; moreover,

it has been shown that the C-terminus of RodA extracted from conidia corresponds to that of the full-length protein (Pille et al. 2015; Valsecchi et al. 2017a).

It has been shown by Levdansky et al. (2010) that deletion of *CSPA*, a repeat rich GPI anchored protein only found in *Aspergillus* sp., is involved in reduced adhesion and increase speed of conidial germination. Moreover, Valsecchi et al. (2017b) showed that conidia of the *CSPA* mutant tended to stay grouped together in long chains and adhered also between themselves. This gene has been shown to be regulated by the Myb1 transcription factor (Valsecchi et al. 2017b).

5 Investigating the role of newly identified GPI anchored proteins in cell wall morphogenesis

Most of the previously analyzed GPI proteins were associated somehow to cell wall construction and fungal morphogenesis. These results suggested that all GPI anchored proteins may have essential functions in fungal growth some of them being undefined and this was at the basis of the study of the GPI proteins in *A.fumigatus*. In order to investigate exhaustively the role of the GPI anchored proteins, an *A. fumigatus* mutant library of all the genes identified in silico were constructed following the procedures outlined in Zhao et al. (2019) and Furukawa et al. (2020) using the oligonucleotide primers described in Supplementary Table 1 and screened for growth, conidiation, and biofilm formation.

From the screening analysis, three categories of GPI anchored protein null mutants were identified: proteins found in yeast and filamentous fungi, proteins found exclusively in filamentous fungi, and proteins found exclusively in *Aspergillus* species. Ten of the 57 new mutants (the previously published mutants are not counted) showed a distinct phenotype from the parental strain including conidial morphology, growth, sensitivity to congo red and calcofluor white, adhesion or biofilm formation (Table 1).

(a) Proteins found in Yeast and filamentous fungi

28 proteins are present in yeast and filamentous fungi genome, 23 being already described previously (see above) and 38 proteins are present exclusively in filamentous fungi genome.

- **Proteins with putative enzymatic functions**

Secreted proteases have always attracted attention as potential mediators of fungal invasion, conidophore development, or adhesion (Monod et al. 2002). We did not observe any distinct growth phenotype after the deletion of the aspartic proteases *CTSD* (AFUA_4G07040) (Vickers et al. 2007) and *OPSB* (AFUA_6G05350). Phospholipases (Plbs) activity which can destabilize host membranes are also considered to be virulence factors for pathogenic fungi like *C. albicans* (Leidich et al. 1998). In *A. fumigatus*, the mutant resulting from the deletion of the

phospholipase *PLB3* (AFUA_3G14680) (Shen et al. 2004) is not affected. Similarly, phosphatase plays a major role in the fungal life. In *A. fumigatus*, the acid phosphatase PhoA (AFUA_1G03570) which is specific to filamentous fungi (Bernard et al. 2002) are not directly associated to growth (data not shown). Moreover, the two genes encoding a putative chitosanase and a putative α-(1–3)-glucanase (respectively AFUA_6G00500 and AFUA_8G06030) which were predicted as GPI anchored proteins specific to filamentous fungi, do not play a role in the cell wall remodeling in *A. fumigatus* since the corresponding deleted mutant behaved like the parental strain (data not shown). However, non-GPI anchored homologs of these proteins (three for chitosanases and eight for α-(1–3)-glucanases) are present in the *A. fumigatus* genome and could be involved in compensatory mechanisms after the deletion of the GPI gene of the family.

The GPI anchored protein encoded by AFUA_3G00900, is a putative amylase. The null mutant exhibits a twofold decrease in conidiation, a slight reduction in radial growth and increased resistance to congo red (data not shown). The protein encoded by this gene belongs to the GH13 family. This CAZYme family is a large family containing various hydrolyzing and transglycosylating enzymes, mostly acting on α-(1,4)- or α-(1,6)-glycosidic linkages, which can be involved in starch degradation or in the synthesis or modification of alpha-glucan in the fungal cell wall (Morita et al. 2006; Yuan et al. 2008). In addition to AFUA_300900, four other GH13 proteins are present in the *A. fumigatus* genome: AFUA_2G03230, another GPI anchored protein specific to filamentous fungi (Table 1), AFUA_2G00710, AFUA_4G10130, and AFUA_2G13460. In contrast to AFUA_3G00900, we saw no phenotype associated with the deletion of AFUA_2G03230. The phylogenetic tree of the GH13 family of *A. fumigatus* showed two distinct groups, the first group (with AFUA_2G00710 AFUA_4G10130) associated to proteins involved in starch degradation like AmyA and AmyB in *A. niger* (Korman et al. 1990) and the second group (AFUA_3G00900, AFUA_2G03230 and AFUA_2G13460) associated to proteins with transferase activities like AgtA and AgtB in *A. niger* and Aah3 in *S. pombe* (Morita et al. 2006; van der Kaaij et al. 2007b; Yuan et al. 2008) (Fig. 1). In *A. niger*, both enzymes showed transglycosylation activity on donor substrates with alpha-(1,4)-glycosidic bonds and at least five anhydroglucose units. The enzymes, designated AgtA and AgtB, produced new alpha-(1,4)-glycosidic bonds (van der Kaaij et al. 2007b). In *S. pombe*, disruption of *AAH3* encoding a GPI anchored protein resulted in hypersensitivity toward cell wall-degrading enzymes and an aberrant cell shape, indicating that normal cell wall biosynthesis was affected (Morita et al. 2006). Disruption of *AgtA* in *A. niger* also affected cell wall stability. The protein sequence of AFUA_3G00900 and AFUA_2G13460 is very closely related to AgtA and AgtB of *A. niger* (between 50 and 60% of identity) and notably the catalytic conserved domain characteristics of transferase activities of this GH13 families (van der Kaaij et al. 2007a) suggest they may be also transferases in *A. fumigatus*.

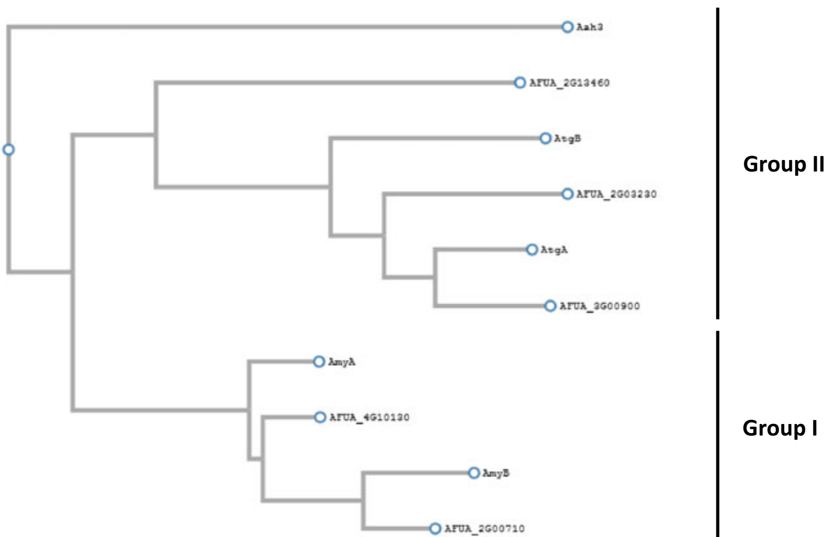


Fig. 1 Phylogeny of the GH13 family of *A. fumigatus*, AtgA-B and AmyA-B of *A. niger* and aah3 of *S. pombe*. Sequence alignment and phylogenetic reconstructions have been done using clustalW (https://www.genome.jp/tools-bin/clustalw). The tree was constructed using FastTree v2. 1.8 with default parameters

- **Proteins with unknown function**

Most of the proteins exclusively present in filamentous fungi genome display unknown functions (25 on the 38 identified).

Three null mutants corresponding to the genes (AFUA_2G05150, AFUA_7G00450, and AFUA_1G05790) showed a twofold reduced ability to form biofilm (Fig. 2a). AFUA_2G05150 is annotated as the cell wall galactomanno-protein Mp2. In contrast, the AFUA_4G03240 null mutant (also a GPI anchored protein) annotated as the galactomannoprotein Mp1 did not show any difference in biofilm formation in our study. Mp1 and Mp2 are homologous to *Penicillium marneffei* Mp1, a cell surface antigenic cell wall mannoprotein and a virulence factor (Cao et al. 1998; Woo et al. 2016). *A. fumigatus* Mp1 and Mp2 have been shown to be also immunogenic (Yuen et al. 2001; Woo et al. 2002; Chong et al. 2004). We constructed the double mutant Δ*mp*1/Δ*mp*2 but we did not observe additional decreases in biofilm formation or reduction in adhesion in comparison to the single mutant Δ*mp*2 (data not shown). Recently, (Woo et al. 2018) identified two distantly others homologs in *A. fumigatus*, Mp3 and Mp4, containing also one lipid-binding domain and showed that Mp4 was involved in virulence.

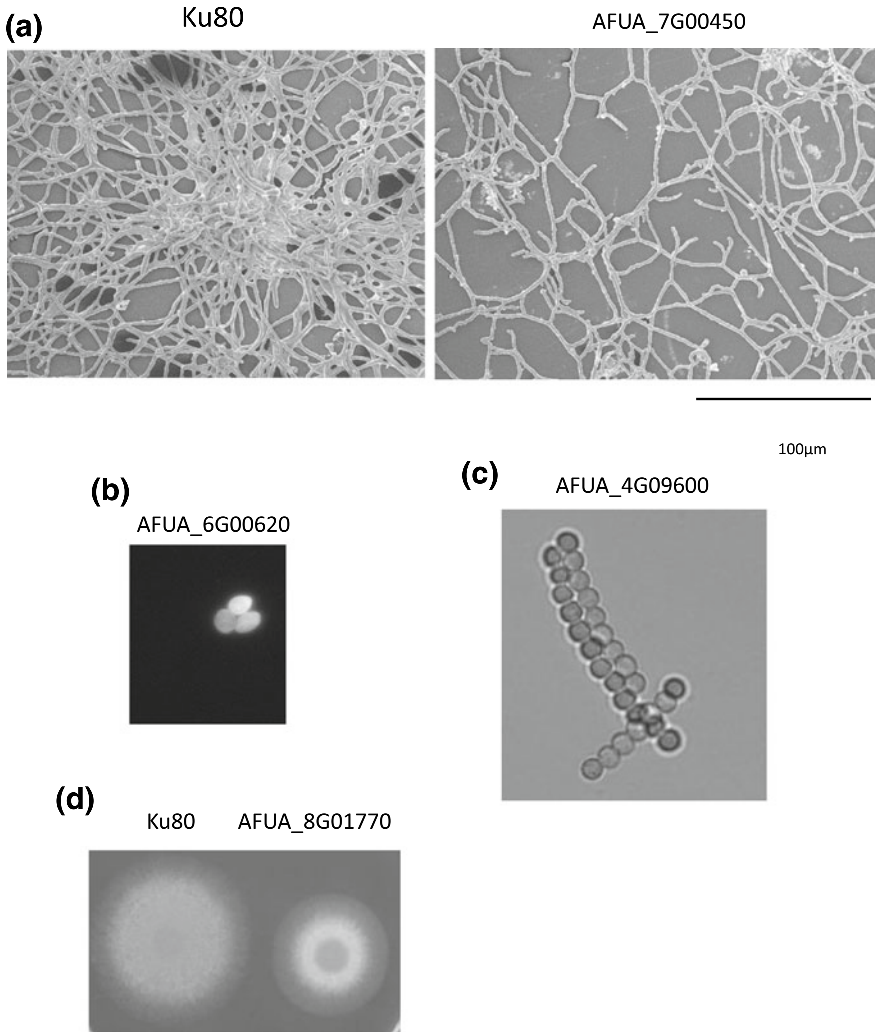


Fig. 2 Phenotype analysis of some GPI anchored protein mutants: **a** SEM of the AFUA_1G05790 deletion mutant involved in biofilm formation compared to the parental strain Ku80. **b** Light microscopy of the shape of conidia after deletion of AFUA_6G00620 gene (63x). **c** Light microscopy of the linear chains of conidia after the deletion of AFUA_4G09600 gene. **d** Growth on Malt medium of the AFUA_8G01770 deletion mutant after 48 h at 37 °C in comparison to the parental strain

(b) **Proteins found exclusively in *Aspergillus* species**

For the deletion of AFUA_2G01140, AFUA_4G03360, AFUA_6G00620, and AFUA_1G11220 which encode proteins of unknown function, we observed that the shape of 5% of the conidia were ovoids (an example is given in Fig. 2b). In the case

of AFUA_1G11220, the deletion of this gene was also associated with a twofold increase in congo red and calcofluor white sensitivity (data not shown). This modification of the morphology of the conidia and of the sensitivity to cell wall drugs suggests that the proteins encoded by these genes could be involved in the construction of the conidial cell wall.

Deletion of AFUA_4G09600, a protein containing several repetitions of amino acid motif GGPSGNDGGN and VKDAYTDDHSV also found only in *Aspergillus* sps, is correlated to a threefold reduction in conidiation compared to the parental strain (data not shown). We also observed linear chains of conidia in this mutant (Fig. 2c). This phenotype is reminiscent of the *CSPA* null mutant phenotype (Valsecchi et al. 2017b).

Six GPI proteins (AFUA_2G14780, AFUA_3G11190, AFUA_7G02460, AFUA_1G17390, AFUA_4G09450, AFUA_8G01770) are only present in the *Aspergillus* species close phylogenetically of *A. fumigatus* (*A. clavatus*, *A. lentulus*, *A. thermomutatus,* and *A. turcosus* (Table 1). No significant homology or domain has been found with any known proteins. Only the deletion of AFUA_8G01700 showed a distinct phenotype from the parental strain, reduced growth, higher sensitivity to drugs and reduced adhesion (Mouyna et al. 2020, manuscript in preparation) (Fig. 2d).

6 Discussion and Conclusion

Even if we try to dress an exhaustive list of all the GPI anchored proteins present in the *A. fumigatus* genome using different algorithms, some proteins could have been wrongly identified as GPI proteins (RodA and RodB) or missed. For example, the conidial surface protein CcpA has been shown to be GPI anchored (Voltersen et al. 2018) while it was not identified using the prediction softwares. Only few proteins have been demonstrated biochemically to be GPI anchored proteins after cleavage of the anchor by a phospholipase C releasing the protein in the Triton X-114 fraction and recognized by a cross-reacting determinant antibody. A proteomic analysis identified biochemically Gel1 and Gel2, Crh1, Crh2, Ecm33, PhoA as GPI anchored proteins (Bruneau et al. 2001). All of these proteins were identified in our bioinformatics predictions.

The localization of GPI anchored proteins has been also controversial. In the yeast *S. cerevisiae*, and *Candida* (Kapteyn et al. 2000; Frieman et al. 2002), it has been demonstrated that many GPI proteins (called GPI anchored cell wall proteins or GPI-CWPs) arrive at the plasma membrane but are then liberated. A remnant of the GPI anchor reacts with β1,6 glucan resulting in cross-linking of the GPI-CWP into the cell wall (Van der Vaart et al. 1997) suggesting that there are two terminal fates for GPI proteins—residence at the plasma membrane (GPI anchored plasma membrane proteins or GPI-PMPs) and residence at the cell wall (GPI-CWPs) (Lu et al. 1994). Moreover, based on in silico analysis of GPI anchored proteins in *S. cerevisiae*, Caro et al. (1997) proposed that a signal of two basic amino acids in the four amino acids upstream of the ω site acts to retain the protein at the plasma

membrane. In the absence of this retention signal, the proteins are mobilized to the cell wall. Using fusions of the GPI signal sequences from *S. cerevisiae* to alpha-galactosidase, (Hamada et al. 1998) found a good correlation between presence or absence of the dibasic motif and partitioning of the fusion protein to the plasma membrane or cell wall. Analysis of various point mutations in specific GPI anchor signal sequences also supported the importance of the dibasic motif in GPI anchored protein localization. In contrast, in *A. fumigatus*, the structural cell wall composition did not reveal the presence of β(1–6)glucan (Fontaine et al. 2000). Moreover, no proteins have been shown to be covalently attached to the cell wall after their release from the membrane (Bernard et al. 2002). In addition, none of the FLO, CWP or TIR family proteins identified in the *S. cerevisiae* genome (Caro et al. 1997) and predicted to be associated to the cell wall, have been found in the *A. fumigatus* genome.

The different categories of GPI anchored proteins found in *A. fumigatus* and their function are summarized in Fig. 3. The first category of proteins is highly conserved in all fungi (yeast as well as filamentous fungi) and is essential in cell wall morphogenesis. Indeed, the structural core of the cell wall between yeasts and molds is conserved. Most of them belong to multigenic families of proteins. Their analysis showed that most of the time, one or two genes in a family are responsible for the phenotype observed (Gastebois et al. 2010a; Millet et al. 2018; Muszkieta et al. 2019). Accordingly, all proteins in the same family are unlikely to have a shared function, which supports the redundancy of genes already observed in the *Aspergillus* genome. In the second category, we identified and characterized proteins present only in filamentous fungi, which are mostly involved in biofilm formation, adhesion, and virulence process. However, 60% of the proteins belonging to this category did not present any domain or identity with previously annotated

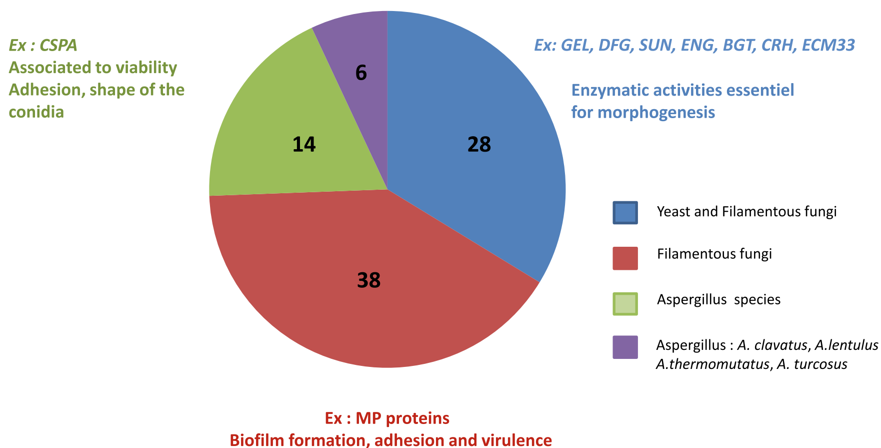


Fig. 3 Different fungal categories of GPI anchored proteins, which show an association between their putative role (cell wall remodeling, adhesion, biofilm or virulence) and their category

proteins or a distinct phenotype associated to their gene mutation. Finally, the third category of proteins is only present in *Aspergillus* species, or even in few related species of *Aspergillus*. These proteins seem to be mostly associated with the formation of the conidial stage but again their function is unknown. This review suggests that other non-GPI-bound transglycosidases are important for the remodeling of cell wall construction and remain to be discovered.

Acknowledgements This research was funded by l'Agence Nationale pour la Recherche (AfuInf ANR-16-CE92-0039), la Fondation pour la Recherche Médicale (DEQ 20150331722 LATGE Equipe FRM 2015) and the AIC (Action Incitative Ciblée) grant of Pasteur Institute. This work was also supported by the Wellcome trust grant 208396/Z/17/Z to MB.

References

Aimanianda V, Bayry J, Bozza S, Kniemeyer O, Perruccio K, Elluru SR et al (2009) Surface hydrophobin prevents immune recognition of airborne fungal spores. Nature 460:1117–1121

Aimanianda V, Simenel C, Garnaud C, Clavaud C, Tada R, Barbin L et al (2017) The dual activity responsible for the elongation and branching of β-(1,3)-glucan in the fungal cell wall. mBio 8. 8(3):e00619–17

Alcazar-Fuoli L, Clavaud C, Lamarre C, Aimanianda V, Seidl-Seiboth V, Mellado E, Latgé J-P (2011) Functional analysis of the fungal/plant class chitinase family in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Fungal Genet Biol 48:418–429

Arroyo J, Farkaš V, Sanz AB, Cabib E (2016) Strengthening the fungal cell wall through chitin-glucan cross-links: effects on morphogenesis and cell integrity. Cell Microbiol 18:1239–1250

Beauvais A, Schmidt C, Guadagnini S, Roux P, Perret E, Henry C et al (2007) An extracellular matrix glues together the aerial-grown hyphae of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Cell Microbiol 9:1588–1600

Bernard M, Mouyna I, Dubreucq G, Debeaupuis J-P, Fontaine T, Vorgias C et al (2002) Characterization of a cell-wall acid phosphatase (PhoAp) in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Microbiol 148:2819–2829

Blanco N, Reidy M, Arroyo J, Cabib E (2012) Crosslinks in the cell wall of budding yeast control morphogenesis at the mother-bud neck. J Cell Sci 125:5781–5789

Bruneau JM, Magnin T, Tagat E, Legrand R, Bernard M, Diaquin M et al (2001) Proteome analysis of *Aspergillus fumigatus* identifies glycosylphosphatidylinositol-anchored proteins associated to the cell wall biosynthesis. Electrophoresis 22:2812–2823

Cabib E, Farkas V, Kosík O, Blanco N, Arroyo J, McPhie P (2008) Assembly of the yeast cell wall. Crh1p and Crh2p act as transglycosylases in vivo and in vitro. J Biol Chem 283:29859–29872

Cao L, Chan CM, Lee C, Wong SS, Yuen KY (1998) MP1 encodes an abundant and highly antigenic cell wall mannoprotein in the pathogenic fungus *Penicillium marneffei*. Infect Immun 66:966–973

Cappellaro C, Mrsa V, Tanner W (1998) New potential cell wall glucanases of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* and their involvement in mating. J Bacteriol 180:5030–5037

Caro LH, Tettelin H, Vossen JH, Ram AF, van den Ende H, Klis FM (1997) In silicio identification of glycosyl-phosphatidylinositol-anchored plasma-membrane and cell wall proteins of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Yeast 13:1477–1489

Chabane S, Sarfati J, Ibrahim-Granet O, Du C, Schmidt C, Mouyna I et al (2006) Glycosylphosphatidylinositol-anchored Ecm33p influences conidial cell wall biosynthesis in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Appl Environ Microbiol 72:3259–3267

Chong KTK, Woo PCY, Lau SKP, Huang Y, Yuen K (2004) AFMP2 encodes a novel immunogenic protein of the antigenic mannoprotein superfamily in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. J Clin Microbiol 42:2287–2291

Coluccio A, Bogengruber E, Conrad MN, Dresser ME, Briza P, Neiman AM (2004) Morphogenetic pathway of spore wall assembly in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Eukaryot Cell 3:1464–1475

Eisenhaber B, Schneider G, Wildpaner M, Eisenhaber F (2004) A sensitive predictor for potential GPI lipid modification sites in fungal protein sequences and its application to genome-wide studies for *Aspergillus nidulans*, *Candida albicans*, *Neurospora crassa*, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* and *Schizosaccharomyces pombe*. J Mol Biol 337:243–253

Fang W, Sanz AB, Bartual SG, Wang B, Ferenbach AT, Farkaš V et al (2019) Mechanisms of redundancy and specificity of the *Aspergillus fumigatus* Crh transglycosylases. Nat Commun 10:1669

Firon A, Aubert S, Iraqui I, Guadagnini S, Goyard S, Prévost M-C et al (2007) The SUN41 and SUN42 genes are essential for cell separation in *Candida albicans*. Mol Microbiol 66:1256–1275

Fontaine T, Simenel C, Dubreucq G, Adam O, Delepierre M, Lemoine J et al (2000) Molecular organization of the alkali-insoluble fraction of aspergillus fumigatus cell wall. J Biol Chem 275:41528

Fontaine T, Beauvais A, Loussert C, Thevenard B, Fulgsang CC, Ohno N et al (2010) Cell wall alpha1-3glucans induce the aggregation of germinating conidia of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Fungal Genet Biol 47:707–712

Frieman MB, McCaffery JM, Cormack BP (2002) Modular domain structure in the Candida glabrata adhesin Epa1p, a beta1,6 glucan-cross-linked cell wall protein. Mol Microbiol 46:479–492

Furukawa T, van Rhijn N, Fraczek M, Gsaller F, Davies E, Carr P et al (2020) The negative cofactor 2 complex is a key regulator of drug resistance in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Nat Commun 11:427

Gastebois A, Aimanianda V, Bachellier-Bassi S, Nesseir A, Firon A, Beauvais A et al (2013) SUN proteins belong to a novel family of β-(1,3)-glucan-modifying enzymes involved in fungal morphogenesis. J Biol Chem 288:13387–13396

Gastebois A, Fontaine T, Latgé J-P, Mouyna I (2010a) beta(1-3)Glucanosyltransferase Gel4p is essential for *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Eukaryot Cell 9:1294–1298

Gastebois A, Mouyna I, Simenel C, Clavaud C, Coddeville B, Delepierre M et al (2010b) Characterization of a new beta(1-3)-glucan branching activity of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. J Biol Chem 285:2386–2396

Hamada K, Terashima H, Arisawa M, Kitada K (1998) Amino acid sequence requirement for efficient incorporation of glycosylphosphatidylinositol-associated proteins into the cell wall of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. J Biol Chem 273:26946–26953

Hartl L, Gastebois A, Aimanianda V, Latgé J-P (2011) Characterization of the GPI-anchored endo β-1,3-glucanase Eng2 of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Fungal Genet Biol 48:185–191

Hartland RP, Fontaine T, Debeaupuis JP, Simenel C, Delepierre M, Latgé JP (1996) A novel beta-(1-3)-glucanosyltransferase from the cell wall of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. J Biol Chem 271:26843–26849

Hiller E, Heine S, Brunner H, Rupp S (2007) *Candida albicans* Sun41p, a putative glycosidase, is involved in morphogenesis, cell wall biogenesis, and biofilm formation. Eukaryot Cell 6:2056–2065

Kapteyn JC, Hoyer LL, Hecht JE, Müller WH, Andel A, Verkleij AJ et al (2000) The cell wall architecture of *Candida albicans* wild-type cells and cell wall-defective mutants. Mol Microbiol 35:601–611

Kitagaki H, Wu H, Shimoi H, Ito K (2002) Two homologous genes, DCW1 (YKL046c) and DFG5, are essential for cell growth and encode glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI)-anchored membrane proteins required for cell wall biogenesis in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Mol Microbiol 46:1011–1022

Korman DR, Bayliss FT, Barnett CC, Carmona CL, Kodama KH, Royer TJ et al (1990) Cloning, characterization, and expression of two alpha-amylase genes from *Aspergillus niger* var. awamori. Curr Genet 17:203–212

Kulkarni RD, Kelkar HS, Dean RA (2003) An eight-cysteine-containing CFEM domain unique to a group of fungal membrane proteins. Trends Biochem Sci 28:118–121

Latgé J-P, Beauvais A, Chamilos G (2017) The cell wall of the human fungal pathogen *Aspergillus fumigatus*: biosynthesis, organization, immune response, and virulence. Annu Rev Microbiol 71:99–116

Leidich SD, Ibrahim AS, Fu Y, Koul A, Jessup C, Vitullo J et al (1998) Cloning and disruption of caPLB1, a phospholipase B gene involved in the pathogenicity of *Candida albicans*. J Biol Chem 273:26078–26086

Levdansky E, Kashi O, Sharon H, Shadkchan Y, Osherov N (2010) The *Aspergillus fumigatus* cspA gene encoding a repeat-rich cell wall protein is important for normal conidial cell wall architecture and interaction with host cells. Eukaryot Cell 9:1403–1415

Lu CF, Kurjan J, Lipke PN (1994) A pathway for cell wall anchorage of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* alpha-agglutinin. Mol Cell Biol 14:4825–4833

Millet N, Latgé J-P, Mouyna I (2018) Members of glycosyl-hydrolase family 17 of *A. fumigatus* differentially affect morphogenesis. J Fungi Basel 4(1)

Monod M, Capoccia S, Léchenne B, Zaugg C, Holdom M, Jousson O (2002) Secreted proteases from pathogenic fungi. Int J Med Microbiol 292:405–419

Morita T, Tanaka N, Hosomi A, Giga-Hama Y, Takegawa K (2006) An alpha-amylase homologue, aah3, encodes a GPI-anchored membrane protein required for cell wall integrity and morphogenesis in *Schizosaccharomyces pombe*. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 70:1454–1463

Mouyna I, Morelle W, Vai M, Monod M, Léchenne B, Fontaine T, Beauvais A, Sarfati J, Prévost MC, Henry C, Latgé JP (2005) Deletion of GEL2 encoding for a beta(1–3)glucanosyltransferase affects morphogenesis and virulence in Aspergillus fumigatus. Mol Microbiol 56:1675–1688

Mouyna I, Hartland RP, Fontaine T, Diaquin M, Simenel C, Delepierre M et al (1998) A 1,3-glucanosyltransferase isolated from the cell wall of *Aspergillus fumigatus* is a homologue of the yeast Bgl2p. Microbiology 144:3171–3180

Mouyna I, Fontaine T, Vai M, Monod M, Fonzi WA, Diaquin M et al (2000a) Glycosylphosphatidylinositol-anchored glucanosyltransferases play an active role in the biosynthesis of the fungal cell wall. J Biol Chem 275:14882–14889

Mouyna I, Monod M, Fontaine T, Henrissat B, Léchenne B, Latgé JP (2000b) Identification of the catalytic residues of the first family of beta(1-3)glucanosyltransferases identified in fungi. Biochem J 347(Pt 3):741–747

Mouyna I, Aimanianda V, Hartl L, Prevost M-C, Sismeiro O, Dillies M-A et al (2016) GH16 and GH81 family β-(1,3)-glucanases in *Aspergillus fumigatus* are essential for conidial cell wall morphogenesis. Cell Microbiol 18:1285–1293

Mouyna I, Delliere S, Beauvais A, Gravelat F, Snarr B, Lehoux M et al (2020) What are the functions of chitin deacetylases in *Aspergillus fumigatus*? Front Cell Infect Microbiol 10:28

Muszkieta L, Fontaine T, Beau R, Mouyna I, Vogt MS, Trow J et al (2019) The glycosylphosphatidylinositol-anchored DFG family is essential for the insertion of galactomannan into the β-(1,3)-glucan-chitin core of the cell wall of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. mSphere 4:e00397–19

Norice CT, Smith FJ, Solis N, Filler SG, Mitchell AP (2007) Requirement for *Candida albicans* Sun41 in biofilm formation and virulence. Eukaryot Cell 6:2046–2055

Pérez A, Pedrós B, Murgui A, Casanova M, López-Ribot JL, Martínez JP (2006) Biofilm formation by *Candida albicans* mutants for genes coding fungal proteins exhibiting the eight-cysteine-containing CFEM domain. FEMS Yeast Res 6:1074–1084

Pérez A, Ramage G, Blanes R, Murgui A, Casanova M, Martínez JP (2011) Some biological features of *Candida albicans* mutants for genes coding fungal proteins containing the CFEM domain. FEMS Yeast Res 11:273–284

Pille A, Kwan AH, Cheung I, Hampsey M, Aimanianda V, Delepierre M et al (2015) (1)H, (13)C and (15)N resonance assignments of the RodA hydrophobin from the opportunistic pathogen *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Biomol NMR Assign 9:113–118

Plaine A, Walker L, Da Costa G, Mora-Montes HM, McKinnon A, Gow NAR et al (2008) Functional analysis of *Candida albicans* GPI-anchored proteins: roles in cell wall integrity and caspofungin sensitivity. Fungal Genet Biol 45:1404–1414

Popolo L, Vai M (1999) The Gas1 glycoprotein, a putative wall polymer cross-linker. Biochim Biophys Acta 1426:385–400

Popolo L, Degani G, Camilloni C, Fonzi WA (2017) The PHR family: the role of extracellular transglycosylases in shaping *Candida albicans* cells. J Fungi 3(4)

Rodríguez-Peña JM, Cid VJ, Arroyo J, Nombela C (2000) A novel family of cell wall-related proteins regulated differently during the yeast life cycle. Mol Cell Biol 20:3245–3255

Rolli E, Ragni E, de Medina-Redondo M, Arroyo J, de Aldana CRV, Popolo L (2011) Expression, stability, and replacement of glucan-remodeling enzymes during developmental transitions in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Mol Biol Cell 22:1585–1598

Sestak S, Hagen I, Tanner W, Strahl S (2004) Scw10p, a cell-wall glucanase/transglucosidase important for cell-wall stability in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Microbiology 150:3197–3208

Shen D-K, Noodeh AD, Kazemi A, Grillot R, Robson G, Brugère J-F (2004) Characterisation and expression of phospholipases B from the opportunistic fungus *Aspergillus fumigatus*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 239:87–93

Spreghini E, Davis DA, Subaran R, Kim M, Mitchell AP (2003) Roles of *Candida albicans* Dfg5p and Dcw1p cell surface proteins in growth and hypha formation. Eukaryot Cell 2:746–755

Vaknin Y, Shadkchan Y, Levdansky E, Morozov M, Romano J, Osherov N (2014) The three *Aspergillus fumigatus* CFEM-domain GPI-anchored proteins (CfmA-C) affect cell-wall stability but do not play a role in fungal virulence. Fungal Genet Biol 63:55–64

Valsecchi I, Dupres V, Stephen-Victor E, Guijarro JI, Gibbons J, Beau R et al (2017a) Role of hydrophobins in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. J Fungi 4(1):2

Valsecchi I, Sarikaya-Bayram Ö, Wong Sak Hoi J, Muszkieta L, Gibbons J, Prevost MC, Mallet A, Krijnse-Locker J, Ibrahim-Granet O, Mouyna I, Carr P, Bromley M, Aimanianda V, Yu JH, Rokas A, Braus GH, Saveanu C, Bayram Ö, Latgé JP (2017b) MybA, a transcription factor involved in conidiation and conidial viability of the human pathogen Aspergillus fumigatus. Mol Microbiol 105:880–900

van der Kaaij RM, Janeček Š, van der Maarel MJEC, Dijkhuizen L (2007a) Phylogenetic and biochemical characterization of a novel cluster of intracellular fungal alpha-amylase enzymes. Microbiol 153:4003–4015

van der Kaaij RM, Yuan X-L, Franken A, Ram AFJ, Punt PJ, van der Maarel MJEC, Dijkhuizen L (2007b) Two novel, putatively cell wall-associated and glycosylphosphatidylinositol-anchored alpha-glucanotransferase enzymes of *Aspergillus niger*. Eukaryot Cell 6:1178–1188

Van der Vaart JM, te Biesebeke R, Chapman JW, Toschka HY, Klis FM, Verrips CT (1997) Comparison of cell wall proteins of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* as anchors for cell surface expression of heterologous proteins. Appl Environ Microbiol 63:615–620

Vickers I, Reeves EP, Kavanagh KA, Doyle S (2007) Isolation, activity and immunological characterisation of a secreted aspartic protease, CtsD, from *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Protein Expr Purif 53:216–224

Voltersen V, Blango MG, Herrmann S, Schmidt F, Heinekamp T, Strassburger M et al (2018) Proteome analysis reveals the conidial surface protein CcpA essential for virulence of the pathogenic fungus *Aspergillus fumigatus*. mBio 9(5)

Woo PCY, Chan C-M, Leung ASP, Lau SKP, Che X-Y, Wong SSY et al (2002) Detection of cell wall galactomannoprotein Afmp1p in culture supernatants of *Aspergillus fumigatus* and in sera of aspergillosis patients. J Clin Microbiol 40:4382–4387

Woo PCY, Lau SKP, Lau CCY, Tung ETK, Au-Yeung RKH, Cai J-P et al (2018) Mp1p homologues as virulence factors in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Med Mycol 56:350–360

Woo PCY, Lau SKP, Lau CCY, Tung ETK, Chong KTK, Yang F et al (2016) Mp1p is a virulence factor in *Talaromyces* (Penicillium) *marneffei*. PLoS Negl Trop Dis 10:e0004907

Yuan X-L, van der Kaaij RM, van den Hondel CAMJJ, Punt PJ, van der Maarel MJEC, Dijkhuizen L, Ram AFJ (2008) *Aspergillus niger* genome-wide analysis reveals a large number of novel alpha-glucan acting enzymes with unexpected expression profiles. Mol Genet Genomics MGG 279:545–561

Yuen KY, Chan CM, Chan KM, Woo PC, Che XY, Leung AS, Cao L (2001) Characterization of AFMP1: a novel target for serodiagnosis of aspergillosis. J Clin Microbiol 39:3830–3837

Zhao C, Fraczek MG, Dineen L, Lebedinec R, Macheleidt J, Heinekamp T et al (2019) High-throughput gene replacement in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Curr Protoc Microbiol 54:e88

PAMPs of the Fungal Cell Wall and Mammalian PRRs

Remi Hatinguais, Janet A. Willment, and Gordon D. Brown

Contents

1 General Introduction 188
2 Innate Immune Recognition 189
3 Fungal Cell Wall 190
4 Toll-like Receptors 191
4.1 Signalling Pathways of TLRs 192
4.2 TLRs and Fungal Infections 194
5 C-Type Lectins-like Receptors (CLRs) 197
5.1 Signalling Through the CLRs 197
5.2 CLRs and Fungal Infections 200
5.3 CD23 (FcεRII) 208
6 Other PRRs 209
6.1 CR3 (CD11b/CD18, Mac-1) 209
6.2 CD14 210
6.3 Scavenger Receptors 210
6.4 Ephrin Type-A Receptor 2 (EphA2) 210
7 Conclusion 211
References 212

Abstract Fungi are opportunistic pathogens that infect immunocompromised patients and are responsible for an estimated 1.5 million deaths every year. The antifungal innate immune response is mediated through the recognition of pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) by the host's pattern recognition receptors (PRRs). PRRs are immune receptors that ensure the internalisation and the killing of fungal pathogens. They also mount the inflammatory response, which

R. Hatinguais · J. A. Willment · G. D. Brown (✉)
MRC Centre for Medical Mycology at University of Exeter, Geoffrey Pope Building, Stocker Road, Exeter, UK
e-mail: Gordon.brown@exeter.ac.uk

Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology (2020) 425: 187–223
https://doi.org/10.1007/82_2020_201
© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
Published Online: 17 March 2020

contributes to initiate and polarise the adaptive response, controlled by lymphocytes. Both the innate and adaptive immune responses are required to control fungal infections. The immune recognition of fungal pathogen primarily occurs at the interface between the membrane of innate immune cells and the fungal cell wall, which contains a number of PAMPs. This chapter will focus on describing the main mammalian PRRs that have been shown to bind to PAMPs from the fungal cell wall of the four main fungal pathogens: *Candida albicans, Aspergillus fumigatus, Cryptococcus neoformans* and *Pneumocystis jirovecii*. We will describe these receptors, their functions and ligands to provide the reader with an overview of how the immune system recognises fungal pathogens and responds to them.

1 General Introduction

Fungi are ubiquitous microbes found in the soil, plants and the microbiota of animals. These microorganisms are responsible for a broad range of infection types in humans from benign superficial colonisation of the skin and mucosa to deadly invasive infections. The main fungi responsible for profound infections are the opportunistic pathogens *Candida albicans, Aspergillus fumigatus, Cryptococcus neoformans*, and *Pneumocystis jirovecii* (Brown et al. 2012). The mortality rate of these infections ranges from 20 to 95% despite the existence of antifungal drugs (Brown et al. 2012). Invasive infections are often the result of an underlying immunological disorder. Primary immune deficiencies (genetic disorders resulting in a broad or narrow defect of the immune system) can predispose patients to a more or less broad range of bacterial, viral, parasitic and/or fungal infections (Lanternier et al. 2013). Immunodeficiencies can also be secondary to another pathology (e.g. cancer, diabetes, AIDS) or to a medical treatment (corticosteroids, chemotherapy, graft rejection prevention, etc.). Thus, fungal infections constitute a major burden for public health as they affect a significant number of people and are associated with a high mortality rate in patients with comorbidities (Brown et al. 2012). Understanding the antifungal immune response and how it is impacted by comorbidities and their respective treatments are crucial to predict, prevent and treat these infections.

In this chapter, we will focus on the immune recognition of fungal pathogen by innate immune cells. The innate immune response is a critical step of antifungal response in order to eliminate the pathogens and to initiate and polarise the $CD4^+$ T helper (Th) adaptive response. It is commonly accepted that Th1 and Th17 adaptive immune responses are protective against fungal pathogens (Romani 2011). Th2 responses favour the production of antibodies, which only have a minor antifungal effect while promoting the development of fungal allergic sensitisation (Romani 2011). Th2 responses have only shown to be protective during *Pneumocystis* spp. infection (Myers et al. 2013). Finally, regulatory $CD4^+$ T cells (Treg) act as a double-edge sword since their immunosuppressive properties prevent an immune response against commensal fungi of the microbiota but can also repress the normal

immune response during invasive infection (Romani 2011). The respective functions of the different Th subsets will not be further discussed but have been recently reviewed (Speakman et al. 2020).

2 Innate Immune Recognition

While T cells require the presentation of microbial antigens by Antigen-Presenting Cells (APCs), cells involved in the innate immune response recognise pathogens either directly or after opsonisation. Pathogen-Associated Molecular Patters (PAMPs) constitute the molecular immunogenic signatures of pathogens, and they are usually essential structural components absent from the host and are directly recognised by the host cells through binding to cellular or soluble expressed Pattern Recognition Receptors (PRRs) (Janeway 1989). Far from being completely separate components, these different effectors collaborate tightly in order to provide fully protective host immunity.

Soluble proteins such as collectins, pentraxins and proteins from the complement system can function as opsonins to facilitate pathogen engulfment by phagocytes and/or as direct fungicidal effectors through recruitment of the complement pathway components (Wong and Aimanianda 2017). Even though some of these soluble factors have been shown to bind to specific components of the fungal cell wall, they will not be further discussed as this chapter will focus on cell membrane expressed PRRs. The recognition of *A. fumigatus* conidia by the soluble PRRs has been reviewed in (Wong and Aimanianda 2017). The functions of the complement and collectins in antifungal immunity have been in reviewed (Speth et al. 2008; Brummer and Stevens 2010).

Most cell types, including leukocytes, express at least one type of the cellular PRRs. There are four main types of cellular PRRs: Toll-Like Receptors (TLRs), C-type Lectin-like Receptors (CLRs), NOD-Like Receptors (NLRs) and RIG-I-Like Receptors (RLRs) (Brubaker et al. 2015). NLRs have been shown to have a major role in the antifungal response; however, their activation seems to be due to the triggering of other PRRs rather than by direct recognition of the pathogen (Gross et al. 2009) and will not be discussed here. Also not further mentioned in this chapter are RLRs, required for immunity against *C. albicans* (Jaeger et al. 2015), although currently the only known ligand for these receptors is viral RNA (Brubaker et al. 2015).

TLRs and CLRs have been extensively studied in the context of fungal infection. In addition, other receptors such as integrins and scavenger receptors also function as PRRs. While some PRRs exert a redundant function during fungal infection, an efficient antifungal immunity requires the cooperation of PRRs. Collaborative triggering of these receptors induces the activation of signalling cascades resulting in engulfment of the pathogen by professional phagocytes, initiation of inflammation and secretion of cytokines and chemokines required for activation and polarisation of the adaptive response.

3 Fungal Cell Wall

The fungal cell wall is an essential element of the fungus and, thanks to its dynamic remodelling, provides protection against exogenous stresses. This armour constitutes a major virulence factor against the host's fungicidal capacity, allows the formation of hyphae and ensures invasion through tissue barriers (Gow et al. 2017). Therefore, the cell wall composition is directly affected by environmental conditions (temperature, pH, nutrients, oxidants, etc.) and the fungal morphology. Indeed, dimorphic fungi can have a fundamentally different cell wall composition, as it is the case with *A. fumigatus* (see below). The biology and structure of the fungal cell wall have been reviewed elsewhere (Erwig and Gow 2016; Gow et al. 2017) and will only be briefly presented here with regard to the four main fungal pathogens.

The fungal cell wall can be divided into two main structures: the inner and outer cell walls. The inner cell wall is composed of chitin (polymers of N-acetylglucosamine) and linear β-glucans (β-1,3-glucans with or without β-1,6-glucans branches) (Erwig and Gow 2016). It is relatively well conserved among all fungi genera and is protected from immune recognition by the outer cell wall. The composition of the outer cell wall is more variable across different fungi, and it contains polysaccharides, proteins and in some cases pigments.

In *C. albicans,* the outer cell wall contains proteins heavily decorated with O-linked, N-linked and phosphorylated mannans, which prevent the immune recognition of the inner cell wall components (Gantner et al. 2005). This layer is thinner at the level of the bud scar resulting from the division of the yeast, rendering PAMPs from the inner cell wall accessible for immune recognition. The fungal morphology (yeast or hyphae) affects the type of proteins found in the outer cell wall and also influences the structure of the inner wall. Yeasts contain a linear form of β-glucan, whereas in hyphae this polysaccharide adopts a cyclic configuration, which directly affects the immune recognition (Lowman et al. 2014).

The infecting form of the *Aspergillus* genus is the conidium, a spore released in the air that enters the lungs during normal breathing (Kosmidis and Denning 2015). Conidia are covered by a hydrophobic layer composed of immunologically inert proteins from the hydrophobin family (Aimanianda et al. 2009). This so-called rodlet layer covers a coat of pigments, melanins, whose exact nature depends on the species: DOPA-melanin, dihydroxynaphthalene-melanin (DHN-melanin) and pyomelanin (Smith and Casadevall 2019). DHN-melanin is the most abundant pigment of the conidia surface of *A. fumigatus* (Smith and Casadevall 2019). When conidia germinate, both the rodlet and the melanin layers are removed, uncovering α-1,3-glucans and β-glucans (Latge et al. 2017). These carbohydrates are also exposed at the surface of hyphae, although partially masked by galactosaminoglycans and galactomannans from the outer cell wall (Erwig and Gow 2016).

The cell wall of *Cryptococcus* spp. is composed of chitin, β-glucans and α-glucans (Erwig and Gow 2016), and DOPA-melanin, which is located within the inner part of the cell wall (Smith and Casadevall 2019). Remarkably, the cell wall

of *Cryptococcus* spp. is covered by a very thick layer of glucuronoxylomannans (GXM) and galactoxylomannans (GalXMs) that constitute the core of these pathogens' capsule (Erwig and Gow 2016). The capsule also contains other saccharides (sialic acid and hyaluronic acid) and mannoproteins (Kwon-Chung et al. 2014). In vivo, *C. neoformans* can form Titan cells, up to 100 μm in size compared to 5–7 μm for yeast cells (Erwig and Gow 2016). These large cells are too big to be internalised by immune cells and contain more chitin and mannose than the yeast form (Mukaremera et al. 2018). The precise effects of these changes in the cell wall composition on immune response are still unclear but it has been proposed that the increased amount of chitin in Titan cells promotes a Th2 adaptive response (Wiesner et al. 2015; Mukaremera et al. 2018).

P. jirovecii exhibits a peculiar life cycle, reminiscent of some parasites, as it occurs obligatory in the mammalian host and specifically within the lungs. The cell cycle of this parasite is still not completely understood, and it is proposed that mating of the trophic form (spore) produces an ascus (also called cyst) which will undergo meiosis and release eight immature trophic forms (ascospores) (Skalski et al. 2015). It is believed that the trophic form is also able to undergo binary scission. Both the trophic forms and asci produce DOPA-melanin and contain high levels of mannosylated glycoproteins, including glycoprotein A (GpA) (Icenhour et al. 2003; Skalski et al. 2015). β-glucans are present in the inner cell wall of asci but absent from the trophic form (Skalski et al. 2015). Chitin has been reported to be produced by trophic forms and asci of rodent-infecting *P. carinii* (Walker et al. 1990), whether *P. jirovecii* is also able to produce this polymer is still unknown.

Hence, the composition of the fungal cell wall is diverse, even though some of its constituents are widely shared across fungal genera (*i.e.* β-glucan, chitin). Many of these components are actually PAMPs and constitute the cracks in the fungal armour. Recognition of the fungal cell wall PAMPs by PRRs is a critical step in antifungal immunity, activating the effectors of the innate immune response and shaping the adaptive response.

4 Toll-like Receptors

The TLR family consists of 10 proteins in human and 12 in mouse, expressed in many cell types including epithelial cells and innate immune cells (Kawai and Akira 2010). TLRs recognise a wide range of bacterial, viral, fungal and parasitic PAMPs and also have endogenous ligands through their typical leucine-rich repeat domain (Kawai and Akira 2010). Binding to a ligand induces the dimerization of the receptors and the initiation of an intracellular signalling cascade through their Toll/IL-1 Receptor (TIR) domain. Although we will focus on TLRs that recognise fungal cell wall PAMPs (TLR2, TLR4 and TLR9), it is notable that fungal nucleic acids also constitute ligands for the intracellular receptors TLR3 and TLR9 that respectively recognise RNA and DNA (Miyazato et al. 2009; Carvalho et al. 2012).

4.1 Signalling Pathways of TLRs

Triggering of TLRs can activate two different main signalling cascades: the Myeloid Differentiation factor 88 (MyD88) pathway and the TIR-domain-containing adapter-inducing Interferon-β (TRIF) pathway (Fig. 1) (Kawai and Akira 2010). The MyD88 pathway is induced by TLR2 and TLR4 from the plasma membrane, whereas TLR9 is not expressed at the cell surface and activates MyD88 from the endosome (Gay et al. 2014). For reasons which are still unclear, TLR4 is also able to signal through TRIF from the endosome once it has been internalised.

Upon ligand binding and dimerization, TLRs intracellularly recruit Mal (Myd88 adapter-like, also known as TIRAP) and MyD88. This adaptor molecule activates the IL-1 Receptor-Associated Kinases IRAK4 and IRAK1 that phosphorylate TNF Receptor-Associated Factor 6 (TRAF6) (Gay et al. 2014). Phosphorylation of TRAF6 allows the dissociation of this protein from the receptor and activation of the TGF-Activated Kinase 1 (TAK1 complex) (Gay et al. 2014). Through its kinase activity, TAK1 activates two different signalling cascades: the Nuclear Factor κB (NFκB) and the Mitogen-Activated Protein Kinase (MAPK) pathways. Typically, the canonical NFκB transcription factor comprises two subunits: RelA (p65) and p50. Its activation is repressed by cytoplasmic protein chaperon Inhibitor of NFκB (IκB) (Mitchell et al. 2016). TAK1 activates the IκB kinase (IKK) complex that causes the phosphorylation and degradation of IκB. Released NFκB translocates into the nucleus and induces the transcription of pro-inflammatory cytokines such as TNFα, IL-6 and IL-12 (Mitchell et al. 2001).

TAK1 is a MAPK Kinase Kinase (MAPKKK), it phosphorylates MAPKKs, which results in the activation of Erk, Jnk and p38 MAPKs (Kawai and Akira 2010). MAPKs contribute to the activation of transcription factor Activator Protein-1 (AP-1), which induces transcription of pro-inflammatory cytokines and enzymes involved in the production of Reactive Nitrogen Species (RNS) such as inducible Nitric Oxide Synthase (iNOS) (Arthur and Ley 2013).

The TRIF pathway is independent from MyD88 but requires the adaptor protein TRIF-Related Adaptator Molecule (TRAM) to be activated by TLRs (Kawai and Akira 2010). Besides, the activation of NFκB, TRIF also interacts with Interferon-Regulatory Factor (IRF) 3 and 7 that then induces the production of type I interferons. Of note, TLR9-mediated activation of TRAF6 also activates IRF7 (Gay et al. 2014). The role of type I interferons in antifungal immunity is not completely understood but several studies have shown a protective effect of these cytokines during infection by *C. albicans* and *C. neoformans* (Biondo et al. 2008, 2011).

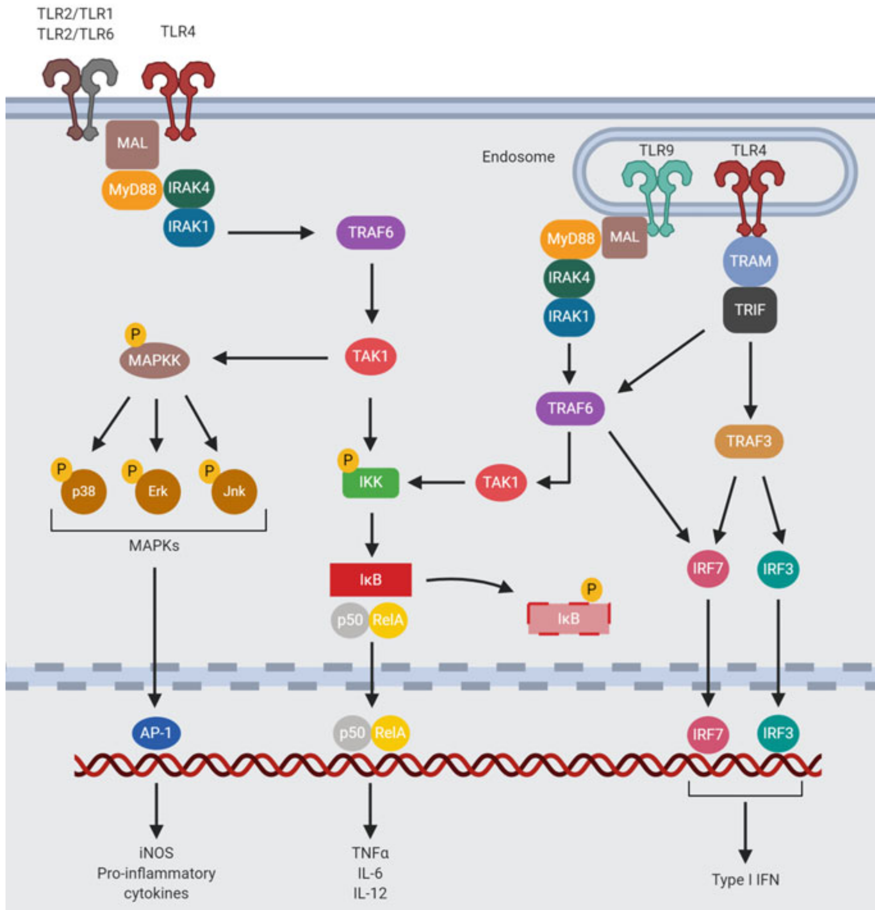


Fig. 1 Signalling pathways triggered by TLR activation. At the plasma membrane, dimerization of TLR2 with TLR1 or TLR6, homodimerization of TLR4, and TLR9 dimers in the endosome activate the MyD88-dependent pathway resulting in TRAF6-mediated activation of TAK1. TAK1 induces the MAPK cascade by phosphorylating MAPKKs that activate in turn p38, Erk and Jnk. This pathway results in the activation of transcription factors such as AP-1 that induces transcription of genes coding for iNOS and pro-inflammatory cytokines. TAK1 also activates IKK, which causes the degradation of chaperone IκB by phosphorylation and the subsequent release of NFκB, which then translocates into the nucleus and is responsible for transcription of pro-inflammatory cytokine-encoding genes. The TRIF pathway is induced by the recruitment of TRAM to internalised TLR4. TRIF activates TRAF6 and TRAF3, which contribute to the TAK1-mediated NFκB activation pathway and also activation of IRF3 and IRF7 that then induce the transcription of type I interferons

4.2 TLRs and Fungal Infections

The overall role of TLRs in antifungal immunity has been debated since their discovery. For instance, several authors disagreed about the respective roles of TLR2 and TLR4 during *C. albicans* systemic infections. A study eventually suggested that the contribution of TLR4 to inflammation was dependent on the strain of the pathogen studied (Netea et al. 2010). An explanation for this observation is the strain-dependent relative proportions of the different cell wall components (Cavalieri et al. 2017), which adds a layer of complexity in deciphering the role of PRRs during fungal infections.

In addition, there are major differences in the functions of TLRs between human and mice. While deficiency for MyD88 in mice is associated with increased susceptibility to a wide range of pathogens, including fungi (Bellocchio et al. 2004; von Bernuth et al. 2008), patients with a deficiency for this protein (or IRAK4) are not more susceptible to fungal infections (Picard et al. 2003; von Bernuth et al. 2008). On the other hand, single nucleotides polymorphisms (SNPs) in genes encoding for TLRs have been associated with increased risk to develop some fungal infections, reviewed in (Campos et al. 2019). The biological consequences of these SNPs are not always understood, even though the effects on fungal infection susceptibility suggest an overall non-redundant role for TLRs in antifungal immunity.

4.2.1 TLR2

TLR2 forms heterodimers with TLR1 or TLR6 to transduce signals, it recognises fungal pathogens mainly through binding of mannosylated PAMPs (Oliveira-Nascimento et al. 2012). While the first fungal ligand of TLR2 identified was phosphomannan, present at the cell wall surface of *C. albicans* yeasts (Jouault et al. 2003), this receptor also recognises mannosylated cell wall components from other fungi. More recently, chitin was identified as a ligand for TLR2 (Wagener et al. 2014; Fuchs et al. 2018). Chitin requires a minimum of 6 N-acetylglucosamine moieties to induce a pro-inflammatory response through TLR2-TLR1 dimers (Fuchs et al. 2018). There is some controversy about TLR2 binding chitin, as Becker and colleagues could not identify any specific interaction with PRRs and only found immunoglobulins to interact with this polymer (Becker et al. 2016).

TLR2 is a major receptor for anti-*Candida* immunity at the mucosal level. In mice, TLR2 deficiency has been associated with increased susceptibility to colonisation of the gastrointestinal (GI) (Prieto et al. 2016) and reproductive (Miro et al. 2018) tracts, and animals exhibit a local excessive inflammation in response to the pathogen (Miro et al. 2018). During systemic infection, TLR2 contributes to IL-10 production by APCs, which favours the polarisation of Th cells into Treg (Netea et al. 2004). Tregs regulate inflammation, and this might be the reason why some authors have reported an increased resistance of TLR2-deficient mice compared to wild-type (WT) animals (Bellocchio et al. 2004; Netea et al. 2010, 2004).

A human polymorphism of *TLR2* has been associated with recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis (RVVC) (Rosentul et al. 2014).

TLR2 recognises α-1,3-glucans from the cell wall of *A. fumigatus* (Stephen-Victor et al. 2017) and the deletion of this receptor leads to increased susceptibility to pulmonary infection in immunocompromised mice (Bellocchio et al. 2004; Balloy et al. 2005). While the dimerization of TLR2 with either TLR1 or TLR6 does not have obvious consequences on intracellular signalling pathways in vitro (Farhat et al. 2008), these receptors appear to be non-redundant in vivo as it was shown that TLR6-deficient mice are more prone to airway hyper-responsiveness during an *A. fumigatus* allergic sensitisation model (Moreira et al. 2011). In humans, SNPs in either *TLR1* or *TLR6*, but not in *TLR2,* are associated with risks of invasive aspergillosis (Kesh et al. 2005).

The binding of TLR2 to purified GXMs from the capsule of *C. neoformans* (Fonseca et al. 2010) requires collaboration with CD14 (Yauch et al. 2004). Although the TLR signalling molecule MyD88 is required in mouse for protection against *C. neoformans*, individual TLRs or CD14 knock-out mice are not as susceptible, showing receptor collaboration is necessary for full immunity (Yauch et al. 2004).

The role of TLR2 in anti-*Pneumocystis* immune response is not well understood yet. Mice studies using *P. murina*, the species responsible for mouse infection, showed that this pathogen is able to activate TLR2 but the ligand is unknown (Zhang et al. 2006). Deficiency in TLR2 increases the susceptibility to *P. murina* (Wang et al. 2008). However, only alveolar macrophages but not epithelial cells appear to require TLR2 to mount an inflammatory response (Zhang et al. 2006; Bello-Irizarry et al. 2012).

4.2.2 TLR4

TLR4 collaborates with CD14 to bind O-linked mannans and mannosylated proteins from *C. albicans* cell wall but the precise biologically active structure of these PAMPs is still unknown (Tada et al. 2002; Netea et al. 2006; Pietrella et al. 2006). In vitro, the inflammatory response mounted by murine macrophages and human monocytes against *C. albicans* yeasts requires TLR4, while this receptor appears to play only a minor role against hyphal forms (Tada et al. 2002; van der Graaf et al. 2005). The role of TLR4 is not only affected by the fungal strain used (Netea et al. 2010) but also depends on the host cell type studied: TLR4 deficiency partially impairs the macrophage anti-*C. albicans* reponse, whereas it does affect neutrophils. To date, there is no human polymorphism of *TLR4* associated with increased susceptibility to candidiasis (Rosentul et al. 2014).

TLR4 recognises the mannans from *A. fumigatus* conidia and swollen conidia but its ligand is thought to be masked at the surface of hyphae (Mambula et al. 2002; Netea et al. 2003). TLR4 is required to ensure protection in immunosuppressed mice (Bellocchio et al. 2004), although it is dispensable in immunocompetent mice

(Dubourdeau et al. 2006). Several SNPs of this receptor have been associated with increased susceptibility to invasive aspergillosis in patients following allogenic hematopoietic-stem cell transplantation regardless of whether the mutation was carried by the donor or the recipient (Bochud et al. 2008; Koldehoff et al. 2013).

TLR4 is activated by GXMs from the capsule of *C. neoformans* (Shoham et al. 2001; Monari et al. 2005). Yet, GXMs do not induce the secretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines, even though NFκB translocates into the nucleus (Shoham et al. 2001). The role of TLR4 during cryptococcal infection seems to be only minor in mouse models (Yauch et al. 2004; Nakamura et al. 2006).

There is no known *Pneumocystis* spp. ligand for TLR4. The reports regarding the function of TLR4 on the response of alveolar macrophages towards *P. murina* in vitro are contradictory (Ding et al. 2005; Zhang et al. 2006), and it does not affect the response of alveolar epithelial cells (Bello-Irizarry et al. 2012). During infection by *P. murina*, the absence of TLR4 only has a minor effect on inflammation and does not affect the fungal burden (Ding et al. 2005).

4.2.3 TLR9

TLR9 is an intracellular receptor that can be trafficked to the phagosome where it recognises its ligand(s). In addition to recognising fungal DNA (Miyazato et al. 2009), TLR9 recognises chitin (Wagener et al. 2014). Internalisation of chitin by the mannose receptor (MR) allows the binding of this PAMP to TLR9, which then induces IL-10 secretion (Wagener et al. 2014). It has been proposed that the effects of chitin on the inflammatory response depend on the size and the concentration of this polysaccharide. Low concentrations of chitin and chitin particles of small size (less than 40 μm) induce IL-10 through TLR9 and the MR (Da Silva et al. 2009; Wagener et al. 2014). In contrast, high concentrations of chitin and chitin particles of intermediate size (40–70 μm) mainly induce the pro-inflammatory cytokine TNFα in a TLR2- and Dectin-1-dependent manner (Da Silva et al. 2009; Wagener et al. 2014).

TLR9 negatively regulates pro-inflammatory cytokine secretion by murine macrophages and human blood leukocytes in response to *C. albicans* (van de Veerdonk et al. 2009; Kasperkovitz et al. 2011), and it also decreases their fungicidal abilities (Kasperkovitz et al. 2011). In vivo, TLR9 seems to be redundant as the deletion of this receptor does not increase the susceptibility to systemic candidiasis (van de Veerdonk et al. 2009). On the contrary, some authors have reported enhanced control of infection by TLR9-deficient animals compared to the WT (Bellocchio et al. 2004).

TLR9 is a major PRR for anti-*A. fumigatus* immune response. The phagocytosis of *A. fumigatus* conidia induces the activation of TLR9, which contributes to activate the Nuclear Factor of Activated T cells (NFAT) (Herbst et al. 2015). NFAT induces the production of pro-inflammatory cytokines and chemokines required for neutrophils recruitment in the lungs (Herbst et al. 2015). TLR9 exerts a protective effect against invasive aspergillosis in immunocompromised mice but favours the

development of fungal sensitisation (Ramaprakash et al. 2009). In human, this receptor also protects against invasive infection and TLR9 SNPs have been associated with higher susceptibility to fungal allergic conditions (Carvalho et al. 2008; Overton et al. 2017).

TLR9 is involved in mounting the inflammatory response against *C. neoformans*, activation of this PRR induces IL-12 and induces the recruitment of leukocytes in the lungs (Nakamura et al. 2008; Wang et al. 2011, Qiu et al. 2012). TLR9-deficient mice are more susceptible to infection than WT counterparts (Nakamura et al. 2008; Wang et al. 2011) but the role of this receptor in humans is unexplored. TLR9 has not been studied in the context of *P. jirovecii* infection.

5 C-Type Lectins-like Receptors (CLRs)

Proteins containing a C-Type Lectin-like Domain (CTLD) constitute a superfamily of transmembrane or secreted glycoproteins, divided into 17 groups (grouped from I to XVII) (Zelensky and Gready 2005). The CTLD has a conserved structure and is responsible for binding ligand(s). To be noted, in addition to the participation in the antifungal immune response, some CLRs can bind ligands from bacteria, viruses, parasites as well as self-ligands or Damage-Associated Molecular Patterns (DAMPs) from the mammalian host and exert physiological or pathological roles (Brown et al. 2018).

The transmembrane expressed CLRs involved in antifungal immunity belong to three different groups of CTLD-containing proteins. The MR is a type I-transmembrane protein that belongs to group VI, while CLRs from the groups II (DC-SIGN, MCL, Dectin-2, Mincle, Langerin, CD23) and V (Dectin-1, MelLec) are type II-transmembrane receptors (Zelensky and Gready 2005).

5.1 Signalling Through the CLRs

CLRs primarily signal through two main pathways: the spleen tyrosine kinase pathway (Syk) and the Ras-Raf pathway. Upon binding of their respective ligands, Dectin-1, Dectin-2, MCL, Mincle, CD23 and MR recruit Syk either directly or after coupling with Fc receptor γ chain (FcRγ) (Sancho and Reis e Sousa 2012). Two CLRs are known for activating the Ras-Raf pathway: DC-SIGN and Dectin-1. The signalling cascades induced by MelLec and Langerin are not known.

5.1.1 Syk pathway

Activation of Syk by Dectin-1, Dectin-2, MCL, Mincle, CD23 and MR leads to the activation of several transcription factors such as NFκB, AP-1 and NFAT (Fig. 2)

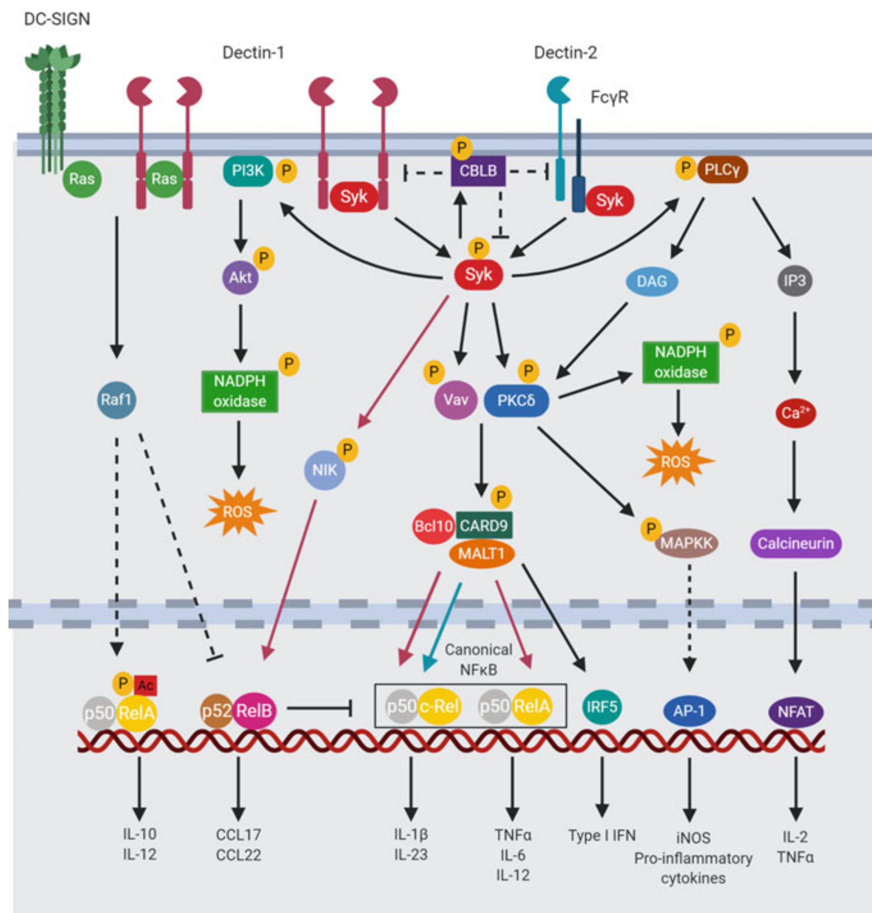


Fig. 2 Signalling pathways triggered by CLR activation in a DC. CLRs associate with Syk, binding to the hemITAM of Dectin-1 or through their association with FcRγ (complexed with Dectin-2, Mincle, MR or MCL). Syk phosphorylates a wide range of targets, including PI3K that induces Akt-mediated NADPH oxidase-mediated ROS production. Syk-mediated activation of PLCγ induces the production of DAG and IP3 through the degradation of PIP2. IP3 induces the release of calcium from the endoplasmic reticulum, which activates calcineurin and results in translocation of transcription factor NFAT, responsible for the production of IL-2. Activation for PKCδ by Syk induces the NADPH oxidase-mediated ROS production and the activation of AP-1 through the MAPK pathway. Syk activates Vav and PKCδ, that induce the formation of the CARD9-Bcl10-MALT1 (CBM) complex Dectin-1 induces activation of both RelA and c-Rel canonical NFκB (red arrows), while Dectin-2 only activates c-Rel through MALT1 (blue arrow), which is responsible for the induction of the transcription of Th17-polarising cytokines IL-1β and IL23. Dectin-1 also induces the activation of NIK which activates the non-canonical NFκB RelB, which limits the action of the canonical NFκB. The CBM complex also induces the translocation of IRF5 into the nucleus, which induces the transcription of type I interferon. CBLB regulates the activation of the Syk pathway by targeting Dectin-1, Dectin-2 and Syk to the proteasome for degradation. DC-SIGN and Dectin-1 are able to trigger the Ras-Raf1 pathway that results in post-translational modifications of RelA and inhibition of RelB. Acetylation of RelA increases the production of IL-10, IL-12 and IL-23

(Rogers et al. 2005; Sato et al. 2006; Strasser et al. 2012). Dectin-2, MCL, Mincle, MR and CD23 are associated with FcRγ at the cell membrane (Robinson et al. 2009; Kerscher et al. 2016; Rajaram et al. 2017; Guo et al. 2018). The binding of their respective ligands by these CLRs induces the phosphorylation of an amino acid consensus sequence—called Immunereceptor Tyrosine-based Activation Motif (ITAM)—located in the cytoplasmic tail of FcRγ and that is responsible for Syk recruitment and activation (Sancho and Reis e Sousa 2012). In contrast, Dectin-1 does not require FcRγ: this receptor possesses an incomplete ITAM motif (hemITAM) in its cytoplasmic tail that is able to recruit Syk in a SH2-dependent manner (Rogers et al. 2005; Deng et al. 2015). The activation of Syk by Dectin-1 involves the clustering of this receptor at the point of contact with the pathogen, which is termed the *phagocytic synapse* (Goodridge et al. 2011).

Through phosphorylation of Vav proteins and Protein Kinase Cδ (PKCδ), Syk induces the formation of the CBM (CARD9-Bcl10-MALT1) complex (Gross et al. 2006; Lanternier et al. 2013; Roth et al. 2016). The CBM complex activates IRF5, which mediates the transcription of type I interferons (del Fresno et al. 2013). The CBM also activates the canonical NFκB family members RelA and c-Rel (Gringhuis et al. 2009; Gringhuis et al. 2011). NFκB then translocates to the nucleus and induces high-level transcription of Th1- and Th17-polarising cytokines: IL-12, and IL-1β and IL-23, respectively (Gringhuis et al. 2009; 2011). The CBM complex also activates the NFκB-inducing kinase (NIK), which activates the non-canonical NFκB RelB that represses the activity of canonical NFκB and induces the transcription of Treg-attracting chemokines (Gringhuis et al. 2011).

PKCδ also activates the NADPH oxidase and thus induces Reactive Oxygen Species (ROS) generation in macrophages and neutrophils (Li et al. 2016). ROS production and fungal killing by neutrophils require PKCδ activation (Li et al. 2016), while in monocytes the NADPH oxidase is also activated by another Syk-mediated pathway involving the Phosphatidylinositol-3 Kinase (PI3K) and Akt (Shah et al. 2009; Camilli et al. 2018). Even though PKCδ also contributes to ROS production in macrophages, fungal killing depends on the activation of CARD9 and is not affected by the absence of PKCδ, suggesting that macrophages mostly rely on non-oxidative mechanisms to clear fungi (Li et al. 2016).

Syk also activates the Phospholipase Cγ (PLCγ), which produces inositol triphosphate (IP3) and diacylglycerol (DAG) from phosphoinositide-bisphosphate (PIP2) (Lowell 2011). PLCγ is required to induce the MAPK pathway (Tassi et al. 2009; Xu et al. 2009), a known result of DAG production (Lowell 2011). On the other hand, IP3 is responsible for the release of calcium from intracellular stocks in the endoplasmic reticulum, which then activates calcineurin that subsequently activates NFAT (Lowell 2011). This transcription factor is involved in the transcription of IL-2, required for T cell activation and proliferation. The major role of this signalling pathway was further demonstrated by showing that PLCγ-deficient DCs were unable to activate T cells in vitro (Tassi et al. 2009).

The Syk pathway exerts a self-regulating control in time through the activation of ubiquitin ligase Casitas B Lymphoma B (CBLB). The activation of CBLB induces the ubiquitinylation of Dectin-1, Dectin-2 and Syk, resulting in the

degradation of these proteins in the proteasome and thus reducing the antifungal action of macrophages and DCs but not neutrophils (Wirnsberger et al. 2016; Xiao et al. 2016). Inhibition of CBLB in mice has been shown to protect animals infected with a lethal inoculum of *C. albicans* (Wirnsberger et al. 2016), highlighting the major role of this regulation pathway and its potential therapeutic applications.

5.1.2 Ras-Raf Pathway

Dectin-1 and DC-SIGN are both able to activate the small guanosine triphosphatase (GTPase) Ras (Gringhuis et al. 2007; Gringhuis et al. 2009) that in turn activates Raf-1 (den Dunnen et al. 2009). Raf-1 modulates the immune response by inducing post-translational modification (phosphorylation and acetylation) of the NFκB RelA subunit (den Dunnen et al. 2009). Acetylation of NFκB promotes the transcription of IL-10 (Gringhuis et al. 2007). On the other hand, phosphorylation of RelA represses the nuclear translocation of RelB into the nucleus (Gringhuis et al. 2009). Thus, by counterbalancing the Syk-dependent activation of the non-canonical NFκB, the Ras-Raf-1 pathway contributes to amplify the synthesis of IL-1β, IL-12 and IL-23 that are required for Th1 and Th17 polarisation (Gringhuis et al. 2009).

5.2 CLRs and Fungal Infections

CLRs orchestrate the antifungal immune response via collaboration with other PRRs, such as TLRs. For instance, stimulation with only Dectin-1 specific ligands does not induce potent inflammation (Gantner et al. 2003), except in the case of binding to a non-phagocytosed ligand (Hernanz-Falcon et al. 2009). Yet, when a TLR is simultaneously triggered, Dectin-1-mediated activation of Syk induces the degradation of IκB, which potentiates the signal initiated by TLRs and results in a synergic effect on the secretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines (Gantner et al. 2003; Dennehy et al. 2008). CLRs also collaborate with each other to mount the inflammatory response to fungal pathogens (Thompson et al. 2019) and to polarise the adaptive immune response. Through activation of all three members of the NFκB family (RelA, RelB and c-Rel), Dectin-1 promotes both the Th1 and Th17 polarisation of the adaptive immune response and exerts a broad antifungal effect (Gringhuis et al. 2009, 2011). In contrast, Dectin-2 has been reported to favour the differentiation of Th17 rather than Th1 (Robinson et al. 2009). Secretion of Th17-polarising cytokines IL-1β and IL-23 following CLR activation seems to be completely dependent on c-Rel, which is selectively activated by Dectin-2 for unclear reasons (Gringhuis et al. 2011).

The major function of the CLR family in the antifungal immunity lies in the activation of CARD9, whose deficiency predisposes patients to fungal but not to other types of infection (Drummond et al. 2016). SNPs in the gene encoding for this protein impair fungal killing by granulocytes and the polarisation of Th17 cells

(Drewniak et al. 2013). In mouse, CARD9 deficiency increases the susceptibility to chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis (CMC) and to central nervous system (CNS) infection by *C. albicans* and by *A. fumigatus* (Glocker et al. 2009; Jhingran et al. 2012; Drummond et al. 2019). In the brain, deficiency for CARD9 prevents neutrophil recruitment and fungal clearance (Drummond et al. 2019). Interestingly, mice deficient for a single CLR did not recapitulate this phenotype, suggesting a redundant role for these receptors and stressing the importance of PRRs collaboration (Drummond et al. 2019). CARD9 SNPs in patients predispose them to CNS infection by *C. albicans* and mucocutaneous infections by a range of fungal pathogens, including *Candida* spp. (Drummond et al. 2016). The other members of the CBM complex, Bcl10 and MALT1, have also been associated with increased risk of CMC in human but not in mouse (Drummond et al. 2016); however, these deficiencies are less specific to antifungal immunity as they also predispose humans to infection by viral and bacterial pathogens (Drummond et al. 2016).

5.2.1 Dectin-1 (CLEC7A)

Dectin-1 binds β-1,3-glucans and β-1,6-glucans (Brown 2006; Brown and Gordon 2001) and is predominantly expressed by leukocytes, including some subtypes of T cells (Brown 2006). Binding of Dectin-1 to particulate β-glucan induces a rearrangement of the cell membrane and the clustering of the receptor at the phagocytic synapse and internalisation of the particle (Goodridge et al. 2011). Interestingly, the ability of Dectin-1 to engulf its ligand has a significant impact on the cellular response: frustrated phagocytosis, the inability to internalise a particle due to its size or pharmacological inhibition, induces a more potent Dectin-1-mediated inflammation than smaller sized, phagocytosable particles (Hernanz-Falcon et al. 2009). It is proposed that this phenomenon is due to the lack of Dectin-1 signal attenuation by internalisation of this receptor (Hernanz-Falcon et al. 2009). As already mentioned above, when the ligand is phagocytosable, triggering of Dectin-1 alone does not induce secretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines, yet costimulation with a TLR agonist potentiates the activation of NFκB and the production of cytokines (Brown et al. 2003; Gantner et al. 2003).

Another phenomenon regulated by the pathogen size is the release of neutrophil extracellular traps (NETs) (Branzk et al. 2014; Papayannopoulos 2018). Dectin-1 mediated uptake of the pathogen induces the delivery of neutrophil elastase into the phagolysosome (Branzk et al. 2014). When neutrophils encounter hyphae too large to be engulfed, elastase is delivered into the nucleus instead and induces the release of NETs (Branzk et al. 2014), which have been shown to contribute in vitro to the killing of *C. albicans* but not of *A. fumigatus* (Urban et al. 2006; Gazendam et al. 2016).

After uptake of the pathogen by APCs, Dectin-1 controls the acidification and the maturation of the phagosome (Mansour et al. 2013) and recruits MHC-II to facilitate the presentation of fungal antigens to T cells by macrophages and DCs (Ma et al. 2012).

In addition of the protective effects of Dectin-1 activation on innate and adaptive immunity, β-glucan-mediated triggering of Dectin-1 is able to imprint mononuclear phagocytes in a metabolic and epigenetic manner, rendering them more responsive to a secondary stimulation (Ifrim et al. 2013; Cheng et al. 2014; Saeed et al. 2014). This phenomenon, termed *trained immunity*, is independent of the presence of lymphocytes and has been shown to provide a long-term non-specific immunity (Quintin et al. 2012). The benefits of trained immunity during fungal infection still have to be demonstrated in human.

In *C. albicans*, β-glucans are exposed at the level of the bud scar on the yeast. Hyphae are protected from Dectin-1 recognition in vitro due to the mannan layer (Gantner et al. 2005) but β-glucans appear to be exposed in vivo a few days after infection (Wheeler et al. 2008). As Dectin-1 induces a more potent inflammatory response when its ligand is too large to be phagocytosed, it is appealing to suggest that Dectin-1 response supports discrimination between yeast/conidia and larger hyphal structures. Another factor that might be able to participate in the ability of host cells to differentiate between yeasts and hyphae is their respective cell wall composition. Indeed, β-glucans from *C. albicans* hyphae possess 2,3-linkages and adopt a cyclic conformation. As a result, they are more potent inducers of pro-inflammatory cytokines than branched linear β-glucans of *C. albicans* yeast (Lowman et al. 2014). Thus, more studies are required to fully establish how yeasts and hyphae are differentially recognised by the host. In vivo, Dectin-1 is required to control systemic infection by *C. albicans* and the absence of this receptor leads to decreased secretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines and consequently impaired recruitment of leukocytes to infected tissues (Taylor et al. 2007). Importantly, while the pathogen strain does not affect the role of Dectin-1 in vitro, it has been shown that the importance of Dectin-1 in vivo is directly affected by the *C. albicans* strain (Marakalala et al. 2013). Dectin-1 is a major PRR to control oral and genital mucosal infection by *C. albicans*; it is also required to control the colonisation of the GI tract after during systemic infection but not during gavage of animals (Taylor et al. 2007; Vautier et al. 2012). Dectin-1 deficiency does not affect $CD8^+$ cells but impairs the activation of $CD4^+$ T cells, which are required to control GI tract infection (Drummond et al. 2016). Several SNPs in human *CLEC7A* have been associated with increased risk of RVVC and oropharyngeal candidiasis (Campos et al. 2019).

In *A. fumigatus*, exposure of β-glucan is stage-specific: this PAMP is masked on the resting conidia but is uncovered when the spores start to swell and germinate (Steele et al. 2005); it is also accessible on hyphae (Gersuk et al. 2006). Thus, recognition of *A. fumigatus* spores by Dectin-1 occurs once β-glucan becomes exposed by conidia swelling extracellularly or when in the phagosome (Faro-Trindade et al. 2012). Dectin-1 is required in vivo to mount the inflammatory response against *A. fumigatus* and to recruit neutrophils to prevent lungs colonisation by the fungus (Werner et al. 2009). Several SNPs in the human gene encoding for this receptor are associated with higher susceptibility to invasive aspergillosis in patients undergoing chemotherapy or hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (Sainz et al. 2012).

Dectin-1 is thought to be involved in *C. neoformans* uptake in collaboration with Dectin-2 (Lim et al. 2018). However, deficiency for Dectin-1 does not increase mice susceptibility to infection by this fungus (Nakamura et al. 2007) and its role in humans has not been explored.

Recognition of *Pneumocystis* spp. by Dectin-1 induces the internalisation and killing in alveolar macrophages and induces the production of ROS (Steele et al. 2003; Saijo et al. 2007). However, Dectin-1 does not affect the secretion of TNFα and IL-12 in response to *Pneumocystis* spp., instead the release of these cytokines requires signalling through MyD88 and suggests involvement of TLRs (Saijo et al. 2007). Dectin-1 deficiency does not impair the clearance of *P. carinii* in mouse but it delays the elimination of the fungus from the airways (Saijo et al. 2007).

5.2.2 MelLec (CLEC1A)

Melanin-sensing C-type lectin (MelLec) binds DHN-melanin that covers the spores under the rodlet layer of *A. fumigatus* (Stappers et al. 2018). MelLec is not able to bind to DOPA-melanin, produced by other fungal pathogens, including *Cryptococcus* spp. (Stappers et al. 2018; Smith and Casadevall 2019). As of today, the role of MelLec has only been studied in the context of *A. fumigatus* infection. In mouse, MelLec has been shown to be expressed by endothelial cells in several tissues and also by an epithelial cell subpopulation in the lungs and liver but not by leukocytes (Stappers et al. 2018). Following challenge with *A. fumigatus* conidia, MelLec is required for early leukocytes recruitment in the lungs of mice but its signalling pathway is still unknown (Stappers et al. 2018). MelLec has been shown to inhibit Th17 polarisation in a rat heart transplantation model (Thebault et al. 2009) but whether it can affect the adaptive immune response to fungi remains to be determined.

In humans, this receptor is expressed by endothelial cells and leukocytes, including monocytes, dendritic cells and granulocytes, but not by lymphocytes (Sattler et al. 2012). A SNP in the human gene has been associated with higher risk to develop invasive aspergillosis following hematopoietic stem cell transplantation if the donor carries the mutation, independently of the allele carried by the recipient (Stappers et al. 2018).

5.2.3 Dectin-2 (CLEC6A)

Dectin-2 recognises α-1,2-mannobiose structures (disaccharide constituted of 2 mannoses) present at the surface of the fungal cell wall (McGreal et al. 2006; Feinberg et al. 2017). This receptor is constitutively expressed by monocytes, dendritic cells and macrophages, but expression in neutrophils occurs only after stimulation by pro-inflammatory cytokines (Taylor et al. 2014). A splicing variant of Dectin-2, devoid of most the transmembrane and the intracellular domains (isoform β), thus unable to induce the signalling cascade following triggering has

been identified (Gavino et al. 2005). Interestingly, during the encounter between macrophages and *C. albicans* there is a shift in expression of the full-length Dectin-2 (isoform α) towards the spliced isoform β, which might constitute a post-transcriptional mechanism to regulate the antifungal immune response (Munoz et al. 2019).

This receptor is able to bind to *C. albicans* yeast and hyphae and requires cooperation with FcRγ to transduce signals (Sato et al. 2006; Saijo et al. 2010). Several studies have reported a preferential binding to hyphae even though it is still unclear whether this phenotype is due to a difference in the nature or the proportion of ligand(s) (Sato et al. 2006; Robinson et al. 2009; Saijo et al. 2010). The role of Dectin-2 seems to be quite minor during disseminated candidiasis as this CLR is poorly involved in the internalisation and the killing of the yeast (Ifrim et al. 2016) and does not improve mouse survival in the short term (Robinson et al. 2009; Ifrim et al. 2016). However, when the infection is prolonged, Dectin-2 deficiency impairs the clearance of the fungal burden in the kidneys and the survival of the animals (Saijo et al. 2010; Ifrim et al. 2016). This phenotype might be explained by the major role that Dectin-2 plays in polarising the T cell response towards Th17 response (Robinson et al. 2009; Saijo et al. 2010), yet there are no known Dectin-2 human polymorphisms associated with an increased susceptibility to candidiasis.

Dectin-2 has been shown to be involved in the anti-*A. fumigatus* immune response; however, its ligand seems to be masked by the rodlet layer (Carrion Sde et al. 2013). Thus, Dectin-2 might only be able to interact with *A. fumigatus* during swelling and germination as the outer layers are lost (Sun et al. 2014; Loures et al. 2015). Activation of Dectin-2 contributes directly to the elimination of the fungus by increasing the ability of cells to produce ROS (Taylor et al. 2014) and secrete pro-inflammatory cytokines (Sun et al. 2014; Loures et al. 2015).

The exact component of *C. neoformans* recognised by Dectin-2 has not been clearly identified and only *C. neoformans* lysate but not the whole yeast has been reported to activate Dectin-2, suggesting that the ligand is masked by the capsule (Nakamura et al. 2015). This hypothesis is supported by another study showing that Dectin-2 is able to bind a strain of *C. neoformans* devoid of the capsule (McGreal et al. 2006). Nevertheless, several authors have reported a role for Dectin-2 in the internalisation of *C. neoformans* in collaboration with Dectin-1 (Walsh et al. 2017; Lim et al. 2018). The Th17-polarising function of Dectin-2 was confirmed in vivo as mice devoid for Dectin-2 exhibit an aberrant Th2 response when challenged with *C. neoformans*, although they have similar clearance of fungus from the airways (Nakamura et al. 2015). A human SNP of *CLEC6A* has been associated with increased risk of pulmonary cryptococcosis (Hu et al. 2015).

It has been shown that Dectin-2 is able to bind GpA from the cell wall of *Pneumocystis* spp. (Kottom et al. 2018, 2019). In vitro, deficiency for Dectin-2 impairs the inflammatory response mounted by alveolar macrophages incubated with *P. murina* cell wall extract (Kottom et al. 2018). However, the absence of this receptor appears not to affect the fungal clearance by mice (Kottom et al. 2018).

5.2.4 MCL (CLEC4D, CLECSF8, Dectin-3)

The Macrophage C-type Lectin (MCL) is expressed by neutrophils, monocytes and monocytes-derived macrophages and DCs (Graham et al. 2012; Kerscher et al. 2016). Some cell types, including alveolar macrophages, do not express MCL at basal level but surface expression of this receptor is upregulated upon stimulation with microbial components (Kerscher et al. 2016). Interestingly, MCL and Mincle, another group II CLR, require each other and FcRγ for surface expression in mouse (Kerscher et al. 2016). However, in human, it appears that MCL is not required for Mincle expression (Wevers et al. 2014).

MCL can bind α-mannans in the cell wall of *C. albicans* hyphae and does so more efficiently as a heterodimer with Dectin-2 (Zhu et al. 2013). MCL-deficient mice are less resistant to low-dose infection with *C. albicans* than WT animals (Zhu et al. 2013). On the other hand, in the case of infection with a high-dose inoculum, this receptor might only have a minor role (Graham et al. 2012). Thus, the in vivo function of MCL is not fully resolved and its role in human antifungal response is unexplored.

The role of MCL during cryptococcal infection also remains unclear as two studies from the same group have successively obtained contradictory results on the ability of this receptor to trigger uptake of the *C. neoformans* and anti-cryptococcal activity by DCs (Hole et al. 2016; Campuzano et al. 2017). However, MCL deficiency does not affect mice survival upon *C. neoformans* infection (Hole et al. 2016; Campuzano et al. 2017). MCL ligand on *C. neoformans* is not known, and there is no data on the role of this receptor in anti-*A. fumigatus* or anti-*P. jirovecii* immune response.

5.2.5 Mincle (CLEC4E, CLECSF9)

Macrophage-inducible C-type lectin (Mincle) is a CLR expressed by monocytes, macrophages, DCs and neutrophils. This receptor requires FcRγ and MCL to be expressed at the cell surface, and its expression is upregulated when cells are stimulated with microbial compounds (Kerscher et al. 2016).

Mincle binds *C. albicans* (Bugarcic et al. 2008) and participates in the uptake and killing by murine macrophages (Haider et al. 2019). In mouse, Mincle improves the clearance of *C. albicans* in the kidney but has no effect on the overall mouse survival following infection (Wells et al. 2008; Thompson et al. 2019). Mincle represses Dectin-1-dependent secretion of IL-2 and induction of Th1 cells in vitro (Wevers et al. 2014). Nevertheless, Mincle deficiency does not affect the mortality rate of mice in a systemic *C. albicans* infection model (Thompson et al. 2019). The role of Mincle in humans is not completely understood as one study showed that Mincle does not bind to *C. albicans* and another suggested that Mincle expression induces the phagocytosis and killing of this fungus by neutrophils but not by monocytes (Vijayan et al. 2012). Thus, more studies are required to decipher the full role of this receptor in candidiasis.

Regarding the role of Mincle in aspergillosis, this receptor has only been studied in a mouse model of fungal keratitis, an infection of the cornea that can result in blindness (Yu et al. 2018). Mincle contributes towards the inflammatory response against *A. fumigatus* in the cornea and impairment of this receptor worsens the infection (Yu et al. 2018).

GpA recognition by Mincle allows the binding of *Pneumocystis* spp. by macrophages (Kottom et al. 2017, 2019). In mouse, deficiency for Mincle has only a minor effect on the mortality of animals during the early stages of infection and it partially impairs the fungal burden (Kottom et al. 2017). Compared to WT animals, Mincle-deficient mice exhibit higher levels of pro-inflammatory cytokines (TNFα, IL-1β) and anti-inflammatory cytokines (IL-1RA) in the lungs following infection but decreased expression of IL-17 (Kottom et al. 2017). Whether Mincle plays a role in humans or not remains to be determined. Mincle has not been studied in the context of infection by *C. neoformans*.

5.2.6 DC-SIGN (CD209, Mouse SIGNR1 to SIGNR8)

The human Dendritic Cell-Specific intercellular adhesion ICAM-3-Grabbing Non-integrin (DC-SIGN) protein has 8 murine homologues: SIGNR1–8 (SIGN-Related) (Powlesland et al. 2006). SIGNR5 has been proposed to be the closest homologue based on its genomic localisation and its high-level expression in splenic DCs (Park et al. 2001). Nevertheless, SIGNR3 was shown to be the homologue with the closest biochemical properties: similar affinity for mannosyl- and fucosyl-glycans, induction of endocytosis upon binding and ligand release at endosomal pH (Powlesland et al. 2006). DC-SIGN possesses a single CRD and is present as tetramer at the cell surface of DCs (Mitchell et al. 2001). The DC-SIGN family of receptors binds mannose and mannosylated proteins present at the surface of fungi (Takahara et al. 2012).

SIGNR1 is able to bind *C. albicans* but has poor phagocytic capacities (Taylor et al. 2004). Upon binding to *C. albicans*, DC-SIGN contributes to potentiate the production of TNFα induced by TLR2 activation (Takahara et al. 2012a, b). Interestingly, TLR2 and DC-SIGN appear to associate at the cell membrane, but whether this affects the recognition of pathogens by either one is not determined (Takahara et al. 2012b). The role of DC-SIGN in vivo or in human candidiasis is not deciphered.

DC-SIGN mediates the binding and internalisation of *A. fumigatus* through the recognition of galactomannans (Serrano-Gomez et al. 2005). A DC-SIGN over-expression model suggested that this receptor contributes to the production of IL-10 and IL-12 (Li et al. 2018). The effects of this receptor on Th polarisation remain to be determined. Nevertheless, several human *DC-SIGN* SNPs have been associated with increased risk of developing invasive aspergillosis in patients undergoing chemotherapy or hematopoietic stem-cell transplantation (Sainz et al. 2012).

DC-SIGN binds mannoproteins from the *C. neoformans* cell wall and GpA from *Pneumocystis* spp. (Mansour et al. 2006; Kottom et al. 2019). However, the role of

DC-SIGN has not been further characterised and more studies are required to determine the role of this receptor during the infection by these two pathogens.

5.2.7 Mannose Receptor (CD206)

The Mannose Receptor (MR) was the first membrane receptor whose binding to yeasts was shown to be inhibited by mannans (Warr 1980). The MR is expressed by macrophages, DCs, and some subsets of endothelial and epithelial cells (Martinez-Pomares 2012); some have also reported expression in human monocytes (Smeekens 2011). The mannose receptor is a multidomain receptor that comprises 8 CRDs organised in an extended linear conformation and responsible for the binding of mannose and mannosylated sugars and proteins (Martinez-Pomares 2012; Lam et al. 2007). MR also possesses two non-CRD cysteine-rich domains that mainly bind endogenous ligands (Martinez-Pomares 2012). Due to the spatial arrangement of its CRDs, MR recognises linear and short (2 to 6) mannosylated saccharides; in comparison, the tetrameric organisation of DC-SIGN allows the latter to bind to complex sugars (Frison et al. 2003). MR also recognises and induces the internalisation of chitin particles, which is required for this compound to exert anti-inflammatory effects (Wagener et al. 2014). Interestingly, Dectin-1 activation induces the cleavage of membrane-bound MR, which releases a soluble form of the receptor's extracellular domains (Gazi et al. 2011) in serum and alveolar fluid. The soluble MR can bind to extracellular pathogens, but its functions are poorly understood (Fraser et al. 2000).

The precise role of MR during fungal infections is still unclear. Several authors have reported that MR is unable to induce the internalisation of *C. albicans* (Lee et al. 2003; Heinsbroek et al. 2008). Instead, it was proposed that *C. albicans* uptake is mediated by Dectin-1 and that the MR is recruited to the phagosome (Heinsbroek et al. 2008), suggesting that these PRRs collaborate sequentially. MR signals through the FcRγ and collaborates with TLR2 and Dectin-1 to polarise T cells towards a protective Th17 response in mouse (van de Veerdonk et al. 2009; Rajaram et al. 2017). In spite of this, MR-deficient mice are not more susceptible to *C. albicans* infection than WT animals, nor do their immune cells have altered candidacidal abilities (Lee et al. 2003).

In vitro, MR contributes to initiate the secretion of TNFα and IL-1β by human corneal epithelial cells when infected with *A. fumigatus* (Wang et al. 2016). In these cells, triggering of MR increases the expression of Dectin-1, which is also required to mount the anti-*A. fumigatus* immune response in the cornea (Xu et al. 2015).

The ability of MR to induce the internalisation of *C. neoformans* is not resolved (Mansour et al. 2006). Binding of mannoproteins from *C. neoformans* cell wall by MR is essential to induce an efficient adaptive immune response (Mansour et al. 2006; Dan et al. 2008), even though the effects of this receptor on Th polarisation remain to be determined. The deficiency of the MR increases susceptibility to *C. neoformans* infection in mouse (Dan et al. 2008) but there are no reports of

increased susceptibility infection due to MR polymorphisms. MR has not been explored in the immune response against *P. jirovecii*.

5.2.8 Langerin (CD207)

Langerin is expressed by Langerhans cells (LC) found in the skin and the mucosa; it is also expressed by minor populations of DCs in the lungs, dermis, gut and lymphoid tissues (Takahara et al. 2002; De Jesus et al. 2014; Bigley et al. 2015; Patel et al. 2017). Langerin is a homotrimeric protein that binds mannose structures and β-glucans and targets them to the Birbeck granules - the endosomal compartments of LCs.

Langerin can interact with *C. albicans*, but not *C. neoformans,* through interaction with β-glucans and mannans (de Jong et al. 2010; Tateno et al. 2010). It is able to mediate uptake of *Candida* spp. and β-glucan preparations (*i.e.* zymosan) (de Jong et al. 2010). LCs are required to induce Th17 but not Th1 adaptive responses at the skin level in response to *C. albicans* (Igyarto et al. 2011). In addition, Langerin$^+$ DCs are necessary to initiate the adaptive responses against *C. albicans* at the level of the skin and the oral cavity (Igyarto et al. 2011; Sparber et al. 2018). However, in the studies mentioned above, Langerin was used as cell marker and no direct role for Langerin in the recognition of *C. albicans* or initiation of the adaptive response has been demonstrated. Other functions of Langerin in antifungal immunity are still unexplored.

5.3 CD23 (FcεRII)

The low-affinity IgE Fc receptor (CD23) is expressed by lymphocytes, granulocytes, DCs, monocytes, macrophages and some epithelial cells (Acharya et al. 2010; Palaniyandi et al. 2011). This CLR can be either membrane bound as trimer (Kilmon et al. 2004) or released as a secreted monomer (McCloskey et al. 2007) or trimer (Beavil et al. 1995). In addition to the binding of immunoglobulins, it was recently shown that CD23 is able to interact directly with β-glucan and α-mannans (Guo et al. 2018).

Consistently with its ability to induce NO synthase upon activation, CD23 was reported to be involved in the killing, but not in the uptake of *C. albicans* by macrophages (Guo et al. 2018). Moreover, mice deficient for CD23 were more susceptible to *C. albicans* and *A. fumigatus* infection but not to *C. neoformans* challenge (Guo et al. 2018). More studies are needed to determine whether it can affect the adaptive response or if this receptor is involved in the anti-*P. jirovecii* immunity.

6 Other PRRs

6.1 CR3 (CD11b/CD18, Mac-1)

Complement receptor 3 (CR3) is composed of two integrins, CD11b and CD18; it is expressed by granulocytes, monocytes, macrophages and DCs (Erdei et al. 2019). CR3 is able to bind GXMs and β-glucans from fungal pathogens (Ross et al. 1987; Dong and Murphy 1997). Although Dectin-1 has been shown to have a major role in the phagocytosis and initiation of inflammation by mononuclear phagocytes in response to β-glucan, CR3 is the main receptor for this PAMP in neutrophils (van Bruggen et al. 2009), whereas it has only a minor role in mononuclear phagocytes (Li et al. 2011). It is believed that this difference lies in the difference of expression of these PRRs by these different cell types (van Bruggen et al. 2009). Actually, in neutrophils, CR3 and Dectin-1 collaborate tightly to respond to fungal pathogens. Integrins are often expressed as inactive receptors at the cell surface and need a signal from another receptor (PRR, cytokine receptor, etc.) to acquire ligand-binding properties through conformational modifications (Hynes 2002). Triggering of Dectin-1 induces the activation of CR3 through the Syk-Vav pathway, and this step is required for neutrophils to acquire their fungicidal abilities (Li et al. 2011). The interactions of CR3 with complement-opsonized pathogens can also mediate internalisation of the opsonized target and influence Th cell polarisation (Gresnigt et al. 2013) but we will only discuss its functions as a PRR.

Upon recognition of β-glucan, CR3 is able to mediate internalisation of pathogens and the production of ROS by neutrophils (van Bruggen et al. 2009; Li et al. 2011). CR3 is involved in the killing of non-opsonized *C. albicans* yeasts and *A. fumigatus* conidia through iron sequestration (Gazendam et al. 2014, Gazendam et al. 2016). In contrast, the killing of *A. fumigatus* hyphae seems to occur by the production of NETs and ROS (Clark et al. 2018). CR3 signals through the Syk pathway and activates the NADPH oxidase mainly through activation of PKCδ (Li et al. 2016) but the PI3K-Akt pathway has also been reported to be involved (Bose et al. 2014). Activation of the MAPK signalling cascade potentiates the signal induced by Dectin-1 and contributes to an increased secretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines (Huang et al. 2015). There is no known role for CR3 in the immune response of *C. neoformans* or *P. jirovecii*.

Deficiency for CD18 has been shown to be a major risk factor for susceptibility to invasive fungal infection (Lanternier et al. 2013). This immunodeficiency is called leukocyte adhesion deficiency (LAD) type I, and cells from LAD patients are less responsive to zymosan (Ross et al. 1987). However, reasons underlying susceptibility to fungal infections might also link with the decreased ability of neutrophils from these patients to leave the bloodstream and access the infected tissues (Hanna and Etzioni 2012).

6.2 CD14

CD14 is a membrane-bound protein expressed at the surface of myeloid cells, and it can also be secreted as a soluble form (Wu et al. 2019). This protein has been extensively Characterised for its functions as a co-receptor for TLR2 and TLR4 (Wu et al. 2019), and this collaboration has been shown to be important for activation of these receptors in response to fungal pathogens, such as *A. fumigatus* and a minor role for *C. neoformans* (Wang et al. 2001; Tada et al. 2002; Yauch et al. 2004). Through its ability to bind LPS and to activate NFAT in a PLCγ-dependent manner (Wu et al. 2019), CD14 is also a PRR in itself. This receptor has been shown to bind GXMs from *C. neoformans* independently of TLR4 (Shoham et al. 2001) but whether this binding leads to the TLR-independent activation of CD14 remains unknown. There is no other report of CD14 functioning directly as a PRR in fungal infections, and it is proposed to function as a co-receptor only.

6.3 Scavenger Receptors

The scavenger receptors constitute a "supergroup" of receptors defined by their ability to bind common ligands, including low-density lipoproteins, rather than a common structure (Zani et al. 2015). In addition to endogenous ligands, a few scavenger receptors also bind β-glucans (Zani et al. 2015).

CD5 has been shown to activate the MAPK pathway and induce the secretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines in response to zymosan (Vera et al. 2009). CD36 and SCARF1 act as TLR2 co-receptors, mediate the uptake of *C. neoformans* and exert a protective role in vivo against this pathogen (Means et al. 2009).

LOX-1 is a scavenger receptor belonging to the CLRs superfamily (Zelensky and Gready 2005); it is expressed on endothelial cells and in the corneal epithelium (Li et al. 2015; He et al. 2016). This receptor has been shown to participate in antifungal immune response in *A. fumigatus* keratitis. In response to this fungus, LOX-1 contributes to induce the production of pro-inflammatory cytokines and ROS (Gao et al. 2016; He et al. 2016). Nevertheless, whether its functions are linked to the binding of a fungal ligand remains to be confirmed.

6.4 Ephrin Type-A Receptor 2 (EphA2)

EphA2 is a tyrosine-kinase transmembrane receptor expressed on endothelial cells, epithelial cells and some subsets of leukocytes, including neutrophils, monocytes and DCs (Funk and Orr 2013). Ephrin receptors contribute to intercellular communication by recognising membrane-bound ligands. They regulate endothelial

permeability, inflammation, embryogenesis and carcinogenesis (Darling and Lamb 2019).

In addition, EphA2 binds β-glucans and can induce the internalisation of *C. albicans* by epithelial cells and neutrophils (Swidergall et al. 2018, 2019). It activates the MAPK pathway in an FcRγ-dependent manner and induces the secretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines and antifungal peptides (Swidergall et al. 2019). Deficiency for EphA2 impairs the recruitment of leukocytes to the oral mucosa and the oxidative killing of *C. albicans* by neutrophils (Swidergall et al. 2018, 2019). The role of EphA2 in oral infection by *C. albicans* might be limited to the early stages of infection as fungal clearance is only delayed in mice deficient for this receptor (Swidergall et al. 2019).

EphA2 is able to induce the binding and internalisation of *C. neoformans* to endothelial cells in vitro (Aaron et al. 2018). In an in vitro blood–brain barrier model, silencing of EphA2 has been shown to impair barrier crossing by *C. neoformans* (Aaron et al. 2018), highlighting its potential interest for therapeutic application in the prevention of cryptococcal meningitis.

7 Conclusion

The innate immune response to fungal pathogens is required to prevent invasive infections and initiate the adaptive immune response. As described in this chapter, many PRRs are activated by PAMPs from the fungal cell wall and have been more or less extensively characterised. During fungal infections, the interplay between the fungus and immune cells is highly dynamic and the interaction between the pathogen and the host primarily occurs at the level of the fungal cell wall whose structure alters as the morphology and composition change. The identity and role(s) of different PRRs involved in the immune response are governed not only by the fungus encountered but also by the fungal morphotype, the localisation of infection and the host cell type considered. PRR collaboration is essential to ensure an efficient antifungal immune response that also requires modulation to avoid deleterious excessive inflammation that can lead to organ failure in the case of severe sepsis (Annane et al. 2005).

The fungal cell wall constitutes the armour which provides protection against external aggression from the host immune response. It also constitutes a weak point whose recognition leads to the initiation of the immune response and the subsequent elimination of the pathogen. Fungi are able to escape and avoid immune recognition by altering the composition of their cell wall to mask or shed major PAMPs, such as β-glucans (Ballou et al. 2016; Hopke et al. 2018). Other fungal immune evasion strategies include the activation of the immunosuppressive components of immunity and secretion of immunomodulatory proteins (Marcos et al. 2016).

A great body of knowledge has been accumulated for Dectin-1 and the TLRs, notably thanks to epidemiological studies that have linked SNPs, in their genes or

those of their signalling intermediates, to altered susceptibility to infections (Lanternier et al. 2013). On the other hand, the role of several PRRs, such as MelLec and the scavenger receptors, is not completely understood and needs to be studied further to fully appreciate their contribution to the antifungal immune response. In addition, it is still unclear why different PRRs have different biological functions while they activate the same signalling cascades. Finally, we need to expand our understanding of these immune receptors, and how they collaborate in mounting an efficient immune response, to develop more effective therapeutic strategies and vaccines against fungal pathogens to alleviate their burden on human health.

Acknowledgements We thank the Wellcome Trust (102705) and the Medical Research Council Centre for Medical Mycology and the University of Exeter (MR/N006364/2) for funding.

Statement All figures were made using BioRender.com.

References

Aaron PA, Jamklang M, Uhrig JP et al (2018).The blood-brain barrier internalises *Cryptococcus neoformans* via the EphA2-tyrosine kinase receptor. Cell Microbiol 20(3)

Acharya M, Borland G, Edkins AL et al (2010) CD23/FcepsilonRII: molecular multi-tasking. Clin Exp Immunol 162(1):12–23

Aimanianda V, Bayry J, Bozza S et al (2009) Surface hydrophobin prevents immune recognition of airborne fungal spores. Nature 460(7259):1117–1121

Annane D, Bellissant E, Cavaillon JM (2005) Septic shock. Lancet 365(9453):63–78

Arthur JS, Ley SC (2013) Mitogen-activated protein kinases in innate immunity. Nat Rev Immunol 13(9):679–692

Ballou ER, Avelar GM, Childers DS et al (2016) Lactate signalling regulates fungal beta-glucan masking and immune evasion. Nat Microbiol 2:16238

Balloy V, Si-Tahar M, Takeuchi O et al (2005) Involvement of toll-like receptor 2 in experimental invasive pulmonary aspergillosis. Infect Immun 73(9):5420–5425

Beavil RL, Graber P, Aubonney N et al (1995) CD23/Fc epsilon RII and its soluble fragments can form oligomers on the cell surface and in solution. Immunology 84(2):202–206

Becker KL, Aimanianda V, Wang X et al (2016) *Aspergillus* cell wall chitin induces anti- and proinflammatory cytokines in human pbmcs via the fc-gamma receptor/Syk/PI3K pathway. mBio 7(3)

Bello-Irizarry SN, Wang J, Olsen K et al (2012) The alveolar epithelial cell chemokine response to pneumocystis requires adaptor molecule MyD88 and interleukin-1 receptor but not toll-like receptor 2 or 4. Infect Immun 80(11):3912–3920

Bellocchio S, Montagnoli C, Bozza S et al (2004) The contribution of the Toll-like/IL-1 receptor superfamily to innate and adaptive immunity to fungal pathogens in vivo. J Immunol 172 (5):3059–3069

Bigley V, McGovern N, Milne P et al (2015) Langerin-expressing dendritic cells in human tissues are related to CD1c + dendritic cells and distinct from Langerhans cells and CD141high XCR1 + dendritic cells. J Leukoc Biol 97(4):627–634

Biondo C, Midiri A, Gambuzza M et al (2008) IFN-alpha/beta signaling is required for polarization of cytokine responses toward a protective type 1 pattern during experimental cryptococcosis. J Immunol 181(1):566–573

Biondo C, Signorino G, Costa A et al (2011) Recognition of yeast nucleic acids triggers a host-protective type I interferon response. Eur J Immunol 41(7):1969–1979

Bochud PY, Chien JW, Marr KA et al (2008) Toll-like receptor 4 polymorphisms and aspergillosis in stem-cell transplantation. N Engl J Med 359(17):1766–1777

Bose N, Wurst LR, Chan AS et al (2014) Differential regulation of oxidative burst by distinct beta-glucan-binding receptors and signaling pathways in human peripheral blood mononuclear cells. Glycobiology 24(4):379–391

Branzk N, Lubojemska A, Hardison SE et al (2014) Neutrophils sense microbe size and selectively release neutrophil extracellular traps in response to large pathogens. Nat Immunol 15 (11):1017–1025

Brown GD (2006) Dectin-1: a signalling non-TLR pattern-recognition receptor. Nat Rev Immunol 6(1):33–43

Brown GD, Denning DW, Gow NA et al (2012) Hidden killers: human fungal infections. Sci Transl Med 4(165):165rv113

Brown GD, Gordon S (2001) Immune recognition. A new receptor for beta-glucans. Nature 413 (6851):36–37

Brown GD, Herre J, Williams DL et al (2003) Dectin-1 mediates the biological effects of beta-glucans. J Exp Med 197(9):1119–1124

Brown GD, Willment JA, Whitehead L (2018) C-type lectins in immunity and homeostasis. Nat Rev Immunol 18(6):374–389

Brubaker SW, Bonham KS, Zanoni I et al (2015) Innate immune pattern recognition: a cell biological perspective. Annu Rev Immunol 33:257–290

Brummer E, Stevens DA (2010) Collectins and fungal pathogens: roles of surfactant proteins and mannose binding lectin in host resistance. Med Mycol 48(1):16–28

Bugarcic A, Hitchens K, Beckhouse AG et al (2008) Human and mouse macrophage-inducible C-type lectin (Mincle) bind Candida albicans. Glycobiology 18(9):679–685

Camilli G, Eren E, Williams DL et al (2018) Impaired phagocytosis directs human monocyte activation in response to fungal derived beta-glucan particles. Eur J Immunol 48(5):757–770

Campos CF, van de Veerdonk FL, Goncalves SM et al (2019) Host genetic signatures of susceptibility to fungal disease. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 422:237–263

Campuzano A, Castro-Lopez N, Wozniak KL et al (2017) Dectin-3 Is not required for protection against *Cryptococcus neoformans* infection. PLoS ONE 12(1):e0169347

Carrion Sde J, Leal SM Jr, Ghannoum MA et al (2013) The RodA hydrophobin on Aspergillus fumigatus spores masks dectin-1- and dectin-2-dependent responses and enhances fungal survival in vivo. J Immunol 191(5):2581–2588

Carvalho A, De Luca A, Bozza S et al (2012) TLR3 essentially promotes protective class I-restricted memory CD8(+) T-cell responses to *Aspergillus fumigatus* in hematopoietic transplanted patients. Blood 119(4):967–977

Carvalho A, Pasqualotto AC, Pitzurra L et al (2008) Polymorphisms in toll-like receptor genes and susceptibility to pulmonary aspergillosis. J Infect Dis 197(4):618–621

Cavalieri D, Di Paola M, Rizzetto L et al (2017) Genomic and phenotypic variation in morphogenetic networks of two *Candida albicans* isolates subtends their different pathogenic potential. Front Immunol 8:1997

Cheng SC, Quintin J, Cramer RA et al (2014) mTOR- and HIF-1alpha-mediated aerobic glycolysis as metabolic basis for trained immunity. Science 345(6204):1250684

Clark HL, Abbondante S, Minns MS et al (2018) Protein deiminase 4 and CR3 regulate *Aspergillus fumigatus* and beta-glucan-induced neutrophil extracellular trap formation, but hyphal killing is dependent Only on CR3. Front Immunol 9:1182

Da Silva CA, Chalouni C, Williams A et al (2009) Chitin is a size-dependent regulator of macrophage TNF and IL-10 production. J Immunol 182(6):3573–3582

Dan JM, Kelly RM, Lee CK et al (2008) Role of the mannose receptor in a murine model of *Cryptococcus neoformans* infection. Infect Immun 76(6):2362–2367
Darling TK, Lamb TJ (2019) Emerging roles for Eph receptors and Ephrin Ligands in immunity. Front Immunol 10:1473
De Jesus M, Ostroff GR, Levitz SM et al (2014) A population of Langerin-positive dendritic cells in murine Peyer's patches involved in sampling beta-glucan microparticles. PLoS ONE 9(3): e91002
de Jong MA, Vriend LE, Theelen B et al (2010) C-type lectin Langerin is a beta-glucan receptor on human Langerhans cells that recognizes opportunistic and pathogenic fungi. Mol Immunol 47(6):1216–1225
del Fresno C, Soulat D, Roth S et al (2013) Interferon-beta production via Dectin-1-Syk-IRF5 signaling in dendritic cells is crucial for immunity to C. albicans. Immunity 38(6):1176–1186
den Dunnen J, Gringhuis SI, Geijtenbeek TB (2009) Innate signaling by the C-type lectin DC-SIGN dictates immune responses. Cancer Immunol Immunother 58(7):1149–1157
Deng Z, Ma S, Zhou H et al (2015) Tyrosine phosphatase SHP-2 mediates C-type lectin receptor-induced activation of the kinase Syk and anti-fungal TH17 responses. Nat Immunol 16(6):642–652
Dennehy KM, Ferwerda G, Faro-Trindade I et al (2008) Syk kinase is required for collaborative cytokine production induced through Dectin-1 and Toll-like receptors. Eur J Immunol 38 (2):500–506
Ding K, Shibui A, Wang Y et al (2005) Impaired recognition by Toll-like receptor 4 is responsible for exacerbated murine *Pneumocystis pneumonia*. Microbes Infect 7(2):195–203
Dong ZM, Murphy JW (1997) Cryptococcal polysaccharides bind to CD18 on human neutrophils. Infect Immun 65(2):557–563
Drewniak A, Gazendam RP, Tool AT et al (2013) Invasive fungal infection and impaired neutrophil killing in human CARD9 deficiency. Blood 121(13):2385–2392
Drummond RA, Dambuza IM, Vautier S et al (2016) CD4(+) T-cell survival in the GI tract requires dectin-1 during fungal infection. Mucosal Immunol 9(2):492–502
Drummond RA, Swamydas M, Oikonomou V et al (2019) CARD9(+) microglia promote antifungal immunity via IL-1beta- and CXCL1-mediated neutrophil recruitment. Nat Immunol 20(5):559–570
Dubourdeau M, Athman R, Balloy V et al (2006) Aspergillus fumigatus induces innate immune responses in alveolar macrophages through the MAPK pathway independently of TLR2 and TLR4. J Immunol 177(6):3994–4001
Erdei A, Lukacsi S, Macsik-Valent B et al (2019) Non-identical twins: different faces of CR3 and CR4 in myeloid and lymphoid cells of mice and men. Semin Cell Dev Biol 85:110–121
Erwig LP, Gow NA (2016) Interactions of fungal pathogens with phagocytes. Nat Rev Microbiol 14(3):163–176
Farhat K, Riekenberg S, Heine H et al (2008) Heterodimerization of TLR2 with TLR1 or TLR6 expands the ligand spectrum but does not lead to differential signaling. J Leukoc Biol 83 (3):692–701
Faro-Trindade I, Willment JA, Kerrigan AM et al (2012) Characterisation of innate fungal recognition in the lung. PLoS ONE 7(4):e35675
Feinberg H, Jegouzo SAF, Rex MJ et al (2017) Mechanism of pathogen recognition by human dectin-2. J Biol Chem 292(32):13402–13414
Fonseca FL, Nohara LL, Cordero RJ et al (2010) Immunomodulatory effects of serotype B glucuronoxylomannan from *Cryptococcus gattii* correlate with polysaccharide diameter. Infect Immun 78(9):3861–3870
Fraser IP, Takahashi K, Koziel H et al (2000) Pneumocystis carinii enhances soluble mannose receptor production by macrophages. Microbes Infect 2(11):1305–1310
Frison N, Taylor ME, Soilleux E et al (2003) Oligolysine-based oligosaccharide clusters: selective recognition and endocytosis by the mannose receptor and dendritic cell-specific intercellular adhesion molecule 3 (ICAM-3)-grabbing nonintegrin. J Biol Chem 278(26):23922–23929

Fuchs K, Cardona Gloria Y, Wolz OO et al (2018) The fungal ligand chitin directly binds TLR2 and triggers inflammation dependent on oligomer size. EMBO Rep 19(12)

Funk SD, Orr AW (2013) Ephs and ephrins resurface in inflammation, immunity, and atherosclerosis. Pharmacol Res 67(1):42–52

Gantner BN, Simmons RM, Canavera SJ et al (2003) Collaborative induction of inflammatory responses by dectin-1 and Toll-like receptor 2. J Exp Med 197(9):1107–1117

Gantner BN, Simmons RM, Underhill DM (2005) Dectin-1 mediates macrophage recognition of *Candida albicans* yeast but not filaments. EMBO J 24(6):1277–1286

Gao X, Zhao G, Li C et al (2016) LOX-1 and TLR4 affect each other and regulate the generation of ROS in A. fumigatus keratitis. Int Immunopharmacol 40:392–399

Gasparoto TH, Tessarolli V, Garlet TP et al (2010) Absence of functional TLR4 impairs response of macrophages after *Candida albicans* infection. Med Mycol 48(8):1009–1017

Gavino AC, Chung JS, Sato K et al (2005) Identification and expression profiling of a human C-type lectin, structurally homologous to mouse dectin-2. Exp Dermatol 14(4):281–288

Gay NJ, Symmons MF, Gangloff M et al (2014) Assembly and localization of Toll-like receptor signalling complexes. Nat Rev Immunol 14(8):546–558

Gazendam RP, van Hamme JL, Tool AT et al (2016) Human neutrophils use different mechanisms to kill *Aspergillus fumigatus* conidia and hyphae: evidence from phagocyte defects. J Immunol 196(3):1272–1283

Gazendam RP, van Hamme JL, Tool AT et al (2014) Two independent killing mechanisms of *Candida albicans* by human neutrophils: evidence from innate immunity defects. Blood 124 (4):590–597

Gazi U, Rosas M, Singh S et al (2011) Fungal recognition enhances mannose receptor shedding through dectin-1 engagement. J Biol Chem 286(10):7822–7829

Gersuk GM, Underhill DM, Zhu L et al (2006) Dectin-1 and TLRs permit macrophages to distinguish between different *Aspergillus fumigatus* cellular states. J Immunol 176(6):3717–3724

Glocker EO, Hennigs A, Nabavi M et al (2009) A homozygous CARD9 mutation in a family with susceptibility to fungal infections. N Engl J Med 361(18):1727–1735

Goodridge HS, Reyes CN, Becker CA et al (2011) Activation of the innate immune receptor Dectin-1 upon formation of a 'phagocytic synapse'. Nature 472(7344):471–475

Gow NAR, Latge JP Munro CA (2017) The fungal cell wall: structure, biosynthesis, and function. Microbiol Spectr 5(3)

Graham LM, Gupta V, Schafer G et al (2012) The C-type lectin receptor CLECSF8 (CLEC4D) is expressed by myeloid cells and triggers cellular activation through Syk kinase. J Biol Chem 287(31):25964–25974

Gresnigt MS, Becker KL, Smeekens SP et al (2013) Aspergillus fumigatus-induced IL-22 is not restricted to a specific Th cell subset and is dependent on complement receptor 3. J Immunol 190(11):5629–5639

Gringhuis SI, den Dunnen J, Litjens M et al (2009) Dectin-1 directs T helper cell differentiation by controlling noncanonical NF-kappaB activation through Raf-1 and Syk. Nat Immunol 10 (2):203–213

Gringhuis SI, den Dunnen J, Litjens M et al (2007) C-type lectin DC-SIGN modulates Toll-like receptor signaling via Raf-1 kinase-dependent acetylation of transcription factor NF-kappaB. Immunity 26(5):605–616

Gringhuis SI, Wevers BA, Kaptein TM et al (2011) Selective C-Rel activation via Malt1 controls anti-fungal T(H)-17 immunity by dectin-1 and dectin-2. PLoS Pathog 7(1):e1001259

Gross O, Gewies A, Finger K et al (2006) Card9 controls a non-TLR signalling pathway for innate anti-fungal immunity. Nature 442(7103):651–656

Gross O, Poeck H, Bscheider M et al (2009) Syk kinase signalling couples to the Nlrp3 inflammasome for anti-fungal host defence. Nature 459(7245):433–436

Guo Y, Chang Q, Cheng L et al (2018) C-Type lectin receptor CD23 Is required for host defense against *Candida albicans* and *Aspergillus fumigatus* infection. J Immunol 201(8):2427–2440

Haider M, Dambuza IM, Asamaphan P et al (2019) The pattern recognition receptors dectin-2, mincle, and FcRgamma impact the dynamics of phagocytosis of *Candida*, *Saccharomyces, Malassezia*, and *Mucor* species. PLoS ONE 14(8):e0220867

Hanna S, Etzioni A (2012) Leukocyte adhesion deficiencies. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1250:50–55

He K, Yue LH, Zhao GQ et al (2016) The role of LOX-1 on innate immunity against *Aspergillus keratitis* in mice. Int J Ophthalmol 9(9):1245–1250

Heinsbroek SE, Taylor PR, Martinez FO et al (2008) Stage-specific sampling by pattern recognition receptors during *Candida albicans* phagocytosis. PLoS Pathog 4(11):e1000218

Herbst S, Shah A, Mazon Moya M et al (2015) Phagocytosis-dependent activation of a TLR9-BTK-calcineurin-NFAT pathway co-ordinates innate immunity to *Aspergillus fumigatus*. EMBO Mol Med 7(3):240–258

Hernanz-Falcon P, Joffre O, Williams DL et al (2009) Internalization of Dectin-1 terminates induction of inflammatory responses. Eur J Immunol 39(2):507–513

Hole CR, Leopold Wager CM, Mendiola AS et al (2016) Antifungal activity of plasmacytoid dendritic cells against cryptococcus neoformans in vitro requires expression of Dectin-3 (CLEC4D) and reactive oxygen species. Infect Immun 84(9):2493–2504

Hopke A, Brown AJP, Hall RA et al (2018) Dynamic fungal cell wall architecture in stress adaptation and immune evasion. Trends Microbiol 26(4):284–295

Hu XP, Wang RY, Wang X et al (2015) Dectin-2 polymorphism associated with pulmonary cryptococcosis in HIV-uninfected Chinese patients. Med Mycol 53(8):810–816

Huang JH, Lin CY, Wu SY et al (2015) CR3 and Dectin-1 collaborate in macrophage cytokine response through association on lipid rafts and activation of Syk-JNK-AP-1 pathway. PLoS Pathog 11(7):e1004985

Hynes RO (2002) Integrins: bidirectional, allosteric signaling machines. Cell 110(6):673–687

Icenhour CR, Kottom TJ, Limper AH (2003) Evidence for a melanin cell wall component in *Pneumocystis carinii*. Infect Immun 71(9):5360–5363

Ifrim DC, Joosten LA, Kullberg BJ et al (2013) *Candida albicans* primes TLR cytokine responses through a Dectin-1/Raf-1-mediated pathway. J Immunol 190(8):4129–4135

Ifrim DC, Quintin J, Courjol F et al (2016) The role of dectin-2 for host defense against disseminated candidiasis. J Interferon Cytokine Res 36(4):267–276

Igyarto BZ, Haley K, Ortner D et al (2011) Skin-resident murine dendritic cell subsets promote distinct and opposing antigen-specific T helper cell responses. Immunity 35(2):260–272

Jaeger M, van der Lee R, Cheng SC et al (2015) The RIG-I-like helicase receptor MDA5 (IFIH1) is involved in the host defense against candida infections. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis 34 (5):963–974

Janeway CA Jr (1989) Approaching the asymptote? Evolution and revolution in immunology. Cold Spring Harb Symp Quant Biol 54(Pt 1):1–13

Jhingran A, Mar KB, Kumasaka DK et al (2012) Tracing conidial fate and measuring host cell antifungal activity using a reporter of microbial viability in the lung. Cell Rep 2(6):1762–1773

Jouault T, Ibata-Ombetta S, Takeuchi O et al (2003) *Candida albicans* phospholipomannan is sensed through toll-like receptors. J Infect Dis 188(1):165–172

Kasperkovitz PV, Khan NS, Tam JM et al (2011) Toll-like receptor 9 modulates macrophage antifungal effector function during innate recognition of *Candida albicans* and Saccharomyces cerevisiae. Infect Immun 79(12):4858–4867

Kawai T, Akira S (2010) The role of pattern-recognition receptors in innate immunity: update on Toll-like receptors. Nat Immunol 11(5):373–384

Kerscher B, Wilson GJ, Reid DM et al (2016) Mycobacterial receptor, Clec4d (CLECSF8, MCL), is coregulated with Mincle and upregulated on mouse myeloid cells following microbial challenge. Eur J Immunol 46(2):381–389

Kesh S, Mensah NY, Peterlongo P et al (2005) TLR1 and TLR6 polymorphisms are associated with susceptibility to invasive aspergillosis after allogeneic stem cell transplantation. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1062:95–103

Kilmon MA, Shelburne AE, Chan-Li Y et al (2004) CD23 trimers are preassociated on the cell surface even in the absence of its ligand, IgE. J Immunol 172(2):1065–1073

Koldehoff M, Beelen DW, Elmaagacli AH (2013) Increased susceptibility for aspergillosis and post-transplant immune deficiency in patients with gene variants of TLR4 after stem cell transplantation. Transpl Infect Dis 15(5):533–539

Kosmidis C, Denning DW (2015) The clinical spectrum of pulmonary aspergillosis. Thorax 70 (3):270–277

Kottom TJ, Hebrink DM, Jenson PE et al (2018) Dectin-2 is a C-type lectin receptor that recognizes pneumocystis and participates in innate immune responses. Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol 58(2):232–240

Kottom TJ, Hebrink DM, Jenson PE et al (2017) The interaction of pneumocystis with the C-type lectin receptor mincle exerts a significant role in host defense against infection. J Immunol 198 (9):3515–3525

Kottom TJ, Hebrink DM, Monteiro JT et al (2019) Myeloid C-type lectin receptors that recognize fungal mannans interact with Pneumocystis organisms and major surface glycoprotein. J Med Microbiol 68(11):1649–1654

Kwon-Chung KJ, Fraser JA, Doering TL et al (2014) *Cryptococcus neoformans* and *Cryptococcus gattii*, the etiologic agents of cryptococcosis. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med 4(7):a019760

Lam JS, Huang H, Levitz SM (2007) Effect of differential N-linked and O-linked mannosylation on recognition of fungal antigens by dendritic cells. PLoS ONE 2(10):e1009

Lanternier F, Cypowyj S, Picard C et al (2013) Primary immunodeficiencies underlying fungal infections. Curr Opin Pediatr 25(6):736–747

Latge JP, Beauvais A, Chamilos G (2017) The cell wall of the human fungal pathogen *Aspergillus fumigatus*: biosynthesis, organization, immune response, and virulence. Annu Rev Microbiol 71:99–116

Lee SJ, Zheng NY, Clavijo M et al (2003) Normal host defense during systemic candidiasis in mannose receptor-deficient mice. Infect Immun 71(1):437–445

Li C, Zhao G, Che C et al (2015) The role of LOX-1 in innate immunity to *Aspergillus fumigatus* in corneal epithelial cells. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci 56(6):3593–3603

Li LY, Zhang HR, Jiang ZL et al (2018) Overexpression of dendritic cell-specific intercellular adhesion molecule-3-grabbing nonintegrin in dendritic cells protecting against *Aspergillosis*. Chin Med J (Engl) 131(21):2575–2582

Li X, Cullere X, Nishi H et al (2016) PKC-delta activation in neutrophils promotes fungal clearance. J Leukoc Biol 100(3):581–588

Li X, Utomo A, Cullere X et al (2011) The beta-glucan receptor Dectin-1 activates the integrin Mac-1 in neutrophils via Vav protein signaling to promote Candida albicans clearance. Cell Host Microbe 10(6):603–615

Lim J, Coates CJ, Seoane PI et al (2018) Characterizing the mechanisms of nonopsonic uptake of cryptococci by macrophages. J Immunol 200(10):3539–3546

Loures FV, Rohm M, Lee CK et al (2015) Recognition of *Aspergillus fumigatus* hyphae by human plasmacytoid dendritic cells is mediated by dectin-2 and results in formation of extracellular traps. PLoS Pathog 11(2):e1004643

Lowell CA (2011). Src-family and Syk kinases in activating and inhibitory pathways in innate immune cells: signaling cross talk. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol 3(3)

Lowman DW, Greene RR, Bearden DW et al (2014) Novel structural features in Candida albicans hyphal glucan provide a basis for differential innate immune recognition of hyphae versus yeast. J Biol Chem 289(6):3432–3443

Ma J, Becker C, Lowell CA et al (2012) Dectin-1-triggered recruitment of light chain 3 protein to phagosomes facilitates major histocompatibility complex class II presentation of fungal-derived antigens. J Biol Chem 287(41):34149–34156

Mambula SS, Sau K, Henneke P et al (2002) Toll-like receptor (TLR) signaling in response to *Aspergillus fumigatus*. J Biol Chem 277(42):39320–39326

Mansour MK, Latz E, Levitz SM (2006) Cryptococcus neoformans glycoantigens are captured by multiple lectin receptors and presented by dendritic cells. J Immunol 176(5):3053–3061

Mansour MK, Tam JM, Khan NS et al (2013) Dectin-1 activation controls maturation of beta-1,3-glucan-containing phagosomes. J Biol Chem 288(22):16043–16054

Marakalala MJ, Vautier S, Potrykus J et al (2013) Differential adaptation of *Candida albicans* in vivo modulates immune recognition by dectin-1. PLoS Pathog 9(4):e1003315

Marcos CM, de Oliveira HC, de Melo WC et al (2016) Anti-immune strategies of pathogenic fungi. Front Cell Infect Microbiol 6:142

Martinez-Pomares L (2012) The mannose receptor. J Leukoc Biol 92(6):1177–1186

McCloskey N, Hunt J, Beavil RL et al (2007) Soluble CD23 monomers inhibit and oligomers stimulate IGE synthesis in human B cells. J Biol Chem 282(33):24083–24091

McGreal EP, Rosas M, Brown GD et al (2006) The carbohydrate-recognition domain of Dectin-2 is a C-type lectin with specificity for high mannose. Glycobiology 16(5):422–430

Means TK, Mylonakis E, Tampakakis E et al (2009) Evolutionarily conserved recognition and innate immunity to fungal pathogens by the scavenger receptors SCARF1 and CD36. J Exp Med 206(3):637–653

Miro MS, Rodriguez E, Vigezzi C et al (2018) Contribution of TLR2 pathway in the pathogenesis of vulvovaginal candidiasis. Pathog Dis 76(5)

Mitchell DA, Fadden AJ, Drickamer K (2001) A novel mechanism of carbohydrate recognition by the C-type lectins DC-SIGN and DC-SIGNR. Subunit organization and binding to multivalent ligands. J Biol Chem 276(31):28939–28945

Mitchell S, Vargas J, Hoffmann A (2016) Signaling via the NFkappaB system. Wiley Interdiscip Rev Syst Biol Med 8(3):227–241

Miyazato A, Nakamura K, Yamamoto N et al (2009) Toll-like receptor 9-dependent activation of myeloid dendritic cells by Deoxynucleic acids from *Candida albicans*. Infect Immun 77 (7):3056–3064

Monari C, Bistoni F, Casadevall A et al (2005) Glucuronoxylomannan, a microbial compound, regulates expression of costimulatory molecules and production of cytokines in macrophages. J Infect Dis 191(1):127–137

Moreira AP, Cavassani KA, Ismailoglu UB et al (2011) The protective role of TLR6 in a mouse model of asthma is mediated by IL-23 and IL-17A. J Clin Invest 121(11):4420–4432

Mukaremera L, Lee KK, Wagener J et al (2018) Titan cell production in Cryptococcus neoformans reshapes the cell wall and capsule composition during infection. Cell Surf 1:15–24

Munoz JF, Delorey T, Ford CB et al (2019) Coordinated host-pathogen transcriptional dynamics revealed using sorted subpopulations and single macrophages infected with *Candida albicans*. Nat Commun 10(1):1607

Myers RC, Dunaway CW, Nelson MP et al (2013) STAT4-dependent and -independent Th2 responses correlate with protective immunity against lung infection with Pneumocystis murina. J Immunol 190(12):6287–6294

Nakamura K, Kinjo T, Saijo S et al (2007) Dectin-1 is not required for the host defense to *Cryptococcus neoformans*. Microbiol Immunol 51(11):1115–1119

Nakamura K, Miyagi K, Koguchi Y et al (2006) Limited contribution of Toll-like receptor 2 and 4 to the host response to a fungal infectious pathogen, *Cryptococcus neoformans*. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol 47(1):148–154

Nakamura K, Miyazato A, Xiao G et al (2008) Deoxynucleic acids from *Cryptococcus neoformans* activate myeloid dendritic cells via a TLR9-dependent pathway. J Immunol 180 (6):4067–4074

Nakamura Y, Sato K, Yamamoto H et al (2015) Dectin-2 deficiency promotes Th2 response and mucin production in the lungs after pulmonary infection with *Cryptococcus neoformans*. Infect Immun 83(2):671–681

Netea MG, Gow NA, Joosten LA et al (2010) Variable recognition of *Candida albicans* strains by TLR4 and lectin recognition receptors. Med Mycol 48(7):897–903

Netea MG, Gow NA, Munro CA et al (2006) Immune sensing of *Candida albicans* requires cooperative recognition of mannans and glucans by lectin and Toll-like receptors. J Clin Invest 116(6):1642–1650

Netea MG, Sutmuller R, Hermann C et al (2004) Toll-like receptor 2 suppresses immunity against *Candida albicans* through induction of IL-10 and regulatory T cells. J Immunol 172(6): 3712–3718

Netea MG, Warris A, Van der Meer JW et al (2003) *Aspergillus fumigatus* evades immune recognition during germination through loss of toll-like receptor-4-mediated signal transduction. J Infect Dis 188(2):320–326
Oliveira-Nascimento L, Massari P, Wetzler LM (2012) The role of TLR2 in infection and immunity. Front Immunol 3:79
Overton NL, Simpson A, Bowyer P et al (2017) Genetic susceptibility to severe asthma with fungal sensitization. Int J Immunogenet 44(3):93–106
Palaniyandi S, Tomei E, Li Z et al (2011) CD23-dependent transcytosis of IgE and immune complex across the polarized human respiratory epithelial cells. J Immunol 186(6):3484–3496
Papayannopoulos V (2018) Neutrophil extracellular traps in immunity and disease. Nat Rev Immunol 18(2):134–147
Park CG, Takahara K, Umemoto E et al (2001) Five mouse homologues of the human dendritic cell C-type lectin, DC-SIGN. Int Immunol 13(10):1283–1290
Patel VI, Booth JL, Duggan ES et al (2017) Transcriptional classification and functional characterization of human airway macrophage and dendritic cell subsets. J Immunol 198 (3):1183–1201
Picard C, Puel A, Bonnet M et al (2003) Pyogenic bacterial infections in humans with IRAK-4 deficiency. Science 299(5615):2076–2079
Pietrella D, Bistoni G, Corbucci C et al (2006) Candida albicans mannoprotein influences the biological function of dendritic cells. Cell Microbiol 8(4):602–612
Powlesland AS, Ward EM, Sadhu SK et al (2006) Widely divergent biochemical properties of the complete set of mouse DC-SIGN-related proteins. J Biol Chem 281(29):20440–20449
Prieto D, Carpena N, Maneu V et al (2016) TLR2 modulates gut colonization and dissemination of *Candida albicans* in a murine model. Microbes Infect 18(10):656–660
Qiu Y, Zeltzer S, Zhang Y et al (2012) Early induction of CCL7 downstream of TLR9 signaling promotes the development of robust immunity to cryptococcal infection. J Immunol 188 (8):3940–3948
Quintin J, Saeed S, Martens JHA et al (2012) *Candida albicans* infection affords protection against reinfection via functional reprogramming of monocytes. Cell Host Microbe 12(2):223–232
Rajaram MVS, Arnett E, Azad AK et al (2017) M. tuberculosis-initiated human mannose receptor signaling regulates macrophage recognition and vesicle trafficking by FcRgamma-Chain, Grb2, and SHP-1. Cell Rep 21(1):126–140
Ramaprakash H, Ito T, Standiford TJ et al (2009) Toll-like receptor 9 modulates immune responses to *Aspergillus fumigatus* conidia in immunodeficient and allergic mice. Infect Immun 77(1):108–119
Robinson MJ, Osorio F, Rosas M et al (2009) Dectin-2 is a Syk-coupled pattern recognition receptor crucial for Th17 responses to fungal infection. J Exp Med 206(9):2037–2051
Rogers NC, Slack EC, Edwards AD et al (2005) Syk-dependent cytokine induction by Dectin-1 reveals a novel pattern recognition pathway for C type lectins. Immunity 22(4):507–517
Romani L (2011) Immunity to fungal infections. Nat Rev Immunol 11(4):275–288
Rosentul DC, Delsing CE, Jaeger M et al (2014) Gene polymorphisms in pattern recognition receptors and susceptibility to idiopathic recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis. Front Microbiol 5:483
Ross GD, Cain JA, Myones BL et al (1987) Specificity of membrane complement receptor type three (CR3) for beta-glucans. Complement 4(2):61–74
Roth S, Bergmann H, Jaeger M et al (2016) Vav proteins are key regulators of card9 signaling for innate antifungal immunity. Cell Rep 17(10):2572–2583
Saeed S, Quintin J, Kerstens HH et al (2014) Epigenetic programming of monocyte-to-macrophage differentiation and trained innate immunity. Science 345 (6204):1251086
Saijo S, Fujikado N, Furuta T et al (2007) Dectin-1 is required for host defense against *Pneumocystis carinii* but not against *Candida albicans*. Nat Immunol 8(1):39–46

Saijo S, Ikeda S, Yamabe K et al (2010) Dectin-2 recognition of alpha-mannans and induction of Th17 cell differentiation is essential for host defense against *Candida albicans*. Immunity 32 (5):681–691

Sainz J, Lupianez CB, Segura-Catena J et al (2012) Dectin-1 and DC-SIGN polymorphisms associated with invasive pulmonary *Aspergillosis infection*. PLoS ONE 7(2):e32273

Sancho D, Reis e Sousa C (2012) Signaling by myeloid C-type lectin receptors in immunity and homeostasis. Annu Rev Immunol 30:491–529

Sato K, Yang XL, Yudate T et al (2006) Dectin-2 is a pattern recognition receptor for fungi that couples with the Fc receptor gamma chain to induce innate immune responses. J Biol Chem 281(50):38854–38866

Sattler S, Reiche D, Sturtzel C et al (2012) The human C-type lectin-like receptor CLEC-1 is upregulated by TGF-beta and primarily localized in the endoplasmic membrane compartment. Scand J Immunol 75(3):282–292

Serrano-Gomez D, Leal JA, Corbi AL (2005) DC-SIGN mediates the binding of *Aspergillus fumigatus* and keratinophylic fungi by human dendritic cells. Immunobiology 210(2–4): 175–183

Shah VB, Ozment-Skelton TR, Williams DL et al (2009) Vav1 and PI3K are required for phagocytosis of beta-glucan and subsequent superoxide generation by microglia. Mol Immunol 46(8–9):1845–1853

Shoham S, Huang C, Chen JM et al (2001) Toll-like receptor 4 mediates intracellular signaling without TNF-alpha release in response to *Cryptococcus neoformans* polysaccharide capsule. J Immunol 166(7):4620–4626

Skalski JH, Kottom TJ Limper AH (2015) Pathobiology of Pneumocystis pneumonia: life cycle, cell wall and cell signal transduction. FEMS Yeast Res 15(6)

Smeekens SP, van de Veerdonk FL, Joosten LAB, Jacobs L, Jansen T, Williams DL, van der Meer JVM, Kullberg BJ, Netea MG (2011) The classical $CD14^{++}CD16^{-}$ monocytes, but not the patrolling $CD14^{+}CD16^{+}$ monocytes, promote Th17 responses to *Candida albicans*. Eur J Immunol 41(10):2915–2924

Smith DFQ, Casadevall A (2019) The role of melanin in fungal pathogenesis for animal hosts. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 422:1–30

Sparber F, Dolowschiak T, Mertens S et al (2018) Langerin + DCs regulate innate IL-17 production in the oral mucosa during *Candida albicans*-mediated infection. PLoS Pathog 14 (5):e1007069

Speakman EA, Dambuza IM, Salazar F et al (2020) T Cell antifungal immunity and the role of C-Type lectin receptors. Trends Immunol 41(1):61–76

Speth C, Rambach G, Wurzner R et al (2008) Complement and fungal pathogens: an update. Mycoses 51(6):477–496

Stappers MHT, Clark AE, Aimanianda V et al (2018) Recognition of DHN-melanin by a C-type lectin receptor is required for immunity to Aspergillus. Nature 555(7696):382–386

Steele C, Marrero L, Swain S et al (2003) Alveolar macrophage-mediated killing of Pneumocystis carinii f. sp. muris involves molecular recognition by the Dectin-1 beta-glucan receptor. J Exp Med 198(11):1677–1688

Steele C, Rapaka RR, Metz A et al (2005) The beta-glucan receptor dectin-1 recognizes specific morphologies of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. PLoS Pathog 1(4):e42

Stephen-Victor E, Karnam A, Fontaine T et al (2017) *Aspergillus fumigatus* cell wall alpha-(1,3)-glucan stimulates regulatory T-cell polarization by inducing PD-L1 expression on human dendritic cells. J Infect Dis 216(10):1281–1294

Strasser D, Neumann K, Bergmann H et al (2012) Syk kinase-coupled C-type lectin receptors engage protein kinase C-sigma to elicit Card9 adaptor-mediated innate immunity. Immunity 36 (1):32–42

Sun H, Xu XY, Tian XL et al (2014) Activation of NF-kappaB and respiratory burst following *Aspergillus fumigatus* stimulation of macrophages. Immunobiology 219(1):25–36

Swidergall M, Solis NV, Lionakis MS et al (2018) EphA2 is an epithelial cell pattern recognition receptor for fungal beta-glucans. Nat Microbiol 3(1):53–61

Swidergall M, Solis NV, Wang Z et al (2019) EphA2 Is a neutrophil receptor for *Candida albicans* that stimulates antifungal activity during oropharyngeal infection. Cell Rep 28(2):423–433. e425

Tada H, Nemoto E, Shimauchi H et al (2002) *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*- and Candida albicans-derived mannan induced production of tumor necrosis factor alpha by human monocytes in a CD14- and Toll-like receptor 4-dependent manner. Microbiol Immunol 46 (7):503–512

Takahara K, Omatsu Y, Yashima Y et al (2002) Identification and expression of mouse Langerin (CD207) in dendritic cells. Int Immunol 14(5):433–444

Takahara K, Arita T, Tokieda S et al (2012a) Difference in fine specificity to polysaccharides of *Candida albicans* mannoprotein between mouse SIGNR1 and human DC-SIGN. Infect Immun 80(5):1699–1706

Takahara K, Tokieda S, Nagaoka K et al (2012b) Efficient capture of *Candida albicans* and zymosan by SIGNR1 augments TLR2-dependent TNF-alpha production. Int Immunol 24 (2):89–96

Tassi I, Cella M, Castro I et al (2009) Requirement of phospholipase C-gamma2 (PLCgamma2) for Dectin-1-induced antigen presentation and induction of TH1/TH17 polarization. Eur J Immunol 39(5):1369–1378

Tateno H, Ohnishi K, Yabe R et al (2010) Dual specificity of Langerin to sulfated and mannosylated glycans via a single C-type carbohydrate recognition domain. J Biol Chem 285 (9):6390–6400

Taylor PR, Brown GD, Herre J et al (2004) The role of SIGNR1 and the beta-glucan receptor (dectin-1) in the nonopsonic recognition of yeast by specific macrophages. J Immunol 172 (2):1157–1162

Taylor PR, Roy S, Leal SM Jr et al (2014) Activation of neutrophils by autocrine IL-17A-IL-17RC interactions during fungal infection is regulated by IL-6, IL-23, RORgammat and dectin-2. Nat Immunol 15(2):143–151

Taylor PR, Tsoni SV, Willment JA et al (2007) Dectin-1 is required for beta-glucan recognition and control of fungal infection. Nat Immunol 8(1):31–38

Thebault P, Lhermite N, Tilly G et al (2009) The C-type lectin-like receptor CLEC-1, expressed by myeloid cells and endothelial cells, is up-regulated by immunoregulatory mediators and moderates T cell activation. J Immunol 183(5):3099–3108

Thompson A, Davies LC, Liao CT et al (2019) The protective effect of inflammatory monocytes during systemic *C. albicans* infection is dependent on collaboration between C-type lectin-like receptors. PLoS Pathog 15(6):e1007850

Urban CF, Reichard U, Brinkmann V et al (2006) Neutrophil extracellular traps capture and kill *Candida albicans* yeast and hyphal forms. Cell Microbiol 8(4):668–676

van Bruggen R, Drewniak A, Jansen M et al (2009) Complement receptor 3, not Dectin-1, is the major receptor on human neutrophils for beta-glucan-bearing particles. Mol Immunol 47(2–3):575–581

van de Veerdonk FL, Marijnissen RJ, Kullberg BJ et al (2009) The macrophage mannose receptor induces IL-17 in response to *Candida albicans*. Cell Host Microbe 5(4):329–340

van der Graaf CA, Netea MG, Verschueren I et al (2005) Differential cytokine production and Toll-like receptor signaling pathways by *Candida albicans* blastoconidia and hyphae. Infect Immun 73(11):7458–7464

Vautier S, Drummond RA, Redelinghuys P et al (2012) Dectin-1 is not required for controlling *Candida albicans* colonization of the gastrointestinal tract. Infect Immun 80(12):4216–4222

Vera J, Fenutria R, Canadas O et al (2009) The CD5 ectodomain interacts with conserved fungal cell wall components and protects from zymosan-induced septic shock-like syndrome. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 106(5):1506–1511

Vijayan D, Radford KJ, Beckhouse AG et al (2012) Mincle polarizes human monocyte and neutrophil responses to *Candida albicans*. Immunol Cell Biol 90(9):889–895

von Bernuth H, Picard C, Jin Z et al (2008) Pyogenic bacterial infections in humans with MyD88 deficiency. Science 321(5889):691–696

Wagener J, Malireddi RK, Lenardon MD et al (2014) Fungal chitin dampens inflammation through IL-10 induction mediated by NOD2 and TLR9 activation. PLoS Pathog 10(4):e1004050

Walker AN, Garner RE, Horst MN (1990) Immunocytochemical detection of chitin in *Pneumocystis carinii*. Infect Immun 58(2):412–415

Walsh NM, Wuthrich M, Wang H et al (2017) Characterization of C-type lectins reveals an unexpectedly limited interaction between *Cryptococcus neoformans* spores and Dectin-1. PLoS ONE 12(3):e0173866

Wang JE, Warris A, Ellingsen EA et al (2001) Involvement of CD14 and toll-like receptors in activation of human monocytes by *Aspergillus fumigatus* hyphae. Infect Immun 69(4): 2402–2406

Wang JP, Lee CK, Akalin A et al (2011) Contributions of the MyD88-dependent receptors IL-18R, IL-1R, and TLR9 to host defenses following pulmonary challenge with *Cryptococcus neoformans*. PLoS ONE 6(10):e26232

Wang Q, Zhao G, Lin J et al (2016) Role of the mannose receptor during *Aspergillus fumigatus* Infection and Interaction With Dectin-1 in corneal epithelial cells. Cornea 35(2):267–273

Wang SH, Zhang C, Lasbury ME et al (2008) Decreased inflammatory response in Toll-like receptor 2 knockout mice is associated with exacerbated Pneumocystis pneumonia. Microbes Infect 10(4):334–341

Warr GA (1980) A macrophage receptor for (mannose/glucosamine)-glycoproteins of potential importance in phagocytic activity. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 93(3):737–745

Wells CA, Salvage-Jones JA, Li X et al (2008) The macrophage-inducible C-type lectin, mincle, is an essential component of the innate immune response to *Candida albicans*. J Immunol 180 (11):7404–7413

Werner JL, Metz AE, Horn D et al (2009) Requisite role for the dectin-1 beta-glucan receptor in pulmonary defense against *Aspergillus fumigatus*. J Immunol 182(8):4938–4946

Wevers BA, Kaptein TM, Zijlstra-Willems EM et al (2014) Fungal engagement of the C-type lectin mincle suppresses dectin-1-induced antifungal immunity. Cell Host Microbe 15(4): 494–505

Wheeler RT, Kombe D, Agarwala SD et al (2008) Dynamic, morphotype-specific *Candida albicans* beta-glucan exposure during infection and drug treatment. PLoS Pathog 4(12): e1000227

Wiesner DL, Specht CA, Lee CK et al (2015) Chitin recognition via chitotriosidase promotes pathologic type-2 helper T cell responses to cryptococcal infection. PLoS Pathog 11(3): e1004701

Wirnsberger G, Zwolanek F, Asaoka T et al (2016) Inhibition of CBLB protects from lethal *Candida albicans* sepsis. Nat Med 22(8):915–923

Wong SSW, Aimanianda V (2017) Host Soluble Mediators: Defying the Immunological Inertness of Aspergillus fumigatus Conidia. J Fungi (Basel) 4(1)

Wu Z, Zhang Z, Lei Z et al (2019) CD14: Biology and role in the pathogenesis of disease. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev 48:24–31

Xiao Y, Tang J, Guo H et al (2016) Targeting CBLB as a potential therapeutic approach for disseminated candidiasis. Nat Med 22(8):906–914

Xu Q, Zhao G, Lin J et al (2015) Role of Dectin-1 in the innate immune response of rat corneal epithelial cells to *Aspergillus fumigatus*. BMC Ophthalmol 15:126

Xu S, Huo J, Lee KG et al (2009) Phospholipase Cgamma2 is critical for Dectin-1-mediated Ca2 + flux and cytokine production in dendritic cells. J Biol Chem 284(11):7038–7046

Yauch LE, Mansour MK, Shoham S et al (2004) Involvement of CD14, toll-like receptors 2 and 4, and MyD88 in the host response to the fungal pathogen *Cryptococcus neoformans* in vivo. Infect Immun 72(9):5373–5382

Yu GR, Lin J, Zhang J et al (2018) Mincle in the innate immune response of mice fungal keratitis. Int J Ophthalmol 11(4):539–547

Zani IA, Stephen SL, Mughal NA et al (2015) Scavenger receptor structure and function in health and disease. Cells 4(2):178–201

Zelensky AN, Gready JE (2005) The C-type lectin-like domain superfamily. FEBS J 272 (24):6179–6217

Zhang C, Wang SH, Lasbury ME et al (2006) Toll-like receptor 2 mediates alveolar macrophage response to *Pneumocystis murina*. Infect Immun 74(3):1857–1864

Zhu LL, Zhao XQ, Jiang C et al (2013) C-type lectin receptors Dectin-3 and Dectin-2 form a heterodimeric pattern-recognition receptor for host defense against fungal infection. Immunity 39(2):324–334

Exopolysaccharides and Biofilms

François Le Mauff

Contents

1 Introduction 226
2 Biofilm Composition, Structure and Synthesis 227
 2.1 *Aspergillus fumigatus* Biofilm 227
 2.2 *Candida albicans* Biofilm 233
 2.3 Other Relevant Human Fungal Pathogens Biofilms 237
3 Biofilm, a Shelter from the Environment 239
 3.1 Biofilm and Exopolysaccharide-Related Resistance Mechanisms to the Immune System 239
 3.2 Biofilm and Exopolysaccharide-Related Resistance Mechanisms to Antifungals 240
4 How Do We Fight Back? 241
 4.1 Inhibitors of Biofilm 241
 4.2 Disruption of Biofilm 242
5 Conclusion 243
References 243

Abstract During infection, many fungal pathogens form biofilms within tissues or on biomedical devices. The growth of fungi within biofilms increases dramatically their resistance to both immune defences and antifungal therapies. In the last twenty years, studies have begun to shed light on many of the steps involved in biofilm synthesis and composition, revealing new antifungal strategies. This chapter will focus on the biofilm exopolysaccharides produced by *A. fumigatus* and *C. albicans,* the two main causes of human fungal infections. We will review the current state of

F. Le Mauff (✉)
Research Institute of the McGill University Health Centre, Montreal, QC H4A3J1, Canada
e-mail: francois.lemauff@mail.mcgill.ca

Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology (2020) 425: 225–254
https://doi.org/10.1007/82_2020_199
© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
Published Online: 19 February 2020

our understanding of the structure, biosynthesis, and role of exopolysaccharides in biofilm development and function with a view to identifying future strategies for prophylaxis and treatment of these devastating infections.

1 Introduction

As with most scientific discoveries, biofilms were discovered by a technology breakthrough: The development of powerful microscopy lenses that allowed microorganisms to be observed for the first time. During the seventeenth century, Antony Van Leeuwenhoek used his unique single lens microscope to scrutinize diverse samples such as rainwater, the surface of molding meat or the surface of his own teeth (Fred 1933). The description of all his observations revealed the presence of microbial communities (Fred 1933). Three hundred years later, in the late 1960s, several reports flourished suggesting the existence of a bacterial "glycocalyx" made of secreted carbohydrates extracellularly modified for adherence purposes (Costerton et al. 1978). In 1978, this new microbiological concept was formalized into what we now know as biofilms (Donlan and Costerton 2002). Bacterial biofilms and their importance for viability in the environment were first to become recognized (Hall-Stoodley et al. 2004), and it was only in the 2000s that fungal biofilms were recognized as a major health concern (Harding et al. 2009).

Over the past 10–20 years, the composition, architecture, and synthesis of fungal biofilms have begun to be investigated in detail. While these adherent multicellular communities of microorganisms embedded in an extracellular matrix are as diverse as the microorganisms themselves (Mitchell et al. 2016), their strategy to build effective adherent biofilms is remarkably similar. This process consists of the secretion of copious amounts of polysaccharides, enzymes, and structural proteins to form the biofilm core to which lipids, DNA, melanin, and metabolites, can be added to refine the biofilm structure and function (Reichhardt et al. 2016). Once assembled, biofilms can be pictured as a microbial fortress. In the same way, a fortress' fortifications provide a safe environment for its inhabitants, the adhesive properties of biofilms allow organisms to colonize surfaces and surround them with an defensive layer protecting them from biotic and abiotic stresses (Stewart and Franklin 2008). Furthermore, the network formed by the biofilm allows differential efficiency of water and nutrient distribution creating diverse microenvironments from which physiologically heterogeneous populations arise (Flemming and Wingender 2010; Stewart and Franklin 2008). From quiescent persister cells to metabolically active cells secreting exopolysaccharides that can engage or deactivate defense mechanisms of specific aggressors, this population diversity is responsible for most of the biofilm-related resistance mechanisms (Mah and O'toole 2001; Snarr et al. 2017b; Ramage et al. 2009).

The biofilm's ability to adhere and grow on diverse substrata and to enhance resistance mechanisms granted them the title of "most successful form of life on Earth" (Flemming and Ridgway 2009). Unfortunately, medical device surfaces and human tissues are one of the surfaces upon which biofilms form, leading to the development of infections that are often resistant to conventional antimicrobial therapy (Boisvert et al. 2016; Rasmussen and Givskov 2006). Biofilms constitute a source of recurrent infections with high mortality rates, in part due to the increasing use of medical devices such as catheters and prostheses (Desai et al. 2014; Lagree and Mitchell 2017).

In the environment, dozens of thousands of fungi species exist (Blackwell 2011). However, only a few are medically relevant and form biofilms including: *Candida* sp. (Hawser and Douglas 1994), *Aspergillus* sp. (van de Veerdonk et al. 2017), *Cryptococcus* sp. (Martinez and Casadevall 2015), *Rhizopus* sp. (Singh et al. 2011), *Histoplasma* sp. (Pitangui et al. 2012), *Coccidioides* sp. (Davis et al. 2002), *Trichosporon* sp. (Di Bonaventura et al. 2006), and *Pneumocystis* sp. (Cushion et al. 2009). This chapter will focus on the biofilm and biofilm exopolysaccharides produced by the two main causes of human fungal infections, *C. albicans* and *A. fumigatus* which represent more than 85% of the fungal infections (Sanguinetti and Posteraro 2016). The biofilm composition and the polysaccharide synthesis pathways will be presented and the strategies by which fungi use these structures for adherence, invasion, and resistance to antifungals will be reviewed. Finally, currently available and potential therapies against biofilm infections will be discussed.

2 Biofilm Composition, Structure and Synthesis

2.1 Aspergillus fumigatus *Biofilm*

Aspergilli are saprophytic filamentous molds that play an essential role in recycling carbon and nitrogen in the environment (Latgé 1999). Due to their efficient dissemination strategy via the production of airborne conidia, *Aspergilli* are one of the most ubiquitous fungi and can be found everywhere on the planet from the polar circles to the most arid deserts (Abdel-Azeem et al. 2016). As a consequence, all humans inhale *Aspergilli* conidia on a daily basis (Latgé 2001). However, despite the existence of 339 *Aspergilli* species, only 40 are reported as pathogenic (Gugnani 2003; Abdel-Azeem et al. 2016), and more than 80% of the aspergillosis are caused by one single species, *Aspergillus fumigatus* (Singh and Paterson 2005; Morgan et al. 2005). The remaining aspergillosis cases are being due to *A. terreus*, *A. flavus*, *A. niger,* and *A. nidulans* (Dagenais and Keller 2009). These species are also able to form biofilms but will not be the focus of this chapter (Gutierrez-Correa et al. 2012; Al-Gabr et al. 2013; Priegnitz et al. 2012; El-Ganiny et al. 2010).

As with almost all fungal infections, preexisting health conditions are required to develop aspergillosis (Badiee and Hashemizadeh 2014). Preexisting lung conditions, such as cavitary lung disease, asthma, or cystic fibrosis, can lead to chronic aspergillosis. In this condition, *Aspergillus* is contained by the immune system at the site of infection, but is not cleared (Denning 2001). In contrast, in severely immunocompromised patients hyphae can invade and destroy lung tissue, a condition known as invasive aspergillosis (Tekaia and Latge 2005). In both conditions, a biofilm is formed in vivo by *A. fumigatus* and is thought to contribute to virulence (Kaur and Singh 2014; Reichhardt et al. 2019). The architecture of the biofilm in the chronic and invasive aspergillosis differs. During chronic infections, *A. fumigatus* form aspergillomas, balls of agglutinated hyphae covered in a thick layer of extracellular matrix. Only the hyphae at the periphery of the fungal ball are viable with hyphae present at the center dying from starvation. In invasive disease, all the hyphae are viable and spread into the tissue, surrounding themselves with a thin layer of extracellular matrix (Loussert et al. 2010; van de Veerdonk et al. 2017). Immunolocalization of polysaccharides within these biofilms revealed the presence of galactomannans (GM) and galactosaminogalactan (GAG) in both types of biofilms, while α-glucans were observed only in aspergillomas (Loussert et al. 2010). In vitro analysis of *A. fumigatus* biofilms by solid-state NMR spectroscopy revealed that these exopolysaccharides comprise 43% of the extracellular matrix, accompanied by proteins (40%), lipids (14%), and nucleic acid (3%) (Reichhardt et al. 2015). It is important to note that these in vitro grown biofilms differ from those generated in vivo (Müller et al. 2011). As electron microscopy and immunolabeling studies have demonstrated, hyphae tend to agglutinate in a monolayer format in vitro while in vivo they grow in three dimensions and contain higher levels of GAG and GM in their extracellular matrix (Müller et al. 2011).

2.1.1 α-glucans

α-glucans are a major component of *A. fumigatus* hyphae and conidia cell wall (Fontaine et al. 2000). However, their role in biofilm remains unclear. The synthesis of these polymers of α-(1-3)-glucan is mediated by three genes in *A. fumigatus*: *ags1*, *ags2,* and *ags3* (Henry et al. 2012) (Fig. 1). The deletion of these three genes is required to abolish the synthesis of the polymer and results in conidia with reduced viability and attenuated virulence (Beauvais et al. 2013). While no studies have directly examined the role of α-glucans in biofilm formation or adhesion, the overexpression of homologous *ags* genes in *A. nidulans* causes the formation of biofilms as adhesive as those of *A. fumigatus,* suggesting a role for α-glucans in adhesion (He et al. 2018). These findings are supported by studies in *A. oryzae* in which disruption of *ags* genes was associated with reduced hyphal aggregation (Miyazawa et al. 2019), a finding consistent with the observation that α-glucans mediate aggregation of swollen conidia in *A. fumigatus* (Fontaine et al. 2010).

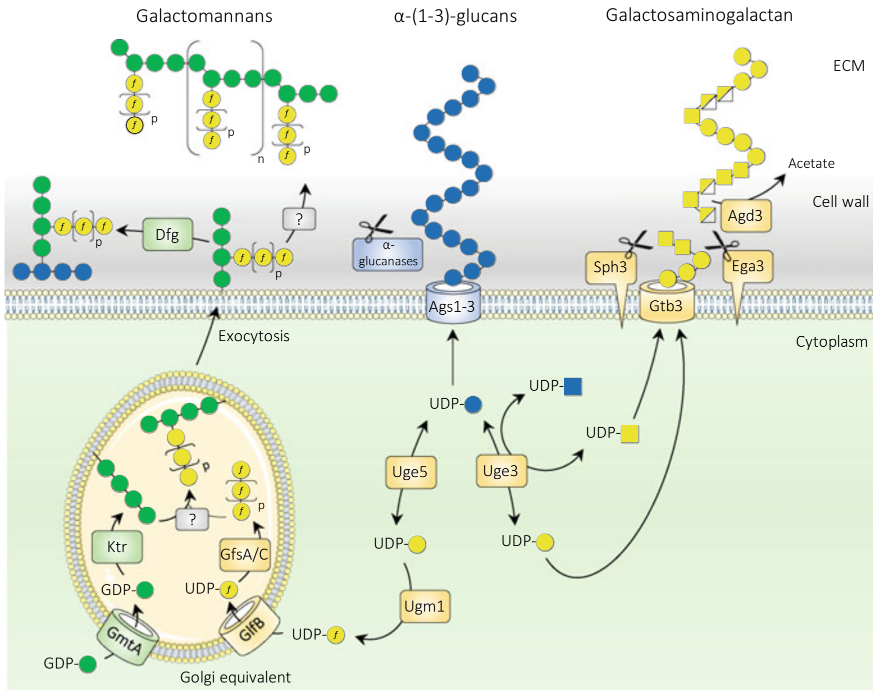


Fig. 1 *A. fumigatus* exopolysaccharides synthesis and secretion pathway. The polysaccharides are represented following the symbol nomenclature for glycan (Varki et al. 2015). Blue circle: Glucose, Yellow circle: Galactose, Green circle: Mannose, Blue square: N-acetylglucosamine, Yellow square: N-acetylgalactosamine, Half yellow square: Galactosamine. The enzymes involved in the different pathways are represented under a cylinder shape for the transporter/transferase or under a square shape for any other proteins and including a scissor cartoon for the glycoside hydrolases. *UDP* Uracil diphosphate; *GDP* Guanosine diphosphate; *ECM* Extracellular matrix

Collectively, these studies suggest the hypothesis that α-glucans are the "glue" that holds hyphae together within aspergillomas and in vitro biofilms, but are absent from the extracellular matrix of the more dispersed hyphae formed during invasive aspergillosis (Beauvais and Latgé 2015).

2.1.2 Galactomannans

Galactomannans are one of the two polysaccharides found in all types of biofilms made by *A. fumigatus* (Loussert et al. 2010; Beauvais and Latgé 2015). However, as with the α-glucans, little is known about their role in biofilm structure. GM plays an important structural role within the cell wall where it is complexed with chitin and β-(1,3)-glucans (Latge and Beauvais 2014). The chitin-glucan-GM complex is involved in conidiation, conidia germination, polarized growth, and cell wall

permeability (Muszkieta et al. 2019; Henry et al. 2019). Many of the enzymes governing GM synthesis have been identified, although several gaps in the pathway remain (Muszkieta et al. 2019; Henry et al. 2019) (Fig. 1). GM synthesis is initiated with the synthesis of UDP-galactofuranose (Gal$_f$) through the successive actions of *uge5* and *ugm1* (also called *glfA*) (Lee et al. 2014; Oppenheimer et al. 2010). Uge5 has been shown to be a UDP-4-glucose epimerase generating UDP-Gal$_p$ from UDP-Glc$_p$ specifically for galactomannan synthesis (Lee et al. 2014). Ugm1 is a UDP-galactopyranose mutase converting the UDP-Gal$_p$ produced by Uge5 to UDP-Gal$_f$ (Oppenheimer et al. 2010). UDP-Gal$_f$ is then transported into the Golgi by *glfB* (Engel et al. 2009), where *gfsA* and *gfsC* assemble chains of 4 to 5 β-(1,5) linked Gal$_f$ residues, which comprise the short side chain of GM (Katafuchi et al. 2017; Oka 2018; Komachi et al. 2013) (Fig. 1). Less is known about the synthesis of the α-(1,6) repeats of tetra-α-(1,2)-mannose backbone and the linkage of the Gal$_f$ side chains to this polymer. Synthesis of the mannan backbone requires the GDP-Man transporter *gmtA* and members of the *ktr* family to synthesize α-(1,2)-mannose (Engel et al. 2012; Henry et al. 2019) (Fig. 1). The enzymes responsible for the insertion of the α-(1,6) linkage in the polymer every four mannose residues and mediating the substitution of the mannose with the β-(1,5)-Gal$_f$ side chains in β-(1,3) or in β-(1,6) remain unknown (Latge et al. 1994) (Fig. 1). Once outside the cell, GM is found associated to the plasma membrane by a GPI anchor (Costachel et al. 2005; Li et al. 2018) and linked to β-(1,3)-glucans through the transglycosylation activity of the Dfg proteins (Muszkieta et al. 2019). GM is also found free in the cell wall and is secreted, but it is unknown if these GM molecules are specifically targeted to these compartments or simply by-products of cell wall synthesis (Fig. 1). Under specific culture conditions, longer Gal$_f$ side chains bearing additional β-(1,5)-Gal$_f$ chains linked in β-(1,6) to the galactose residue at the non-reducing end of the lateral chains have been observed (Kudoh et al. 2015). It has been speculated that the presence of these long galactan side chains is related to the low abundance of extracellular galactofuranosidases synthesized under these conditions (Kudoh et al. 2015).

Several mutants with alterations in the GM biosynthesis pathway display alterations in biofilm formation and adhesion. The *Δdfg* (Muszkieta et al. 2019) or β-(1,3)-glucan-deficient *Δfks*1 mutant (Dichtl et al. 2015), which lack cell wall-associated GM exhibited increased cell wall-associated GAG. It has been suggested that in the absence of GM, the cell wall retains the GAG which overwise would have been secreted into the extracellular matrix (Dichtl et al. 2015). The *Δuge*5, *Δugm*1, or in the *ΔugtA* (*glfB* homologous in *A. nidulans*) mutants which lack the β-(1,5)-Gal$_f$ side chains have all been reported to be more adherent likely due to a increased secretion of GAG compensating for the absence of the Gal$_f$ (Lee et al. 2014; Lamarre et al. 2009; Afroz et al. 2011). The *Δugm*1 and *ΔugtA* mutants also exhibit an altered cell surface in which the smooth amorphous layer typical of the wild type was covered by an organized material (Lamarre et al. 2009; Afroz et al. 2011). These adherence phenotypes may be explained by the redirection of UDP-Gal$_p$ toward other metabolic pathways such as GAG (Lee et al. 2014) or α-glucans synthesis since in an *A. niger* Δ*ugmA* mutant the overexpression of *agsA*

(*ags*1 homolog) was observed (Arentshorst et al. 2019). Alternately, the increased adherence of strains lacking the β-(1,5)-Gal_f may stem from unmasking of the mannose backbone, a hypothesis supported by the fact that mannosidase treatment can reduce adherence of these mutants (Lamarre et al. 2009). A similar role for galactose in inhibiting adhesion was reported in yeast, in which cell surface galactose inhibits the co-flocculation of *Schizosaccharomyces pombe* and *Pediococcus damnosus* (Peng et al. 2001).

2.1.3 Galactosaminogalactan

Like GM, galactosaminogalactan is found in all types of biofilms made by *A. fumigatus* (Loussert et al. 2010). Although this polymer is mostly found in the extracellular matrix or culture supernatant, its synthesis begins in early germination (Paulussen et al. 2017). GAG is the key element in the formation of adherent biofilms. It exerts multiple immunomodulatory functions, and its synthesis has been correlated to the degree of virulence of the strain (Sheppard 2011; Speth et al. 2019; Lee et al. 2012), suggesting it is a true polysaccharide virulence factor (Briard et al. 2016; Fontaine et al. 2011).

GAG was first discovered in 1960 in *Aspergillus parasiticus* and termed galactosaminoglycan since the authors only found galactosamine residues in the polymer (Distler and Roseman 1960). The finding of this new polysaccharide triggered the reports of other species producing a galactosamine-containing polymer including other *Aspergilli* (Gorin and Eveleigh 1970; Leal and Ruperez 1978; Bardalaye and Nordin 1976), *Physarum polyphalum, Cordyceps ophioglossoides, Bipolaris sorokiniana, Peacilomyces,* and *Penicillium frequentans* (Farr et al. 1977; Yamada et al. 1984; Pringle 1981; Takagi and Kadowaki 1985; Guerrero et al. 1988; Bartnicki-Garcia 1968). With the successive discoveries of GAG in the different species, the common features of the polymer were discovered. The linkage in α-(1,4) between the galactosamine was established as the norm, and acetylation of galactosamine has been observed but with different ratios across the different species. In addition, the presence of α-(1,4)-galactose residues were found in most of the polymers, hence the modern name of galactosaminogalactan (Bardalaye and Nordin 1976; Ruperez and Leal 1981; Guerrero et al. 1988).

In *A. fumigatus*, a polymer of N-acetylgalactosamine (GalNAc) was first reported in 2000 while describing the organization of the alkali-insoluble fraction of the cell wall (Fontaine et al. 2000). *A. fumigatus* galactosaminogalactan was initially reported to be composed of GalNAc and galactopyranose (Gal_p) linked in α-(1,4) (Fontaine et al. 2011), and the presence of deacetylated GalN residues confirmed in a subsequent publication (Lee et al. 2016). The distribution and the ratio of Gal_p to GalNAc in the polymer appear to be quite heterogeneous between different fractions of GAG and are thought to vary between secreted and cell wall-associated forms (Fontaine et al. 2000, 2011).

GAG synthesis is thought to be mediated by the products of a 5-gene cluster comprising *gtb*3 (AfuA_3g07860), *agd*3 (AfuA_3g07870), *ega*3 (AfuA_3g07890), *sph*3 (AfuA_3g07900), and *uge*3 (AfuA_3g07910) (Lee et al. 2016) (Fig. 1). GAG synthesis begins with the activity of the UDP-4-Glucose epimerase Uge3. Uge3 was the first enzyme of the GAG cluster to have been identified and characterized (Gravelat et al. 2013; Lee et al. 2014) from a comparative transcriptomic study of two regulatory mutant strains with impaired adhesion, *ΔstuA* and *ΔmedA*. Uge3 was found to mediate the interconversion of UDP-Glc to UDP-Gal, and UDP-N-acetylglucosamine (UDP-GlcNAc) to UDP-GalNAc (Fig. 1). Deletion of *uge*3 totally abrogated GAG synthesis without impacting the GM galactose content (Lee et al. 2014), resulting in a defect in biofilm formation, reduced virulence, and increased inflammatory response due to β-(1,3)-glucan exposure (Gravelat et al. 2010, 2013). Further studies revealed the presence of two other *uge genes* in the *A. fumigatus* genome, *uge*4 and *uge*5, with redundant UDP-4-glucose epimerase activities but distinct polysaccharide synthesis roles. Uge 5 activity was required to supply UDP-Gal for GM synthesis and had minimal effects on the GAG pathway while deletion of *uge*4 had no effect on the quantity of GM or GAG produced or any other biosynthetic pathways tested (Lee et al. 2014).

Following nucleotide sugar interconversion, their polymerization into GAG is hypothesized to take place at the plasma membrane through the action of Gtb3, a putative membrane glycosyltransferase (Fig. 1). No studies of this protein have been performed to date to confirm this gene annotation, and the mechanism of GAG polymerization remains unknown (Latge et al. 2017). However, in the 5-gene cluster model of GAG biosynthesis, Gtb3 would need to accept both UDP-Gal and UDP-GalNAc for polymerization of the heteropolysaccharide, a rare characteristic only shared by a limited amount of glycosyltransferases (Rini and Esko 2017; Zhang et al. 2016; Narimatsu 2006). Alternately, it is possible that a second glycosyltransferase is involved in GAG synthesis and remains to be discovered.

Following synthesis of the nascent polymer, GAG maturation then continues extracellularly where the enzymes Sph3 and Agd3 can act on GalNAc-rich regions of the polymer (Le Mauff et al. 2019; Lee et al. 2016) (Fig. 1). Sph3 is a type II integral membrane protein can cleave GAG and is the sole member of the glycoside hydrolase (GH) family 135 (Bamford et al. 2015). Sph3 is a highly specific α-(1,4)-N-acetylgalactosaminidase with a retaining endolytic mechanism requiring a sequence of at least seven GalNAc residues (Le Mauff et al. 2019). Despite this hydrolytic activity, Sph3 is essential for GAG synthesis (Bamford et al. 2015). The mechanisms underlying this requirement of Sph3 for GAG synthesis and biofilm formation remain unclear but may involve controlling polymer length to facilitate export through the cell wall.

Agd3 is the enzyme at the center of the GAG-mediated biofilm adherence (Ostapska et al. 2018). Agd3 is a polysaccharide deacetylase converting GalNAc residues to GalN rendering the polymer cationic and adherent at a physiological pH (Lee et al. 2016) (Fig. 1). Deletion of *agd*3 resulted in a strain that produces fully acetylated GAG that cannot adhere to the hyphal wall and is shed into the culture supernatants. As a result, the Δ*agd*3 mutant is unable to form adherent biofilm and

exhibits exposure of the β-(1,3)-glucans at the surface of the hyphae (Lee et al. 2016). Detailed studies of Agd3 structure, mechanism of action, and impact on GAG composition have not yet been performed.

The structure and the function of the final enzyme encoded by this gene cluster, Ega3, have recently been reported. Ega3 is a transmembrane protein belonging to the GH114 family that is a highly specific endo-α-(1,4)-galactosaminidase (Bamford et al. 2019) (Fig. 1). Ega3 exhibits no activity against α-(1,4)-GalNAc oligosaccharides, substrates of Sph3, demonstrating the non-redundancy of the two GH present in the 5-gene cluster (Le Mauff et al. 2019; Bamford et al. 2019). To date, no deletion mutant has been reported, so the role of Ega3 in biofilm formation remains unknown. Upregulation of *ega*3 during biofilm formation has been reported, suggesting that it likely plays an important role in GAG biosynthesis and function (Muszkieta et al. 2013).

The factors governing the expression of the GAG biosynthetic gene cluster remain poorly understood. To date, 4 putative transcription factors have been shown to impact GAG synthesis: the two developmental regulators MedA and StuA, (Gravelat et al. 2010, 2013) as well as SomA and PtaB, which regulate the expression of MedA and StuA (Lin et al. 2015; Zhang et al. 2018). Whether these proteins directly or indirectly regulate, expression of the GAG cluster genes is unknown although a recent study reported that the histone acetyltransferase GncE was also involved in the synthesis of GAG through a downregulation of *ptaB* and of *uge*3 (Lin et al. 2019). Interestingly, in all these studies, a defect in the condition pathway was observed in parallel to the defect in GAG synthesis and biofilm formation suggesting that these two processes are intrinsically linked.

2.2 Candida albicans *Biofilm*

Candida species are the main causal agents of fungal infections worldwide (Zarnowski et al. 2016). These yeasts constitute the fourth most common origin of nosocomial bloodstream infections and are thought to cause more than 400,000 life-threatening infections annually (Brown et al. 2012; Yapar 2014). Despite the existence of more than 200 Candida species, five of these account for 90% of human infections: *Candida albicans*, *Candida glabrata*, *Candida tropicalis*, *Candida parapsilosis*, and *Candida krusei* (Pappas et al. 2016). Recently, a sixth strain, *Candida auri*s, has emerged as a new multi-drug resistant fungal pathogen (de Cassia Orlandi Sardi et al. 2018; Vallabhaneni et al. 2019). However, this chapter will focus only on the main etiological agent of candidemia, *C. albicans*, as biofilms formed by this genre are extraordinarily diverse (Cavalheiro and Teixeira; 2018; Jeffery-Smith et al. 2018).

The formation and composition of *C. albicans* biofilm have been the subject of several studies and reviews (Cavalheiro and Teixeira 2018; Seneviratne et al. 2017; Jadhav and Karuppayil 2017; Soll and Daniels 2016; Mitchell et al. 2016). *C.*

albicans biofilm formation occurs in three distinct steps (Seneviratne et al. 2008). During the early phase (up to 11 h), yeast cells adhere to surfaces and initiate differentiation into hyphae. In the next 19 h, during the intermediate stage, cells complete their differentiation and exopolysaccharides secretion begins. Finally, the maturation takes place, biofilm becomes thicker by accumulation of extracellular matrix in which a dense network of hyphae is embedded (Seneviratne et al. 2008). The formation and dispersion of yeast cells from these mature biofilms reinitiate the cycle of infection and biofilm formation (Uppuluri et al. 2010). The development of methods for the large-scale production of biofilm matrix has enabled detailed characterization of the *C. albicans* biofilm matrix (Zarnowski et al. 2016). The matrix is composed of proteins (55%), polysaccharides (25%), lipids (15%), and nucleic acid (5%) (Zarnowski et al. 2014). *C. albicans* can also integrate molecules secreted by the host into its biofilm upon infection (Nett et al. 2015).

2.2.1 Exopolysaccharides

Compositional analysis of the *C. albicans* matrix has revealed the presence of polysaccharides largely composed of four monosaccharides: arabinose (47.9%), mannose (20%), glucose (12.5%), and xylose (12.6%), split differentially into two fractions of distinct molecular weights (Zarnowski et al. 2014) (Fig. 2).

High Molecular Weight Polysaccharides

The high molecular weight polymer fraction of the biofilm matrix has received the most attention. The mannose and glucose contents of this fraction originate from mannans and glucans (Zarnowski et al. 2014). Mannans are the most abundant polymers in *C. albicans* biofilms, comprising about 87% of the biofilm polysaccharide fraction and help mediate adhesion to surfaces (Shibata et al. 2012). These polymers are made of an α-(1,6)-mannan chain that is heavily substituted in α-(1,2) by short chains of three to four (1,2)-mannoses (Zarnowski et al. 2014) (Fig. 2). This structure is similar to the structure of N-glycans present in the cell wall of *C. albicans* (Graus et al. 2018). Synthesis of biofilm mannans is linked to the synthesis pathway of these N-glycans as both tunicamycin treatment and deletion of *mnn* and *alg* genes alter the mannan fractions of biofilms (Mitchell et al. 2015). However, the average length of the mannan biofilm is much longer than those within the cell wall counterpart (Pierce et al. 2017; Zarnowski et al. 2014). Furthermore, biofilm mannans are not covalently linked to proteins, as it is the case in the cell wall.

The glucan fraction contains two polymers: β-(1,3)-glucans and β-(1,6)-glucans (Fig. 2). Despite the importance of the β-(1,3)-glucans in antifungal resistance, this polymer represents only 0.1% of the polysaccharide biofilm fraction (Zarnowski et al. 2014). Despite this observation, β-(1,3)-glucans are crucial for biofilm formation. Deletion of the biofilm specific β-(1,3)-glucan CAZymes *bgl*2, *phr*1, and

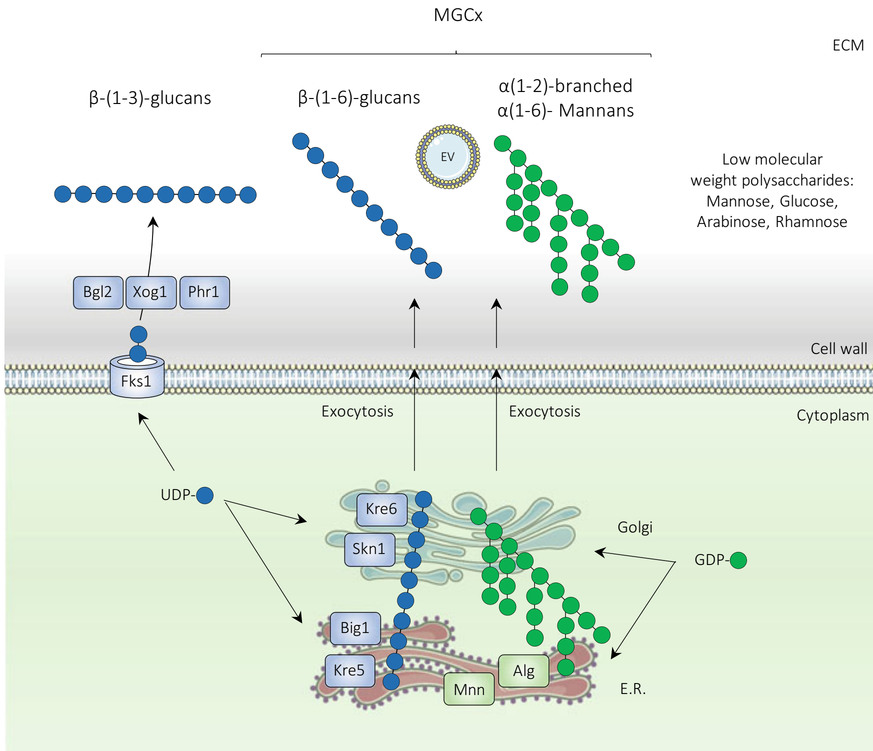


Fig. 2 *C. albicans* exopolysaccharides synthesis and secretion pathway. The polysaccharides are represented following the symbol nomenclature for glycan (Varki et al. 2015). Blue circle: Glucose, Green circle: Mannose. The enzymes involved in the different pathways are represented under a cylinder shape for the transporter/transferase or under a square shape for any other proteins. *E.R.* Endoplasmic Reticulum; *UDP* Uracil diphosphate; *GDP* Guanosine diphosphate; *EV* Extracellular vesicles; *ECM* Extracellular matrix; *MGCx* mannan–glucan complex

*xog*1, coding for 2 glucan transferases and an exoglucanase, respectively, resulted in altered biofilm formation, thickness, and increased antifungal sensitivity (Taff et al. 2012). Furthermore, the conditional deletion of *fks*1, coding for β-(1,3)-glucan glucan synthase, resulted in decreased biofilm-associated β-(1,3)-glucans, mannans, and β-(1,6)-glucans (Mitchell et al. 2015) suggesting that β-(1,3)-glucans play an important anchoring role in the biofilm matrix. Little is known about the β-(1,6)-glucans which constitute the remaining 13% of the biofilm polysaccharide. Their synthesis is governed by the genes *big*1 and *skn*1, *kre*5-9 *and* 6 (Umeyama et al. 2006; Han et al. 2019). Deletion of these genes results in a dramatic decrease of the amount of β-(1,6)-glucans in the biofilm, thereby influencing the amount of mannans and β-(1,3)-glucans as well as the presence of proteins required for adhesion (Mitchell et al. 2015).

As indicated by the mutant studies detailed above, normal biofilm formation by *C. albicans* requires the coordinated participation of mannans, β-(1,3)-glucans and β-(1,6)-glucans. Extracellular polysaccharide interactions are integral to this process since mixed mutant biofilm complementation can support the formation of biofilms with similar properties to those formed by wild type organisms (Mitchell et al. 2015). Together these polysaccharides are forming the mannan–glucan complex, MGCx, which possesses structural features found unique to biofilms (Zarnowski et al. 2014; Mitchell et al. 2015). Recent studies of this complex revealed that extracellular vesicles secreted through the ESCRT machinery are involved in the biosynthesis of biofilm MGCx. Analysis of the biochemical composition of the extracellular vesicles revealed a polysaccharide content with a similar proportion of glucose and mannose as was found in the biofilm matrix, as well as the presence of enzymes involved in matrix assembly and maturation (Zarnowski et al. 2018).

Low Molecular Weight Polysaccharides

This fraction represents more than 60% of the biofilm polysaccharides and exhibits a more diverse composition with arabinose, mannose, glucose, and xylose. However, little is known about the composition of polymers contained within this fraction (Zarnowski et al. 2014).

2.2.2 Proteins

A recent proteomic investigation identified 565 proteins encompassing more than 16 different metabolic pathways within the *C. albicans* biofilm matrix (Zarnowski et al. 2014). The majority of these proteins are involved in one of three general pathways: carbohydrate metabolism (177 proteins), amino acid metabolism (136 proteins), and energy-related metabolism (Pierce et al. 2017). In addition, studies of *C. albicans* biofilms formed in vivo have demonstrated that inflammatory proteins derived from leukocytes and erythrocytes can be encased into the biofilm matrix (Zarnowski et al. 2014; Nett et al. 2015).

In contrast to *A. fumigatus*, in which a polysaccharide functions as the dominant adhesin, *C. albicans* relies on a variety of cell wall proteins to adhere to abiotic surfaces and host cell surfaces (Wang et al. 2012). Over 35 proteins have been implicated in mediating fungal adherence at different stages of the biofilm life cycle (exhaustively reviewed in (Araujo et al. 2017). These proteins can be classified into two groups, transcription factors required for biofilm maturation and GPI-anchored cell surface proteins directly mediating cell-to-cell and cell-to-surface adhesion (Araujo et al. 2017; Richard and Plaine 2007). Among these proteins, the eight members of the Agglutinin like sequence (Als) protein family have been the most studied and are capable of recognizing and interacting with a wide range of host constituents during infection (Araujo et al. 2017; Sheppard et al. 2004). Of these

proteins, Als1, 3 and 5 have been found to play the most important role in mediating fungal adhesion in partnership with Hyphal wall protein 1, Hwp1 (Nobile et al. 2008; Staab et al. 1999; Modrzewska and Kurnatowski 2015).

2.2.3 Lipids

Neutral glycerolipids make up the majority of the lipid component of the biofilm. Some of these glycerolipids originate from extracellular vesicles that were recently identified to be transporting oligosaccharides and proteins involved in the synthesis of the MGCx (Zarnowski et al. 2014, 2018). The role of lipids in biofilm formation and structure is unknown but has been hypothesized to function largely as carriers of other structural elements.

2.2.4 Nucleic Acids

Despite the low amount nucleic acid present in the biofilm (5%), extracellular DNA plays a predominant role in biofilm formation, structural integrity, and maintenance and has been found to enhance resistance to antifungals (Martins et al. 2010).

2.2.5 Biofilm Regulation

The genetic network allowing the formation of biofilm by *C. albicans* has been well elucidated through the study of a comprehensive library of transcription factor knockouts. Screening studies of this library have identified six master regulators of biofilm formation in *C. albicans*: *bcr*1, *tec*1, *efg*1, *ndt*80, *rob*1, and *brg*1 (Nobile et al. 2012). An exhaustive RNA sequencing of the regions bound by these six transcription factors they regulate revealed a tightly interwoven genetic intermediate network of 23 genes that together govern the expression of over a thousand target genes (Nobile et al. 2012). The complete list of the genes involved at the different stage of *C. albicans* biofilm has been reviewed in detail elsewhere (Nobile and Johnson 2015).

2.3 Other Relevant Human Fungal Pathogens Biofilms

2.3.1 Cryptococcus sp.

Cryptococcus neoformans and *gatii* are the two main ethological agents of cryptococcosis. These organisms can infect the lungs and/or the central nervous system (Chang et al. 2006; Bratton et al. 2012). As with *A. fumigatus* and *C. albicans*, an important virulence factor is the secretion of exopolysaccharides:

glucuronoxylomannan, GXM, and galactoxylomannan, GalXM (McClelland et al. 2006; Doering 2009; Denham et al. 2018). These polymers form a capsule which surrounds and protects the fungal cell (Casadevall et al. 2018a; Araujo et al. 2016) and are also shed copiously to form biofilms (Martinez and Casadevall 2015). GalXM is an α-(1-6)-galactan alternately branched in C-3 by a chain of β-(1-4)-Gal-α-(1-3)-mannose-α-(1-3)-mannose substituted by 0–3 β-xyloses (Vaishnav et al. 1998). GXM is composed of an α-(1-3)-mannan backbone among which one out three residues is substituted by glucuronic acid in β-(1-2). On this backbone, differential substitutions by β-(1-2) and or β-(1-4)-xylopyranoses residues occur, defining the serotype of *Cryptococcus* strains (Cherniak et al. 1998). GXM contributes to cryptococcal adhesion in two ways. The anionic charge of the GlcA residues permits the aggregation of the GXM through divalent cationic ions (Nimrichter et al. 2007), likely in the same fashion that pectin auto-assembles into an "egg-box" conformation under calcium influence (Peaucelle et al. 2012; Wang et al. 2020). In addition, variations in xylose substitutions have also been linked to strain differences in the ability to form robust biofilms (Martinez and Casadevall 2007). *C. neoformans* serotypes D and A form stronger biofilms than serotypes B and C which are typically produced by *C. gatii* (Martinez and Casadevall 2005; Chen et al. 2008). In addition to the GXM and GalXM, glucose, ribose, and fucose have also been found in the biofilm matrix of *Cryptococci* but the molecule(s) containing these sugars remain undefined (Martinez and Casadevall 2015).

2.3.2 Mucorales

Infection with members of the Mucorales is commonly seen in patients with impaired immune system, high iron states or diabetes (Danion et al. 2015). The most prevalent agents of such infection are *Rhizopus arrhizus*, more widely reported as *R. oryzae* in the literature, and *R. microsporus* (Walther et al. 2019; Dolatabadi et al. 2014). The exopolysaccharides produced by these species are incompletely characterized, but contain mannose, fucose, glucuronic acid, and minor amount of glucose and galactose (Mélida et al. 2015). Based on the comparative analysis of the exopolysaccharides produced by different species of *Mucor* and *Rhizopus*, two structures have been proposed in the literature: a mucoran mostly made of glucuronic acid and mannose (Bartnicki-Garcia and Lindberg 1972), and a fucomannan constituted of mannose and fucose (Miyazaki et al. 1979). A more recent study of the cell wall polysaccharides of *R. oryzae* corroborated the likely presence of fucomannan, but failed to identify mannose linked in C-3, calling into question the presence of mucoran within the fungal cell wall (Mélida et al. 2015). Further studies are required to better understand the formation of biofilms by these important pathogens.

3 Biofilm, a Shelter from the Environment

In addition to mediating adhesion, biofilms provide a microenvironment that protects the fungi from external stresses such as host immune defences and antifungals (Boles et al. 2004).

3.1 Biofilm and Exopolysaccharide-Related Resistance Mechanisms to the Immune System

Although many biofilm-associated fungal exopolysaccharides can be recognized by the immune system (Snarr et al. 2017b; Patin et al. 2019), exopolysaccharides can also serve to protect the fungi from host immune responses. One strategy used by fungi to tip the scales in favor of immune evasion consists in concealing the most immunogenic epitopes with other less immuno-reactive exopolysaccharides (Steele et al. 2005; Beaussart et al. 2015). In *A. fumigatus* and *C. albicans,* one of the most immunogenic exopolysaccharides is the β-glucans, located in the cell wall of *A. fumigatus* (Fesel and Zuccaro 2016) and in the cell wall and biofilms of *C. albicans* (Ene et al. 2015; Gulati and Nobile 2016). β-glucans are recognized by C-type lectin receptor Dectin-1 leading to a wide range of antifungal responses including regulation of leukocyte phagocytosis, phagolysosomes recruitment and maturation, production of reactive oxygen species, activation of autophagy, and induction of pro- and anti-inflammatory cytokine secretion (Drummond and Brown 2011).

In *A. fumigatus*, β-glucans are hidden by rodlet proteins in resting conidia. β-glucan concealment is therefore required during germination and hyphal growth (Beauvais et al. 2013). During early conidia swelling and germination, α-glucans are thought to serve to conceal β-glucans. Consistent with this hypothesis, the α-glucan-deficient triple Δags mutant is more easily phagocytosed and killed by mouse alveolar macrophages (Beauvais et al. 2013). Concealing β-glucans with α-glucans exploits both the fact that no mammalian receptors have been identified to date for this polymer (Snarr et al. 2017b), and that α-glucans fail to induce differentiation of T cells due to their inability to induce large amounts of T-cell polarizing cytokines (Stephen-Victor et al. 2017). In growing hyphae, β-glucans are concealed by GAG (Gravelat et al. 2013). Although no immune receptor for GAG has yet to be identified, GAG mediates many immunosuppressive effects during infection, including the induction of neutrophil apoptosis, and IL-1 receptor antagonist secretion (Rambach et al. 2015; Eisinger et al. 2018; Gresnigt et al. 2014). GAG also serves to protect hyphae from neutrophil extracellular traps (NET) killing via a potential electrostatic repulsion of the cationic antimicrobial peptides present within the NETs by GAG and thus protecting *A. fumigatus* from their effects (Lee et al. 2015).

In *C. albicans*, the mannans within the MGCx serve to mask the glucans from the immune system (Mora-Montes et al. 2010; Graus et al. 2018). The presence of

the MGCx has been demonstrated to inhibit the formation of NETs and the production of ROS which would normally kill the *C. albicans* (May et al. 2016; Kernien et al. 2017; Xie et al. 2012; Urban et al. 2006).

3.2 Biofilm and Exopolysaccharide-Related Resistance Mechanisms to Antifungals

Five families of antifungals are today available: the polyenes, the azoles, the echinocandins, the pyrimidines analogues, and the allylamines (Denning and Hope 2010). Despite this diversity of therapeutic options, fungal infections remain a threat to human health. Biofilms contribute to the failure of antifungal therapy as successful eradication of biofilm-associated fungi requires concentration of antimicrobials that are higher than the ones required to kill planktonic cells, and are usually toxics to the host (Rasmussen and Givskov 2006). The resistance mechanisms best linked to fungal biofilms center around prevention of antifungals reaching their intracellular targets (Van Acker et al. 2014).

3.2.1 Drug Penetration and Sequestration

The biofilm matrix provides an important physical barrier limiting the penetration of antifungals to fungal cells within the biofilm either through limiting the penetration of antifungals or binding and sequestering these molecules (Nett and Andes 2017).

Candida β-(1,3)-glucans can mediate the sequestration of amphotericin B, azoles and flucytosine (Müller 2014; Mitchell et al. 2013; Nett et al. 2007). Β-(1,3)-glucans interact physically with antifungal such as amphotericin B (Vediyappan et al. 2010), and the deletion of genes involved in the synthesis or modification of the β-(1,3)-glucans such as *fks*1, *blg*2, *phr*1, or *xog*1 impairs the ability of the biofilm to protect the cells from antifungals (Nett et al. 2010; Taff et al. 2012). However, the low quantity of β-(1,3)-glucans in *C. albicans* biofilm to about 0.1% (Zarnowski et al. 2014) suggests that other molecules may be involved in this process. Indeed, two other molecules were reported to mediate antifungal sequestration: Extracellular DNA for which role in resistance to amphotericin B was established (Martins et al. 2012; Panariello et al. 2019), and MGCx for which a role in resistance to fluconazole was demonstrated (Dominguez et al. 2018).

In *A. fumigatus*, cationic hyphal-associated GAG has been reported to limit the uptake and antifungal effects of posaconazole (Snarr et al. 2017a). GAG-mediated enhancement of resistance to amphotericin B and caspofungin was also reported; however, the effects on intracellular penetration of these drugs were not studied (Snarr et al. 2017a). Similar effects on caspofungin and amphotericin B resistance have been reported with extracellular DNA (Rajendran et al. 2013).

3.2.2 Efflux Pumps

A common mechanism of drug resistance is the upregulation of efflux pumps such as ATP binding cassette (ABC) or major facilitator superfamily (MFS) transporters, in order to prevent antifungals from reaching effective intracellular concentrations (Goffeau 2008; Sanglard and Odds 2002). These efflux pumps have been found to be overexpressed by cells in *C. albicans* and *A. fumigatus* biofilms (Ramage et al. 2002; Cannon et al. 2009). However, several reports demonstrated that these proteins play a role largely during the establishment of the biofilm in order to protect cells while the extracellular matrix is being synthesized and secreted (Ramage et al. 2002; Mukherjee et al. 2003; Watamoto et al. 2011).

3.2.3 Persister Cells

When fungal cells adhere to a substrate, they can switch to a dormant-like phenotype that is associated with multi-drug resistance. These cells are called persister cells and are found exclusively in biofilms (Borghi et al. 2016; LaFleur et al. 2006). The existence of such cells have been shown in *A. fumigatus* (Beauvais and Muller 2009), and in *C. albicans* biofilms (LaFleur et al. 2006). Although the relevance of metabolic reprogramming in mediating persister cell resistance to antifungals is somewhat controversial (Denega et al. 2019), metabolic changes in the cells surviving antifungal treatments have been documented (Li et al. 2015). Persister cells also exhibit increased resistance to reactive oxygen species (ROS) by multiple mechanisms including limiting their production, direct detoxification, and inhibition of the metabolic cascade resulting from ROS accumulation (Van Acker et al. 2014; Li et al. 2015; Wuyts et al. 2018).

4 How Do We Fight Back?

Given the importance of biofilms in fungal infections, new therapeutics that target these structures are crucially needed. There is an urgent need for effective approaches preventing biofilm formation and innovative treatments to eradicate existing biofilms.

4.1 Inhibitors of Biofilm

Inhibition of fungal adhesion to surfaces is one approach to prevent biofilm formation. The study of biofilm development has identified *A. fumigatus* GAG the *C. albicans* Als proteins, especially Als3, as key adhesins involved in biofilm

formation of these fungi. Thus, the inhibition of their synthesis or function represents potential therapeutic opportunities.

The adhesive properties of GAG require deacetylation by the carbohydrate esterase type 4 (CE4) Agd3 (Lee et al. 2016). The extracellular localization and the fundamental role of this enzyme in virulence make Agd3 a promising therapeutic target (Lee et al. 2016). The use of an N-acetylhexosamine polymer deacetylated by a CE4 for adherence is not unique (Ostapska et al. 2018) and may have originated in bacteria (Sheppard and Howell 2016). *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* Pel polymer and the PelA deacetylase (Jennings et al. 2015), *Listeria monocytogenes* galactose substituted poly-N-acetylmannosamine and the PssB deacetylase (Köseoğlu et al. 2015), and *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Bordetella bronchiseptica*, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Escherichia coli* with their PNAG and associated IcaB, BpsB, PgdA, and PgaB deacetylases, respectively, (Cerca et al. 2007; Little et al. 2015; Vollmer and Tomasz 2002; Itoh et al. 2008), are only a few of the bacterial species that produce these types of adhesive polymers. Attempts to develop inhibitors of PNAG deacetylases to inhibit bacterial biofilm adhesion have been reported (DiFrancesco et al. 2018). GlcNAc derivatives bearing metal chelating group were developed and reported a partial mixed inhibition mode in the low micromolar range (DiFrancesco et al. 2018). However, no inhibition of biofilm formation was demonstrated with these compounds to date. The development of Agd3-inhibitors has not been reported to date.

Inhibition of Als protein function has been studied in the context of vaccination with Als3 N-terminal protein (Fidel and Cutler 2011; Schmidt et al. 2012; Casadevall and Pirofski 2018; Edwards Jr et al. 2018). Anti-Als3 scFv3 antibody was found to inhibit the adhesion of *C. albicans* to cells (Laforce-Nesbitt et al. 2008), and the recombinant Als3 vaccine has recently shown promise in a clinical trial for the prevention of vulvovaginal candidiasis (Edwards Jr et al. 2018). Other efforts to prevent Candida biofilm have focused on the prevention of the morphologic transition from yeast to hyphae (Raut et al. 2013, 2014; Morales et al. 2013) or the modification of surfaces to prevent fungal adherence. Two strategies have been reported to prevent biofilm formation at the surface of medical device: "lock therapies" in which the lumen of catheters devices are filled with high concentration of antifungals or ethanol (Cavalheiro and Teixeira 2018), or the "coating" of the device with antifungals or other antimicrobial compounds (Ceresa et al. 2015, 2016; Sroisiri and Boonyanit 2010). Each of these approaches holds promise, but further pre-clinical and clinical studies are required to move these approaches to clinical use.

4.2 Disruption of Biofilm

Studies of biofilm development have also yielded several promising strategies for the treatment of established biofilms. Since the late 2000s, enzymes targeting structural elements of biofilms have been reported able to disrupt biofilms and to

potentiate antifungals. β-(1,3)-glucanase was the first enzyme used to disrupt *C. albicans* biofilms and was reported to increase the activity of neutrophils and efficiency of antifungals in vivo and in vitro (Nett et al. 2007; Tan et al. 2017, 2018). DNAase has also been found to exhibit activity against both *C. albicans* and *A. fumigatus* biofilms (Rajendran et al. 2013; Martins et al. 2010) and enhanced the activity of both caspofungin and the amphotericin B, but not fluconazole (Martins et al. 2012).

A second enzyme-based strategy has been reported in which the glycoside hydrolases Sph3 and Ega3 from the GAG biosynthetic pathway were repurposed as anti-GAG therapeutics (Le Mauff et al. 2019; Bamford et al. 2019). Recombinant hydrolase domains from these enzymes are able to degrade GAG and disrupt biofilms (Le Mauff et al. 2019; Bamford et al. 2019). Hydrolase treatment was able to attenuate the virulence of *A. fumigatus* in a mouse model of invasive disease (Snarr et al. 2017a). In addition, glycoside hydrolase treatment improved antifungal efficiency by improving intracellular uptake of these agents in vitro (Snarr et al. 2017a).

5 Conclusion

Fungal biofilms infections represent a great medical challenge. Over the last two decades, the compositions, structures, and roles of individual biofilm components have been elucidated; however, many more challenges remain. While our understanding of *C. albicans* biofilms has advanced greatly, *A. fumigatus* biofilms are not as well understood and the synthesis and regulation of GAG have not been completely elucidated. Nonetheless, the advances in our understanding of fungal biofilms are beginning to provide the first tools in the fight against these infections. Such advances may also improve our abilities to fight polymicrobial biofilm-related infections. Understanding mechanisms by which fungi build and maintain biofilms will be invaluable in identifying future therapeutic and diagnostic targets for these important diseases.

Acknowledgements I would like to thank Dr. Don Sheppard for is mentorship and review of the book chapter. I am also grateful to Josée Chabot, Ira Lacdao, Yazan Abu Yousef, and Ansh Goyal for their review of the different sections of the chapter.

References

Abdel-Azeem AM, Salem FM, Abdel-Azeem MA, Nafady NA, Mohesien MT, Soliman EA (2016) Biodiversity of the Genus *Aspergillus* in different habitats. In: New and future developments in microbial biotechnology and bioengineering

Afroz S, El-Ganiny AM, Sanders DA, Kaminskyj SG (2011) Roles of the *Aspergillus nidulans* UDP-galactofuranose transporter, UgtA in hyphal morphogenesis, cell wall architecture, conidiation, and drug sensitivity. Fungal Genet Biol 48:896–903

Al-Gabr HM, Zheng T, Yu X (2013) Inactivation of *Aspergillus flavus* in drinking water after treatment with UV irradiation followed by chlorination. Sci Total Environ 463–464:525–529

Araujo D, Henriques M, Silva S (2017) Portrait of Candida species biofilm regulatory network genes. Trends Microbiol 25:62–75

Anne B, Frank-Michael M (2009) Biofilm formation in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. In: *Aspergillus fumigatus and Aspergillosis*. American Society of Microbiology

Araujo GR, Fontes GN, Leao D, Rocha GM, Pontes B, Sant'Anna C, de Souza W, Frases S (2016) *Cryptococcus neoformans* capsular polysaccharides form branched and complex filamentous networks viewed by high-resolution microscopy. J Struct Biol 193:75–82

Arentshorst M, de Lange D, Park J, Lagendijk EL, Alazi E, van den Hondel CA, Ram AF (2019) Functional analysis of three putative galactofuranosyltransferases with redundant functions in galactofuranosylation in *Aspergillus niger*. Arch Microbiol

Badiee P, Hashemizadeh Z (2014) Opportunistic invasive fungal infections: diagnosis & clinical management. Indian J Med Res 139:195

Bamford NC, Le Mauff F, Subramanian AS, Yip P, Millán C, Zhang Y, Zacharias C, Forman A, Nitz M, Codée JD, Usón I. (2019) Ega3 from the fungal pathogen Aspergillus fumigatus is an endo-α-1, 4-galactosaminidase that disrupts microbial biofilms. *J Biol Chem*

Bamford NC, Snarr BD, Gravelat FN, Little DJ, Lee MJ, Zacharias CA, Chabot JC, Geller AM, Baptista SD, Baker P (2015) Sph3 is a glycoside hydrolase required for the biosynthesis of galactosaminogalactan in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. J Biol Chem 290:27438–27450

Bardalaye PC, Nordin JH (1976) Galactosaminogalactan from cell walls of Aspergillus niger. J Bacteriol 125:655–669

Bartnicki-Garcia S (1968) Cell wall chemistry, morphogenesis, and taxonomy of fungi. Ann Rev Microbiol 22:87–108

Bartnicki-Garcia S, Lindberg B (1972) Partial characterization of mucoran: the glucuronomannan component. Carbohyd Res 23:75–85

Beaussart A, El-Kirat-chatel S, Fontaine T, Latgé J-P, Dufrêne YFJN (2015) Nanoscale biophysical properties of the cell surface galactosaminogalactan from the fungal pathogen *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Nanoscale 7:14996–15004

Beauvais A, Bozza S, Kniemeyer O, Formosa C, Balloy V, Henry C, Roberson RW, Dague E, Chignard M, Brakhage AA, Romani L, Latge JP (2013) Deletion of the alpha-(1,3)-glucan synthase genes induces a restructuring of the conidial cell wall responsible for the avirulence of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. PLoS Pathog 9:e1003716

Beauvais A, Latgé JP (2015) *Aspergillus* biofilm in vitro and in vivo. 3

Blackwell M (2011) The Fungi: 1, 2, 3… 5.1 million species? Am J Bot 98:426–438

Boisvert A-A, Cheng MP, Sheppard DC, Nguyen DJAOTATS (2016) Microbial biofilms in pulmonary and critical care diseases. Ann Am Thorac Soci 13:1615–1623

Boles BR, Thoendel M, Singh PK (2004) Self-generated diversity produces "insurance effects" in biofilm communities. Proc Natl Acad Sci 101:16630–16635

Borghi E, Borgo F, Morace G (2016) Fungal biofilms: update on resistance. Adv Exp Med Biol 931:37–47

Bratton EW, el Husseini N, Chastain CA, Lee MS, Poole C, Sturmer T, Juliano JJ, Weber DJ, Perfect JR (2012) Comparison and temporal trends of three groups with cryptococcosis: HIV-infected, solid organ transplant, and HIV-negative/non-transplant. PLoS ONE 7:e43582

Briard B, Muszkieta L, Latgé J-P, Fontaine T (2016) Galactosaminogalactan of *Aspergillus fumigatus*, a bioactive fungal polymer. Mycologia 108:572–580

Brown GD, Denning DW, Gow NA, Levitz SM, Netea MG, White TC (2012) Hidden killers: human fungal infections. Sci Transl Med 4(165):165rv13–165rv13

Cannon RD, Lamping E, Holmes AR, Niimi K, Baret PV, Keniya MV, Tanabe K, Niimi M, Goffeau A, Monk BC (2009) Efflux-mediated antifungal drug resistance Clin Microbiol Rev 22:291–321. Table of Contents

Casadevall A, Coelho C, Cordero RJ, Dragotakes Q, Jung E, Vij R, Wear MP (2019) The capsule of *Cryptococcus neoformans*. Virulence 1–10
Casadevall A, Pirofski LA (2018) A therapeutic vaccine for recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis. Oxford University Press, USA
Cavalheiro M, Teixeira MC (2018) Candida biofilms: threats, challenges, and promising strategies. Front Med (Lausanne) 5:28
Cerca N, Jefferson KK, Maira-Litrán T, Pier DB, Kelly-Quintos C, Goldmann DA, Azeredo J, Pier GB (2007) Molecular basis for preferential protective efficacy of antibodies directed to the poorly acetylated form of staphylococcal poly-N-acetyl-β-(1-6)-glucosamine. Infection Immun 75:3406–3413
Ceresa C, Rinaldi M, Chiono V, Carmagnola I, Allegrone G, Fracchia L (2016) Lipopeptides from Bacillus subtilis AC7 inhibit adhesion and biofilm formation of *Candida albicans* on silicone. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 109:1375–1388
Ceresa C, Tessarolo F, Caola I, Nollo G, Cavallo M, Rinaldi M, Fracchia L (2015) Inhibition of *Candida albicans* adhesion on medical-grade silicone by a Lactobacillus-derived biosurfactant. J Appl Microbiol 118:1116–1125
Chang W-C, Tzao C, Hsu H-H, Lee S-C, Huang K-L, Tung H-J, Chen C-Y (2006) Pulmonary cryptococcosis: comparison of clinical and radiographic characteristics in immunocompetent and immunocompromised patients. Chest 129:333–340
Chen J, Varma A, Diaz MR, Litvintseva AP, Wollenberg KK, Kwon-Chung KJ (2008) *Cryptococcus neoformans* strains and infection in apparently immunocompetent patients China. Emerg Infect Dis 14:755
Cherniak R, Valafar H, Morris LC, Valafar F (1998) *Cryptococcus neoformans* chemotyping by quantitative analysis of 1H nuclear magnetic resonance spectra of glucuronoxylomannans with a computer-simulated artificial neural network. 5:146–159
Costachel C, Coddeville B, Latge JP, Fontaine T (2005) Glycosylphosphatidylinositol-anchored fungal polysaccharide in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. J Biol Chem 280:39835–39842
Costerton JW, Geesey GG, Cheng KJ (1978) How bacteria stick. Sci Am 238:86–95
Cushion MT, Collins MS, Linke MJ (2009) Biofilm formation by *Pneumocystis* spp. Eukaryot Cell 8:197–206
Dagenais TR, Keller NP (2009) Pathogenesis of *Aspergillus fumigatus* in Invasive Aspergillosis. Clin Microbiol Rev 22:447–465
Danion F, Aguilar C, Catherinot E, Alanio A, DeWolf S, Lortholary O, Lanternier F (2015). Mucormycosis: new developments into a persistently devastating infection. In: Seminars in respiratory and critical care medicine. Thieme Medical Publishers, pp 692–705
Davis LE, Cook G, Costerton JW (2002) Biofilm on ventriculo-peritoneal shunt tubing as a cause of treatment failure in coccidioidal meningitis. Emerg Infect Dis 8:376
Denega I, D'Enfert C, Bachellier-Bassi S (2019) *Candida albicans* biofilms are generally devoid of persister cells. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 63:e01979–e02018
Denham ST, Verma S, Reynolds RC, Worne CL, Daugherty JM, Lane TE, Brown JC (2018) Regulated release of cryptococcal polysaccharide drives virulence and suppresses immune cell infiltration into the central nervous system. Infect Immun 86
Denning D (2001) Chronic forms of pulmonary aspergillosis. Clin Microbiol Infect 7:25–31
Denning DW, Hope WW (2010) Therapy for fungal diseases: opportunities and priorities. Trends Microbiol 18:195–204
Desai JV, Mitchell AP, Andes DR (2014) Fungal biofilms, drug resistance, and recurrent infection. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med 4
di Bonaventura G, Pompilio A, Picciani C, Iezzi M, D'Antonio D, Piccolomini R (2006) Biofilm formation by the emerging fungal pathogen *Trichosporon asahii*: development, architecture, and antifungal resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 50:3269–3276
Dichtl K, Samantaray S, Aimanianda V, Zhu Z, Prevost MC, Latge JP, Ebel F, Wagener J (2015) Aspergillus fumigatus devoid of cell wall beta-1,3-glucan is viable, massively sheds galactomannan and is killed by septum formation inhibitors. Mol Microbiol 95:458–471

Difrancesco BR, Morrison ZA, Nitz M (2018) Monosaccharide inhibitors targeting carbohydrate esterase family 4 de-N-acetylases. Bioorg Med Chem 26:5631–5643

Distler JJ, Roseman S (1960) Galactosamine polymers produced by *Aspergillus parasiticus*. J Biol Chem 235:2538–2541

Doering TL (2009) How sweet it is! Cell wall biogenesis and polysaccharide capsule formation in *Cryptococcus neoformans*. Ann Rev Microbiol 63:223–247

Dolatabadi S, de Hoog GS, Meis JF, Walther G (2014) Species boundaries and nomenclature of *Rhizopus arrhizus* (syn. R. oryzae). Mycoses 57:108–127

Dominguez E, Zarnowski R, Sanchez H, Covelli AS, Westler WM, Azadi P, Nett J, Mitchell AP, Andes DR (2018) Conservation and divergence in the Candida species biofilm matrix mannan-glucan complex structure, function, and genetic control. MBio 9

Donlan RM, Costerton JW (2002) Biofilms: survival mechanisms of clinically relevant microorganisms. Clin Microbiol Rev 15:167–193

Drummond RA, Brown GD (2011) The role of Dectin-1 in the host defence against fungal infections. Current Opin Microbiol 14:392–399

Edwards JE Jr, Schwartz MM, Schmidt CS, Sobel JD, Nyirjesy P, Schodel F, Marchus E, Lizakowski M, DeMontigny EA, Hoeg J, Holmberg T (2018) A fungal immunotherapeutic vaccine (NDV-3A) for treatment of recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis—a phase 2 randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Clin Infect Dis 66(12):1928–1936

Eisinger F, Patzelt J, Langer HF (2018) The platelet response to tissue injury. Front Med (Lausanne) 5:317

El-Ganiny AM, Sheoran I, Sanders DAR, Kaminskyj SGW (2010) *Aspergillus nidulans* UDP-glucose-4-epimerase UgeA has multiple roles in wall architecture, hyphal morphogenesis, and asexual development. Fungal Genet Biol 47:629–635

Ene IV, Walker LA, Schiavone M, Lee KK, Martin-Yken H, Dague E, Gow NA, Munro CA, Brown AJ (2015) Cell wall remodeling enzymes modulate fungal cell wall elasticity and osmotic stress resistance. MBio 6:e00986

Engel J, Schmalhorst PS, Dork-Bousset T, Ferrieres V, Routier FH (2009) A single UDP-galactofuranose transporter is required for galactofuranosylation in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. J Biol Chem 284:33859–33868

Engel J, Schmalhorst PS, Routier FH (2012) Biosynthesis of the fungal cell wall polysaccharide galactomannan requires intraluminal GDP-mannose. J Biol Chem 287:44418–44424

Farr DR, Schuller-Hovanessian A, Horisberger M (1977) Structure of an α-D-galactosaminoglycan from *Physarum* polycephalum Spherule walls. Carbohyd Res 59:151–154

Fesel PH, Zuccaro A (2016) beta-glucan: crucial component of the fungal cell wall and elusive MAMP in plants. Fungal Genet Biol 90:53–60

Fidel PL, Cutler JE (2011) Prospects for development of a vaccine to prevent and control vaginal candidiasis. Current infectious disease reports 13:102–107

Flemming HC, Ridgway H (2009) Biofilm control: conventional and alternative approaches. In: Flemming H-C, Murthy PS, Venkatesan R, Cooksey K (eds) Marine and industrial biofouling. Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg

Flemming HC, Wingender J (2010) The biofilm matrix. Nat Rev Microbiol 8:623–633

Fontaine T, Beauvais A, Loussert C, Thevenard B, Fulgsang CC, Ohno N, Clavaud C, Prevost MC, Latge JP (2010) Cell wall alpha1-3glucans induce the aggregation of germinating conidia of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Fungal Genet Biol 47:707–712

Fontaine T, Delangle A, Simenel C, Coddeville B, van Vliet SJ, van Kooyk Y, Bozza S, Moretti S, Schwarz F, Trichot C (2011) Galactosaminogalactan, a new immunosuppressive polysaccharide of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. PLoS Pathog 7:e1002372

Fontaine T, Simenel C, Dubreucq G, Adam O, Delepierre M, Lemoine J, Vorgias CE, Diaquin M, Latgé J-P (2000) Molecular organization of the alkali-insoluble fraction of *Aspergillus fumigatus* cell wall. J Biol Chem 275:27594–27607

Fred EB (1933) Antony van Leeuwenhoek: on the three-hundredth anniversary of his birth. J Bacteriol 25(1):iv-2
Goffeau A (2008) Drug resistance: the fight against fungi. Nature 452:541
Gorin PA, Eveleigh D (1970) Extracellular 2-acetamido-2-deoxy-D-galacto-D-galactan from *Aspergillus nidulans*. Biochemistry 9:5023–5027
Graus MS, Wester MJ, Lowman DW, Williams DL, Kruppa MD, Martinez CM, Young JM, Pappas HC, Lidke KA, Neumann AK (2018) Mannan molecular substructures control nanoscale glucan exposure in Candida. Cell Rep 24(2432–2442):e5
Gravelat FN, Beauvais A, Liu H, Lee MJ, Snarr BD, Chen D, Xu W, Kravtsov I, Hoareau CM, Vanier G (2013) *Aspergillus* galactosaminogalactan mediates adherence to host constituents and conceals hyphal β-glucan from the immune system. PLoS Pathog 9:e1003575
Gravelat FN, Ejzykowicz DE, Chiang LY, Chabot JC, Urb M, Macdonald KD, Al-Bader N, Filler SG, Sheppard DC (2010) *Aspergillus fumigatus* MedA governs adherence, host cell interactions and virulence. Cell Microbiol 12:473–488
Gresnigt MS, Bozza S, Becker KL, Joosten LA, Abdollahi-Roodsaz S, van der Berg WB, Dinarello CA, Netea MG, Fontaine T, De Luca A, Moretti S (2014) A polysaccharide virulence factor from *Aspergillus fumigatus* elicits anti-inflammatory effects through induction of Interleukin-1 receptor antagonist. 10:e1003936
Guerrero C, Prieto A, Leal JA (1988) Extracellular galactosaminogalactan from *Penicillium frequentans*. Microbiologia (Madrid, Spain) 4:39–46
Gugnani HC (2003) Ecology and taxonomy of pathogenic aspergilli. Frontiers Biosci 8:s346–s357
Gulati M, Nobile CJ (2016) Candida albicans biofilms: development, regulation, and molecular mechanisms. Microbes Infect 18:310–321
Gutierrez-Correa M, Ludena Y, Ramage G, Villena GK (2012) Recent advances on filamentous fungal biofilms for industrial uses. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 167:1235–1253
Hall-Stoodley L, Costerton JW, Stoodley PJNRM (2004) Bacterial biofilms: from the natural environment to infectious diseases. Nat Rev Microbiol 2:95
Han Q, Wang N, Yao G, Mu C, Wang Y, Sang J (2019) Blocking beta-1,6-glucan synthesis by deleting KRE6 and SKN1 attenuates the virulence of *Candida albicans*. Mol Microbiol 111:604–620
Harding MW, Marques LL, Howard RJ, Olson ME (2009) Can filamentous fungi form biofilms? Trends Microbiol 17:475–480
Hawser SP, Douglas LJ (1994) Biofilm formation by Candida species on the surface of catheter materials in vitro. Infect Immun 62:915–921
He X, Li S, Kaminskyj SGW (2018) Overexpression of *Aspergillus nidulans* alpha-1,3-glucan synthase increases cellular adhesion and causes cell wall defects. Med Mycol 56:645–648
Henry C, Latgé J-P, Beauvais A (2012) α1, 3 glucans are dispensable in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Eukaryot Cell 11:26–29
Henry C, Li J, Danion F, Alcazar-Fuoli L, Mellado E, Beau R, Jouvion G, Latgé J-P, Fontaine T (2019) Two KTR Mannosyltransferases are responsible for the biosynthesis of cell wall mannans and control polarized growth in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. MBio 10:e02647–e02718
Itoh Y, Rice JD, Goller C, Pannuri A, Taylor J, Meisner J, Beveridge TJ, Preston JF, Romeo T (2008) Roles of pgaABCD genes in synthesis, modification, and export of the *Escherichia coli* biofilm adhesin poly-β-1, 6-N-acetyl-d-glucosamine. J Bacteriol 190:3670–3680
Jadhav A, Karuppayil SM (2017) *Candida Albicans* biofilm as a clinical challenge. In: Developments in fungal biology and applied mycology
Jeffery-Smith A, Taori SK, Schelenz S, Jeffery K, Johnson EM, Borman A, Manuel R, Brown CS (2018) *Candida auris*: a review of the literature. Clin Microbiol Rev 31
Jennings LK, Storek KM, Ledvina HE, Coulon C, Marmont LS, Sadovskaya I, Secor PR, Tseng BS, Scian M, Filloux A (2015) Pel is a cationic exopolysaccharide that cross-links extracellular DNA in the *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* biofilm matrix. Proc Natl Acad Sci 112:11353–11358

Johnson CJ, Cabezas-Olcoz J, Kernien JF, Wang SX, Beebe DJ, Huttenlocher A, Ansari H, Nett JE (2016) The extracellular matrix of *Candida albicans* biofilms impairs formation of neutrophil extracellular traps. PLOS Pathogens 12

Katafuchi Y, Li Q, Tanaka Y, Shinozuka S, Kawamitsu Y, Izumi M, Ekino K, Mizuki K, Takegawa K, Shibata N, Goto M, Nomura Y, Ohta K, Oka T (2017) GfsA is a beta1,5-galactofuranosyltransferase involved in the biosynthesis of the galactofuran side chain of fungal-type galactomannan in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Glycobiology 27:568–581

Kaur S, Singh S (2014) Biofilm formation by Aspergillus fumigatus. Med Mycol 52:2–9

Kernien JF, Snarr BD, Sheppard DC, Nett JE (2017) The interface between fungal biofilms and innate immunity. Frontiers Immunology 8:1968

Komachi Y, Hatakeyama S, Motomatsu H, Futagami T, Kizjakina K, Sobrado P, Ekino K, Takegawa K, Goto M, Nomura Y, Oka T (2013) GfsA encodes a novel galactofuranosyltransferase involved in biosynthesis of galactofuranose antigen of O-glycan in *Aspergillus nidulans* and *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Mol Microbiol 90:1054–1073

Köseoğlu VK, Heiss C, Azadi P, Topchiy E, Güvener ZT, Lehmann TE, Miller KW, Gomelsky M (2015) Listeria monocytogenes exopolysaccharide: origin, structure, biosynthetic machinery and c-di-GMP-dependent regulation. Mol Microbiol 96:728–743

Kudoh A, Okawa Y, Shibata N (2015) Significant structural change in both O- and N-linked carbohydrate moieties of the antigenic galactomannan from *Aspergillus fumigatus* grown under different culture conditions. Glycobiology 25:74–87

Lafleur MD, Kumamoto CA, Lewis K (2006) Candida albicans biofilms produce antifungal-tolerant persister cells. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 50:3839–3846

Laforce-Nesbitt SS, Sullivan MA, Hoyer LL, Bliss JM (2008) Inhibition of *Candida albicans* adhesion by recombinant human antibody single-chain variable fragment specific for Als3p. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol 54:195–202

Lagree K, Mitchell AP (2017) Fungal biofilms: inside out. Microbiol Spectr 5

Lamarre C, Beau R, Balloy V, Fontaine T, Hoi JWS, Guadagnini S, Berkova N, Chignard M, Beauvais A, Latgé JP (2009) Galactofuranose attenuates cellular adhesion of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Cell Microbiol 11(11):1612–1623

Latgé J-P (1999) *Aspergillus fumigatus* and aspergillosis. Clin Microbiol Rev 12:310–350

Latgé J-P (2001) The pathobiology of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Trends Microbiol 9:382–389

Latge J-P, Kobayashi H, Debeaupuis J-P, Diaquin M, Sarfati J, Wieruszeski J-M, Parra E, Bouchara J-P, Fournet BJI (1994) Chemical and immunological characterization of the extracellular galactomannan of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Infect Immun 62:5424–5433

Latge JP, Beauvais A (2014) Functional duality of the cell wall. Curr Opin Microbiol 20:111–117

Latge JP, Beauvais A, Chamilos G (2017) The cell wall of the human fungal pathogen *Aspergillus fumigatus*: biosynthesis, organization, immune response, and virulence. Annu Rev Microbiol 71:99–116

Le Mauff F, Bamford NC, Alnabelseya N, Zhang Y, Baker P, Robinson H, Codée JD, Howell PL, Sheppard DC (2019) Molecular mechanism of *Aspergillus fumigatus* biofilm disruption by fungal and bacterial glycoside hydrolases. J Biol Chem JBC RA119:008511

Leal J, Ruperez P (1978) Extracellular polysaccharide production by *Aspergillus nidulans*. Tran British Mycological Soc 70:115–120

Lee M, Gravelat F, Sheppard D (2012) Galactosaminogalactan biosynthesis correlates with reported virulence in *Aspergillus species*. Mycoses 55

Lee MJ, Geller AM, Bamford NC, Liu H, Gravelat FN, Snarr BD, le Mauff F, Chabot J, Ralph B, Ostapska H (2016) Deacetylation of fungal exopolysaccharide mediates adhesion and biofilm formation. MBio 7:e00252–e00316

Lee MJ, Gravelat FN, Cerone RP, Baptista SD, Campoli PV, Choe SI, Kravtsov I, Vinogradov E, Creuzenet C, Liu H, Berghuis AM, Latge JP, Filler SG, Fontaine T, Sheppard DC (2014) Overlapping and distinct roles of *Aspergillus fumigatus* UDP-glucose 4-epimerases in galactose metabolism and the synthesis of galactose-containing cell wall polysaccharides. J Biol Chem 289:1243–1256

Lee MJ, Liu H, Barker BM, Snarr BD, Gravelat FN, Al Abdallah Q, Gavino C, Baistrocchi SR, Ostapska H, Xiao T, Ralph B (2015) The fungal exopolysaccharide galactosaminogalactan mediates virulence by enhancing resistance to neutrophil extracellular traps. PLoS Pathog 11 (10):e1005187
Li J, Mouyna I, Henry C, Moyrand F, Malosse C, Chamot-Rooke J, Janbon G, Latgé JP, Fontaine T (2018) Glycosylphosphatidylinositol anchors from galactomannan and GPI-anchored protein are synthesized by distinct pathways in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. J Fungi (Basel) 4
Li P, Seneviratne CJ, Alpi E, Vizcaino JA, Jin L (2015) Delicate metabolic control and coordinated stress response critically determine antifungal tolerance of *Candida albicans* biofilm persisters. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 59:6101–6112
Lin CJ, Hou YH, Chen YL (2019) The histone acetyltransferase GcnE regulates condition and biofilm formation in *Aspergillus fumigatus*
Lin CJ, Sasse C, Gerke J, Valerius O, Irmer H, Frauendorf H, Heinekamp T, Strassburger M, Tran VT, Herzog B, Braus-Stromeyer SA, Braus GH (2015) Transcription factor SomA is required for adhesion, development and virulence of the human pathogen *Aspergillus fumigatus*. PLoS Pathog 11:e1005205
Little DJ, Milek S, Bamford NC, Ganguly T, Difrancesco BR, Nitz M, Deora R, Howell PL (2015) The protein BpsB is a poly-β-1, 6-N-acetyl-d-glucosamine deacetylase required for biofilm formation in *Bordetella bronchiseptica*. J Biol Chem 290:22827–22840
Loussert C, Schmitt C, Prevost MC, Balloy V, Fadel E, Philippe B, Kauffmann-Lacroix C, Latgé JP, Beauvais A (2010) In vivo biofilm composition of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Cell Microbiol 12:405–410
Mah T-FC, O'Toole GAJTIM (2001) Mechanisms of biofilm resistance to antimicrobial agents. Trends Microbiol 9:34–39
Martinez LR, Casadevall A (2005) Specific antibody can prevent fungal biofilm formation and this effect correlates with protective efficacy. Infect Immun 73:6350–6362
Martinez LR, Casadevall A (2007) *Cryptococcus neoformans* biofilm formation depends on surface support and carbon source and reduces fungal cell susceptibility to heat, cold, and UV light. Appl Environ Microbiol 73:4592–4601
Martinez LR, Casadevall A (2015) Biofilm formation by *Cryptococcus neoformans*. Microbiol Spectr 3
Martins M, Henriques M, Lopez-Ribot JL, Oliveira R (2012) Addition of DNase improves the in vitro activity of antifungal drugs against *Candida albicans* biofilms. Mycoses 55:80–85
Martins M, Uppuluri P, Thomas DP, Cleary IA, Henriques M, Lopez-Ribot JL, Oliveira R (2010) Presence of extracellular DNA in the *Candida albicans* biofilm matrix and its contribution to biofilms. Mycopathologia 169:323–331
McClelland EE, Bernhardt P, Casadevall AJI (2006) Estimating the relative contributions of virulence factors for pathogenic microbes. Infect Immu 74:1500–1504
Mélida H, Sain D, Stajich JE, Bulone VJEM (2015) Deciphering the uniqueness of Mucoromycotina cell walls by combining biochemical and phylogenomic approaches. Environ Microbiol 17:1649–1662
Mitchell K, Taff H, Cuevas M, Reinicke E, Sanchez H, Andes D (2013) Role of matrix β-1, 3 glucan in antifungal resistance of non-albicans Candida biofilms. Antimicro Agents Chem 57:1918–1920
Mitchell KF, Zarnowski R, Andes DR (2016) The extracellular matrix of fungal biofilms. Adv Exp Med Biol 931:21–35
Mitchell KF, Zarnowski R, Sanchez H, Edward JA, Reinicke EL, Nett JE, Mitchell AP, Andes DR (2015) Community participation in biofilm matrix assembly and function. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 112:4092–4097
Miyazaki T, Hayashi O, Ohshima Y, Yadomae T (1979) Studies on fungal polysaccharides: the immunological determinant of the serologically active substances from *Absidia cylindrospora*, *Mucor hiemalis* and *Rhizopus nigricans*. Microbiology 111:417–422

Miyazawa K, Yoshimi A, Sano M, Tabata F, Sugahara A, Kasahara S, Koizumi A, Yano S, Nakajima T, Abe K (2019) Both galactosaminogalactan and α-1, 3-glucan contribute to aggregation of *Aspergillus oryzae* hyphae in liquid culture. 589408

Modrzewska B, Kurnatowski P (2015) Adherence of *Candida* sp. to host tissues and cells as one of its pathogenicity features. Ann Parasitolo 61

Mora-Montes HM, Bates S, Netea MG, Castillo L, Brand A, Buurman ET, Díaz-Jiménez DF, Kullberg BJ, Brown AJ, Odds FC, Gow NA (2010) A multifunctional mannosyltransferase family in *Candida albicans* determines cell wall mannan structure and host-fungus interactions. J Biol Chem 285(16):12087–12095

Morales DK, Grahl N, Okegbe C, Dietrich LE, Jacobs NJ, Hogan DA (2013) Control of Candida albicans metabolism and biofilm formation by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* phenazines. MBio 4: e00526–e00612

Morgan J, Wannemuehler K, Marr K, Hadley S, Kontoyiannis D, Walsh T, Fridkin S, Pappas P, Warnock D (2005) Incidence of invasive aspergillosis following hematopoietic stem cell and solid organ transplantation: interim results of a prospective multicenter surveillance program. Med Mycol 43:S49–S58

Mukherjee PK, Chandra J, Kuhn DM, Ghannoum MA (2003) Mechanism of fluconazole resistance in *Candida albicans* biofilms: phase-specific role of efflux pumps and membrane sterols. Infect Immun 71:4333–4340

Müller F-MC (2014) Biofilm formation and its impact on antifungal therapy. Curr Fungal Infect Rep 8:235–241

Müller F-MC, Seidler M, Beauvais A (2011) Aspergillus fumigatus biofilms in the clinical setting. Med Mycol 49:S96–S100

Muszkieta L, Beauvais A, Pähtz V, Gibbons JG, Anton Leberre V, Beau R, Shibuya K, Rokas A, Francois JM, Kniemeyyer O, Brakhage AA (2013) Investigation of *Aspergillus fumigatus* biofilm formation by various "omics" approaches. Frontiers Microbiol 4:13

Muszkieta L, Fontaine T, Beau R, Mouyna I, Vogt MS, Trow J, Cormack BP, Essen LO, Jouvion G, Latgé JP (2019) The Glycosylphosphatidylinositol-anchored DFG family is essential for the insertion of galactomannan into the β-(1, 3)-glucan–chitin core of the cell wall of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. mSphere 4

Narimatsu H (2006) Human glycogene cloning: focus on beta 3-glycosyltransferase and beta 4-glycosyltransferase families. Curr Opin Struct Biol 16:567–575

Nett J, Lincoln L, Marchillo K, Massey R, Holoyda K, Hoff B, Vanhandel M, Andes D (2007) Putative role of beta-1,3 glucans in *Candida albicans* biofilm resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 51:510–520

Nett, JE, Andes D (2017) The role of biofilm matrix in mediating antifungal resistance. Handbook of antimicrobial resistance

Nett JE, Sanchez H, Cain MT, Andes DR (2010) Genetic basis of Candida biofilm resistance due to drug-sequestering matrix glucan. J Infect Dis 202:171–175

Nett JE, Zarnowski R, Cabezas-Olcoz J, Brooks EG, Bernhardt J, Marchillo K, Mosher DF, Andes DR (2015) Host contributions to construction of three device-associated *Candida albicans* biofilms. Infect Immun 83:4630–4638

Nimrichter L, Frases S, Cinelli LP, Viana NB, Nakouzi A, Travassos LR, Casadevall A, Rodrigues ML (2007) Self-aggregation of *Cryptococcus neoformans* capsular glucuronoxylomannan is dependent on divalent cations. Eukaryot Cell 6:1400–1410

Nobile CJ, Fox EP, Nett JE, Sorrells TR, Mitrovich QM, Hernday AD, Tuch BB, Andes DR, Johnson AD (2012) A recently evolved transcriptional network controls biofilm development in *Candida albicans*. Cell 148:126–138

Nobile CJ, Johnson AD (2015) Candida albicans Biofilms and Human Disease. Annu Rev Microbiol 69:71–92

Nobile CJ, Schneider HA, Nett JE, Sheppard DC, Filler SG, Andes DR, Mitchell AP (2008) Complementary adhesin function in C. albicans biofilm formation. Curr Biol 18:1017–1024

Oka T (2018) Biosynthesis of galactomannans found in filamentous fungi belonging to *Pezizomycotina*. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 82:183–191

Oppenheimer M, Poulin MB, Lowary TL, Helm RF, Sobrado P (2010) Characterization of recombinant UDP-galactopyranose mutase from *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Arch Biochem Biophys 502:31–38

Ostapska H, Howell PL, Sheppard DCJPP (2018) Deacetylated microbial biofilm exopolysaccharides: it pays to be positive. PLoS Pathog 14:e1007411

Panariello BH, Klein MI, Alves F, Pavarina AC (2019) DNase increases the efficacy of antimicrobial photodynamic therapy on *Candida albicans* biofilms. Photodiagn Photodyn Ther

Pappas PG, Kauffman CA, Andes DR, Clancy CJ, Marr KA, Ostrosky-Zeichner L, Reboli AC, Schuster MG, Vazquez JA, Walsh TJ, Zaoutis TE, Sobel JD (2016) Clinical practice guideline for the management of candidiasis: 2016 update by the infectious diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis 62:e1–e50

Patin EC, Thompson A, Orr SJ (2019) Pattern recognition receptors in fungal immunity. Semin Cell Dev Biol 89:24–33

Paulussen C, Hallsworth JE, Alvarez-Perez S, Nierman WC, Hamill PG, Blain D, Rediers H, Lievens B (2017) Ecology of aspergillosis: insights into the pathogenic potency of *Aspergillus fumigatu*s and some other Aspergillus species. Microb Biotechnol 10:296–322

Peaucelle A, Braybrook S, Hofte H (2012) Cell wall mechanics and growth control in plants: the role of pectins revisited. Front Plant Sci 3:121

Peng X, Sun J, Michiels C, Iserentant D, Verachtert H (2001) Decrease in cell surface galactose residues of *Schizosaccharomyces pombe* enhances its coflocculation with *Pediococcus damnosus*. Appl Environ Microbiol 67:3413–3417

Pierce CG, Vila T, Romo JA, Montelongo-Jauregui D, Wall G, Ramasubramanian A, Lopez-Ribot JL (2017) The *Candida albicans* biofilm matrix: composition, structure and function. 3:14

Pitangui NS, Sardi JCO, Silva JF, Benaducci T, Moraes da Silva RA, Rodríguez-Arellanes G, Taylor ML, Mendes-Giannini MJS, Fusco-Almeida AM (2012) Adhesion of Histoplasma capsulatum to pneumocytes and biofilm formation on an abiotic surface. Biofouling 28(7):711–718

Priegnitz B-E, Wargenau A, Brandt U, Rohde M, Dietrich S, Kwade A, Krull R, Fleißner A (2012) The role of initial spore adhesion in pellet and biofilm formation in *Aspergillus niger*. Fungal Genet Biol 49:30–38

Pringle RB (1981) Nonspecific adhesion of Bipolaris sorokiniana sporelings. Canadian J Plant Pathology 3:9–11

Rajendran R, Williams C, Lappin DF, Millington O, Martins M, Ramage GJEC (2013) Extracellular DNA release acts as an antifungal resistance mechanism in mature *Aspergillus fumigatus* biofilms. Eukaryot Cell 12:420–429

Ramage G, Bachmann S, Patterson TF, Wickes BL, Lopez-Ribot JL (2002) Investigation of multidrug efflux pumps in relation to fluconazole resistance in *Candida albicans* biofilms. J Antimicrob Chemother 49:973–980

Ramage G, Mowat E, Jones B, Williams C, Lopez-Ribot J (2009) Our current understanding of fungal biofilms. Crit Rev Microbiol 35:340–355

Rambach G, Blum G, Latge JP, Fontaine T, Heinekamp T, Hagleitner M, Jeckstrom H, Weigel G, Wurtinger P, Pfaller K, Krappmann S, Loffler J, Lass-Florl C, Speth C (2015) Identification of *Aspergillus fumigatus* surface components that mediate interaction of conidia and hyphae with human platelets. J Infect Dis 212:1140–1149

Rasmussen TB, Givskov MJIJOMM (2006) Quorum-sensing inhibitors as anti-pathogenic drugs. Int J Med Microbiol 296:149–161

Raut JS, Shinde RB, Chauhan NM, Karuppayil SM (2014) Phenylpropanoids of plant origin as inhibitors of biofilm formation by *Candida albicans*. J Microbiol Biotechnol 24:1216–1225

Raut JS, Shinde RB, Chauhan NM, Mohan Karuppayil S (2013) Terpenoids of plant origin inhibit morphogenesis, adhesion, and biofilm formation by *Candida albicans*. Biofouling 29(1):87–96

Reichhardt C, Ferreira JA, Joubert L-M, Clemons KV, Stevens DA, Cegelski L (2015) Analysis of the *Aspergillus fumigatus* biofilm extracellular matrix by solid-state nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy. Eukaryot Cell 14:1064–1072

Reichhardt C, Joubert LM, Clemons KV, Stevens DA, Cegelski L (2019) Integration of electron microscopy and solid-state NMR analysis for new views and compositional parameters of *Aspergillus fumigatus* biofilms. Med Mycol 57:S239–S244

Reichhardt C, Stevens DA, Cegelski L (2016) Fungal biofilm composition and opportunities in drug discovery. Future Med Chem 8:1455–1468

Richard ML, Plaine A (2007) Comprehensive analysis of glycosylphosphatidylinositol-anchored proteins in *Candida albicans*. Eukaryot Cell 6:119–133

Rini JM, Esko JD (2017) Glycosyltransferases and glycan-processing enzymes. In: Essentials of glycobiology [Internet], 3rd edn. Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press

Ruperez P, Leal J (1981) Extracellular galactosaminogalactan from *Aspergillus parasiticus*. Trans British Mycol Soc 77:621–625

Sanglard D, Odds FC (2002) Resistance of Candida species to antifungal agents: molecular mechanisms and clinical consequences. Lancet Infect Dis 2:73–85

Sanguinetti M, Posteraro B (2016) Diagnostic of fungal infections related to biofilms. Adv Exp Med Biol 931:63–82

Sardi JDCO, Silva DR, Mendes-Giannini MJS, Rosalen PL (2018) Candida auris: epidemiology, risk factors, virulence, resistance, and therapeutic options. Microb Pathog 125:116–121

Schmidt CS, White CJ, Ibrahim AS, Filler SG, Fu Y, Yeaman MR, Edwards JE Jr, Hennessey JP Jr (2012) NDV-3, a recombinant alum-adjuvanted vaccine for Candida and Staphylococcus aureus, is safe and immunogenic in healthy adults. Vaccine 30(52):7594–7600

Seneviratne CJ, Jin L, Samaranayake LP (2008) Biofilm lifestyle of Candida: a mini review. Oral Dis 14:582–590

Seneviratne CJ, Truong T, Wang Y (2017) Candida biofilms: properties, antifungal resistance and novel therapeutic options. Microbial Biofilms. CRC Press, Boca Raton, Florida, pp 103–128

Sheppard DC (2011) Molecular mechanism of *Aspergillus fumigatus* adherence to host constituents. Curr Opin Microbiol 14:375–379

Sheppard DC, Howell PL (2016) Biofilm exopolysaccharides of pathogenic fungi: lessons from bacteria. J Biol Chem 291:12529–12537

Sheppard DC, Yeaman MR, Welch WH, Phan QT, Fu Y, Ibrahim AS, Filler SG, Zhang M, Waring AJ, Edwards JE (2004) Functional and structural diversity in the Als protein family of *Candida albicans*. J Biol Chem 279(29):30480–30489

Shibata N, Kobayashi H, Suzuki S (2012) Immunochemistry of pathogenic yeast, Candida species, focusing on mannan. Proc Jpn Acad Ser B Phys Biol Sci 88:250–265

Singh N, Paterson DL (2005) Aspergillus infections in transplant recipients. Clin Microbiol Rev 18:44–69

Singh R, Shivaprakash MR, Chakrabarti A (2011) Biofilm formation by zygomycetes: quantification, structure and matrix composition. Microbiology 157:2611–2618

Snarr BD, Baker P, Bamford NC, Sato Y, Liu H, Lehoux M, Gravelat FN, Ostapska H, Baistrocchi SR, Cerone RP (2017a) Microbial glycoside hydrolases as antibiofilm agents with cross-kingdom activity. Proc Natl Acad Sci 114:7124–7129

Snarr BD, Qureshi ST, Sheppard DC (2017b) Immune recognition of fungal polysaccharides. J Fungi 3:47

Soll DR, Daniels KJ (2016) Plasticity of *Candida albicans* biofilms. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 80:565–595

Speth C, Rambach G, Lass-Flörl C, Howell PL, Sheppard DC (2019) Galactosaminogalactan (GAG) and its multiple roles in *Aspergillus pathogenesis*. 1–8

Sroisiri T, Boonyanit T (2010) Inhibition of candida adhesion to denture acrylic by *Boesenbergia pandurata*. Asian Pacific J Trop Med 3:272–275

Staab JF, Bradway SD, Fidel PL, Sundstrom P (1999) Adhesive and mammalian transglutaminase substrate properties of *Candida albicans* Hwp1. Science 283:1535–1538

Steele C, Rapaka RR, Metz A, Pop SM, Williams DL, Gordon S, Kolls JK, Brown GD (2005). The beta-glucan receptor dectin-1 recognizes specific morphologies of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. 1:e42

Stephen-Victor E, Karnam A, Fontaine T, Beauvais A, Das M, Hegde P, Prakhar P, Holla S, Balaji KN, Kaveri SV, Latge JP, Aimanianda V, Bayry J (2017) *Aspergillus fumigatus* cell wall alpha-(1,3)-glucan stimulates regulatory T-cell polarization by inducing PD-L1 expression on human dendritic cells. J Infect Dis 216:1281–1294

Stewart PS, Franklin MJ (2008) Physiological heterogeneity in biofilms. Nat Rev Microbiol 6:199–210

Taff HT, Nett JE, Zarnowski R, Ross KM, Sanchez H, Cain MT, Hamaker J, Mitchell AP, Andes DR (2012) A Candida biofilm-induced pathway for matrix glucan delivery: implications for drug resistance. PLoS Pathog 8:e1002848

Takagi H, Kadowaki K (1985) Purification and chemical properties of a flocculant produced by Paecilomyces. Agricu Biol Chem 49:3159–3164

Tan Y, Leonhard M, Ma S, Moser D, Schneider-Stickler B (2017) Dispersal of single and mixed non-albicans Candida species biofilms by β-1, 3-glucanase in vitro. Microbial Pathog 113:342–347

Tan Y, Ma S, Leonhard M, Moser D, Schneider-Stickler B (2018) β-1, 3-glucanase disrupts biofilm formation and increases antifungal susceptibility of *Candida albicans* DAY185. Int J Biol Macromol 108:942–946

Tekaia F, Latge JP (2005) Aspergillus fumigatus: saprophyte or pathogen? Curr Opin Microbiol 8:385–392

Umeyama T, Kaneko A, Watanabe H, Hirai A, Uehara Y, Niimi M, Azuma M (2006) Deletion of the CaBIG1 gene reduces beta-1,6-glucan synthesis, filamentation, adhesion, and virulence in *Candida albicans*. Infect Immun 74:2373–2381

Uppuluri P, Chaturvedi AK, Srinivasan A, Banerjee M, Ramasubramaniam AK, Kohler JR, Kadosh D, Lopez-Ribot JL (2010) Dispersion as an important step in the *Candida albicans* biofilm developmental cycle. PLoS Pathog 6:e1000828

Urban CF, Reichard U, Brinkmann V, Zychlinsky A (2006) Neutrophil extracellular traps capture and kill *Candida albicans* yeast and hyphal forms. Cell Microbiol 8:668–676

Vaishnav VV, Bacon BE, O'Neill M, Cherniak R (1998) Structural characterization of the galactoxylomannan of *Cryptococcus neoformans* Cap67. 306:315–330

Vallabhaneni S, Jackson BR, Chiller TM (2019) *Candida auris*: an emerging antimicrobial resistance threat. Ann Int Med

van Acker H, van Dijck P, Coenye T (2014) Molecular mechanisms of antimicrobial tolerance and resistance in bacterial and fungal biofilms. Trends Microbiol 22:326–333

van de Veerdonk FL, Gresnigt MS, Romani L, Netea MG, Latge JP (2017) *Aspergillus fumigatus* morphology and dynamic host interactions. Nat Rev Microbiol 15:661–674

Varki A, Cummings RD, Aebi M, Packer NH, Seeberger PH, Esko JD, Stanley P, Hart G, Darvill A, Kinoshita T (2015) Symbol nomenclature for graphical representations of glycans. Glycobiology 25:1323–1324

Vediyappan G, Rossignol T, D'Enfert C (2010) Interaction of Candida albicans biofilms with antifungals: transcriptional response and binding of antifungals to beta-glucans. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 54:2096–2111

Vollmer W, Tomasz A (2002) Peptidoglycan N-acetylglucosamine deacetylase, a putative virulence factor in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Infect Immunity 70:7176–7178

Walther G, Wagner L, Kurzai O (2019) Outbreaks of mucorales and the species involved. Mycopathologia

Wang H, Fei S, Wang Y, Zan L, Zhu J (2020). Comparative study on the self-assembly of pectin and alginate molecules regulated by calcium ions investigated by atomic force microscopy. Carbohydr Polym 231:115673

Wang YC, Huang SH, Lan CY, Chen BS (2012) Prediction of phenotype-associated genes via a cellular network approach: a *Candida albicans* infection case study. PLoS ONE 7:e35339

Watamoto T, Samaranayake LP, Egusa H, Yatani H, Seneviratne CJ (2011) Transcriptional regulation of drug-resistance genes in *Candida albicans* biofilms in response to antifungals. J Med Microbiol 60:1241–1247

Wuyts J, van Dijck P, Holtappels M (2018) Fungal persister cells: the basis for recalcitrant infections? PLoS Pathog 14:e1007301

Xie Z, Thompson A, Sobue T, Kashleva H, Xu H, Vasilakos J, Dongari-Bagtzoglou A (2012) *Candida albicans* Biofilms do not trigger reactive oxygen species and evade neutrophil killing. J Infecti Dis 206:1936–1945

Yamada H, Kawaguchi N, Ohmori T, Takeshita Y, Taneya S-I, Miyazaki T (1984) Structure of a galactosaminoglycan from *Cordyceps ophioglossoides*. CarbohydrRes 134:275–282

Yapar N (2014) Epidemiology and risk factors for invasive candidiasis. Ther Clin Risk Manag 10:95–105

Zarnowski R, Sanchez H, Andes DR (2016) Large-scale production and isolation of Candida biofilm extracellular matrix. Nat Protoc 11:2320–2327

Zarnowski R, Sanchez H, Covelli AS, Dominguez E, Jaromin A, Bernhardt J, Mitchell KF, Heiss C, Azadi P, Mitchell A, Andes DR (2018) Candida albicans biofilm-induced vesicles confer drug resistance through matrix biogenesis. PLoS Biol 16:e2006872

Zarnowski R, Westler WM, Lacmbouh GA, Marita JM, Bothe JR, Bernhardt J, Sahraoui ALH, Fontaine J, Sanchez H, Hatfield RD, Ntambi JM (2014) Novel entries in a fungal biofilm matrix encyclopedia. MBio 5(4):e01333–e01414

Zhang H, Zhou M, Yang T, Haslam SM, Dell A, Wu H (2016) New helical binding domain mediates a glycosyltransferase activity of a bifunctional protein. J Biol Chem 291:22106–22117

Zhang S, Chen Y, Ma Z, Chen Q, Ostapska H, Gravelat FN, Lu L, Sheppard DC (2018) PtaB, a lim-domain binding protein in *Aspergillus fumigatus* regulates biofilm formation and conidiation through distinct pathways. Cell Microbiol 20

Cell Wall-Modifying Antifungal Drugs

David S. Perlin

Contents

1 Introduction 256
2 Fungal Cell Wall as a Prime Antifungal Target 256
3 Inhibitors of Glucan Synthase 258
3.1 Echinocandins 258
3.2 Early Echinocandin History 259
3.3 Echinocandin Drug Resistance 261
3.4 *FKS* Mechanism of Resistance 261
3.5 Drug Resistance Emergence: Tolerance and Escape 262
3.6 Echinocandins: The Next Generation 262
3.7 Enfumafungin 263
4 Inhibitors of Glycosylphosphatidylinositol 265
5 Inhibitors of Chitin Synthesis 268
6 Conclusion and Perspective 269
References 270

Abstract Antifungal therapy is a critical component of patient management for invasive fungal diseases. Yet, therapeutic choices are limited as only a few drug classes are available to treat systemic disease, and some infecting strains are resistant to one or more drug classes. The ideal antifungal inhibits a fungal-specific essential target not present in human cells to avoid off-target toxicities. The fungal cell wall is an ideal drug target because its integrity is critical to cell survival and a majority of biosynthetic enzymes and wall components is unique to fungi. Among currently approved antifungal agents and those in clinical development, drugs targeting biosynthetic enzymes of the cell wall show safe and efficacious antifungal properties, which validates the cell wall as a target. The echinocandins, which inhibit β-1,3-glucan synthase, are recommended as first-line therapy for *Candida* infections. Newer cell wall-active drugs in clinical development encompass next-generation glucan synthase inhibitors including a novel echinocandin and an

D. S. Perlin (✉)
Center for Discovery and Innovation, 340 Kingsland Street, Nutley 07110, USA
e-mail: david.perlin@hmh-CDI.org

Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology (2020) 425: 255–275
https://doi.org/10.1007/82_2019_188
© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2019
Published Online: 25 December 2019

enfumafungin, an inhibitor of Gwt1, a key component of GPI anchor protein biosynthesis, and a classic inhibitor of chitin biosynthesis. As the cell wall is rich in potential drug discovery targets, it is primed to help deliver the next generation of antifungal drugs.

1 Introduction

Fungal infections are a major global health problem with significant morbidity and mortality (Brown et al. 2012). Invasive fungal infections cause life-threatening meningitis, pneumonia, asthma, and mucosal diseases like oral and vaginal thrush. Most serious invasive fungal infections are a consequence of underlying health problems such as AIDS, cancer, stem cell or organ transplantation, and corticosteroid therapies with *Cryptococcus*, *Candida,* and *Aspergillus species* accounting for most deaths (Brown et al. 2012). In all cases, the clinical management of invasive fungal diseases requires effective antifungal therapy. In contract to bacterial infections, treatment options for fungi are limited. Current antifungal drugs target, either directly or indirectly, the plasma membrane (azoles, polyenes), nucleic acid biosynthesis (flucytosine), or cell wall (echinocandins). The paltry number of targets represented and limited chemical classes available is problematic especially as organisms with either acquired and inherent resistance to approved drugs are increasingly encountered (Perlin et al. 2017). Yet, after decades of paltry drug development, we are entering a renaissance for antifungal drugs, as new drug candidates representing novel targets and chemical matter are in clinical development (Perfect 2017). The cell wall has long been considered an ideal target for the antifungal drug, and now, the nearly two-decade success of echinocandins as safe and efficacious drugs for primary therapy and prophylaxis has validated its importance, leading to next-generation products. The cell wall is a target-rich structure that is ripe for new discovery.

2 Fungal Cell Wall as a Prime Antifungal Target

The cell wall is an essential structure that ensures the integrity of the fungal cell by maintaining its rigidity and shape. Nearly 90% of the fungal cell wall is composed of polysaccharides that are absent in humans (Latge 2007). Yet, far from static, it is a highly dynamic structure that undergoes extensive remodeling during cell growth, division, and maturation (Ene et al. 2015). The biological importance of the fungal cell wall can be appreciated by the fact that nearly 20% of the yeast genome is committed to the biosynthesis of the cell wall (Gow et al. 2017). These genes include the carbohydrate-active enzymes (CAZymes) [http://www.cazy.org]) involved with the synthesis of glucans and chitin, cell wall remodeling glycohydrolases (e.g., glucanases, chitinases) and transglycosidases. Many of the core

structural components are conserved across fungal genera, while other components are species-specific (Gow et al. 2017). Maintaining the structural integrity of the cell wall is of the utmost importance. The cell wall contains an integrated network of environmental sensors allowing fungi to resist stress, osmotic pressure, or toxic molecules (Latge 2010). Many of the critical cellular pathways have been elucidated that modulate and protect the cell in response to cell wall stresses (Ene et al. 2015). The biosynthetic enzymes critical to forming and remodeling the cell wall are unique to fungi and are not represented in humans. Hence, they serve as ideal targets for pathogen-specific antifungal therapy. It is well established that genetic or chemical modulation of major cell wall components, which alter the wall's structural integrity, results in cell collapse and death. It is also imperative to understand that the cell wall is the primary interface with its local environment within the human host. As such, it plays a critical role in immune recognition and surveillance, as it has many antigenic features that are important for health and disease (Hall and Gow 2013).

Structurally, the cell walls of prominent fungal pathogens including the *Candida spp.*, *Aspergillus spp.*, *Pneumocystis*, *Cryptococcus,* and endemic fungi have important structural similarities that include a prominent backbone layer of the glucose polymer β-1,3-glucan, as well as chitin and mannoproteins. Chitin is far less prevalent in the wall, but it forms covalent cross-links with the β-glucan scaffold contributing to the strength of the cell wall. The presence of β-1,3-glucan among yeasts and molds as an essential scaffold component is a nearly universal feature. Nevertheless, the cell walls of yeasts and molds are not the same, as their organization of associated structural components varies. Mannoproteins (30–40%) form the outer lamella of the cell wall and are represented by glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI)-modified proteins. They form covalent linkages to β-1,6-glucan while other mannoproteins are linked to β-1,3-glucan. Cell wall proteins are often mannosylated via *O*- and *N*-linkages that contribute to pathogenicity and cell wall dynamics (Hall and Gow 2013). The outer layer is more variable among the fungi and accounts for many of the phenotypic differences and diverse host interactions. The composition and form of the cell wall often vary during growth and development. Yeasts such as *Candida* and *Pneumocystis jiroveci* have an outer cell wall comprising highly mannosylated glycoproteins that covers the inner wall. In *A. fumigatus*, α-1,3-glucan (not found in yeasts) galactomannan, and galactosaminogalactan are found at conidia stage, along with an outer layer of hydrophobins and melanin (Latge 2007 #675). In *C. neoformans*, a glutinous capsule of glucuronoxylomannan and galactoxylomannan occludes the polysaccharides (Gow 2017). Collectively, the core structural carbohydrate elements, cross-linked polymers, and proteins create a highly stable yet dynamic structure. The wide array of fungal-specific biosynthetic and remodeling enzymes provides ideal targets for antifungal drug development and has been exploited in the past decades. They now comprise the specific targets for some of our most important antifungal drugs.

3 Inhibitors of Glucan Synthase

1,3-β-D-Glucan synthase remains an attractive target for antifungal drug action because it is present in many pathogenic fungi, which affords broad antifungal spectrum. Also, since there is no mammalian counterpart, it is presumed that compounds selectively inhibiting glucan synthase have little or no mechanism-based toxicity. The β-1,3-D-glucan synthase is a multi-subunit enzyme complex that catalyzes the transfer of sugar moieties from activated donor molecules to specific acceptor molecules forming glycosidic bonds (Orlean 1982). Our understanding of glucan synthase has come from genetic and biochemical studies in yeast (Douglas et al. 1994; Sawistowska-Schroder et al. 1984) and more recently from studies of *FKS*-resistant mutants from *Candida* spp (Park et al. 2005; Garcia-Effron et al. 2009a, b). The enzyme complex has at least two subunits, Fks and Rho. Fks is the catalytic subunit and is encoded by three related genes, *FKS1*, *FKS2*, and *FKS3*. *FKS1* is essential in *C. albicans* but in *C. glabrata and S. cerevisiae,* genetic disruptants are viable due to the paralog *FKS2*. These *FKS2* genes are calcineurin dependent and down regulated by FK506 (Eng et al. 1994). In *Aspergillus,* there is a single *FKS1* gene. Rho1p, a GTP-binding protein, found to copurify with Fks1p in preparations of the enzyme purified by product entrapment, helps regulates the activity of glucan synthase (Mazur and Baginsky 1996), most likely through Pkc1p (Sekiya-Kawasaki et al. 2002), although the precise nature of the activation remains unclear. The three known chemical classes of natural product inhibitors of 1,3-β-D-glucan synthesis include the lipopeptides (echinocandins, arborcandins), the glycolipid papulacandins, and the terpenoids (e.g., enfumafungins) All glucan synthase inhibitors are non-competitive with their biosynthetic substrate UDP-glucose (Douglas 2001). The echinocandins have enjoyed the most clinical success, while an enfumafungin is looming and is in late-stage clinical development. Finally, poacic acid is a natural plant metabolite found in the lignocellulosic hydrolysates of grasses that has antifungal activity, and it targets β-1,3-glucan synthesis by a mechanism non-overlapping with echinocandins (Lee et al. 2018). It is not yet in clinical development.

3.1 Echinocandins

The clinical success of the echinocandins, which can only be administered parentally, has validated β-1,3-glucan synthase (GS) as an antifungal target. The echinocandins are semi-synthetic cyclic hexapeptides with an amide-linked fatty acyl side chain (Zambias et al. 1992). The early echinocandins showed potent in vitro inhibition of glucan synthase with a pronounced affect only on V_{max} (Sawistowska-Schroder et al. 1984) and in vivo antifungal activity in murine infection models of *C. albicans* (Bartizal et al. 1992) and *Pneumocystis jiroveci* (Schmatz et al. 1991). They target and inhibit β-1-3-D-glucan synthase, and as such,

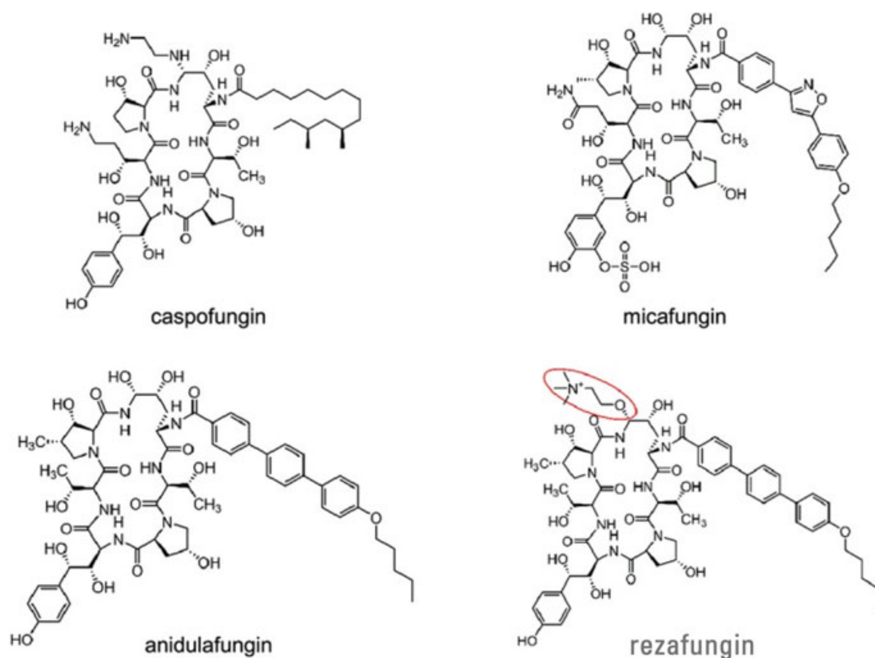


Fig. 1 Chemical structure for echinocandin drugs. All drugs are FDA approved except rezafungin, which is in late-stage clinical development. The red circle indicates the choline ether modification, which imparts its strong stability and half-life

they are broadly active against diverse *Candida* species, against which they are fungicidal (Bartizal et al. 1997). In *Aspergillus*, echinocandins slow growth and cause lysis of some growing tips resulting in altered the hyphal morphology (Kurtz et al. 1994b). In vitro, the cells form rosette-type structures. Echinocandin-induced alteration of the cell wall architecture enhances its immunoreactive properties in *Candida* and *Aspergillus*, especially at low drug levels (Wheeler and Fink 2006; Hohl et al. 2008). Echinocandin class drugs share a closely related overall chemical structure but vary in the hexapeptide ring and the amide-linked side chains (Fig. 1). Given their current two-decade long clinical history of safe and efficacious therapy, echinocandins are now the IDSA recommended preferred antifungal agent for treatment of candidiasis among high-risk patient populations (Pappas et al. 2016).

3.2 Early Echinocandin History

Papulacandins A–E, isolated from the fermentation broths of *Papularia sphaerosperma,* inhibited β-(1,3)-D-glucan synthase and were first reported in 1977 (Traxler et al. 1977). They contained a benzannulated spiroketal unit, which is the

signature for many bioactive natural products including the current echinocandin drugs. They showed narrow spectrum being highly high specific against yeasts but largely inactive against filamentous fungi. Studies with a series of papulacandin derivatives demonstrated that the fatty acid chain and the galactose residue were not required for activity at the target site, but the long fatty acid tail was essential for biological activity (Zambias et al. 1992). The echinocandins were introduced as a broader activity cyclic peptide antifungal, which showed lysis of actively growing *C. albicans* (Cassone et al. 1981; Kurtz et al. 1994a). They inhibit glucan synthase activity by reducing the V_{max} of the enzyme (Sawistowska-Schroder et al. 1984; Garcia-Effron et al. 2009b). Cilofungin, a semi-synthetic analog of echinocandin B, inhibited β-(1,3)-glucan synthase resulting in severe modifications of the cell wall and cytoplasmic membrane of sensitive organisms. It was the first clinically applied member of the echinocandin family (Taft and Selitrennikoff 1990). Ultimately, cilofungin was supplanted by the current echinocandins caspofungin, micafungin, and anidulafungin.

In 2001, the US Food and Drug Administration approved caspofungin for salvage therapy for patients with invasive aspergillosis refractory to conventional therapy. Subsequently, all three echinocandin drugs, caspofungin, micafungin, and anidulafungin, were approved for the treatment of esophageal and invasive candidiasis, including candidemia, empirical therapy in febrile neutropenic patients and prophylaxis in patients undergoing hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. The echinocandins are largely inactive against *Zygomycetes, Cryptococcus* species, or *Fusarium* species, which may reflect a reduced importance of β-(1,3)-glucan and/or compensatory mechanisms to stabilize the cell wall. They are highly effective against azole-resistant yeasts owing to their separate mechanism of action and the fact that they are not substrates for multidrug transporters (Niimi et al. 2006). Furthermore, echinocandins show activity against *Candida* biofilms (Bachmann et al. 2002) albeit culture condition-dependent (Kucharikova et al. 2011). Despite a common mechanism of action, the three echinocandins vary in basic pharmacodynamic properties including metabolism, half-life, drug–drug interactions, and pharmacodynamic targets (Lepak et al. 2015; Nett and Andes 2016). Echinocandin drugs are only administered intravenous (IV) due to their high molecular weights, low solubility, and poor absorption by the gastrointestinal tract. Fungicidal efficacy correlates with the ratio of AUC:MIC, although there is also a concentration-dependent (C_{max}) killing (Nett and Andes 2016). All echinocandin drugs exhibit a high degree of binding to plasma proteins (>99%) and distribute minimally to the brain, gastrointestinal tract, and eye. The echinocandins have an excellent therapeutic index with a low potential for toxicity or drug–drug interactions (Chen et al. 2011).

3.3 Echinocandin Drug Resistance

Echinocandin therapy is highly efficacious, but increasingly echinocandin drug resistance is a threat to successful clinical management. Among *C. albicans* and other *Candida* species, the frequency of resistance is relatively low at 1–3%, but this is not true for *C. glabrata*, where resistance is more severe, often presenting as multidrug resistance (Ostrosky-Zeichner 2013; Perlin et al. 2017). Echinocandin resistance among *C. glabrata* isolates ranges from 3 to 5% in population-based studies (Perlin 2015). Yet, some centers report rates of 10–15% (Alexander et al. 2013; Farmakiotis et al. 2014). Echinocandin resistance always arises de novo during therapy and is associated with repeated or chronic drug exposure, although resistance can follow brief drug exposure (Lewis et al. 2013). Colonization of *C. glabrata* within the gastrointestinal (GI) tract and intraabdominal abscesses represents major internal reservoirs for infection. The global resistance problem is expected to grow more severe as expanding numbers of patients are exposed to antifungal prophylaxis, drugs like caspofungin are now generic and cheaper, and new echinocandins are looming.

3.4 FKS *Mechanism of Resistance*

Clinical resistance resulting in breakthrough infections involves modification of Fks subunits of glucan synthase (Park et al. 2005). Unlike azoles, echinocandins are not substrates for multidrug transporters (Niimi et al. 2006). Resistance conferring amino acid substitutions in Fks subunits induces elevated MIC values (Arendrup and Perlin 2014) and reduces the sensitivity of glucan synthase (IC_{50}) to drug by 100- to >3000-fold (Garcia-Effron et al. 2009a). For most *Candida* spp., mutations occur in two highly conserved "hot-spot" regions of *FKS1*. These limited regions encompass residues (*C. albicans*) Phe641-Pro649 and Arg1361(Arendrup and Perlin 2014). Amino acid changes at Ser641 and Ser645 (*C. albicans*) are the most prevalent (~90%) causing the most pronounced resistance phenotype (Arendrup and Perlin 2014). In *C. glabrata*, mutations conferring resistance occur at conserved positions in both *FKS1* and *FKS2* with S629P, F625S, D632E (FKS1) and S663P,F, Y and F659S,V (FKS2) being the most prominent (Pham et al. 2014). Nearly 19 years after the FDA-approved caspofungin as a first-in-class echinocandin, mutations in *FKS* conferring reduced sensitivity to drug are still the only mechanism associated with *Candida* clinical failures (Shields et al. 2012; Perlin 2015; Shields et al. 2012), and clinical breakpoints (CLSI and EUCAST) reflect this underlying mechanism (Pfaller et al. 2011). Recently, a new mechanism independent of *FKS* mutation has been elucidated in *Aspergillus* involving changes in the lipid microenvironment of glucan synthases rendering it insensitive to echinocandin drugs. This mechanism is also relevant for drug tolerance in *Candida* species (Healey et al. 2012) and may explain the long-standing phenomenon of paradoxical growth at high drug levels.

3.5 Drug Resistance Emergence: Tolerance and Escape

Exposure of fungal cells to echinocandins leads to cell wall deformation resulting in osmotic instability and death to most cells. Yet, in a typical infection ($\sim 10^9$ cells), a subset ($\sim 10^{4-5}$) of cells survive and show drug tolerance over a wide range of drug exposures. In vivo, this response is observed as drug stasis in target organs (Slater et al. 2011). Ultimately, such cells have the potential to ultimately "escape" drug action and form genetically stable *FKS*-resistant mutants resulting in clinical failure. Drug resistance occurs following a progression of stages involving (1) cell stress, (2) tolerance, and (3) drug (phenotypic) escape (Healey and Perlin 2018). Tolerance reflects a repertoire of adaptive response mechanisms that stabilize the cell wall against drug stress. Much of what is known about the genetics of cell wall biosynthesis/remodeling comes from studies in *S. cerevisiae* (Lesage and Bussey 2006). Once the cell has sensed environmental changes, signaling cascades activate transcriptional regulators, which modulate the expression of specific target genes (Rosenwald et al. 2016). Among the different signaling pathways, the mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) cascades are well studied (Rispail et al. 2009) consisting of a conserved cascade of kinases. For each cascade, a single MAPK moves into the nucleus after being phosphorylated altering gene expression. The major physiological activities assigned to MAPKs in fungi are cell wall biosynthesis, osmoregulation, mating, and virulence. Sensor–transducer proteins Slg1/Wsc1, Wsc2, Wsc3, Mid2, and Mtl1 detect damage and signal to Rom1/2 and Rho1, which activates protein kinase Pkc1 causing a kinase cascade including Bck1 (a MAPKKK), Mkk1/2 (MAPKKs), and Slt2/Mpk1. Slt2 phosphorylates several transcription factors, including Rlm1 and Swi4/6 turning on the expression of genes encoding proteins responsible for the synthesis of the cell wall including FKS2/GSC2 (Levin 2011). An important adaptive response is the upregulation of chitin biosynthesis genes, *CHS*, and mobilization of chitin from internal stores to stabilize the cell wall (Valdivia and Schekman 2003). In addition, the high-affinity calcium uptake system signals some genes responsible for cell wall biosynthesis and plasma membrane via the calcineurin-regulated transcription factor, Crz1, as well as HSP90 and its client proteins (Cowen and Steinbach 2008). Collectively, these adaptive cellular pathways have the ability to stabilize cells in the presence of "fungicidal" levels of echinocandins.

3.6 Echinocandins: The Next Generation

Rezafungin (formerly CD101) is a novel semi-synthetic echinocandin with broad-spectrum activity and demonstrated high potency in vitro (Arendrup et al. 2018b) and in vivo activity against *Candida* spp., *Aspergillus* spp., *Pneumocystis* spp., *Trichophyton mentagrophytes, Trichophyton rubrum and Microsporum gypseum.* Rezafungin and comparator echinocandins (micafungin, caspofungin and

anidulafungin) antifungal agents were evaluated for drug susceptibility by the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) method against invasive fungal isolates, including 531 *Candida* species and 56 *Aspergillus* spp., collected worldwide Pfaller et al. 2017a, b). Rezafungin at ≤ 0.12 µg/ml inhibited 95% of all *C. glabrata* isolates and 100% of *C. albicans, C. dubliniensis, C. tropicalis,* and *C. krusei* isolates. Typical of an echinocandins, Rezafungin, showed a high MIC of ≤ 4 µg/ml against *C. parapsilosis*. Rezafungin was comparable in activity to the three echinocandin drugs against all *Candida* species except C. *krusei*, which was fourfold less active with caspofungin. All isolates of *A. fumigatus* were inhibited by Rezafungin at ≤ 0.03 µg/ml (minimum effective concentration [MEC]), and all four agents were highly active against *A. fumigatus* with MEC for 90% of isolates at 0.015–0.03 µg/ml. Similarly, a large multicenter evaluation of 2018 clinical *Candida* spp isolates for drug susceptibility according to the European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (*EUCAST*) (E.Def 7.3.1) methodology found that Rezafungin MICs (geometric MIC (GM-MIC) were lowest for *C. albicans* (0.016, 0.002–0.125 µg/ml) and highest for *C. parapsilosis* (1.657, 0.063 $\rightarrow$ 4 µg/ml); MICs for all other species were within these values (GM-MICs 0.048–0.055 µg/ml) (Arendrup et al. 2018b).

Like other echinocandins, it is an IV-only drug that targets and inhibits glucan synthase (Zhao et al. 2016). It is under late-stage clinical investigation for targeted therapy of candidemia and invasive candidiasis (Phase 3 ReSTORE), as well as prophylaxis (Phase 3 ReSPECT) for invasive fungal infections, including *Candida, Aspergillus,* and *Pneumocystis.* The FDA has designated rezafungin as a Qualified Infectious Disease Product (QIDP) with Fast Track status and orphan drug designation. Rezafungin is a chemical analog of anidulafungin (Fig. 1) in which the hemiaminal is replaced with a choline aminal ether that imparts greater stability and solubility to the product parent compound (Krishnan et al. 2017). This chemical stability imparts important pharmacokinetic and taxological advantages (Ong et al. 2016; Lepak et al. 2018), including a terminal half-life of approximately 130 h in humans that allows for protracted interval dosing (Sandison et al. 2017). It has demonstrable in vitro and in vivo potency that is either equivalent to or an improvement upon that of comparator echinocandins (Krishnan et al. 2017). Its chemical properties facilitate greater penetration of rezafungin into infected lesions in an intrabdominal abscess model relative to micafungin (Zhao et al. 2017). Rezafungin is subject to the same basic *FKS* resistance mechanisms as other echinocandins. But because it can be dosed at a much higher level without toxicity, it can overcome weaker phenotypes caused by certain *FKS* mutations (Bader et al. 2018) and may help prevent resistance emergence (Zhao et al. 2016) (Fig. 2).

3.7 Enfumafungin

Like the echinocandins, enfumafungins are potent inhibitors of glucan biosynthesis. Chemically, they are a hemiacetal triterpene glycoside (Fig. 3) produced by

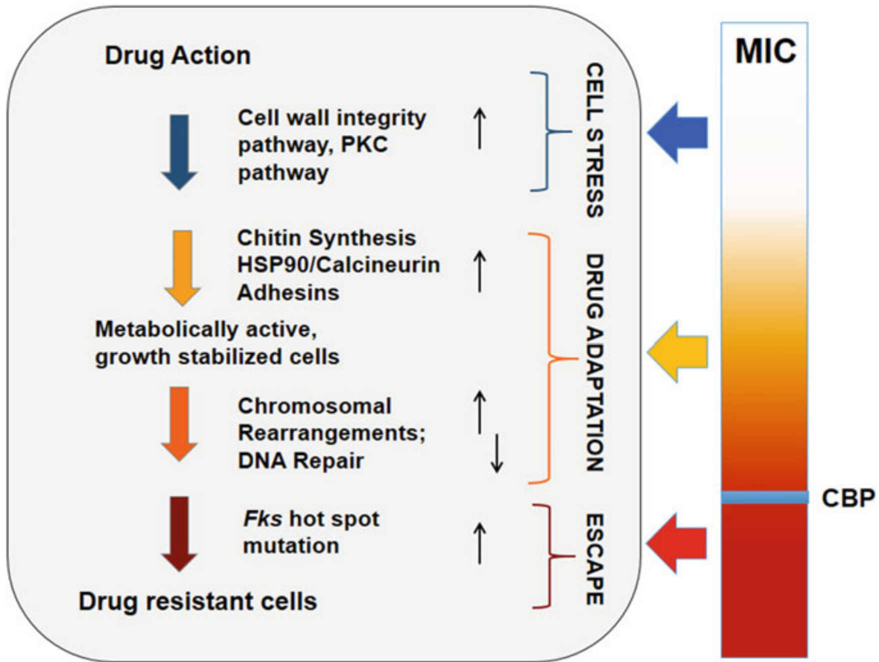
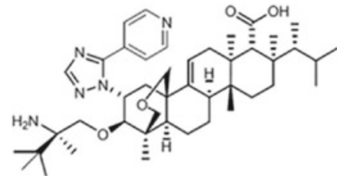


Fig. 2 Evolution of echinocandin resistance. Multistep cellular processes influencing the ability of a fungal cell to adapt to echinocandin drug exposure resulting in the formation of phenotypic *FKS* escape mutants that are refractory to drug and cause clinical failures (Healey and Perlin 2018)

Fig. 3 Structures of Ibrexafungerp, a semi-synthetic enfumafungin derivative



Hormonema spp. associated with living leaves of *Juniperus communis* (Pelaez et al. 2000). The antifungal mode of action of enfumafungin and other antifungal triterpenoid glycosides was determined to be the inhibition of (l,3)-β-D-glucan synthase (Onishi et al. 2000). This potent class of glucan synthase inhibitors with favorable solubility characteristics which has resulted in Ibrexafungerp (formerly MK3118 and SCY-078) is a semi-synthetic derivative of the enfumafungin being developed as a new class of β 1,3-glucan synthesis inhibitors with both oral and intravenous antifungal treatment for *Candida* and *Aspergillus* species fungal infections.

Using both CLSI and EUCAST methodologies for antifungal susceptibility testing, it was broadly active against all *Candida* and *Aspergillus* species with MIC values of ≤ 1 μg/ml and ≤ 0.015 μg/ml against clinical isolates of 7 *Candida* spp. and 40 *Aspergillus* spp., respectively. It showed similar potency to caspofungin against *C. albicans*, *C. tropicalis, C. parapsilosis,* and *C. krusei*, but it was eightfold more potent than caspofungin against *C. glabrata* strains (Pfaller et al. 2017a, b; Lamoth and Alexander 2015; Schell et al. 2017). Ibrexafungerp has both IV and oral formulations, which distinguishes it from IV-only echinocandins. It is currently in development for the treatment of fungal infections caused primarily by *Candida* and *Aspergillus* species. It has demonstrated broad spectrum of antifungal activity, in vitro and in vivo, against multidrug-resistant pathogens, including azole- and certain echinocandin-resistant strains with prominent *fks* mutations (Jimenez-Ortigosa et al. 2014, 2017). The FDA has granted QIPD and Fast Track designations for the formulations of SCY-078 for the indications of invasive candidiasis (IC) (including *candidemia*), invasive aspergillosis (IA), and VVC, and has granted Orphan Drug Designation for the IC and IA indications. It has in vivo activity against *Aspergillus* and *Candida* (Ghannoum et al. 2018; Lepak et al. 2015), including against multidrug-resistant (MDR) species *Candida auris* (Ghannoum et al. 2019). Ibrexafungerp is currently in Phase 3 clinical development for the treatment of multiple serious and life-threatening invasive fungal infections caused by *Candida*, *Aspergillus,* and *Pneumocystis* species, as well as efficacy against vulvovaginal candidiasis (VVC) (Larkin et al. 2019). Ibrexafungerp, like other enfumafungins, is not in the echinocandin chemical class. Accordingly, it is highly active against strains of *C albicans* and *C. glabrata* with prominent fks hot-spot 1 mutations conferring echinocandin resistance (e.g., S645F in *C. albicans*.) However, it showed markedly less susceptibility against prominent N-terminal hot-spot 1 mutations (e.g., S641F) that also confer echinocandin resistance suggesting that there may be shared but non-identical binding domain for Ibrexafungerp and echinocandins for inhibition of glucan synthase. Further support for this view has come from detailed in vitro selection of resistant mutants in *C. glabrata* in which mutations common to echinocandin resistance were found, but new mutations outside the hot-spot regions were identified. The mutations conferred both elevated MIC values and several log-fold decreases in sensitivity to drug in glucan synthases kinetic inhibition studies (Jimenez-Ortigosa et al. 2017).

4 Inhibitors of Glycosylphosphatidylinositol

Glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI) forms a lipid anchor for many cell-surface proteins. It is a protein posttranslational modification with a glycolipid and found widely in eukaryotes. (Kinoshita 2016). After GPI attachment to proteins, the GPI anchor is remodeled, which regulates the trafficking and localization of GPI-anchored proteins. In fungi, GPIs are transferred to selected glycoproteins that are then transported to the plasma membrane, where they remain anchored to the

outer surface of the plasma membrane via the GPI or they become cross-linked to the cell wall. The GPI anchor is assembled on a phosphatidylinositol lipid in the endoplasmic reticulum where it is covalently attached to a protein's carboxyl terminus. The GPI backbone consists of phosphatidylinositol, glycans comprising glucosamine and mannoses (n = 3), and a terminal phosphoethanolamine, which is amide-bonded to the carboxyl terminus of the protein during GPI attachment. The lipid moiety of the GPI anchor can be a 1-alkyl-2-acyl phosphatidylinositol, diacyl phosphatidylinositol, or inositol-phosphoceramide (Kinoshita 2016). GPI biosynthesis is essential for fungal growth. The GPI proteins are secreted to the cell surface, where they may remain bound to the plasma membrane or, more often, cross-linked to β-1,6-glucan polymers of the cell wall. There are important functional differences in the GPI anchor process that distinguish fungi from mammalian cells, including Gwt1-dependent acylation of inositol and Mcd4-mediated ethanolamine phosphate (EtNP) addition to mannose 1 (Man1) of the GPI core despite the presence of human homologs Pig-W and Pig-N (Pittet and Conzelmann 2007). These properties make this process in fungi desirable as an antifungal target. Utilizing a chemical genomics-based screening platform, novel inhibitors of Gwt1 and Mcd4 were identified with potent antifungal properties (Mann et al. 2015).

Gwt1p is a membrane protein predicted to have 13 predicted transmembrane domains with the amino and carboxy termini facing luminal and cytoplasmic sides of the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) (Fig. 4). Inositol acylation is believed to occur on the luminal side of the ER membrane (Sagane et al. 2011). Utilizing a chemical genomics-based fitness screening platform for *C. albicans*, Mann et al. 2015 identified novel inhibitors of Gwt1 and a second enzyme in the glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI) cell wall anchor pathway, Mcd4 (Mann et al. 2015). In 2011, E1210, 3-(3-{4-[(pyridin-2-yloxy)methyl]benzyl}isoxazol-5-yl)pyridin-2-amine, discovered by the Tsukuba Research Laboratories of Eisai Co., Ltd., was described as a new first-in-class, broad-spectrum antifungal with a novel mechanism of action involving inhibition of fungal GPI biosynthesis. It showed efficacy in murine infection models of

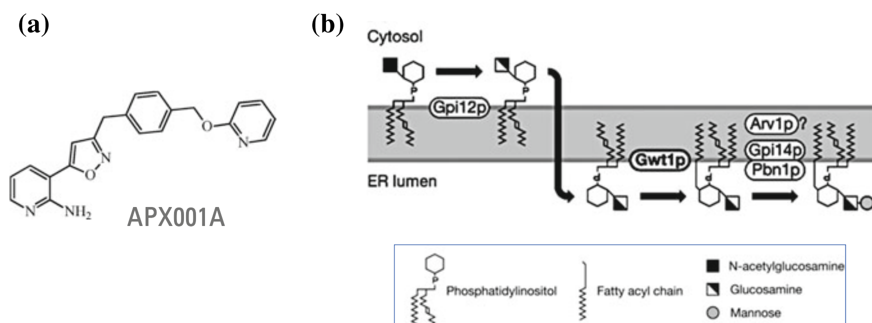


Fig. 4 Inhibition of GPI-anchor protein biosynthesis. **a** Chemical structure of APX001A. **b** Putative GPI-anchor protein biosynthetic pathway and role of Gwt1 (Adapted from Sagane et al. 2011.)

oropharyngeal and disseminated candidiasis, pulmonary aspergillosis, and disseminated fusariosis (Hata et al. 2011).

APX001 is a first-in-class, broad-spectrum antifungal agent for the treatment of invasive fungal infections. It is the N-phosphonooxymethyl prodrug of APX001A (2-amino-1-((phosphonooxy)methyl)-3-(3-((4-((2-pyridinyloxy)methyl) phenyl)methyl)-5-isoxazolyl) -pyridinium) (Fig. 4) (Matsukura 2013); it has received FDA's Orphan Drug designation for six different fungal infections and is classified as a Qualified Infectious Disease Product in the USA. APX001A is active against major pathogenic fungi including *Candida* species (except *C. krusei*), *Cryptococcus neoformans,* Aspergillus species, and other molds like *Fusarium* and *Scedosporium* (Kinoshita 2016). In an in vitro susceptibility study of 1706 contemporary clinical fungal isolates collected in 2017 from 68 medical centers worldwide using the CLSI reference broth microdilution method, APX001A was more potent than conventional azole and echinocandin antifungal agents (Pfaller et al. 2019). It displayed highly potent $MIC_{50/90}$ values of 0.008/0.06 μg/ml against *Candida* species that were 1–2 log orders more sensitive than existing antifungal agents. APX001A was $\geq$eightfold more active than fluconazole against *C. neoformans* var. *grubii* and showed comparable activity to the echinocandins with Aspergillus spp. APX001A was also highly active against uncommon species of *Candida* and rare molds, including 11 isolates of *Scedosporium* spp. Finally, APX001A demonstrated potent in vitro activity against recent fungal isolates, including echinocandin- and fluconazole-resistant strains (Pfaller et al. 2019). In a related study, Arendrup et al. (2018a) reported that APX001A was highly active against most *Candida* species including drug-resistant *Candida auris* and Candida *glabrata*, although it was less active on *C.* krusei and *C. norvegensis.* Some non-wild type isolates were fluconazole resistant, and a correlation was observed between APX001A and fluconazole MICs across all species except C. *guilliermondii* and *C. auris*. This raises the prospect that APX001A may be a substrate for drug efflux transporters induced in the azole-resistant strains. Azole resistance in *C. auris* correlates with specific amino acid mutations in Erg 11 (Healey et al. 2018), and as such, APX001A is active in vivo against drug-resistant *C. auris* (Hager et al. 2018). APX001 shows wide tissue distribution in rats and monkeys including the brain (Mansbach et al. 2017). Importantly, treatment with APX001 leads to a significant reduction in brain CFU in both a rabbit model of hematogenous *C. albicans* meningoencephalitis and a mouse disseminated *C. auris* model (Hager et al. 2018). APX001A has good in vitro activity against the mold form of *Coccidioides* with a potent MEC_{90} of 8 ng/ml (Viriyakosol et al. 2019). Finally, APX001 is highly effective in murine models of invasive pulmonary aspergillosis (Gebremariam et al. 2019). APX001 is being developed as both an IV and oral formulation, which facilitates IV treatment within the hospital setting and step-down oral treatment after patient discharge. In recently completed Phase 1 studies, both formulations were well tolerated and showed favorable safety profile in Phase 1 studies with a low proclivity for clinically relevant drug–drug interactions. A Phase 2 study is being conducted in patients with candidemia, as well as an additional Phase 1b study in patients who are neutropenic (e.g., acute leukemia

patients receiving chemotherapy) and at risk of fungal infections. Finally, the nature of resistance resulting in therapeutic failures is unknown at this stage. Mutations in GWT1 can lead to higher MIC values, and *C. krusei* is inherently resistant to drug suggesting that over-expression of certain drug pumps may be a factor for emerging resistance.

5 Inhibitors of Chitin Synthesis

Chitin is an essential structural component of fungal cell walls and septa, and it is synthesized by multiple chitin biosynthetic enzymes. As chitin is not found in human cells, it has been a long-standing attractive target for antifungal therapy (Ruiz-Herrera and San-Blas 2003). Chitin synthesis is catalyzed by the transfer of GlcNAc from UDP-GlcNAc to chitin by chitin synthase. In *Candida albicans*, chitin is synthesized by a family of four isoenzymes, which comprise three separate classes of chitin synthase enzymes, Chs1 (class II), Chs3 (class IV), Chs2 and Chs8 (class I) (Lenardon et al. 2010). The two class I enzymes, Chs2 and Chs8, are responsible for the majority of chitin synthase activity (Preechasuth et al. 2015). Class I enzymes reinforce cell wall integrity during early polarized growth.

Polyoxins and Nikkomycins are two structurally related groups of secondary metabolites that are selective inhibitors of chitin synthetase. The polyoxins (polyoxin A, B, D) and nikkomycins (nikkomycin X, Z) described in the 1960s and 1970s are peptide–nucleoside compounds produced by *Streptomyces cacaoi* and *Streptomyces tendae*, respectively (Zhang and Miller 1999). They are structural similarity to UDP-N-acetylglucosamine (Fig. 5), and the precursor substrate for chitin and both has comparable in vitro potency against isolated chitin synthetases from a variety of fungi.

They are competitive inhibitors of Chs2, Chs1, and Chs3 (Cabib 1991; Gaughran et al. 1994). In yeasts, nikkomycin Z enters the cell via distinct peptide transport systems (McCarthy et al. 1985). Extensive efforts over the decades, neither polyoxins nor nikkomycins, have been developed to treat common *Candida*

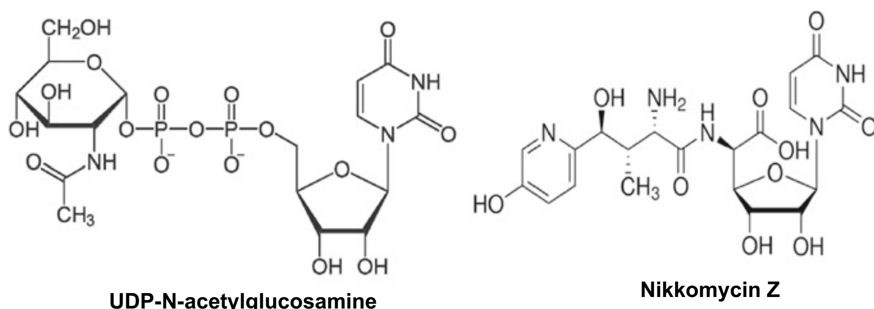


Fig. 5 Chemical structure for UDP-N-acetylglucosamine and Nikkomycin Z

and *Aspergillus* invasive infections. This most likely reflects the complexity of the chitin synthase enzymes and the dynamic and resilient nature of the cell wall stress responses. However, recently Nikkomycin Z has been advanced as a first-in-class antifungal drug for Coccidioidomycosis (Valley Fever). In ongoing multi-dose human safety Phase I trials, nikkomycin Z has thus far showed little or no toxicity. This agent also had previously demonstrated in vivo activity in mouse models of histoplasmosis (Goldberg et al. 2000) and blastomycosis (Clemons and Stevens 1997). The US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) granted nikkomycin Z as a "qualifying infectious disease product" (QIDP). Resistance to nikkomycin can occur through a defect in the one of the transporters for dipeptides (Yadan et al. 1984), as well as in Gig1, which may play a role GlcNAc metabolism (Gunasekera et al. 2010).

6 Conclusion and Perspective

The clinical success of the echinocandin drugs has validated the importance of the cell wall as a prominent target for safe and efficacious antifungal therapy. In particular, direct inhibition of β-(1,3)-glucan synthase has emerged as an important focal point for current drug development with a new long-acting echinocandin and an orally available enfumafungin nearing clinical approval. The current echinocandin drugs are limited by spectrum, delivery by IV-only route, limited tissue distribution, and emergence of drug resistance. These limitations are substantially addressed by these newer agents. The new Gwt1 GPI anchor protein inhibitor also overcomes many of the limitations of echinocandins with high potency and activity against a range of fungi including *Aspergillus*, other molds, and *Cryptococcus*. Finally, after decades of investment, nikkomycin Z with its potent inhibition of chitin biosynthesis is poised to have a significant impact on difficult to treat endemic fungi. Other important targets in the cell wall ripe for discovery include β-1,6-glucan synthase or other enzymes involved in the interconnections of cell wall glucans, which have lead inhibitors but have not been developed (Kitamura et al. 2009).

The importance of the wall to the fungal cell is also reflected by the fact that numerous stress-response pathways have evolved to maintain its integrity. These pathways, which rapidly sense wall insult and injury, play a critical role in adaptation of the cell to cell wall-active drugs. This drug-adapted tolerance state predisposes the cell for genetically induced breakthrough resulting in clinical drug resistance. Intervening in the tolerance pathways may be an important adjunct for cell wall-directed therapies to prevent downstream drug resistance. The complexity of the cell wall and its biosynthetic machinery provides a fertile landscape for drug discovery as numerous essential targets abound. Yet, equally important, the cell wall houses numerous non-essential targets that are critical for host recognition and targeting these virulence components may be a highly productive route for new antifungals that can be used for therapy and prophylaxis. The lesson of current

cancer immunotherapy is that non-essential virulence targets can be easily modified with a new generation of biologics (e.g., antibodies) and cell therapy.

Finally, it is time to consider the use of combination therapy involving multiple cell wall targets to address difficult to treat infections, including certain molds. Combined inhibition of β-(1,3)-glucan synthase by echinocandins and chitin synthase with nikkomycin Z has a profound impact on cellular morphology that significantly impact viability and pathogenicity (Cheung and Hui 2017).

Acknowledgements This work was supported by grants from the US National Institutes of Health (AI109025) and Astellas (Reference Center for Molecular Evaluation of Drug) to D.S.P.

Disclosures

Dr. Perlin serves on scientific advisory boards and/or receives grant support from Merck, Astellas, Synexus, Cidara, and Amplyx.

References

Alexander BD, Johnson MD, Pfeiffer CD, Jimenez-Ortigosa C, Catania J, Booker R, Castanheira M, Messer SA, Perlin DS, Pfaller MA (2013) Increasing echinocandin resistance in *Candida glabrata*: clinical failure correlates with presence of FKS mutations and elevated minimum inhibitory concentrations. Clin Infect Dis 56(12):1724–1732

Arendrup MC, Perlin DS (2014) Echinocandin resistance: an emerging clinical problem? Curr Opin Infect Dis 27(6):484–492

Arendrup MC, Chowdhary A, Astvad KMT, Jorgensen KM (2018a) APX001A In vitro activity against contemporary blood isolates and *Candida auris* determined by the EUCAST reference method. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 62(10)

Arendrup MC, Meletiadis J, Zaragoza O, Jorgensen KM, Marcos-Zambrano LJ, Kanioura L, Cuenca-Estrella M, Mouton JW, Guinea J (2018b) Multicentre determination of rezafungin (CD101) susceptibility of *Candida* species by the EUCAST method. Clin Microbiol Infect 24 (11):1200–1204

Bachmann SP, VandeWalle K, Ramage G, Patterson TF, Wickes BL, Graybill JR, Lopez-Ribot JL (2002) In vitro activity of caspofungin against *Candida albicans* biofilms. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 46(11):3591–3596

Bader JC, Lakota EA, Flanagan S, Ong V, Sandison T, Rubino CM, Bhavnani SM, Ambrose PG (2018) Overcoming the resistance hurdle: pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic target attainment analyses for rezafungin (CD101) against *Candida albicans* and *Candida glabrata*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 62(6)

Bartizal K, Abruzzo G, Trainor C, Krupa D, Nollstadt K, Schmatz D, Schwartz R, Hammond M, Balkovec J, Vanmiddlesworth F (1992) In vitro antifungal activities and in vivo efficacies of 1,3-beta-D-glucan synthesis inhibitors L-671,329, L-646,991, tetrahydroechinocandin B, and L-687,781, a papulacandin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 36(8):1648–1657

Bartizal K, Gill CJ, Abruzzo GK, Flattery AM, Kong L, Scott PM, Smith JG, Leighton CE, Bouffard A, Dropinski JF, Balkovec J (1997) In vitro preclinical evaluation studies with the echinocandin antifungal MK-0991 (L-743,872). Antimicrob Agents Chemother 41(11):2326–2332

Berkow EL, Angulo D, Lockhart SR (2017) In vitro activity of a novel glucan synthase inhibitor, SCY-078, against clinical isolates of *Candida auris*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 61(7)

Brown GD, Denning DW, Gow NA, Levitz SM, Netea MG, White TC (2012) Hidden killers: human fungal infections. Sci Trans Med 4(165):165rv113

Cabib E (1991) Differential inhibition of chitin synthetases 1 and 2 from *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* by polyoxin D and nikkomycins. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 35(1):170–173

Cassone A, Mason RE, Kerridge D (1981) Lysis of growing yeast-form cells of *Candida albicans* by echinocandin: a cytological study. Sabouraudia 19(2):97–110

Chen SC, Slavin MA, Sorrell TC (2011) Echinocandin antifungal drugs in fungal infections: a comparison. Drugs 71(1):11–41

Cheung YY, Hui M (2017) Effects of Echinocandins in combination with Nikkomycin Z against invasive *Candida albicans* bloodstream isolates and the fks mutants. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 61(11)

Clemons CV, Stevens DA (1997) Efficacy of nikkomycin Z against experimental pulmonary blastomycosis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 41(9):2026–2028

Cowen LE, Steinbach WJ (2008) Stress, drugs, and evolution: the role of cellular signaling in fungal drug resistance. Eukaryot Cell 7(5):747–764

Douglas CM (2001) Fungal beta(1,3)-D-glucan synthesis. Med Mycol 39(Suppl 1):55–66

Douglas CM, Foor F, Marrinan JA, Morin N, Nielsen JB, Dahl AM, Mazur P, Baginsky W, Li W, el-Sherbeini M et al (1994) The *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* FKS1 (ETG1) gene encodes an integral membrane protein which is a subunit of 1,3-beta-D-glucan synthase. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 91(26):12907–12911

Ene IV, Walker LA, Schiavone M, Lee KK, Martin-Yken H, Dague E, Gow NA, Munro CA, Brown AJ (2015) Cell wall remodeling enzymes modulate fungal cell wall elasticity and osmotic stress resistance. MBio 6(4):e00986

Eng WK, Faucette L, McLaughlin MM, Cafferkey R, Koltin Y, Morris RA, Young PR, Johnson RK, Livi GP (1994) The yeast FKS1 gene encodes a novel membrane protein, mutations in which confer FK506 and cyclosporin A hypersensitivity and calcineurin-dependent growth. Gene 151(1–2):61–71

Farmakiotis D, Tarrand JJ, Kontoyiannis DP (2014) Drug-resistant *Candida glabrata* infection in cancer patients. Emerg Infect Dis 20(11):1833–1840

Garcia-Effron G, Lee S, Park S, Cleary JD, Perlin DS (2009a) Effect of *Candida glabrata* FKS1 and FKS2 mutations on echinocandin sensitivity and kinetics of 1,3-beta-D-glucan synthase: implication for the existing susceptibility breakpoint. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 53 (9):3690–3699

Garcia-Effron G, Park S, Perlin DS (2009b) Correlating echinocandin MIC and kinetic inhibition of fks1 mutant glucan synthases for *Candida albicans*: implications for interpretive breakpoints. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 53(1):112–122

Gaughran JP, Lai MH, Kirsch DR, Silverman SJ (1994) Nikkomycin Z is a specific inhibitor of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* chitin synthase isozyme Chs3 in vitro and in vivo. J Bacteriol 176 (18):5857–5860

Gebremariam T, Alkhazraji S, Alqarihi A, Jeon HH, Gu Y, KapoorM, Shaw KJ, Ibrahim AS (2019) APX001 Is effective in the treatment of murine invasive pulmonary aspergillosis." Antimicrob Agents Chemother 63(2)

Ghannoum M, Long L, Larkin EL, Isham N, Sherif R, Borroto-Esoda K, Barat S, Angulo D (2018) Evaluation of the antifungal activity of the novel oral glucan synthase inhibitor scy-078, singly and in combination, for the treatment of invasive *Aspergillosis*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 62(6)

Ghannoum M, Long L, HagerC, Borroto-Esoda K, Barat S, Angulo D (2019) Efficacy of Oral Ibrexafungerp (IBX, Formerly SCY-078) in the Treatment of *Candida auris* infection in a murine disseminated model. ASM Microbe2019. San Francisco

Goldberg J, Connolly P, Schnizlein-Bick C, Durkin M, Kohler S, Smedema M, Brizendine E, Hector R, Wheat J (2000) Comparison of nikkomycin Z with amphotericin B and itraconazole for treatment of histoplasmosis in a murine model. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 44(6):1624–1629

Gow NAR, Latge JP, Munro CA (2017) The fungal cell wall: structure, biosynthesis, and function. Microbiol Spectr 5(3)

Gunasekera A, Alvarez FJ, Douglas LM, Wang HX, Rosebrock AP, Konopka JB (2010) Identification of GIG1, a GlcNAc-induced gene in *Candida albicans* needed for normal sensitivity to the chitin synthase inhibitor nikkomycin Z. Eukaryot Cell 9(10):1476–1483

Hager CL, Larkin EL, Long L, Zohra Abidi F, Shaw KJ, Ghannoum MA (2018) In vitro and in vivo evaluation of the antifungal activity of APX001A/APX001 against *Candida auris*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 62(3)

Hall RA, Gow NA (2013) Mannosylation in *Candida albicans*: role in cell wall function and immune recognition. Mol Microbiol 90(6):1147–1161

Hata K, Horii T, Miyazaki M, Watanabe NA, Okubo M, Sonoda J, Nakamoto K, Tanaka K, Shirotori S, Murai N, Inoue S, Matsukura M, Abe S, Yoshimatsu K, Asada M (2011) Efficacy of oral E1210, a new broad-spectrum antifungal with a novel mechanism of action, in murine models of candidiasis, aspergillosis, and fusariosis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 55 (10):4543–4551

Healey KR, Perlin DS (2018) Fungal resistance to echinocandins and the MDR phenomenon in *Candida glabrata*. J Fungi (Basel) 4(3) (pii: E105)

Healey KR, Katiyar SK, Raj S, Edlind TD (2012) CRS-MIS in *Candida glabrata*: sphingolipids modulate echinocandin-Fks interaction. Mol Microbiol 86(2):303–313

Healey KR, Kordalewska M, Jimenez Ortigosa C, Singh A, Berrio I, Chowdhary A, Perlin DS (2018) Limited ERG11 mutations identified in isolates of *Candida auris* directly contribute to reduced azole susceptibility. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 62(10)

Hohl TM, Feldmesser M, Perlin DS, Pamer EG (2008) Caspofungin modulates inflammatory responses to *Aspergillus fumigatus* through stage-specific effects on fungal beta-glucan exposure. J Infect Dis 198(2):176–185

Jimenez-Ortigosa C, Paderu P, Motyl MR, Perlin DS (2014) Enfumafungin derivative MK-3118 shows increased in vitro potency against clinical echinocandin-resistant *Candida* species and *Aspergillus* species isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 58(2):1248–1251

Jimenez-Ortigosa C, Perez WB, Angulo D, Borroto-Esoda K, Perlin DS (2017) De novo acquisition of resistance to SCY-078 in *Candida glabrata* involves FKS mutations that both overlap and are distinct from those conferring echinocandin resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 61(9)

Kinoshita T (2016) Glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI) anchors: biochemistry and cell biology: introduction to a thematic review series. J Lipid Res 57(1):4–5

Kitamura A, Someya K, Hata M, Nakajima R, Takemura M (2009) Discovery of a small-molecule inhibitor of {beta}-1,6-glucan synthesis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 53(2):670–677

Krishnan BR, James KD, Polowy K, Bryant BJ, Vaidya A, Smith S, Laudeman CP (2017) CD101, a novel echinocandin with exceptional stability properties and enhanced aqueous solubility. J Antibiot (Tokyo) 70(2):130–135

Kucharikova S, Tournu H, Lagrou K, Van Dijck P, Bujdakova H (2011) Detailed comparison of *Candida albicans* and *Candida glabrata* biofilms under different conditions and their susceptibility to caspofungin and anidulafungin. J Med Microbiol 60(Pt 9):1261–1269

Kurtz MB, Douglas C, Marrinan J, Nollstadt K, Onishi J, Dreikorn S, Milligan J, Mandala S, Thompson J, Balkovec JM et al (1994a) Increased antifungal activity of L-733,560, a water-soluble, semisynthetic pneumocandin, is due to enhanced inhibition of cell wall synthesis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 38(12):2750–2757

Kurtz MB, Heath IB, Marrinan J, Dreikorn S, Onishi J, Douglas C (1994b) Morphological effects of lipopeptides against *Aspergillus fumigatus* correlate with activities against (1,3)-beta-D-glucan synthase. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 38(7):1480–1489

Lamoth F, Alexander BD (2015) Antifungal activities of SCY-078 (MK-3118) and standard antifungal agents against clinical non-*Aspergillus* mold isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 59(7):4308–4311

Larkin EL, Long L, Isham N, Borroto-Esoda K, Barat S, Angulo D, Wring S, Ghannoum M (2019) A novel 1,3-beta-D-glucan inhibitor, Ibrexafungerp (Formerly SCY-078), shows potent activity in the lower pH environment of vulvovaginitis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 63(5)

Latge JP (2007) The cell wall: a carbohydrate armour for the fungal cell. Mol Microbiol 66 (2):279–290

Latge JP (2010) Tasting the fungal cell wall. Cell Microbiol 12(7):863–872

Latge JP, Beauvais A, Chamilos G (2017) The cell wall of the human fungal pathogen *Aspergillus fumigatus*: biosynthesis, organization, immune response, and virulence. Annu Rev Microbiol 71:99–116

Lee KK, Kubo K, Abdelaziz JA, Cunningham I, de Silva Dantas A, Chen X, Okada H, Ohya Y, Gow NAR (2018) Yeast species-specific, differential inhibition of β-1,3-glucan synthesis by poacic acid and caspofungin. Cell Surf 2018(3):12–25

Lenardon MD, Munro CA, Gow NA (2010) Chitin synthesis and fungal pathogenesis. Curr Opin Microbiol 13(4):416–423

Lepak AJ, Marchillo K, Andes DR (2015) Pharmacodynamic target evaluation of a novel oral glucan synthase inhibitor, SCY-078 (MK-3118), using an in vivo murine invasive candidiasis model. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 59(2):1265–1272

Lepak AJ, Zhao M, VanScoy B, Ambrose PG, Andes DR (2018) Pharmacodynamics of a long-acting echinocandin, CD101, in a neutropenic invasive-candidiasis murine model using an extended-interval dosing design. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 62(2)

Lesage G, Bussey H (2006) Cell wall assembly in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 70(2):317–343

Levin DE (2011) Regulation of cell wall biogenesis in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*: the cell wall integrity signaling pathway. Genetics 189(4):1145–1175

Lewis JS 2nd, Wiederhold NP, Wickes BL, Patterson TF, Jorgensen JH (2013) Rapid emergence of echinocandin resistance in *Candida glabrata* resulting in clinical and microbiologic failure. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 57(9):4559–4561

Mann PA, McLellan CA, Koseoglu S, Si Q, Kuzmin E, Flattery A, Harris G, Sher X, Murgolo N, Wang H, Devito K, de Pedro N, Genilloud O, Kahn JN, Jiang B, Costanzo M, Boone C, Garlisi CG, Lindquist S, Roemer T (2015) Chemical genomics-based antifungal drug discovery: targeting Glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI) precursor biosynthesis. ACS Infect Dis 1(1):59–72

Mansbach R, Shaw KJ, Hodges MR, Coleman S, Fitzsimmons ME (2017) Absorption, distribution, and excretion of [14C]-APX001 after single-dose administration to rats and monkeys. IDWeek 2017. San Diego

Matsukura M (2013) Heterocyclic ring and phosphonoxymethyl group substituted pyridine derivatives and antifungal agent containing same. USA. US 8513287 B2

Mazur P, Baginsky W (1996) In vitro activity of 1,3-beta-D-glucan synthase requires the GTP-binding protein Rho1. J Biol Chem 271(24):14604–14609

McCarthy PJ, Troke PF, Gull K (1985) Mechanism of action of nikkomycin and the peptide transport system of *Candida albicans*. J Gen Microbiol 131(4):775–780

Nett JE, Andes DR (2016) Antifungal agents: spectrum of activity, pharmacology, and clinical indications. Infect Dis Clin North Am 30(1):51–83

Niimi K, Maki K, Ikeda F, Holmes AR, Lamping E, Niimi M, Monk BC, Cannon RD (2006) Overexpression of *Candida albicans* CDR1, CDR2, or MDR1 does not produce significant changes in echinocandin susceptibility. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 50(4):1148–1155

Ong V, Hough G, Schlosser M, Bartizal K, Balkovec JM, James KD, Krishnan BR (2016) Preclinical evaluation of the stability, safety and efficacy of CD101, a novel echinocandin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother

Onishi J, Meinz M, Thompson J, Curotto J, Dreikorn S, Rosenbach M, Douglas C, Abruzzo G, Flattery A, Kong L, Cabello A, Vicente F, Pelaez F, Diez MT, Martin I, Bills G, Giacobbe R, Dombrowski A, Schwartz R, Morris S, Harris G, Tsipouras A, Wilson K, Kurtz MB (2000) Discovery of novel antifungal (1,3)-beta-D-glucan synthase inhibitors. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 44(2):368–377

Orlean PA (1982) (1,3)-beta-D-glucan synthase from budding and filamentous cultures of the dimorphic fungus *Candida albicans*. Eur J Biochem 127(2):397–403

Ostrosky-Zeichner L (2013) *Candida glabrata* and FKS mutations: witnessing the emergence of the true multidrug-resistant *Candida*. Clin Infect Dis 56(12):1733–1734

Pappas PG, Kauffman CA, Andes DR, Clancy CJ, Marr KA, Ostrosky-Zeichner L, Reboli AC, Schuster MG, Vazquez JA, Walsh TJ, Zaoutis TE, Sobel JD (2016) Clinical practice guideline for the management of candidiasis: 2016 update by the infectious diseases society of America. Clin Infect Dis 62(4):e1–e50

Park S, Kelly R, Kahn JN, Robles J, Hsu MJ, Register E, Li W, Vyas V, Fan H, Abruzzo G, Flattery A, Gill C, Chrebet G, Parent SA, Kurtz M, Teppler H, Douglas CM, Perlin DS (2005) Specific substitutions in the echinocandin target Fks1p account for reduced susceptibility of rare laboratory and clinical *Candida* sp. isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 49(8):3264–3273

Pelaez F, Cabello A, Platas G, Diez MT, Gonzalez del Val A, Basilio A, Martan I, Vicente F, Bills GE, Giacobbe RA, Schwartz RE, Onish JC, Meinz MS, Abruzzo GK, Flattery AM, Kong L, Kurtz MB (2000) The discovery of enfumafungin, a novel antifungal compound produced by an endophytic Hormonema species biological activity and taxonomy of the producing organisms. Syst Appl Microbiol 23(3):333–343

Perfect JR (2017) The antifungal pipeline: a reality check. Nat Rev Drug Discov 16(9):603–616

Perlin DS (2015) Echinocandin resistance in *Candida*. Clin Infect Dis 61(Suppl 6):S612–S617

Perlin DS, Rautemaa-Richardson R, Alastruey-Izquierdo A (2017) The global problem of antifungal resistance: prevalence, mechanisms, and management. Lancet Infect Dis 17(12): e383–e392

Pfaller MA, Watanabe N, Castanheira M, Messer SA, Jones RN (2011) Pre-clinical development of antifungal susceptibility test methods for the testing of the novel antifungal agent E1210 versus *Candida*: comparison of CLSI and European committee on antimicrobial susceptibility testing methods. J Antimicrob Chemother 66(11):2581–2584

Pfaller MA, Messer SA, Rhomberg PR, Borroto-Esoda K, Castanheira M (2017a) Differential activity of the oral glucan synthase inhibitor SCY-078 against wild-type and echinocandin-resistant strains of *candida* species. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 61(8)

Pfaller MA, Messer SA, Rhomberg PR, Castanheira M (2017b) Activity of a long-acting echinocandin (CD101) and seven comparator antifungal agents tested against a global collection of contemporary invasive fungal isolates in the SENTRY 2014 antifungal surveillance program. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 61(3) (pii: e02045-16)

Pfaller MA, Huband MD, Flamm RK, Bien PA, Castanheira M (2019) In vitro activity of APX001A (Manogepix) and comparator agents against 1,706 fungal isolates collected during an international surveillance program (2017). Antimicrob Agents Chemother

Pham CD, Iqbal N, Bolden CB, Kuykendall RJ, Harrison LH, Farley MM, Schaffner W, Beldavs ZG, Chiller TM, Park BJ, Cleveland AA, Lockhart SR (2014) Role of FKS mutations in *Candida glabrata*: MIC values, echinocandin resistance, and multidrug resistance. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 58(8):4690–4696

Pittet M, Conzelmann A (2007) Biosynthesis and function of GPI proteins in the yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Biochim Biophys Acta 1771(3):405–420

Preechasuth K, Anderson JC, Peck SC, Brown AJ, Gow NA, Lenardon MD (2015) Cell wall protection by the *Candida albicans* class I chitin synthases. Fungal Genet Biol 82:264–276

Rispail N, Soanes DM, Ant C, Czajkowski R, Grunler A, Huguet R, Perez-Nadales E, Poli A, Sartorel E, Valiante V, Yang M, Beffa R, Brakhage AA, Gow NA, Kahmann R, Lebrun MH, Lenasi H, Perez-Martin J, Talbot NJ, Wendland J, Di Pietro A (2009) Comparative genomics of MAP kinase and calcium-calcineurin signalling components in plant and human pathogenic fungi. Fungal Genet Biol 46(4):287–298

Rosenwald AG, Arora G, Ferrandino R, Gerace EL, Mohammednetej M, Nosair W, Rattila S, Subic AZ, Rolfes R (2016) Identification of genes in *Candida glabrata* conferring altered responses to Caspofungin, a cell wall synthesis inhibitor. G3 (Bethesda) 6(9):2893–2907

Ruiz-Herrera J, San-Blas G (2003) Chitin synthesis as target for antifungal drugs. Curr Drug Targets Infect Disord 3(1):77–91

Sagane K, Umemura M, Ogawa-Mitsuhashi K, Tsukahara K, Yoko-o T, Jigami Y (2011) Analysis of membrane topology and identification of essential residues for the yeast endoplasmic reticulum inositol acyltransferase Gwt1p. J Biol Chem 286(16):14649–14658

Sandison T, Ong V, Lee J, Thye D (2017) Safety and pharmacokinetics of CD101 IV, a novel echinocandin, in healthy adults. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 61(2)

Sawistowska-Schroder ET, Kerridge D, Perry H (1984) Echinocandin inhibition of 1,3-beta-D-glucan synthase from *Candida albicans*. FEBS Lett 173(1):134–138

Schell WA, Jones AM, Borroto-Esoda K, Alexander BD (2017) Antifungal activity of SCY-078 and standard antifungal agents against 178 clinical isolates of resistant and susceptible *Candida* species. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 61(11)

Schmatz DM, Powles M, McFadden DC, Pittarelli LA, Liberator PA, Anderson JW (1991) Treatment and prevention of *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia and further elucidation of the *P. carinii* life cycle with 1,3-b-glucan synthesis inhibitor L-671,329. J Protozool 38(6):151S–153S

Sekiya-Kawasaki M, Abe M, Saka A, Watanabe D, Kono K, Minemura-Asakawa M, Ishihara S, Watanabe T, Ohya Y (2002) Dissection of upstream regulatory components of the Rho1p effector, 1,3-beta-glucan synthase, in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Genetics 162(2):663–676

Shields RK, Nguyen MH, Press EG, Kwa AL, Cheng S, Du C, Clancy CJ (2012) The presence of an FKS mutation rather than MIC is an independent risk factor for failure of echinocandin therapy among patients with invasive candidiasis due to *Candida glabrata*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 56(9):4862–4869

Slater JL, Howard SJ, Sharp A, Goodwin J, Gregson LM, Alastruey-Izquierdo A, Arendrup MC, Warn PA, Perlin DS, Hope WW (2011) Disseminated *Candidiasis* caused by *Candida albicans* with amino acid substitutions in Fks1 at position Ser645 cannot be successfully treated with micafungin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 55(7):3075–3083

Taft CS, Selitrennikoff CP (1990) Cilofungin inhibition of (1-3)-beta-glucan synthase: the lipophilic side chain is essential for inhibition of enzyme activity. J Antibiot (Tokyo) 43 (4):433–437

Traxler P, Gruner J, Auden JA (1977) Papulacandins, a new family of antibiotics with antifungal activity, I. Fermentation, isolation, chemical and biological characterization of papulacandins A, B, C, D and E. J Antibiot (Tokyo) 30(4):289–296

Valdivia RH, Schekman R (2003) The yeasts Rho1p and Pkc1p regulate the transport of chitin synthase III (Chs3p) from internal stores to the plasma membrane. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 100(18):10287–10292

Viriyakosol S, Kapoor M, Okamoto S, Covel J, Soltow QA, Trzoss M, Shaw KJ, Fierer J (2019) APX001 and other Gwt1 inhibitor prodrugs are effective in experimental *Coccidioides immitis* pneumonia. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 63(2)

Wheeler RT, Fink GR (2006) A drug-sensitive genetic network masks fungi from the immune system. PLoS Pathog 2(4):e35

Yadan JC, Gonneau M, Sarthou P, Le Goffic F (1984) Sensitivity to nikkomycin Z in *Candida albicans*: role of peptide permeases. J Bacteriol 160(3):884–888

Zambias RA, Hammond ML, Heck JV, Bartizal K, Trainor C, Abruzzo G, Schmatz DM, Nollstadt KM (1992) Preparation and structure-activity relationships of simplified analogues of the antifungal agent cilofungin: a total synthesis approach. J Med Chem 35(15):2843–2855

Zhang D, Miller MJ (1999) Polyoxins and nikkomycins: progress in synthetic and biological studies. Curr Pharm Des 5(2):73–99

Zhao Y, Perez WB, Jimenez-Ortigosa C, Hough G, Locke JB, Ong V, Bartizal K, Perlin DS (2016) CD101: a novel long-acting echinocandin. Cell Microbiol 18(9):1308–1316

Zhao Y, Prideaux B, Nagasaki Y, Lee MH, Chen PY, Blanc L, Ho H, Clancy CJ, Nguyen MH, Dartois V, Perlin DS (2017) Unraveling drug penetration of echinocandin antifungals at the site of infection in an intra-abdominal abscess model. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 61(10)

Mitochondrial Control of Fungal Cell Walls: Models and Relevance in Fungal Pathogens

Barbara Koch and Ana Traven

Contents

1 Introduction 278
2 Metabolic Aspects of Cell Wall Biogenesis and Links with Mitochondrial Functions 279
3 Mitochondrial Phospholipid Metabolism and Cell Wall Structure 281
4 Mitochondrial Morphology, Cell Wall Structure and Links to Phospholipids 283
5 Models for How Mitochondrial Morphology and Lipid Homeostasis Might Impinge on Cell Wall Integrity 284
6 Mitochondrial Respiration and Cell Wall Structure 286
7 Summary and Future Directions 290
References 291

Abstract Proper structure and function of the fungal cell wall are controlled by metabolic processes, as well as an interplay between a range of cellular organelles. Somewhat surprisingly, mitochondrial function has been shown to be important for proper cell wall biogenesis and integrity. Mitochondria also play a role in the susceptibility of fungi to cell wall-targeting drugs. This is true in a range of fungal species, including important human fungal pathogens. The biochemical mechanisms that explain the roles of mitochondria in cell wall biology have remained elusive, but studies to date strongly support the idea that mitochondrial control over cellular lipid homeostasis is at the core of these processes. Excitingly, recent evidence suggests that the mitochondria–lipid linkages drive resistance to the echinocandin drug caspofungin, a clinically important therapeutic that targets cell wall biosynthesis. Here, we review the state of affairs in mitochondria–fungal cell wall research and

B. Koch · A. Traven (✉)
Infection and Immunity Program, Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, Monash University, Clayton 3800, VIC, Australia
e-mail: ana.traven@monash.edu

B. Koch
Protein, Science and Engineering, Callaghan Innovation, Christchurch 8140, New Zealand

Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology (2020) 425: 277–296
https://doi.org/10.1007/82_2019_183
© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2019
Published Online: 6 December 2019

propose models that could be tested in future studies. Elucidating the mechanisms that drive fungal cell wall integrity through mitochondrial functions holds promise for developing new strategies to combat fungal infections, including the possibility to potentiate the effects of antifungal drugs and curb drug resistance.

1 Introduction

It is estimated that around 300 fungal species are pathogens of humans (Hawksworth and Lücking 2017), with *Candida, Aspergillus, Cryptococcus* and *Pneumocystis* being the most common causes of deadly infections (Brown et al. 2012). Serious fungal infections primarily occur in immunocompromised individuals, for example upon cancer chemotherapy-associated neutropenia or with long-term corticosteroid therapy. Apart from this, hospital procedures, such as central venous catheters and surgeries that break down mucosal barriers also increase the risk of contracting a fungal infection (Perlroth et al. 2007).

Most human fungal pathogens are opportunistic and are either environmental or human commensal species. In their natural habitats, fungi have evolved to be exceptionally well adapted to rapid changes in nutrient supply. This serves them well in the situation of infection, as the availability of many nutrients is limited in the human host (Miramón and Lorenz 2017). The possibility to quickly adjust their metabolism to the conditions they are facing helps fungi survive in many different host niches. Consistent with this, mitochondria have been shown to be important for virulence of human fungal pathogens, reviewed by Calderone et al. (2015) and Shingu-Vazquez and Traven (2011). Mitochondria play several functions in fungal virulence, including in the biology of cell walls, which is the topic that we review here.

The mechanisms that control cell wall biogenesis, remodeling and integrity have been the focus of intense research because this structure maintains viability of the fungal cell and further promotes host cell attachment, invasion, immune recognition and the response of fungi to a major class of antifungal drugs, the echinocandin inhibitors of β-1,3 glucan synthase. The inner wall structure is composed of chitin, β-1,3 glucan and β-1,6 glucan (Gow et al. 2017; Latgé 2007). While the inner core is very similar in different fungal species, the outer layer varies and consists of mannosylated glycoproteins. The composition and structure of the cell wall determine the recognition of fungi by the host's immune system. Mannan, β-glucan, chitin and other cell wall polysaccharides serve as pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs), which are detected by monocytes, macrophages and neutrophils in the circulation and in infected tissues via membrane-localized or soluble pattern recognition receptors (PRRs), including TLR2, TLR4 and Dectin-1 (Netea et al. 2015). Recognition of PAMPs promotes phagocytosis and, ideally, killing of the fungal cell. As such, the fungal cell wall "reveals" the fungus as an invader to the host. In recent years, it has become apparent that fungi have developed mechanisms to facilitate evasion of the immune system by concealing ("*masking*") their cell wall components in response to stimuli such as non-fermentable carbon source and low oxygen (Ballou et al. 2017; Lopes et al.

2018; Pradhan et al. 2018). These results indicate that the structure of the cell wall and its organization respond to the metabolic state of the fungal cell. The nature of the environmental changes causing cell wall rearrangements, chiefly fermentable versus non-fermentable carbon source and the levels of oxygen (Ballou et al. 2017; Ene et al. 2012; Lopes et al. 2018; Pradhan et al. 2018) strongly points to the involvement of mitochondria in this process. Indeed, several lines of evidence show that mitochondrial defects trigger fungal cell wall dysfunction (Dagley et al. 2011; Qu et al. 2012; She et al. 2015, 2013; Sun et al. 2013). In this review, we will summarize the current state of research and explore the models for how mitochondria might influence the fungal cell wall. Of the major human fungal pathogens, this topic has been most intensively studied in *Candida albicans*, which is why this organism will be the predominant model of choice in this review. It is reasonable to expect that much of our understanding of mitochondrial roles in cell wall biology will be broadly applicable across fungal species.

2 Metabolic Aspects of Cell Wall Biogenesis and Links with Mitochondrial Functions

Cell wall biogenesis is a metabolically challenging process, which requires the biosynthesis and remodeling of complex carbohydrates, a regulated interplay of several organelles, intracellular transport and trafficking processes and the function of multiple signaling pathways that respond to cell wall dysfunction. The building blocks of the cell wall are directly linked to metabolism; for example, glucan is a polymer of glucose, chitin is a polymer of *N*-acetyl-glucosamine, and the synthesis of glycosyl-phosphatidylinositol (GPI) anchors present in many cell wall proteins integrates carbohydrate and phospholipid metabolism. The main synthesizing enzymes for chitin and glucan are found in the phospholipid environment of the plasma membrane (meaning that the lipid environment could control their activity), while mannosylation of glycoproteins occurs in endoplasmic reticulum (ER) and the Golgi via the action of membrane enzymes, and GPI anchors for cell wall proteins are attached in the ER. A key pathway to regulate cellular integrity and cell wall maintenance is the protein kinase C (PKC) pathway, which is conserved in most fungal species including human fungal pathogens (Rispail et al. 2009). Furthermore, the Ca^{2+}/calcineurin pathway, the HOG pathway and the RIM101 pathway all contribute to cell wall adaptation in response to environmental conditions and signals (Du and Huang 2016; Román et al. 2019; Yu et al. 2015).

Mitochondria are metabolic hubs, and every eukaryotic cell contains several of them. Mitochondria are best known for their role in oxidative phosphorylation as energy providers, and are home for other major metabolic activities such as the citric acid cycle. Mitochondria are also the location of the biosynthesis of certain amino acids, iron–sulfur clusters and heme. Beyond that, mitochondria are intensively involved in phospholipid metabolism as the majority of phosphatidylethanolamine (PE) for cellular membranes is synthesized in the mitochondria. Mitochondrial morphology is associated with correct organelle function. Under standard growth

conditions, fungal mitochondria most commonly display a network of tubular organelles. This structure is maintained via dynamic fusion and fission events, and further to this, dynamic changes to mitochondrial morphology can occur in response to stress, such as stress-induced fragmentation (Fannjiang et al. 2004).

It is also now appreciated that mitochondria do not exist in isolation within cells. Instead, they are highly interconnected via so-called *membrane contact sites*, which are often mediated by protein tethers and enable the functional connections between mitochondrial membranes and other membrane structures in the cell, including the plasma membrane, the ER, the vacuole, peroxisomes and also lipid droplets (Lackner 2019; Scorrano et al. 2019). The contacts of mitochondria with other organelles are important for the transfer of molecules, such as phospholipids, and further serve to coordinate mitochondrial dynamics, division and inheritance (Jeong et al. 2017; Kawano et al. 2018; Lackner et al. 2013). Multiple mitochondrial tethers have been described in fungi, including ER-mitochondria encounter structure (ERMES) (Kornmann et al. 2009), vacuole and mitochondrial patch (vCLAMP) (Elbaz-Alon et al. 2014) and mitochondria-ER-cortex anchor (MECA) (Lackner et al. 2013), reviewed by Lackner (2019).

Mitochondrial activity influences the structure and organization of the fungal cell wall, but the biochemical mechanisms behind this remain unclear. Substantial research efforts are focused on solving the link between mitochondrial function, mitochondrial morphology and cell wall structure. This interest is also fueled by the demand for new antifungal drugs, as the mitochondrion would be an attractive drug target. Even though mitochondrial factors are generally conserved between fungi and humans, it is possible to identify fungal-selective inhibitors, as exemplified by the cytochrome bc1 inhibitor Inz-1 (Vincent et al. 2016). Additionally, there are mitochondrial proteins that play important roles in the biology of fungal pathogens, but lack structural homolog in mammalian mitochondria or do not exist at all in mammals. Examples are the ER-mitochondria tether ERMES characterized in *C. albicans* and *A. fumigatus* (Becker et al. 2010; Geiβel et al. 2017; Tucey et al. 2016) and the *C. albicans* Goa1 protein needed for assembly of respiratory complex I in the mitochondrial inner membrane (Bambach et al. 2009).

One of the early reports showing that mitochondrial function is connected to cell wall biogenesis came from Lussier et al. (1997). In order to identify genes involved in cell wall assembly, the authors screened transposon-mutagenized baker's yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* for altered sensitivity to calcofluor white and discovered mitochondria-related genes, such as the cytochrome c oxidase assembly factor *COX11*, the phosphatidylglycerol synthase *PGS1* (also known as *PEL1*) and *IFM1*, which encodes the mitochondrial translation initiation factor. Deletion of these genes resulted in hypersensitivity to calcofluor white and in some cases led to additional phenotypes indicative of aberrant cell wall structure, such as sensitivity to zymolyase and in the case of the *pgs1* mutant reduced N-acetylglucosamine (chitin) (it should be noted that for the *pgs1,* mutant the transposon insertion was in the promoter region, rather than the coding sequence) (Lussier et al. 1997). A few years later, Page et al. identified 17 deletion mutants of *S. cerevisiae* with impaired respiration and ATP metabolism that showed increased resistance to the K1 killer toxin (Pagé et al. 2003).

The K1 pore-forming toxin is produced by K1 killer yeast strains and requires the presence of β-1,6-glucan and O-mannosylation on the cell wall to cause cellular damage (Hutchins and Bussey 1983). Mitochondrial mutants of several *Candida* species and *S. cerevisiae* are hypersensitive to the echinocandins (Chamilos et al. 2006; Dagley et al. 2011; Sarinová et al. 2007) and can also be hypersensitive to cell wall inhibitors such as congo red and calcofluor white (Dagley et al. 2011; Qu et al. 2012; She et al. 2016, 2015, 2013; Sun et al. 2013). Links between mitochondria and the cell wall have also been made in *C. neoformans* through Vps45, an SM (Sec1/Mun18) protein found to have partial mitochondrial localization and impact on mitochondrial and cell wall functions (Caza et al. 2018). Recent work in *A. fumigatus* demonstrated a link between respiratory complex I activity and the ability of cells to grow at high concentrations of the echinocandin caspofungin (the so-called *paradoxical effect*) (Aruanno et al. 2019). This suggests links between mitochondria respiration and cell wall stress responses in this pathogenic species.

3 Mitochondrial Phospholipid Metabolism and Cell Wall Structure

Mitochondria display a complex phospholipid membrane system consisting of an outer and an inner mitochondrial membrane. These two membranes differ in structure and lipid composition, which creates a specific environment for optimal membrane and enzyme function. Mitochondria are able to synthesize some of their phospholipids on their own, but they are also dependent on phospholipid supply from the ER; for review see Tatsuta et al.(2014). The capacity of mitochondria to synthesize their own lipids is restricted to phosphatidylglycerol (PG), cardiolipin (CL) and phosphatidylethanolamines (PE). Enzymes synthesizing phosphatidylcholine (PC), phosphatidic acid (PA), phosphatidylinositol (PI) and phosphatidylserine (PS) are missing in mitochondria. Therefore, these organelles are strictly dependent on the import of these lipids. In *S. cerevisiae*, mitochondria represent the major source of cellular PE, although different routes for PE synthesis exist in various organelles such as the Golgi apparatus, ER or lipid droplets. For PE synthesis in mitochondria, PS is imported from the ER and the mitochondrial phosphatidylserine decarboxylase Psd1p decarboxylates PS to form PE, which is then redistributed within the cell (Birner et al. 2001; Clancey et al. 1993). While we can assume this to be conserved, whether mitochondria-derived PE predominates in other fungal species remains to be directly determined.

The contribution of mitochondria to phospholipid homeostasis of the cell has been implicated in the regulation of cell wall integrity. Deletion of *PGS1*, the mitochondrial phosphatidylglycerol phosphate synthase, deprives the cell of CL and PG. Loss of PG and CL results in hypersensitivity to cell wall perturbing agents such as caffeine and calcofluor white and reduces the β-1,6 and β-1,3 glucan levels in *S. cerevisiae* (Zhong et al. 2005). In the *pgs1* deletion mutant, chitin is mislocalized from bud scars to being along the cell walls and its levels increased

threefold (Zhong et al. 2005). Upregulation of chitin levels to fortify the wall is a typical response to cell wall dysfunction, and therefore, this phenotype further underscores a role for *PGS1* in cell wall integrity in *S. cerevisiae*. The reduction in glucan levels in the *pgs1* deletion mutant was attributed to decrease glucan synthase activity and dysfunction of cell wall integrity pathway activation (Zhong et al. 2007). The function of CL in cell wall integrity is also shown by the fact that inactivation of the cardiolipin synthase gene *CRD1* in *S. cerevisiae* causes hyper-susceptibility to caspofungin, which belongs to the echinocandin family of antifungal compounds (Sarinová et al. 2007). CL is only found in mitochondrial membranes (mainly in the inner membrane), posing the question of what its roles in cell wall biogenesis might be. Although speculative at the moment, the answer could be related to signaling for cell wall integrity. In mammalian cells, CL has been shown to play important signaling functions at mitochondria (Dudek 2017), and CL has also been implicated in cell cycle control signaling in *S. cerevisiae* under conditions of respiratory deficiency (Chen et al. 2010a, b).

Deletion of *PGS1* not only compromises phospholipid homeostasis in mitochondria, but also results in loss of the mitochondrial genome (mtDNA) and therefore leads to respiratory deficient cells. In itself, loss of mtDNA introduces a drastic change in cell wall composition compared to wild type cells, mainly decreasing the levels of glucans (Zhong et al. 2005). Whereas the links between mitochondrial function and cell wall integrity are undoubtable, the relationship between mitochondrial membrane lipids and loss of mtDNA complicates the mechanistic interpretation of the *pgs1* mutant data—is the loss of cell wall glucan resulting from changes in lipid composition or from respiratory deficiency? This consideration is pertinent to other mitochondrial mutants as well, as many mitochondrial mutations have indirect effects on mtDNA stability, and mitochondrial membrane lipids are intimately linked with the function and assembly of the respiratory chain.

In addition to PG and CL, PS and PE are also important for proper cell wall biogenesis. The phosphatidylserine synthase Cho1 catalyzes the production of PS from cytidyldiphosphate-diacylglycerol (CDP-DAG) and serine in the ER. PS travels from the ER to mitochondria, where it serves as a substrate for mitochondrial Psd1 to form PE. Deletion of *cho1* in *C. albicans* leads to cell wall integrity deficiencies, which result in abnormalities of the ultrastructure of the cell wall, higher levels of chitin and hypersensitivity to SDS and caspofungin (Chen et al. 2010a, b). The *cho1* mutant has a drastic reduction in PS and also displays lower levels of PE (due to PS being a PE precursor) (Chen et al. 2010a, b). A role for PE in cell wall integrity in *C. albicans* has been demonstrated directly by the phenotypes of the mutant that lacks mitochondrial *PSD1*, and the double mutant of *PSD1* and the backup phosphatidylserine decarboxylase *PSD2*. These mutants are hyper-susceptible to caspofungin and their reduced growth can be rescued by osmotic stabilization (Chen et al. 2010a, b).

4 Mitochondrial Morphology, Cell Wall Structure and Links to Phospholipids

The lipid composition of mitochondrial membranes is connected to mitochondrial morphology, as mutants with impaired mitochondrial lipid homeostasis can display a disrupted structure of mitochondria (Dagley et al. 2011; Kornmann et al. 2009). Several mitochondrial morphology mutants in *S. cerevisiae* show hypersensitivity toward caspofungin and calcofluor white. A high proportion of these mutants is connected to phospholipid homeostasis, including *SAM37, MDM10, MDM35, MDM31* and *UPS2* (Dagley et al. 2011). Deletions of *MDM10, MDM35, MDM31* and *UPS2* result in altered levels of PE, and for *MDM10* and *MDM31* also in CL (Kornmann et al. 2009; Osman et al. 2009; Tamura et al. 2009). Mdm10 is located at the outer mitochondrial membrane as a subunit of the ERMES mitochondria-ER tether, as well as a subunit of the sorting and assembly machinery (SAM) involved in the biogenesis of mitochondrial outer membrane proteins (Kornmann et al. 2009; Meisinger et al. 2004). Loss of the SAM subunit Sam37 in *S. cerevisiae* results in a 50% slower conversion of PS to PE and PC in mitochondria (Dagley et al. 2011), showing a role for Sam37 in phospholipid homeostasis. Mdm31 is in the inner mitochondrial membrane and shows genetic interactions with ERMES (Dimmer et al. 2005), and Mdm35, found in the mitochondrial intermembrane space, also contributes to phospholipid homeostasis (Osman et al. 2009; Tamura et al. 2009).

The functions of ERMES and SAM in cell wall functions have been further explored in *C. albicans*. Deletion of the *C. albicans SAM37* gene results in a cell wall characterized by increased thickness, although it displays the same relative levels of mannan, β-1,6 and β-1,3 glucans as the wild type (Qu et al. 2012). The *sam37* deletion strain is also avirulent in the mouse bloodstream infection model (Qu et al. 2012). It should also be mentioned that deletion of *Sam37* results in loss of mtDNA (Qu et al. 2012). As *C. albicans* is considered a so-called petite-negative organism, only cells which are able to maintain their mtDNA will survive. Therefore, *sam37* deletion mutants are slow-growing and only viable because a proportion of cells kept their mtDNA and respiratory proficiency (Qu et al. 2012). Conditional inactivation of the ERMES subunit *MMM1* in *C. albicans* led to a rapid change in mitochondrial morphology and loss of tubular structure (Tucey et al. 2016). Hyphae of the *mmm1* mutant are of normal morphology with a tendency to form shorter filaments, and the *mmm1* mutant showed reduced exposed β-1,3 glucan on the cell wall possibly due to slower hyphal extension (Tucey et al. 2016). Further indication of a role for ERMES in cell wall integrity is that *C. albicans* mutants in the core subunits *MMM1*, *MDM10* and *MDM12* display higher susceptibility to caspofungin (Koch et al. 2017). Deletion of the *C. albicans* gene encoding the mitochondrial GTPase Gem1, which is associated with ERMES in *S. cerevisiae*, also resulted in loss of tubular mitochondrial morphology, cell wall stress susceptibility and delayed activation of the cell wall stress signaling pathway orchestrated by the kinase Cek1 (Koch et al. 2017). These data suggest links between mitochondrial morphology and cell wall signaling in *C. albicans*.

5 Models for How Mitochondrial Morphology and Lipid Homeostasis Might Impinge on Cell Wall Integrity

The mechanisms by which mitochondria influence cell wall biogenesis via their roles in phospholipid homeostasis and organelle morphology are not solved yet. Some possibilities can be proposed (Fig. 1). It has recently been shown that proteins associated with cell wall biogenesis are also located in mitochondria. Recent proteome characterization in *S. cerevisiae* of highly purified mitochondria using stringent criteria identified about 200 proteins that were not yet annotated as mitochondrial proteins (Vögtle et al. 2017). Among them were the factors involved in cell wall biogenesis such as Bgl2 (an endo-β-1,3 glucanase involved in cell wall maintenance) and the glucanase Exg2, as well as β-1,3 glucanosyltransferases from the GAS family (Gas3, Gas5) for which the precise roles in cell wall integrity remain to be understood (Vögtle et al. 2017). Rho1, the GTP-binding protein that regulates the activity of the β-1,3 glucan synthase Fks1 was also found to be localized in mitochondria (Reinders et al. 2006; Renvoisé et al. 2014; Zahedi et al. 2006), and surprisingly so was Fks1 itself, although with low coverage (Sickmann

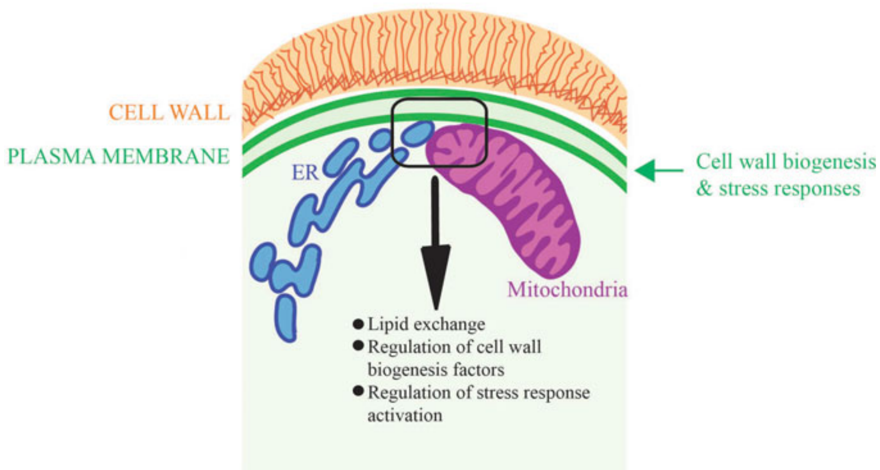


Fig. 1 Model for how mitochondrial morphology and lipids homeostasis might regulate cell wall integrity. Cell wall biogenesis enzymes and various regulators of signaling are localized in the plasma membrane. As such, the plasma membrane is the location of cell wall biogenesis and it is important in signal transduction mechanisms responding to cell wall stress. Physical closeness mediated by membrane contact sites between mitochondria, the ER and the plasma membrane (see black box) might play a role in establishing a microenvironment and lipid composition that promotes proper cell wall biogenesis and stress responses. In baker's yeast *S. cerevisiae,* multiple protein tethers have been described, which mediate membrane-to-membrane contacts with mitochondria and bring them in proximity to other organelles, reviewed by Lackner (2019). Membrane contact sites do not allow for membrane fusion, but the membranes are close, from <80 nm to being significantly further apart (approximately 300 nm, such as in the case of the plasma membrane tethering protein Num1 of the MECA complex) (Ping et al. 2016) and reviewed by Scorrano et al. (2019). Disruption of mitochondrial morphology would be expected to impair contacts with other organelles, which could in turn impact on the membrane-localized processes that are important in cell wall biology (biosynthesis, integrity and stress responses).

et al. 2003; Vögtle et al. 2017). Mitochondrial localization of these cell wall biogenesis factors or regulators is surprising, and it should be kept in mind that these findings come from "omics" studies and future research will need to clarify if this is a case of "localization" or "association" with mitochondria. Mitochondria are known to be tethered to the plasma membrane via the MECA tether (Lackner et al. 2013). These membrane contact sites essentially bring mitochondria in physical proximity to the location of cell wall biogenesis—the plasma membrane (Fig. 1). By fluorescence microscopy, the MECA complex can be observed all around cell periphery of yeast cells (*S. cerevisiae*), including at the mother-bud neck (Kraft and Lackner 2017). To our knowledge, the MECA complex has not been visualized in filamentous hyphal species, but it is worth noting that, for example in *Neurospora*, mitochondria are found in high numbers at the growing hyphal tip (where cell wall synthesis occurs) (Levina and Lew 2006). Fks1 is an integral plasma membrane protein, and its regulator Rho1 also localizes to the membrane. It is possible that their mitochondrial association is a result of their co-localization to membrane contact sites between the mitochondrial outer membrane and the plasma membrane. A speculative model might be that the lipid composition of mitochondrial membranes, dynamic regulation of mitochondrial morphology and the impact of these processes on mitochondria–plasma membrane contacts might play a role in controlling the activity of these cell wall factors. Rho1 is an important regulator of the PKC-dependent cell wall integrity pathway, and roles of mitochondrial PG and CL have been proposed in PKC pathway activation in *S. cerevisiae* (Zhong et al. 2007). Indeed, cell wall stress signaling fundamentally originates at the plasma membrane and in *C. albicans* inactivation of the mitochondrial GTPase Gem1 delayed Cek1 pathway activation in response to cell wall stress (Koch et al. 2017).

The membrane linkages between mitochondria, the ER and the plasma membrane could further facilitate the exchange of lipids and regulate the mitochondria–lipids–cell wall linkages. We have previously proposed that mitochondrial effects on phospholipid homeostasis might impact on the activity of glucan or chitin synthases, which are integral plasma membrane enzymes (Dagley et al. 2011; Shingu-Vazquez and Traven 2011). A recent example from *Aspergillus fumigatus* showed an indirect way for mitochondria to influence the lipid composition of the plasma membrane and with that the susceptibility of glucan synthase FKS1 to caspofungin (Satish et al. 2019). Lipid profiling by mass spectrometry showed that the growth with caspofungin triggers an increase in dihydrosphingosine and phytosphingosine in lipid fractions containing Fks1, and the authors postulated that these lipid changes trigger a distinct conformation of Fks1 and limit the interaction with caspofungin (Satish et al. 2019). This effect of caspofungin on the lipid microenvironment of Fks1 was linked to caspofungin-induced mitochondrial ROS production (Satish et al. 2019). How exactly mitochondrial ROS leads to an altered sphingolipid composition still needs to be investigated, but the proximity of mitochondria, the ER and the plasma membrane places the relevant organelles together. In *S. cerevisiae,* mitochondria-derived ROS activates TORC2 signaling regulating the early steps of sphingolipid biosynthesis (Niles et al. 2014; Satish et al. 2019), and sphingolipid homeostasis more generally has been connected to

mitochondrial functions, including the mitochondria–nucleus signaling pathway called the retrograde response that responds to mitochondrial dysfunction (Spincemaille et al. 2014). Similar mechanisms might be involved in the caspofungin–mitochondria–sphingolipids process described in *A. fumigatus*.

Mitochondrial lipid functions, particularly in PE synthesis, could further impact on cell wall integrity via effects on GPI anchors. These anchors are added to proteins in the ER via the transaminidase enzyme complex. This concept is supported by phenotypes of the *sam37* mutant in *S. cerevisiae*, which shows slower conversion of PS to PE and lower protein levels of the GPI-anchored β-1,3 glucanosyltraferase Gas1 (Dagley et al. 2011). This can be partially rescued by exogenous ethanolamine, which can serve as a precursor for PE synthesis via the non-mitochondrial Kennedy pathway (Dagley et al. 2011).

6 Mitochondrial Respiration and Cell Wall Structure

Yeasts use two different pathways to meet their energy demands, namely respiration and fermentation. *S. cerevisiae* uses a combination of fermentation and respiration with a strong preference toward fermentation even when oxygen levels are high; whereas, *C. albicans*, *C. parapsilosis*, *C. tropicalis* and other related species continue respiration even in the presence of high levels of fermentable sugar (Veiga et al. 2000). *C. albicans* and related species possess the electron transport complexes I-V located in the inner mitochondrial membrane and utilize the canonical electron transport chain (ETC). They also harbor alternative oxidases (Aox1 and Aox2) permitting respiration even when the classical ETC is compromised (Aoki and Ito-Kuwa 1984). *C. glabrata*, similarly to *S. cerevisiae,* does not possess a complex I (Koszul et al. 2003).

Fungal mutants deficient in mitochondrial respiration tend to exhibit hypersensitivity to cell wall-targeting drugs, indicating that their cell wall structure and organization are altered (Fig. 2). The contribution of complex I of the ETC toward cell wall integrity is one of the best studied, especially the roles of the *C. albicans* proteins Goa1, Nuo1, Nuo2 and Ndh51. The function of Goa1 likely lies in regulating the activity of complex I; whereas, Nuo1 and Nuo2 assist in the assembly of this complex, and NDH51 is a complex I subunit. What makes these proteins of special interest is that only Ndh51 is highly conserved in mammals, while GOA1 is found only in the CTG clade of *Candida* spp., which includes most of the human pathogenic *Candida* species (Bambach et al. 2009). Nuo1 is found in fungi, algae and plants, and Nuo2 is fungal specific (She et al. 2015). Inactivation of the genes *GOA1, NUO1* or *NUO2* results in reduced energy production, which is mainly attributed to reduced function of complex I (She et al. 2015). Loss of any one of these genes also results in increased ROS levels and, in case of *GOA1*, increased sensitivity to congo red and calcofluor white (Li et al. 2016; She et al. 2013). A transcriptomic analysis of *C. albicans* deletion strains of the genes *GOA1, NUO1, NUO2* and *NDH51* confirmed that genes involved in cell wall biogenesis and integrity were differentially regulated in all four mutants and showed that the loss of

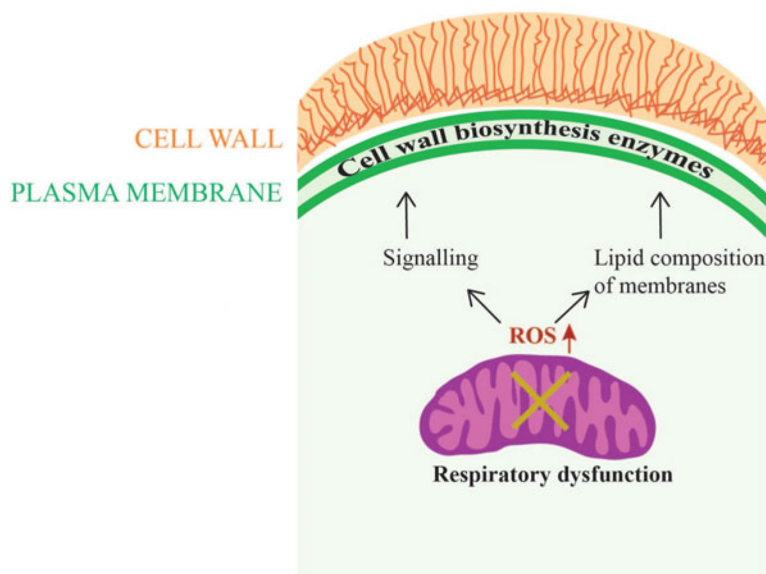


Fig. 2 ROS induced by respiratory blocks impact on cell wall structure and drug resistance. Genetic or biochemical inhibition of mitochondrial respiration triggers production of ROS. Moreover, caspofugin has been shown to induce mitochondrial ROS production in *A. fumigatus* (Satish et al. 2019). Intriguingly, mitochondrial ROS induction changes the sphingolipid composition of the glucan synthase environment in the membrane, triggering caspofungin resistance. ROS could further act as a signaling molecule for cell wall integrity.

GOA1, NUO1 or *NUO2* had more effect on cell wall-related pathways than the loss of *NDH51* (She et al. 2015). The absence of these three factors in mammalian cells and their effect on mitochondria and cell wall integrity would make them acceptable targets for new antifungal drugs. Therefore, several studies have been conducted with more detailed analyses of the consequences of their loss on the cell wall.

A transcriptomics study showed that 86 genes involved in cell wall biogenesis, integrity and adhesion including *FKS1*, *PHR1* and *PHR3* and the β-1,2 mannosyltransferase *BMT3* are downregulated in the *goa1* mutant (She et al. 2013; Sun et al. 2013). This accounts for about 5.4% of all downregulated genes (She et al. 2013). Of note, although the genes are related to cell wall functions, not all of the 86 genes encode cell wall proteins or biogenesis/remodeling factors, as genes encoding factors related to the cell membrane, signaling, stress response and various proteins found to be antigenic are also included. Downregulation of these genes does not come without consequences for the cell wall. In the *goa1* mutant, the outer cell wall surface comprising N-linked mannans is less fibrillar, fibrils are shorter, and the inner cell wall is more electron transparent, but its diameter is similar to wild type cells (She et al. 2016). The overall hexose content of the cell wall in the *goa1* mutant is reduced; however, β-1,3 glucan and chitin are less affected (She et al. 2016).

N-linked mannan/mannoproteins are important immunogenic moieties, and they confer a net negative charge to the cell wall. While a wild type *C. albicans* cell wall comprises high, intermediate and low molecular weight mannans, the *goa1* mutant lacks the high and intermediate weight mannans suggesting that either less of mannan is synthesized or that mannan instability is occurring (She et al. 2016). Furthermore, a reduction in β-mannosyl but not α-mannosyl linkages is observed (She et al. 2016). While the glucan content is not affected in the *goa1* mutant, its structure could be. Compared to the wild type strain, in the *goa1* mutant the frequency of β-1, 6 glucan side chains is increased (two times higher), but the chains display reduced length (She et al. 2016).

Considering the cell wall changes of the *goa1* mutant, it appears that loss of a functional complex I of the ETC, which goes hand in hand with a loss of energetic capacity and metabolic flexibility of cells, appears to have very specific effects on the cell wall (She et al. 2016). In agreement with the observed cell wall changes, the *goa1* mutant is phagocytosed less by mouse macrophages and neutrophils than wild type *C. albicans*, but is killed as much (She et al. 2013). The *goa1* mutant has additionally shown to be non-responsive to hypoxia in terms of changes to the cell wall that result in masking of β-glucan, which was not occurring in the mutant (Pradhan et al. 2018). This provides a further mechanism by which mitochondrial respiration would determine cell surface architecture in infection niches (where hypoxia occurs), thereby influencing how the immune system detects *C. albicans*. A detailed analysis of the cell walls of the *nuo1* and *nuo2* null mutant strains has still to be conducted, but it is known that these strains are avirulent in a mouse model and have a similar transcriptional pattern to the *goa1* mutant (She et al. 2015).

Proteomic investigations of the *goa1*, *nuo1* and *nuo2* deletion mutants showed that even though downregulation of the β-1,2 mannosyltransferases was observable on a transcriptional level and phenotypic alterations in N-linked mannans were measurable after the inactivation of *GOA1*, there were no alterations in β-1,2 mannosyltransferase protein amounts (She et al. 2018). Nevertheless, protein levels of the alpha 1,3 mannosyltransferase Mnn15 were reduced, as were the levels of proteins involved in phospholipid and ergosterol biosynthesis, which were even more affected in the *nuo1* and *nuo2* mutants than in the *goa1* mutant (She et al. 2018). These links between complex I, respiration and lipid homeostasis suggest again that it might not always be possible to uncouple the various functions of mitochondria with respect to cell wall biogenesis and integrity.

Respiration can also be inhibited chemically. In the context of therapy, however, standard respiratory inhibitors, such as cyanide or antimycin A, cannot be used as they are cytotoxic. To test the inhibition of respiration with a compound that is well tolerated by humans, Duvenage et al. used the nitric oxide (NO) donor sodium nitroprusside (SNP) to test the effects of respiration inhibition in *C. albicans*. SNP is a widely used medication to lower blood pressure and might have the potential to be repurposed as a drug against *C. albicans*. Nitric oxide (NO) released by SNP transiently inhibits complex IV of the ETC. Duvenage et al. (2019) also investigated the effects of inhibition of the alternative oxidases Aox1 and Aox2 on the cell wall of *C. albicans* using salicylhydroxamic acid (SHAM). In contrast to the effects resulting

from a loss of function of complex I, which modifies the cell wall in a way that leads to less recognition of *C. albicans* by immune cells, transient inhibition of complex IV by NO and additional inhibition of the alternative oxidases by SHAM, results in an increased recognition by macrophages (Duvenage et al. 2019). Similar to loss of function of complex I, treatment with SNP in combination with SHAM leads to hypersensitivity to congo red and calcofluor white, indicating differences in cell wall structure, but investigation of the cell wall revealed that the relative levels of chitin, glucan and mannan were not affected (Duvenage et al. 2019). Only the outer cell wall exhibited a reduction in thickness (Duvenage et al. 2019). Transcriptional analyses did indeed identify downregulation of several genes involved in chitin synthesis and organization. In contrast, genes in mannan and glucan biosynthesis and organization were upregulated after exposure to SNP and SHAM. As there were no observable changes in relative cell wall composition, differential expression of these genes likely leads to cell wall rearrangements (Duvenage et al. 2019). In line with this assumption, inhibition of complex IV by SNP leads to exposure of the normally hidden chitin layer of the cell wall (Duvenage et al. 2019). In addition to chitin, β-1,3 glucan was also more exposed on the cell surface as it was recognized by the receptor Dectin-1. All of these changes are in accordance with the increased recognition by macrophages in treated *C. albicans* cells.

Intriguingly, SNP and SHAM treatment led to caspofungin resistance and an accumulation of lipid droplets (Duvenage et al. 2019). This effect is dependent on the presence of the transcription factor Upc2, as deletion of *UPC2* abolishes the resistance to caspofungin of SNP and SHAM-treated cells (Duvenage et al. 2019). This again provides a link between respiration and lipid homeostasis, as Upc2 is a regulator of ergosterol biosynthesis. As discussed above, mitochondrial ROS stress was shown to trigger alterations to the plasma membrane lipids surrounding glucan synthase Fks1, the target of caspofungin, and causes resistance to this drug in *A. fumigatus* (Satish et al. 2019). Inhibition of complex IV and the alternative respiratory pathway leads to changes in lipid metabolism as can be judged by the appearance of lipid droplets on a microscopic level, on a transcriptional level downregulation of *CHO1* and *CHO2* (indicating effects on phospholipid metabolism), downregulation of the expression of ergosterol and linoleic acid biosynthesis genes, and caspofungin resistance depended on *UPC2* on a genetic level (Duvenage et al. 2019). It is possible that changes in the lipid microenvironment of Fks1 are also the reason for caspofungin resistance in *C. albicans*. It is not known whether these changes in lipid metabolism are also driven by increased ROS stress that might be a result of inhibition of complex IV and the alternative respiratory pathway.

Even though inhibition of complex IV by SNP caused increased macrophage recognition due to exposure of chitin and β-1,3 glucan, virulence was increased in a systemic mouse model, and the reason for this is rather surprising (Duvenage et al. 2019). SNP causes rapid activation of filamentation, while this effect is not observable with SHAM-treated cells (Duvenage et al. 2019). The development of hyphae is a key virulence trait of *C. albicans.* Several studies have indicated that exogenous and endogenous nitric oxide levels influence the morphological switch from yeast to hyphal growth of *C. albicans*. For example, exposure to SNP induced

germination in several *C. albicans* wild type strains (Abaitua et al. 1999). It was also shown that a deletion strain of *YHB1*, the main NO detoxifying enzyme in *C. albicans*, results in hyper-filamentation possibly due to elevated endogenous NO levels (Hromatka et al. 2005). We have recently shown that the restriction of endogenous NO by scavengers inhibits the ability of *C. albicans* to filament (Koch et al. 2018). In the same study, we demonstrated that the compound mdivi-1 triggers reprogramming of metabolism-related genes including a reduction in the expression of genes important for mitochondrial respiration and lowers the levels of endogenous NO (Koch et al. 2018). Collectively, these studies highlight the complex interactions between mitochondrial activity, cell wall changes, immune interactions and fungal cell morphology, which ultimately conspire to drive virulence of *C. albicans*.

7 Summary and Future Directions

It is clear that metabolic pathways and mitochondrial functions regulate cell wall structure of fungal pathogens. The challenge now is to understand the mechanistic aspects and how these processes could be targeted therapeutically. For example, while several fungal mitochondrial mutants display increased susceptibility to cell wall inhibition and the echinocandin drugs, two recent studies, one in *C. albicans* and another one in *A. fumigatus*, showed the opposite—that mitochondrial dysfunction can in some cases trigger echinocandin resistance (Duvenage et al. 2019; Satish et al. 2019). Complex changes in cell wall structure have been reported as a result of mitochondrial dysfunction, making it difficult to predict how a certain mitochondrial mutation will affect cell wall structure and drug susceptibility. Several years ago, in 2011, we wrote a review proposing that roles in ensuring proper cellular lipid homeostasis underscore the functions of mitochondria in cell wall biogenesis and drug susceptibility (Shingu-Vazquez and Traven 2011). This prediction still holds—a leitmotiv in the studies that we discussed here is that the changes in lipid pathways are common in mitochondrial mutants that show cell wall phenotypes. Furthermore, a change in the lipid environment of glucan synthase induced by mitochondrial dysfunction has now been directly implicated in resistance to the echinocandin caspofungin, with potential clinical relevance (Satish et al. 2019). It is interesting that it has been suggested that ROS production in mitochondria impacts on lipid homeostasis and caspofungin susceptibility (Satish et al. 2019). Blocks in the respiratory chain are known inducers of ROS, and therefore, lipid homeostasis defects could underlie the cell wall phenotypes observed in mitochondrial respiration mutants more broadly. In addition, we propose that, when thinking about mitochondria–cell wall–lipid functional networks, we should keep in mind the physical connections between membranes in eukaryotic cells. Mitochondria are physically tethered to several other organelles, including the plasma membrane which is a critical site for cell wall biogenesis and cell wall stress responses. While our model in Fig. 1 on how the membrane contact sites of

mitochondria might promote cell wall biosynthesis and stress responses are speculative at the moment, we hope it will promote future research of the roles of mitochondria in cell wall biology.

As discussed in this review, one key issue with understanding how exactly mitochondria impact on the cell wall is the pleiotropic nature of mitochondrial mutations. One experimental solution is to use conditional repressible mutants, in which some of the direct and indirect effects of mitochondrial mutations might be temporally separable. An example of this strategy from our own work is with the ERMES complex in *C. albicans*, for which conditional inactivation revealed that a mitochondrial morphology defect precedes fitness and lipid phenotypes (Tucey et al. 2016). This allowed us to more directly link mitochondrial morphology to virulence-related pathways (Tucey et al. 2016). We also note that in fungal and mammalian species mitochondria act as a signaling platform, for example through ROS production, but also through localization of important factors to mitochondria under specific circumstances. The data showing that in *S. cerevisiae* several cell wall biogenesis factors and regulators such as Rho1 localize to mitochondria are intriguing, but it should be noted that these localization data come from high-throughput studies, and it needs to be shown whether this is a true localization or association with mitochondria. More directed approaches for testing mitochondrial association of these cell wall regulators in fungal pathogens under various conditions should be done, and then roles in signaling studied were warranted.

Acknowledgements Work in the Traven laboratory on mitochondrial functions in *C. albicans* has been supported by grants from the National Health and Medical Research Council (APP1023973 and APP1101562) (to A.T.). B. K. was supported by the Erwin Schroedinger Fellowship from the Austrian Science Fund.

References

Abaitua F, Rementería A, San Millan R, Eguzkiza A, Rodriguez JA, Pontón J, Sevilla MJ (1999) In vitro survival and germination of *Candida albicans* in the presence of nitrogen compounds. Microbiol Read Engl 145(Pt 7):1641–1647. https://doi.org/10.1099/13500872-145-7-1641

Aoki S, Ito-Kuwa S (1984) The appearance and characterization of cyanide-resistant respiration in the fungus *Candida albicans*. Microbiol Immunol 28:393–406

Aruanno M, Bachmann D, Sanglard D, Lamoth F (2019) Link between heat shock protein 90 and the mitochondrial respiratory chain in the caspofungin stress response of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 63. https://doi.org/10.1128/AAC.00208-19

Ballou ER, Avelar GM, Childers DS, Mackie J, Bain JM, Wagener J, Kastora SL, Panea MD, Hardison SE, Walker LA, Erwig LP, Munro CA, Gow NAR, Brown GD, MacCallum DM, Brown AJP (2017) Lactate signalling regulates fungal β-glucan masking and immune evasion. Nat Microbiol 2:16238. https://doi.org/10.1038/nmicrobiol.2016.238

Bambach A, Fernandes MP, Ghosh A, Kruppa M, Alex D, Li D, Fonzi WA, Chauhan N, Sun N, Agrellos OA, Vercesi AE, Rolfes RJ, Calderone R (2009) Goa1p of *Candida albicans* localizes to the mitochondria during stress and is required for mitochondrial function and virulence. Eukaryot Cell 8:1706–1720. https://doi.org/10.1128/EC.00066-09

Becker JM, Kauffman SJ, Hauser M, Huang L, Lin M, Sillaots S, Jiang B, Xu D, Roemer T (2010) Pathway analysis of *Candida albicans* survival and virulence determinants in a murine infection model. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 107:22044–22049. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1009845107

Birner R, Bürgermeister M, Schneiter R, Daum G (2001) Roles of phosphatidylethanolamine and of its several biosynthetic pathways in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Mol Biol Cell 12:997–1007. https://doi.org/10.1091/mbc.12.4.997

Brown GD, Denning DW, Gow NAR, Levitz SM, Netea MG, White TC (2012) Hidden killers: human fungal infections. Sci Transl Med 4:165rv13. https://doi.org/10.1126/scitranslmed.3004404

Calderone R, Li D, Traven A (2015) System-level impact of mitochondria on fungal virulence: to metabolism and beyond. FEMS Yeast Res 15:fov027. https://doi.org/10.1093/femsyr/fov027

Caza M, Hu G, Nielson ED, Cho M, Jung WH, Kronstad JW (2018) The Sec1/Munc18 (SM) protein Vps45 is involved in iron uptake, mitochondrial function and virulence in the pathogenic fungus *Cryptococcus neoformans*. PLoS Pathog 14:e1007220. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.ppat.1007220

Chamilos G, Lewis RE, Kontoyiannis DP (2006) Inhibition of *Candida parapsilosis* mitochondrial respiratory pathways enhances susceptibility to caspofungin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 50:744–747. https://doi.org/10.1128/AAC.50.2.744-747.2006

Chen S, Liu D, Finley RL, Greenberg ML (2010a) Loss of mitochondrial DNA in the yeast cardiolipin synthase crd1 mutant leads to up-regulation of the protein kinase Swe1p that regulates the G2/M transition. J Biol Chem 285:10397–10407. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M110.100784

Chen Y-L, Montedonico AE, Kauffman S, Dunlap JR, Menn F-M, Reynolds TB (2010b) Phosphatidylserine synthase and phosphatidylserine decarboxylase are essential for cell wall integrity and virulence in *Candida albicans*. Mol Microbiol 75:1112–1132. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2958.2009.07018.x

Clancey CJ, Chang SC, Dowhan W (1993) Cloning of a gene (PSD1) encoding phosphatidylserine decarboxylase from *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* by complementation of an *Escherichia coli* mutant. J Biol Chem 268:24580–24590

Dagley MJ, Gentle IE, Beilharz TH, Pettolino FA, Djordjevic JT, Lo TL, Uwamahoro N, Rupasinghe T, Tull DL, McConville M, Beaurepaire C, Nantel A, Lithgow T, Mitchell AP, Traven A (2011) Cell wall integrity is linked to mitochondria and phospholipid homeostasis in *Candida albicans* through the activity of the post-transcriptional regulator Ccr4-Pop2: Cell walls, mitochondria and phospholipids. Mol Microbiol 79:968–989. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2958.2010.07503.x

Dimmer KS, Jakobs S, Vogel F, Altmann K, Westermann B (2005) Mdm31 and Mdm32 are inner membrane proteins required for maintenance of mitochondrial shape and stability of mitochondrial DNA nucleoids in yeast. J Cell Biol 168:103–115. https://doi.org/10.1083/jcb.200410030

Du H, Huang G (2016) Environmental pH adaption and morphological transitions in *Candida albicans*. Curr Genet 62:283–286. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00294-015-0540-8

Dudek J (2017) Role of cardiolipin in mitochondrial signaling pathways. Front Cell Dev Biol 5:90. https://doi.org/10.3389/fcell.2017.00090

Duvenage L, Walker LA, Bojarczuk A, Johnston SA, MacCallum DM, Munro CA, Gourlay CW (2019) Inhibition of classical and alternative modes of respiration in *Candida albicans* leads to cell wall remodeling and increased macrophage recognition. mBio 10. https://doi.org/10.1128/mBio.02535-18

Elbaz-Alon Y, Rosenfeld-Gur E, Shinder V, Futerman AH, Geiger T, Schuldiner M (2014) A dynamic interface between vacuoles and mitochondria in yeast. Dev Cell 30:95–102. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.devcel.2014.06.007

Ene IV, Adya AK, Wehmeier S, Brand AC, MacCallum DM, Gow NAR, Brown AJP (2012) Host carbon sources modulate cell wall architecture, drug resistance and virulence in a fungal

pathogen: Carbon source, fungal virulence and stress responses. Cell Microbiol 14:1319–1335. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1462-5822.2012.01813.x

Fannjiang Y, Cheng W-C, Lee SJ, Qi B, Pevsner J, McCaffery JM, Hill RB, Basañez G, Hardwick JM (2004) Mitochondrial fission proteins regulate programmed cell death in yeast. Genes Dev 18:2785–2797. https://doi.org/10.1101/gad.1247904

Geißel B, Penka M, Neubauer M, Wagener J (2017) The ER-mitochondria encounter structure contributes to hyphal growth, mitochondrial morphology and virulence of the pathogenic mold *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Int J Med Microbiol IJMM 307:37–43. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijmm.2016.11.005

Gow NAR, Latge J-P, Munro CA (2017) The fungal cell wall: structure, biosynthesis, and function. Microbiol Spectr 5. https://doi.org/10.1128/microbiolspec.FUNK-0035-2016

Hawksworth DL, Lücking R (2017) Fungal diversity revisited: 2.2–3.8 million species. Microbiol Spectr 5. https://doi.org/10.1128/microbiolspec.FUNK-0052-2016

Hromatka BS, Noble SM, Johnson AD (2005) Transcriptional response of *Candida albicans* to nitric oxide and the role of the YHB1 gene in nitrosative stress and virulence. Mol Biol Cell 16:4814–4826. https://doi.org/10.1091/mbc.e05-05-0435

Hutchins K, Bussey H (1983) Cell wall receptor for yeast killer toxin: involvement of (1 → 6)-β-d-glucan. J Bacteriol 154:161–169

Jeong H, Park J, Jun Y, Lee C (2017) Crystal structures of Mmm1 and Mdm12-Mmm1 reveal mechanistic insight into phospholipid trafficking at ER-mitochondria contact sites. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 114:E9502–E9511. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1715592114

Kawano S, Tamura Y, Kojima R, Bala S, Asai E, Michel AH, Kornmann B, Riezman I, Riezman H, Sakae Y, Okamoto Y, Endo T (2018) Structure-function insights into direct lipid transfer between membranes by Mmm1-Mdm12 of ERMES. J Cell Biol 217:959–974. https://doi.org/10.1083/jcb.201704119

Koch B, Barugahare AA, Lo TL, Huang C, Schittenhelm RB, Powell DR, Beilharz TH, Traven A (2018) A metabolic checkpoint for the yeast-to-hyphae developmental switch regulated by endogenous nitric oxide signaling. Cell Rep 25:2244–2258.e7. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.celrep.2018.10.080

Koch B, Tucey TM, Lo TL, Novakovic S, Boag P, Traven A (2017) The mitochondrial GTPase Gem1 contributes to the cell wall stress response and invasive growth of *Candida albicans*. Front Microbiol 8:2555. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2017.02555

Kornmann B, Currie E, Collins SR, Schuldiner M, Nunnari J, Weissman JS, Walter P (2009) An ER-mitochondria tethering complex revealed by a synthetic biology screen. Science 325:477–481. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1175088

Koszul R, Malpertuy A, Frangeul L, Bouchier C, Wincker P, Thierry A, Duthoy S, Ferris S, Hennequin C, Dujon B (2003) The complete mitochondrial genome sequence of the pathogenic yeast *Candida (Torulopsis) glabrata*. FEBS Lett 534:39–48

Kraft LM, Lackner LL (2017) Mitochondria-driven assembly of a cortical anchor for mitochondria and dynein. J Cell Biol 216:3061–3071. https://doi.org/10.1083/jcb.201702022

Lackner LL (2019) The expanding and unexpected functions of mitochondria contact sites. Trends Cell Biol 29:580–590. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tcb.2019.02.009

Lackner LL, Ping H, Graef M, Murley A, Nunnari J (2013) Endoplasmic reticulum-associated mitochondria-cortex tether functions in the distribution and inheritance of mitochondria. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 110:458–467. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1215232110

Latgé J-P (2007) The cell wall: a carbohydrate armour for the fungal cell. Mol Microbiol 66:279–290. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2958.2007.05872.x

Levina NN, Lew RR (2006) The role of tip-localized mitochondria in hyphal growth. Fungal Genet Biol FG B 43:65–74. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fgb.2005.06.008

Li D, She X, Calderone R (2016) Functional diversity of complex I subunits in *Candida albicans* mitochondria. Curr Genet 62:87–95. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00294-015-0518-6

Lopes JP, Stylianou M, Backman E, Holmberg S, Jass J, Claesson R, Urban CF (2018) Evasion of immune surveillance in low oxygen environments enhances *Candida albicans* virulence. mBio 9, e02120-18, /mbio/9/6/mBio.02120-18.atom. https://doi.org/10.1128/mBio.02120-18

Lussier M, White AM, Sheraton J, di-Paolo T, Treadwell J, Southard SB, Horenstein CI, Chen-Weiner J, Ram AFJ, Kapteyn JC, Roemer TW, Vo DH, Bondoc DC, Hall J, Wei Zhong W, Sdicu AM, Davies J, Klis FM, Robbins PW, Bussey H (1997) Large scale identification of genes involved in cell surface biosynthesis and architecture *Saccharomyces Cerevisiae*. Genetics 147:435–450

Meisinger C, Rissler M, Chacinska A, Szklarz LKS, Milenkovic D, Kozjak V, Schönfisch B, Lohaus C, Meyer HE, Yaffe MP, Guiard B, Wiedemann N, Pfanner N (2004) The mitochondrial morphology protein Mdm10 functions in assembly of the preprotein translocase of the outer membrane. Dev Cell 7:61–71. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.devcel.2004.06.003

Miramón P, Lorenz MC (2017) A feast for Candida: metabolic plasticity confers an edge for virulence. PLoS Pathog 13:e1006144. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.ppat.1006144

Netea MG, Joosten LAB, van der Meer JWM, Kullberg B-J, van de Veerdonk FL (2015) Immune defence against *Candida* fungal infections. Nat Rev Immunol 15:630–642. https://doi.org/10.1038/nri3897

Niles BJ, Joslin AC, Fresques T, Powers T (2014) TOR complex 2-Ypk1 signaling maintains sphingolipid homeostasis by sensing and regulating ROS accumulation. Cell Rep 6:541–552. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.celrep.2013.12.040

Osman C, Haag M, Potting C, Rodenfels J, Dip PV, Wieland FT, Brügger B, Westermann B, Langer T (2009) The genetic interactome of prohibitins: coordinated control of cardiolipin and phosphatidylethanolamine by conserved regulators in mitochondria. J Cell Biol 184:583–596. https://doi.org/10.1083/jcb.200810189

Pagé N, Gérard-Vincent M, Ménard P, Beaulieu M, Azuma M, Dijkgraaf GJP, Li H, Marcoux J, Nguyen T, Dowse T, Sdicu A-M, Bussey H (2003) A *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* genome-wide mutant screen for altered sensitivity to K1 killer toxin. Genetics 163:875–894

Perlroth J, Choi B, Spellberg B (2007) Nosocomial fungal infections: epidemiology, diagnosis, and treatment. Med Mycol 45:321–346. https://doi.org/10.1080/13693780701218689

Ping HA, Kraft LM, Chen W, Nilles AE, Lackner LL (2016) Num1 anchors mitochondria to the plasma membrane via two domains with different lipid binding specificities. J Cell Biol 213:513–524. https://doi.org/10.1083/jcb.201511021

Pradhan A, Avelar GM, Bain JM, Childers DS, Larcombe DE, Netea MG, Shekhova E, Munro CA, Brown GD, Erwig LP, Gow NAR, Brown AJP (2018) Hypoxia promotes immune evasion by triggering β-glucan masking on the *Candida albicans* cell surface via mitochondrial and cAMP-protein kinase A signaling. mBio 9. https://doi.org/10.1128/mBio.01318-18

Qu Y, Jelicic B, Pettolino F, Perry A, Lo TL, Hewitt VL, Bantun F, Beilharz TH, Peleg AY, Lithgow T, Djordjevic JT, Traven A (2012) Mitochondrial sorting and assembly machinery subunit Sam37 in *Candida albicans*: insight into the roles of mitochondria in fitness, cell wall integrity, and virulence. Eukaryot Cell 11:532–544. https://doi.org/10.1128/EC.05292-11

Reinders J, Zahedi RP, Pfanner N, Meisinger C, Sickmann A (2006) Toward the complete yeast mitochondrial proteome: multidimensional separation techniques for mitochondrial proteomics. J Proteome Res 5:1543–1554. https://doi.org/10.1021/pr050477f

Renvoisé M, Bonhomme L, Davanture M, Valot B, Zivy M, Lemaire C (2014) Quantitative variations of the mitochondrial proteome and phosphoproteome during fermentative and respiratory growth in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. J Proteomics 106:140–150. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jprot.2014.04.022

Rispail N, Soanes DM, Ant C, Czajkowski R, Grünler A, Huguet R, Perez-Nadales E, Poli A, Sartorel E, Valiante V, Yang M, Beffa R, Brakhage AA, Gow NAR, Kahmann R, Lebrun M-H, Lenasi H, Perez-Martin J, Talbot NJ, Wendland J, Di Pietro A (2009) Comparative genomics of MAP kinase and calcium-calcineurin signalling components in plant and human pathogenic fungi. Fungal Genet Biol FG B 46:287–298. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fgb.2009.01.002

Román E, Correia I, Prieto D, Alonso R, Pla J (2019) The HOG MAPK pathway in *Candida albicans*: more than an osmosensing pathway. Microbiol Off J Span Soc Microbiol, Int. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10123-019-00069-1

Sarinová M, Tichá E, Obernauerová M, Gbelská Y (2007) Impact of mitochondrial function on yeast susceptibility to antifungal compounds. Folia Microbiol (Praha) 52:223–229

Satish S, Jiménez-Ortigosa C, Zhao Y, Lee MH, Dolgov E, Krüger T, Park S, Denning DW, Kniemeyer O, Brakhage AA, Perlin DS (2019) Stress-Induced Changes in the Lipid Microenvironment of β-(1,3)-d-glucan synthase cause clinically important echinocandin resistance in *Aspergillus fumigatus* 10:15

Scorrano L, De Matteis MA, Emr S, Giordano F, Hajnóczky G, Kornmann B, Lackner LL, Levine TP, Pellegrini L, Reinisch K, Rizzuto R, Simmen T, Stenmark H, Ungermann C, Schuldiner M (2019) Coming together to define membrane contact sites. Nat Commun 10 (1287). https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-019-09253-3

She X, Calderone R, Kruppa M, Lowman D, Williams D, Zhang L, Gao Y, Khamooshi K, Liu W, Li D (2016) Cell wall N-linked mannoprotein biosynthesis requires Goa1p, a putative regulator of mitochondrial complex I in *Candida albicans*. PLoS ONE 11:e0147175. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0147175

She X, Khamooshi K, Gao Y, Shen Y, Lv Y, Calderone R, Fonzi W, Liu W, Li D (2015) Fungal-specific subunits of the *Candida albicans* mitochondrial complex I drive diverse cell functions including cell wall synthesis: Defective colonization in host tissues by mitochondrial mutants. Cell Microbiol 17:1350–1364. https://doi.org/10.1111/cmi.12438

She X, Zhang L, Chen H, Calderone R, Li D (2013) Cell surface changes in the *Candida albicans* mitochondrial mutant *goa1* Δ are associated with reduced recognition by innate immune cells: *GOA1* and recognition by macrophages and epithelial cells. Cell Microbiol 15:1572–1584. https://doi.org/10.1111/cmi.12135

She X, Zhang P, Gao Y, Zhang L, Wang Q, Chen H, Calderone R, Liu W, Li D (2018) A mitochondrial proteomics view of complex I deficiency in *Candida albicans*. Mitochondrion 38:48–57. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mito.2017.08.003

Shingu-Vazquez M, Traven A (2011) Mitochondria and fungal pathogenesis: drug tolerance, virulence, and potential for antifungal therapy. Eukaryot Cell 10:1376–1383. https://doi.org/10.1128/EC.05184-11

Sickmann A, Reinders J, Wagner Y, Joppich C, Zahedi R, Meyer HE, Schönfisch B, Perschil I, Chacinska A, Guiard B, Rehling P, Pfanner N, Meisinger C (2003) The proteome of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* mitochondria. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 100:13207–13212. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.2135385100

Spincemaille P, Matmati N, Hannun YA, Cammue BPA, Thevissen K (2014) Sphingolipids and mitochondrial function in budding yeast. Biochim Biophys Acta 1840:3131–3137. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbagen.2014.06.015

Sun N, Fonzi W, Chen H, She X, Zhang Lulu, Zhang Lixin, Calderone R (2013) Azole susceptibility and transcriptome profiling in *Candida albicans* mitochondrial electron transport chain complex I mutants. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 57:532–542. https://doi.org/10.1128/AAC.01520-12

Tamura Y, Endo T, Iijima M, Sesaki H (2009) Ups1p and Ups2p antagonistically regulate cardiolipin metabolism in mitochondria. J Cell Biol 185:1029–1045. https://doi.org/10.1083/jcb.200812018

Tatsuta T, Scharwey M, Langer T (2014) Mitochondrial lipid trafficking. Trends Cell Biol 24 (Special Issue: Membrane Trafficking):44–52. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tcb.2013.07.011

Tucey TM, Verma-Gaur J, Nguyen J, Hewitt VL, Lo TL, Shingu-Vazquez M, Robertson AAB, Hill JR, Pettolino FA, Beddoe T, Cooper MA, Naderer T, Traven A (2016) The endoplasmic reticulum-mitochondrion tether ERMES orchestrates fungal immune evasion, illuminating inflammasome responses to hyphal signals. mSphere 1, e00074-16, /msph/1/3/e00074-16.atom. https://doi.org/10.1128/mSphere.00074-16

Veiga A, Arrabaça JD, Loureiro-Dias MC (2000) Cyanide-resistant respiration is frequent, but confined to yeasts incapable of aerobic fermentation. FEMS Microbiol Lett 190:93–97. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1574-6968.2000.tb09268.x

Vincent BM, Langlois J-B, Srinivas R, Lancaster AK, Scherz-Shouval R, Whitesell L, Tidor B, Buchwald SL, Lindquist S (2016) A fungal-selective cytochrome bc1 inhibitor impairs virulence and prevents the evolution of drug resistance. Cell Chem Biol 23:978–991. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.chembiol.2016.06.016

Vögtle F-N, Burkhart JM, Gonczarowska-Jorge H, Kücükköse C, Taskin AA, Kopczynski D, Ahrends R, Mossmann D, Sickmann A, Zahedi RP Meisinger C (2017) Landscape of submitochondrial protein distribution. Nat Commun 8. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-017-00359-0

Yu S-J, Chang Y-L, Chen Y-L (2015) Calcineurin signaling: lessons from *Candida* species. FEMS Yeast Res 15, fov016. https://doi.org/10.1093/femsyr/fov016

Zahedi RP, Sickmann A, Boehm AM, Winkler C, Zufall N, Schönfisch B, Guiard B, Pfanner N, Meisinger C (2006) Proteomic analysis of the yeast mitochondrial outer membrane reveals accumulation of a subclass of preproteins. Mol Biol Cell 17:1436–1450. https://doi.org/10.1091/mbc.e05-08-0740

Zhong Q, Gvozdenovic-Jeremic J, Webster P, Zhou J, Greenberg ML (2005) Loss of function of KRE5 suppresses temperature sensitivity of mutants lacking mitochondrial anionic lipids. Mol Biol Cell 16:665–675. https://doi.org/10.1091/mbc.E04-09-0808

Zhong Q, Li G, Gvozdenovic-Jeremic J, Greenberg ML (2007) Up-regulation of the cell integrity pathway in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* suppresses temperature sensitivity of the pgs1Δ mutant. J Biol Chem 282:15946–15953. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M701055200

Impact of the Environment upon the *Candida albicans* Cell Wall and Resultant Effects upon Immune Surveillance

Delma S. Childers, Gabriela M. Avelar, Judith M. Bain, Daniel E. Larcombe, Arnab Pradhan, Susan Budge, Helen Heaney, and Alistair J. P. Brown

Contents

1 Introduction 298
2 Structure and Synthesis of the *C. Albicans* Cell Wall 299
3 Cell Wall Remodelling in Response to Damage 303
4 Cell Wall Remodelling in Response to Environmental Change 307
5 The Cell Wall in Immune Surveillance 310
6 The Cell Wall in Immune Evasion 313
7 Parallels with Other Fungal Pathogens 315
8 Conclusions and Outlook 317
References 318

Abstract The fungal cell wall is an essential organelle that maintains cellular morphology and protects the fungus from environmental insults. For fungal pathogens such as *Candida albicans,* it provides a degree of protection against attack by host immune defences. However, the cell wall also presents key epitopes that trigger host immunity and attractive targets for antifungal drugs. Rather than

Delma S. Childers, Gabriela M. Avelar, Judith M. Bain—These authors contributed equally to this work.

D. S. Childers · G. M. Avelar · J. M. Bain · D. E. Larcombe · A. Pradhan · S. Budge · H. Heaney · A. J. P. Brown
Aberdeen Fungal Group, Institute of Medical Sciences, University of Aberdeen, Foresterhill, Aberdeen AB25 2ZD, UK

D. E. Larcombe · A. Pradhan · A. J. P. Brown (✉)
Medical Research Council Centre for Medical Mycology, University of Exeter, Geoffrey Pope Building, Stocker Road, Exeter EX4 4QD, UK
e-mail: a.j.p.brown@exeter.ac.uk

Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology (2020) 425: 297–330
https://doi.org/10.1007/82_2019_182
© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2019
Published Online: 29 November 2019

being a rigid shield, it has become clear that the fungal cell wall is an elastic organelle that permits rapid changes in cell volume and the transit of large liposomal particles such as extracellular vesicles. The fungal cell wall is also flexible in that it adapts to local environmental inputs, thereby enhancing the fitness of the fungus in these microenvironments. Recent evidence indicates that this cell wall adaptation affects host-fungus interactions by altering the exposure of major cell wall epitopes that are recognised by innate immune cells. Therefore, we discuss the impact of environmental adaptation upon fungal cell wall structure, and how this affects immune recognition, focussing on *C. albicans* and drawing parallels with other fungal pathogens.

1 Introduction

The ascomycete fungus, *Candida albicans*, is carried as a relatively harmless commensal by most healthy individuals in their oral cavity, or urogenital and gastrointestinal tracts. In general, the local epithelial barriers, innate immune defences and microbiota limit the colonisation and outgrowth by *C. albicans* cells. However, the perturbation of any of these local defences often leads to local mucosal infection (*thrush*) (Sobel 2007; Hertel et al. 2016). Most women suffer at least one episode of vaginitis in their lifetime, and oral thrush is common in babies, the elderly, diabetics and HIV patients. *C. albicans* is the most common cause of fungal mucosal infections (Denning et al. 2018). In neutropenic patients, whose immune defences are severely compromised, *C. albicans* can cause systemic infections of the blood and internal organs (Perlroth et al. 2007; Gouba and Drancourt 2015). Despite the availability of several classes of the antifungal drug, including azoles, polyenes, echinocandins and flucytosine (Odds et al. 2003), these systemic infections display about 40% mortality (Brown et al. 2012; Kullberg and Arendrup 2015). This, combined with the emergence of resistance to the current antifungal drugs in clinical use, means that there is a clear need for the development of new, more effective antifungals (Brown et al. 2012).

From a clinical perspective, the fungal cell wall represents an attractive target for the development of new antifungal drugs (Odds et al. 2003; Gow et al. 2017). This is because human cells lack a cell wall, whereas the cell wall is essential for the viability of fungal pathogens such as *C. albicans* (Douglas et al. 1997; Munro and Gow 2001; Munro et al. 2001). Therefore, drugs that target cell wall biosynthesis or function are less likely to perturb human cells. The *C. albicans* cell wall also represents the first point of direct contact with the host, and cell wall molecules are exploited as key recognition targets by our immune defences. For this reason, the cell wall is also an attractive target for the development of vaccines and immunotherapeutics that might prevent or combat *Candida* infections. In addition, structural distinctions between the cell walls of pathogenic fungal species (Erwig and Gow 2016) represent a point of leverage for the development of the novel diagnostics that are required to accelerate the diagnosis, and thereby improve the

prognoses of life-threatening systemic infections (Brown et al. 2012). Therefore, a comprehensive understanding of the structure and function of the fungal cell wall is vital for the elaboration of the new antifungal drugs, immunotherapies, diagnostics and vaccines that ultimately will improve patient outcomes.

From the perspective of the fungus, the cell wall is a vital organelle that requires significant metabolic and energetic investment to construct. (The wall comprises about 30% of the dry weight of a yeast cell (Nguyen et al. 1998). The cell wall provides protection against environmental insults (Gow et al. 2017). It maintains cell shape and osmotic integrity, asserting the cellular morphology driven by the regulatory apparatus that establishes the balance between isotropic and polarised growth, generating morphogenetic transitions between yeast, pseudohyphal and hyphal growth forms in response to the environmental conditions (Sudbery 2011). Yet the cell wall is an elastic, not a rigid structure, which permits the transit of large liposomes and extracellular vesicles (Vargas et al. 2015; Walker et al. 2018), as well as rapid changes in cell volume in response to osmotic challenges (Ene et al. 2015). Furthermore, rather than being a relatively inert shield, the cell wall responds to local inputs as the fungus adapts to environmental change (Sosinska et al. 2008; Ene et al. 2012; Hall 2015). Therefore, the fungal cell wall is a remarkable organelle that is simultaneously robust but elastic, and stable but flexible.

In this chapter, we focus on the cell wall of the major pathogen, *C. albicans*. We review the structure of the *C. albicans* cell wall, its stability and elasticity; how the cell wall responds to environmental challenges, whether natural or therapeutic; and how changes in the *C. albicans* cell wall affect host-fungus interactions. We then discuss parallels with other fungal pathogens before suggesting key questions for the future.

2 Structure and Synthesis of the *C. Albicans* Cell Wall

Significant differences exist between the cell walls of the major fungal pathogens of humans (Gow et al. 2017; Erwig and Gow 2016). Nevertheless, some of the macromolecular building blocks that comprise the cell wall are conserved across most of these fungal species. These consist of β-1,3- and β-1,6-glucan, chitin and mannoproteins. Additionally, some fungal cell walls contain melanin, chitosan and β-1,4-glucan (Gow et al. 2017; Shepherd 1987; Klis et al. 2001; Bowman and Free 2006). A combination of microscopy, biochemistry and molecular genetics has shown clearly that the *C. albicans* cell wall comprises two main layers: an inner layer of chitin and glucan cross-linked together and an outer layer of mannan fibrils that are covalently attached to this inner layer via their anchoring mannoproteins (Fig. 1).

Chitin is a linear homopolymer of β-1,4-linked *N*-acetylglucosamine, which forms antiparallel chains linked by intrachain hydrogen bonds. Chitin accounts for only about 2–3% of the dry weight of the *C. albicans* yeast cell wall. Yet it is a strong fibrous structural component of the inner layer that contributes significantly

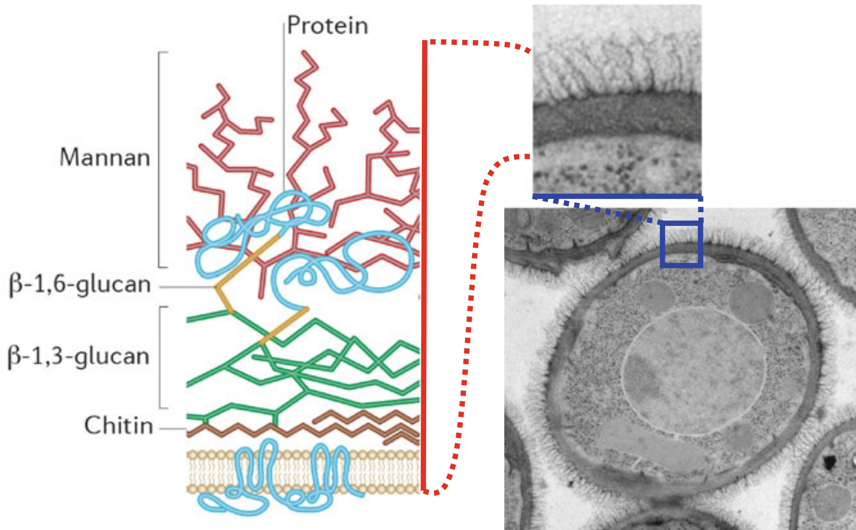


Fig. 1 Architecture of the *C. albicans*cell wall. The model of the cell wall structure illustrates the organisation of chitin and glucan in the inner cell wall and the *N*-mannan fibrils of the outer cell wall, which are linked to the inner cell wall via the GPI-anchored proteins from which these fibrils radiate. GPI-proteins are attached to β-1,6-glucan which, in turn, is linked to β-1,3-glucan, whereas Pir proteins are linked directly to β-1,3-glucan. The cartoon, which is taken with permission from (Erwig and Gow 2016), is compared with a transmission electron micrograph of the *C. albicans* cell wall (upper panel), which is an expanded region (blue box) from a micrograph of a complete cell (lower panel). The diameters of inner and outer layers of the cell wall are each about 0.14 μm across (Pradhan et al. 2018)

to the overall integrity of the cell wall. *C. albicans* mutants with impaired chitin synthesis present with a disordered cell wall architecture and display osmotic instability (Lenardon et al. 2007; Lenardon et al. 2010). In *C. albicans*, a small fraction of chitin (less than 5%) is deacetylated to chitosan by one or more chitin deacetylases, making chitin fibrils more elastic and protecting them from the action of hostile chitinases (Lenardon et al. 2010).

In *C. albicans* chitin is synthesised by a family of four chitin synthases, representing three different classes of chitin synthase that generate chitin microfibrils of different lengths (Lenardon et al. 2007). Together, these enzymes engineer the chitin skeleton in the fungal cell wall and septum. Chs1 is an essential Class II enzyme that is required for the synthesis of the primary septum. Chs3 is a Class IV enzyme, which is usually located in the tip of buds and hyphal cells and synthesises the majority of chitin found in the fungal cell wall and septum. Chs2 and Chs8 also contribute to cell wall integrity during normal growth and stress conditions. These Class I enzymes account for most of the chitin synthase activity that is measurable in vitro, and indeed the deletion of *CHS2* alone reduces in vitro chitin synthase activity by 80–91% (Munro and Gow 2001; Lenardon et al. 2010; Staniszewska et al. 2013; Preechasuth et al. 2015).

β-Glucan is the major structural polysaccharide of the *C. albicans* cell wall, accounting for 50–60% of the dry weight of the yeast cell wall (Shepherd 1987; Klis et al. 2001). β-Glucan is composed of chains of glucose residues linked via β-1,3- or β-1,6 linkages. β-1,3-Glucan fibrils represent the main structural component of the *C. albicans* cell wall, and chitin, β-1,6-glucan and mannoproteins are covalently attached to this β-1,3-glucan network in the inner layer of the wall. β-1,3-Glucan is synthesised at the plasma membrane and extruded into extracellular space by the beta-1,3-glucan synthase complex, which consists of catalytic subunits encoded by *GSC1/FKS1* and *GSC2/FKS2*, and a small regulatory GTPase encoded by *RHO1* (Mio et al. 1997; Kondoh et al. 1997). β-1,3-Glucan synthase is essential for fungal viability and is the target of echinocandin drugs, such as caspofungin (Douglas et al. 1997).

β-1,6-Glucan is less abundant than β-1,3-glucan. Branched β-1,6-glucan structures are crosslinked to β-1,3-glucan in the inner layer of the *C. albicans* cell wall, providing an additional platform for the covalent anchoring of some cell wall mannoproteins (Kapteyn et al. 2000). A number of genes are involved in β-1,6-glucan biosynthesis, including *KRE5*, *KRE6*, *KRE9*, *BIG1* and *SKN1*. Although it is not clear where β-1,6-glucan synthesis occurs, it does involve enzymes localised in the endoplasmic reticulum and the Golgi apparatus (Umeyama et al. 2006).

The mannoproteins in the *C. albicans* cell wall are frequently heavily decorated with *N*- and/or *O*-linked oligosaccharides (Klis et al. 2001; Chaffin 2008). Together with phospholipomannans, these represent up to 30–40% of the dry weight of the cell wall. The *O*-mannans are relatively short linear carbohydrate polymers comprised of two to six α-1,2-linked mannose units. Their synthesis requires the activities of *PMR1*, the *PMT* gene family, *MNT1* and *MNT2* (Buurman et al. 1998; Bates et al. 2005; Munro et al. 2005; Timpel et al. 1998). The addition of the first mannose residue to the polypeptide chain is catalysed by *O*-mannosyltransferases (encoded by *PMT* genes), whilst Mnt1 and Mnt2 are responsible for the addition of the first and second α-1,2-mannose units into the α-mannose backbone. The resultant *O*-linked oligosaccharides are thought to promote a rod-like conformation to the serine-threonine-rich repeats to which they are generally attached (Gatti et al. 1994).

The outer layer of the *C. albicans* cell wall is composed of highly branched *N*-linked oligosaccharide structures that are covalently linked to asparagine residues in the mannoproteins. These *N*-mannans contain a *N*-glycan core, to which are attached long branched chains with an α-1,6-mannose backbone and side chains of oligomannosides linked via α-1,2 or α-1,3 bonds (Klis et al. 2001). The synthesis of the *N*-linked oligosaccharide core structure occurs in the endoplasmic reticulum and involves the sequential addition of sugar residues by glycosyltransferases, encoded by asparagine-linked glycosylation (*ALG*) genes. The mannosyltransferase Och1 catalyses the addition of the first alpha-1,6-mannose (Bates et al. 2006), and the branched oligosaccharide structure is then added to the nascent protein by the oligosaccharyltransferase complex. After the initial glycosylation, the mannoprotein is further modified in the ER and Golgi apparatus. Golgi resident enzymes, encoded by members of the *KTR/KRE/MNT* and *MNN* gene families, process and elongate the *N*-linked as well as *O*-linked oligosaccharides (Mora-Montes et al. 2010;

Hall et al. 2013; Hall and Gow 2013). Phosphomannan is a β-1,2-mannose moiety linked to the branched *N*-glycan via a phosphodiester bond. A similar moiety can be linked to lipid domains creating the phospholipomannans. Different enzymes from the *MNN* and *BMT* families participate in the synthesis of phosphomannan and phospholipomannans (Hall and Gow 2013; Hobson et al. 2004; Murciano et al. 2011).

There are two main classes of cell wall mannoprotein in *C. albicans* based on the nature of their linkage to cell wall polymers. GPI-anchored proteins, which are the most abundant class of cell wall mannoprotein, are covalently attached via their carboxy-terminal glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI) anchor to β-1,6-glucan which, in turn, is linked to β-1,3-glucan (Kapteyn et al. 2000). Pir proteins (proteins with internal repeats) are less abundant, and these are covalently linked directly to β-1,3-glucan (Kapteyn et al. 2000; Toh-e et al. 1993).

Cell wall proteins provide anchors for the mannan outer layer of the cell wall. They contribute to the structural integrity of the cell wall, and some are cell wall remodelling enzymes responsible for generating essential covalent linkages between cell wall components (Ene et al. 2015; Pardini et al. 2006; Popolo et al. 2017). Transglycosylases from the GH72 family catalyse glucan remodelling, and their inactivation affects growth, morphology and virulence. For example, *PHR1* and *PHR2* (pH-responsive genes 1 and 2) encode members of this family, and they catalyse the pH-regulated cross-links between β-1,6- and β-1,3-glucans. *PHR1* plays a crucial role in the formation of the hyphal cell wall and in pathogenesis (Popolo et al. 2017; Fonzi 1999). The GPI-anchored yapsin-like aspartic proteases Sap9 and Sap10 have functions in cell surface integrity and cell separation during budding, whilst the *CRH* family of chitin-glucanosyltransferases (Crh11, Crh12, Utr2) are involved in formation of linkages between β-1,3-glucan and chitin (Pardini et al. 2006). The degree of cross-linking between components of the cell wall is important for its organisation and integrity, as this determines its elasticity, resistance and porosity. This is evidenced by the deletion or over-expression of genes encoding cell wall remodelling enzymes, which result in altered sensitivity to cell wall disrupting agents, such as Congo Red, Calcofluor White, SDS and high Ca^{2+} concentrations (Ene et al. 2015; Pardini et al. 2006; Popolo et al. 2017).

Besides its structural role, the cell wall promotes *C. albicans* pathogenicity, for example, through adhesion, invasion and damage. Adhesins are important not only for fungal colonisation but also for biofilm formation and interactions with other microbes. Most of the known adhesins are GPI anchored proteins, and many are members of multigene families such as the *ALS* and *HWP* gene families (Staab et al. 1999; Hoyer et al. 2008). Some adhesion genes, such as *ALS3* and *HWP1*, are expressed during hypha formation, which is why this morphotype is particularly adherent. The HWP adhesin family is required for adhesion to host cell proteins, biofilm formation, cell-cell aggregation and mating (Staab et al. 1999; Hofs et al. 2016). *HWP1*, *HWP2* and *RBT1* expressions are induced not only during hypha formation but also during mating of opaque cells. Another member of this family, *EAP1,* is expressed in both yeast and hyphal cells and is differentially regulated during yeast phenotypic switching (Hofs et al. 2016; Gow and Hube 2012).

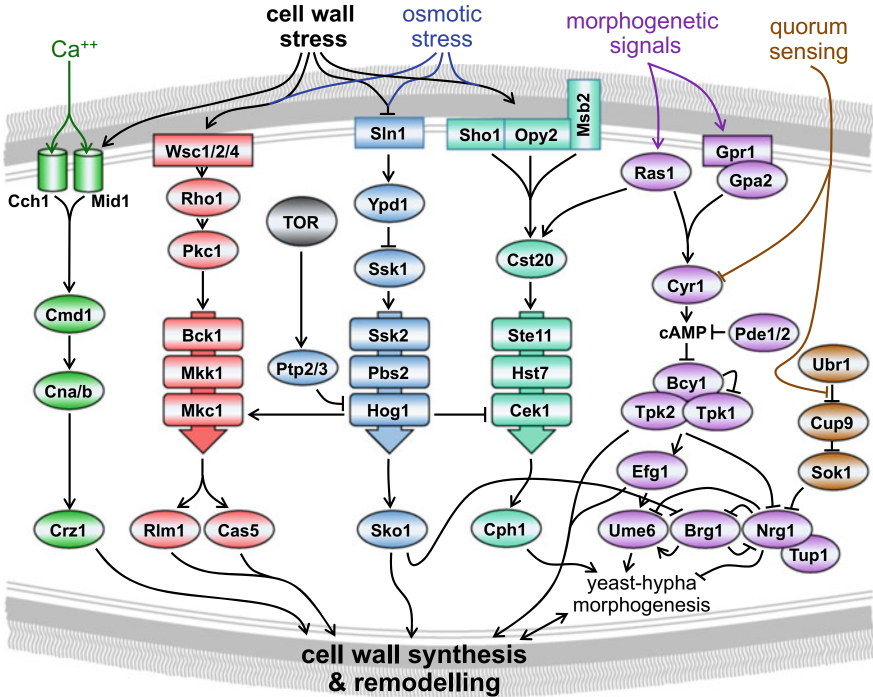
Als3 acts both as an adhesin and an invasin as it binds to a host receptor on epithelial or endothelial cells to induce endocytosis (Phan et al. 2007). Als3 also enables iron acquisition by binding transferrin and has effects on host cell damage and cytokine induction (Almeida et al. 2008).

The general structure of the *C. albicans* cell wall has been reasonably well understood for some time (Gow et al. 2017; Shepherd 1987; Klis et al. 2001). However, recent technological advances are extending our knowledge of this field. For example, atomic force microscopy is providing direct information about cell wall structure and elasticity (Dague et al. 2010). Also, super-resolution microscopy has shown that phosphomannans, which are negatively charged, are critical for glucan masking at the cell surface (Graus et al. 2018). Furthermore, high-resolution electron tomography has permitted the development of the first scale model of *C. albicans* cell wall architecture (Megan Lenardon, Prashant Sood and Neil Gow, personal communication). This deeper understanding of *C. albicans* cell wall biosynthesis, structure and organisation is helping the development of new therapies and diagnostics.

In the past, the fungal cell wall was often portrayed as a rigid shield-like structure in which, for example, chitin was compared to the steel in reinforced concrete. However, it has become clear that the cell wall is actually a surprisingly elastic structure. *C. albicans* releases extracellular vesicles which carry diverse cargo (including enzymes, toxins and nucleic acids, for example) that are believed to function in cell-to-cell communication, metabolism and pathogenesis (Vargas et al. 2015; Deatherage and Cookson 2012; Joffe et al. 2016). These extracellular vesicles vary in size from 50 to 850 nm, and yet these membrane-bound compartments are able to transit through the cell wall into the surrounding milieu (Vargas et al. 2015). Another study has demonstrated that large liposomal particles can gain entry to the cell by traversing the *C. albicans* cell wall. Transmission electron microscopy has revealed that Ambisome particles of 60–80 nm, which are much larger than the predicted pore size of the cell wall (approximately 6 nm), are able to transit through the cell wall whilst both particle and cell wall retain their integrity (Walker et al. 2018). The remarkable elasticity of the *C. albicans* cell wall is further reflected in the ability of *C. albicans* cells to undergo rapid and dramatic changes in volume in response to acute hyper-osmotic stress (Ene et al. 2015). Therefore, the cross-linked polymers of the *C. albicans* cell wall have evolved to provide an elastic and flexible structure, not a rigid shield.

3 Cell Wall Remodelling in Response to Damage

The *C. albicans* cell wall is a dynamic structure that changes in response to morphogenetic triggers, other environmental inputs, genetic perturbation and antifungal treatment. Transcriptomic, proteomic and biochemical studies from a number of research groups have revealed condition-specific programmes of cell wall protein expression (Chaffin 2008) and carbohydrate content or synthesis (Hall 2015).



A complex network of signalling pathways regulates this cell wall adaptation. These pathways include the cell wall integrity pathway, high osmolarity glycerol (Hog1) mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) signalling, the calcineurin-calmodulin pathway, the protein kinase A (PKA) pathway, the Cek1 MAPK pathway, mitochondrial reactive oxygen species (ROS) signalling, casein kinase I (Yck2, Yck3) and the heat shock transcription factor (Hsf1)-Hsp90 auto-regulatory circuit (Munro et al. 2007; Blankenship et al. 2010; Galan-Diez et al. 2010; Leach et al. 2011; Znaidi et al. 2018; Pradhan et al. 2018) (Fig. 2). This complexity probably reflects the absolute requirement to retain cell wall homoeostasis in the face of a diverse range of environmental inputs and challenges.

This complex regulatory network presents an issue for antifungal therapy because, following exposure to agents that compromise cell wall integrity, the network provides mechanisms for compensatory changes to the fungal cell wall. The major classes of antifungal drug impose major insults on the cell wall by targeting the synthesis or structural integrity of the cell wall and plasma membrane. Echinocandins, such as Caspofungin, target β-glucan biosynthesis via the catalytic subunit of glucan synthase, Fks1. The inhibition of Fks1, and hence β-glucan synthesis, by Caspofungin induces compensatory activities in the form of increased chitin synthesis and deposition in the cell wall (Walker et al. 2008). This elevation in cell wall chitin then protects cells against further Caspofungin treatment both

◂**Fig. 2 A complex network of signalling pathways regulates cell wall synthesis and remodelling in *C. albicans***. Cell wall remodelling depends on the cell integrity pathway (red) (Paravicini et al. 1996; Navarro-Garcia et al. 1998). Cell wall damage is thought to be detected by Wsc1/2/4, which activates protein kinase C (Pkc1) via Rho1. This leads to activation of the Mkc1 MAPK module which triggers cell wall remodelling via the transcription factor Rlm1 but primarily via Cas5 (Dichtl et al. 2016; Bruno et al. 2006; Delgado-Silva et al. 2014). The Hog1 pathway (blue) also contributes to the control of cell wall synthesis and remodelling (Munro et al. 2007). Cell wall or osmotic stress down-regulates Sln1, which leads to the activation of the Hog1 MAPK module via the Ypd1 and Ssk1 phosphorelay (San Jose et al. 1996; Smith et al. 2004; Cheetham et al. 2007; Day et al. 2017). Hog1 then modulates cell wall largely via the transcription factor Sko1, which also represses Brg1 (Su et al. 2013). Hog1 is down-regulated by the phosphatases Ptp2/3, which are activated by TOR signalling (grey) (Su et al. 2013). Hog1 also activates Mkc1 signalling and represses the Cek1 pathway (dark green) (Monge et al. 2006). Msb2 acts in concert with Sho1 to activate the Cek1 pathway in response to osmotic stress or cell wall damage, and Opy2 also contributes to Cek1 activation via Cst20 (Leberer et al. 1996; Roman et al. 2009; Cantero and Ernst 2011; Herrero de Dios et al. 2013). Cek1 activates Cph1 which is thought to contribute to cell wall remodelling during hyphal development. Morphogenesis is also activated by cAMP-PKA signalling (purple), which leads to cell wall remodelling. In response to a variety of environmental inputs, the Gpr1-Gpa2 and Ras modules activate adenyl cyclase (Cyr1), which leads to cAMP accumulation and inactivation of the PKA regulatory subunit Bcy1 (Noble et al. 2017). This leads to activation of the PKA catalytic subunits (Tpk1, Tpk2) which stimulates a network of transcription factors (Efg1, Ume6, Brg1) and releases Nrg1-Tup1-mediated repression to activate hypha-specific genes, hyphal development and cell wall remodelling (Staniszewska et al. 2013; Ebanks et al. 2006; Castillo et al. 2008; Gil-Bona et al. 2015; Fanning et al. 2012). This pathway is repressed by quorum sensing (brown), which inhibits adenyl cyclase (Cyr1), and also stabilises the repressor Nrg1 via Ubr1, Cup9 and Sok1 (Lindsay et al. 2012; Lu et al. 2014a, b). Calcium (Ca^{++})—camodulin (Cmd1)—calcineurin (Cna/b) signalling (lime green) also plays an important role in cell wall remodelling (Munro et al. 2007; Sanglard et al. 2003; Sato et al. 2004). Activation of this pathway, possibly via the stretch-activated channel Mid1, leads to the up-regulation of the transcription factor Crz1, which promotes cell wall remodelling (Santos and de Larrinoa 2005; Karababa et al. 2006)

in vitro and in vivo, thereby compromising the efficacy of the antifungal drug (Lee et al. 2012).

Azole drugs, such as fluconazole, target lanosterol 14-α-demethylase (Erg11) on the ergosterol biosynthesis pathway. This induces significant changes in plasma membrane rigidity and integrity. Although azoles do not appear to affect the cell wall directly, proteomics and cell wall sensitivity assays have shown that fluconazole treatment indirectly perturbs the integrity of the cell wall (Sorgo et al. 2011).

Clearly, genetic perturbation of cell wall components can significantly affect cell wall architecture. The loss of β-glucan synthase (Fks1) is lethal to *C. albicans* (Douglas et al. 1997; Mio et al. 1997). However, only one of the four chitin synthase genes (*CHS1*) is essential for viability (Munro et al. 2001; Gow et al. 1994), due to compensatory changes in chitin synthesis rescuing the loss of other *CHS* genes (Lenardon et al. 2007). In general, cell wall mannoproteins themselves are rarely essential for viability, but the inactivation of some specific GPI-anchored proteins can perturb integrity of the *C. albicans* cell wall (Albrecht et al. 2006; Plaine et al. 2008). Mutations with more general effects upon the localisation or

mannosylation of GPI anchored cell wall proteins also affect the sensitivity of *C. albicans* to cell wall stresses (Buurman et al. 1998; Bates et al. 2005; Munro et al. 2005; Bates et al. 2006; Richard et al. 2002; Moreno-Ruiz et al. 2009). This type of approach, involving the analysis of cellular responses to the disruption of cell wall genes or to cell wall perturbing agents, has helped to elucidate the roles of specific proteins or protein families in virulence-related phenotypes, such as adhesion and biofilm formation. In the context of this article, it has also highlighted key mechanisms underlying cell wall maintenance and homoeostasis.

The cell wall integrity signalling pathway drives the main compensatory changes in the cell wall that are initiated in response to antifungal drugs, other cell wall stresses, and genetic insults. This pathway has been evolutionarily conserved across those fungi investigated and has been extensively studied in the model yeast, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. The cell wall integrity pathway responds to the activation of cell wall stress sensors by up-regulating the expression of cell wall synthesis genes via a highly conserved MAPK signalling cascade (Fig. 2). In *S. cerevisiae*, signalling via the cell wall integrity pathway is initiated by the membrane proteins Wsc1, Wsc2, Wsc3, Mid2 and Mtl1, which act as cell integrity sensors (Levin 2011). Upon loss of cell wall integrity, these sensors interact with Rom2 to activate Rho1, which then activates protein kinase C (Pkc1). Pkc1 signals to a MAPK module comprising Bck1, which activates MKK1/2, which phosphorylate and activate the MAPK, Slt2. Slt2 then activates the transcription factors Rlm1 and Swi4/6, which induce the expression of genes that include the cell wall synthesis machinery (Levin 2011).

C. albicans has homologues for many components of the cell wall integrity pathway (Paravicini et al. 1996; Navarro-Garcia et al. 1998; Dichtl et al. 2016). Mutations in many affect the virulence of *C. albicans*, as well as its cell wall integrity, which suggests a key role for the cell wall integrity pathway in host niches. Furthermore, some components of this PKC-MAPK module in *C. albicans* have broader roles than their homologues in *S. cerevisiae*. For example, Mkc1, the *C. albicans* homologue of the *S. cerevisiae* MAPK Slt2, has an expanded role in regulating cellular morphogenesis under certain conditions (Navarro-Garcia et al. 1998). In addition, in *C. albicans,* Cas5 (rather than Rlm1) appears to be the transcription factor that plays the major role in controlling key gene outputs of the cell wall integrity pathway (Bruno et al. 2006). The cell wall integrity pathway also engages in cross-talk with other important signalling pathways that include the cAMP-PKA, target of rapamycin (TOR) and Hog1 pathways, which help to coordinate the response to specific stressors (Fuchs and Mylonakis 2009; Garcia et al. 2017) (Fig. 2). It is worth noting that the cell wall integrity pathway also regulates important virulence traits in other fungi, for example, capsule synthesis in *Cryptococcus neoformans* (Donlin et al. 2014) and drug resistance and virulence in *Aspergillus fumigatus* (Valiante et al. 2015).

4 Cell Wall Remodelling in Response to Environmental Change

The ability of the *C. albicans* cell wall to remodel itself in response to sub-lethal concentrations of cell wall damaging agents (above) reflects the fact that cell wall remodelling is simply an important component of the normal adaptive responses of this fungus to environmental change. Yeast-hypha morphogenesis is one of the most studied adaptive responses of *C. albicans* because of the importance of this reversible morphological transition for host-fungus interactions and virulence (Lo et al. 1997; Saville et al. 2003; Mukaremera et al. 2017). A range of environmental stimuli trigger hyphal development, including temperatures above 36 °C, neutral pH, serum, bacterial peptidoglycan, high CO_2 levels, release from quorum sensing and nutrient starvation. The resultant yeast-to-hypha transition is accompanied by shifts in the carbohydrate and proteomic content of the cell wall (Staniszewska et al. 2013; Ebanks et al. 2006; Castillo et al. 2008; Gil-Bona et al. 2015). The cell walls of *C. albicans* hyphae can have up to twofold less mannan, threefold more glucan and five times more chitin than the walls of yeast cells (Staniszewska et al. 2013). Furthermore, changes in glucan structure are associated with hypha formation (Lowman et al. 2014). These changes in cell wall structure attenuate Dectin-1-mediated recognition of hyphae by innate immune cells, which compound the physical challenges associated with the phagocytosis of mycelia (Lowman et al. 2014; Gantner et al. 2005; Bain et al. 2014; Hopke et al. 2018).

Carbon source availability differs significantly between host niches. For example, glucose concentrations are about 0.06–0.1% in the bloodstream, but are essentially zero in the colon (Barelle et al. 2006), whilst significant amounts of short-chain fatty acids, such as lactate, are present in the vagina and colon (Owen and Katz 1999; Louis et al. 2007). Changes in carbon source have been found to exert major effects on the architecture and content of the *C. albicans* cell wall. Although the relative amounts of chitin, glucan and mannan remain similar, *C. albicans* cells grown on lactate, rather than glucose, have a thinner and less elastic cell wall (Ene et al. 2015; Ene et al. 2012). These changes in cell wall architecture correlate with changes in the cell wall proteome and secretome. In particular, the levels of certain chitinases increase (Cht1, Cht3), as do the cell wall remodelling enzymes Pga4, Phr1, Phr2, Pir1 and Xog1 (Ene et al. 2012).

The availability of essential micronutrients such as iron and zinc also varies between host niches, and this is exacerbated by the host's attempts to deprive invading pathogens of these micronutrients via nutritional immunity (Weinberg 1975; Hood and Skaar 2012; Potrykus et al. 2013). Therefore, the ability to scavenge iron and zinc is critical for fungal pathogenicity and tissue invasion (Ramanan and Wang 2000; Citiulo et al. 2012). In *C. albicans*, adaptation to iron starvation triggers changes in the expression of genes encoding cell wall proteins, biosynthetic enzymes and cross-linking enzymes (e.g. Als2, Bgl2, Cht2, Mnt4, Phr2, Pir1, Scw11) (Lan et al. 2004) and the elevation of Hwp1 and Rbt5 in the cell wall proteome (Sosinska et al. 2008). Recent data from our laboratory has shown

that iron limitation is also accompanied by significant changes in cell wall architecture (Pradhan et al. 2019). Changes in zinc availability also affect the *C. albicans* cell wall. Adaptation to zinc deprivation yields more adherent *C. albicans* cells that expose less mannan, but more chitin at their cell surface (Malavia et al. 2017). Also, zinc mobilisation is linked to PKA signalling (Kjellerup et al. 2018), which influences cell wall remodelling (Munro et al. 2007).

Host niches also vary significantly in their ambient pH. For example, the bloodstream is maintained at around pH 7.4, whereas the vaginal mucosa varies from pH 4 to pH 5 (Sobel 2007; O'Hanlon et al. 2013), and the major compartments of the gastrointestinal tract range from pH 2 to pH 7.5 (Evans et al. 1988; Fallingborg 1999; Koziolek et al. 2015). This type of change in ambient pH has a significant effect upon the *C. albicans* cell wall. When cells are exposed to low pH, the chitin content of the cell wall increases and the mannan fibrils in the outer layer of the cell wall become shorter and more disorganised (Sherrington et al. 2017). The expression of cell wall protein genes is also affected by changes in ambient pH. For example, exposure to alkaline pHs leads to the up-regulation of genes encoding cell wall biosynthetic enzymes (Kre6, Ecm38), modifying enzymes (Cht2, Crh1, Phr1), adhesins (Als3, Hwp1) and other cell wall mannoproteins (Hyr1, Rbt1, Rbt4) (Saporito-Irwin et al. 1995; Hoyer et al. 1998; Bensen et al. 2004). Growth at an alkaline pH also induces the expression of cell wall and secreted proteins that play important roles in host-fungus interactions, such as the zincophore Pra1 and the candidalysin precursor, Ece1 (Citiulo et al. 2012; Bensen et al. 2004; Moyes et al. 2016).

Oxygen levels vary dramatically between host niches, approaching zero in the human colon and in some fungal lesions (Savage 1977; Grahl et al. 2012; Lopes et al. 2018). Adaptation to hypoxia drives changes to the architecture of the *C albicans* cell wall (Fig. 3), yielding a thinner inner glucan-chitin layer and thinner mannan outer layer (Pradhan et al. 2018). Hypoxia up-regulates *ECM33,* which is important for cell wall biogenesis and integrity (Martinez-Lopez et al. 2006), and *ALG2,* which encodes a putative mannosyltransferase (Setiadi et al. 2006). There is also an increase in the abundance of specific GPI-anchored proteins in the cell wall proteome (Hwp1, Pir1, Rbt5) (Sosinska et al. 2008). Hypoxic regulation of cell wall changes depends largely upon a combination of mitochondrial, PKA and Efg1 signalling (Pradhan et al. 2018; Setiadi et al. 2006).

Changes in ambient temperature also affect the *C. albicans* cell wall. When *C. albicans* yeast cells grow at 42 °C, their chitin content increases relative to cells grown at 30 °C (Heilmann et al. 2013). Furthermore, the levels of the cell wall β-glucan glycosidases, Phr1 and Phr2, and chitin transglycosidases, Crh11 and Utr2, increase during growth at 42 °C (Heilmann et al. 2013). In addition, the temperature has an effect on the branched *N*-mannan composition of the cell wall: there is a decrease in β-1,2-linked mannose and an increase in α-1,3-linked mannose during growth at higher temperatures (Okawa and Goto 2006). Unsurprisingly, the perturbation of thermal regulatory processes in *C. albicans* also affects the cell wall. For example, depletion of the molecular chaperone Hsp90, which regulates

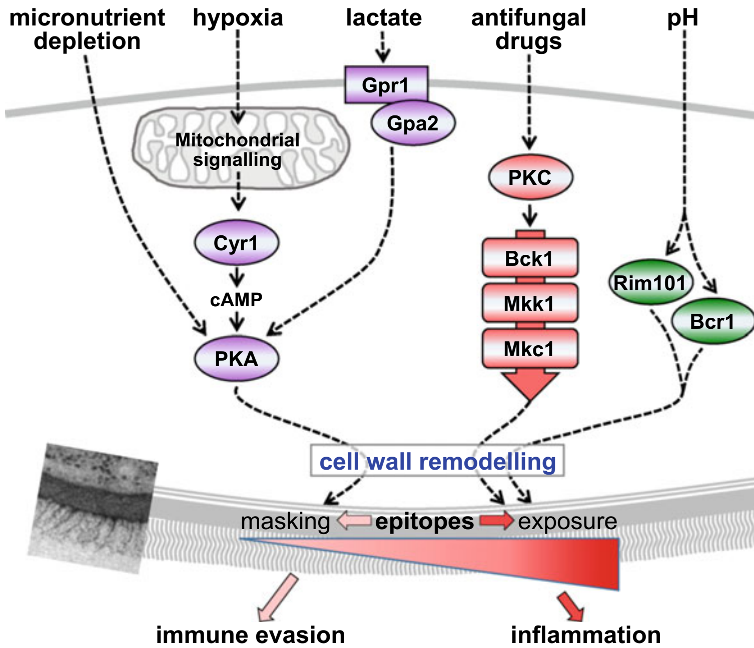


Fig. 3 Environmental factors modulate the exposure of cell surface epitopes to promote immune evasion or inflammation. A number of factors have been shown to influence the exposure of key epitopes (PAMPs) on the *C. albicans* cell surface. Caspofungin treatment leads to β-glucan exposure via the cell integrity (Mkc1) pathway (red) (Wheeler and Fink 2006; Wheeler et al. 2008). In contrast, host-derived lactate triggers β-glucan masking via Gpr1-Gpa2 and PKA signalling (purple) (Pradhan et al. 2018; Ballou et al. 2016). Hypoxia also initiates β-glucan masking, but this is mediated by mitochondrial signalling (grey), which then activates the PKA pathway (purple) (Pradhan et al. 2018). Micronutrient depletion leads to morphological changes that coincide with elevated chitin exposure at the cell surface (Malavia et al. 2017). This might be transduced via PKA signalling (Kjellerup et al. 2018). Growth in acidic pHs leads to increased β-glucan and chitin exposure (Sherrington et al. 2017). The increase in chitin exposure is mediated by Bcr1 and Rim101 signalling (Sherrington et al. 2017)

the transcription factor Hsf1, affects the chitin content of the cell wall and leads to an increase in the thickness of both the inner and outer layers of the wall (Leach et al. 2012).

As discussed above, exposure to antifungal drugs or to cell wall stresses triggers cell wall remodelling. Other types of environmental stress also affect the cell wall. *C. albicans* is exposed to oxidative stress during phagocytic attack, and the cell wall provides the first line of defence against the oxidative damage caused by reactive oxygen species (ROS). ROS-detoxifying enzymes such as superoxide dismutases (Sod4, Sod5) and catalase (Cat1) are found at the cell surface (Crowe et al. 2003; Frohner et al. 2009). Furthermore, the peroxidase Tsa1 is localised to the hyphal cell wall (Urban et al. 2005). All of these are up-regulated upon

encountering oxidative stress (Frohner et al. 2009; Urban et al. 2005; Enjalbert et al. 2006). Oxidative stress also influences cell wall architecture by inducing elongation of β-1,2-linked mannose side chains (Koyama et al. 2009).

Changes in osmolarity drive changes in cell volume. Under these circumstances, the elasticity of the cell wall underlies the ability of *C. albicans* cells to adjust their volume without incurring fatal rupturing of the wall or plasma membrane (Ene et al. 2015). This cell wall elasticity is dependent on the expression of the CHR family of transglycosylases (Chr11, Chr12, Utr2) (Ene et al. 2015). Adaptation to osmotic shock is dependent on signalling through the MAP kinases Hog1 and Mkc1, both of which regulate cell wall synthesis and remodelling (Navarro-Garcia et al. 1998; San Jose et al. 1996; Smith et al. 2004; Herrero-de-Dios et al. 2014) (Fig. 2).

Quorum sensing also influences cell wall biogenesis by modulating yeast-hypha morphogenesis and PKA signalling at high cell densities (Fig. 2). *C. albicans* generates farnesol, which accumulates at high cell densities. Farnesol attenuates the activity of adenyl cyclase, thereby down-regulating PKA activity (Lindsay et al. 2012). Farnesol also inhibits hyphal development by blocking Ubr1-mediated protein degradation of Nrg1, which represses hyphal development (Lu et al. 2014a; Murad et al. 2001).

Clearly, the cell wall is a flexible organelle that responds to local environmental inputs. These adaptive changes in cell wall structure and organisation directly affect the fitness of the fungus in these microenvironments. However, they also affect the fitness of the fungus indirectly in these microenvironments by influencing host-fungus interactions (below).

5 The Cell Wall in Immune Surveillance

As mentioned above, the cell wall is the first point of direct contact between *C. albicans* cells and innate immune cells. The cell wall polymers chitin, β-glucan and mannan are present on diverse fungal pathogens (Erwig and Gow 2016). The immune system has evolved to recognise these cell wall polymers as key epitopes, or pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) (Netea et al. 2008). Professional phagocytes (including neutrophils, macrophages and dendritic cells) and non-professional phagocytes (such as epithelial and endothelial cells) express an array of fungal-sensing receptors, or pattern recognition receptors (PRRs) (Brown and Gordon 2001; Dambuza and Brown 2015). These host receptors detect *C. albicans* PAMPs, many of which are located at the cell surface, and this recognition elicits innate immune responses (Brown and Netea 2007; Netea et al. 2015; Lionakis and Levitz 2018) (Fig. 4).

Chitin is located in the inner layer of the *C. albicans* cell wall, in relatively low abundance compared to the other main cell wall components. Consequently, most of the chitin in the lateral cell wall is largely shielded by the outer layer of mannan fibrils. Nevertheless, chitin is exposed at the cell surface in bud/birth scars and at sites of cell wall damage and does act as a PAMP (Netea et al. 2008). Chitin is

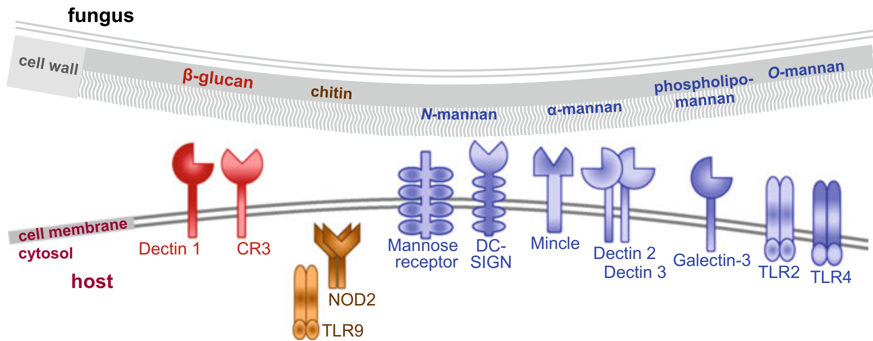


Fig. 4 Host receptors that recognise fungal cell wall components. A range of CLRs, TLRs and other PRRs in host cells recognise PAMPs such as glucan (red), chitin (brown) and mannan (blue) in the *C. albicans* cell wall. This figure is adapted from (Netea et al. 2015) using information described in the text

thought to undergo degradation into small particles (<1 um) during the inactivation of fungal cells by neutrophils and macrophages and by chitinase digestion (Wagener et al. 2014). These chitin particles are recognised by the mannose receptor (MR) and, thereafter, intracellularly by NOD2 and TLR9, eliciting an anti-inflammatory programme that includes elevated IL-10 expression and the dampening of TNF-α levels (Wagener et al. 2014). Furthermore, *C. albicans* chitin suppresses the generation of nitric oxide by macrophages and shifts macrophage polarisation from a pro-inflammatory M1 state towards anti-inflammatory M2 activation (Wagener et al. 2017).

β-Glucan is highly immunogenic and the recognition of this PAMP is critical for antifungal immunity. Whilst most β-glucan is buried in the inner layer of the *C. albicans* cell wall and masked by mannan fibrils (Graus et al. 2018; Wheeler and Fink 2006), some β-glucan is exposed at bud scars and at small puncta over the lateral cell surface (Gantner et al. 2005) Bain et al. unpublished). β-Glucan recognition occurs predominantly through the C-type lectin receptor (CLR), Dectin-1 (Brown and Gordon 2001). Dectin-1-mediated recognition of β-glucan promotes the formation of a phagocytic synapse, which activates pro-inflammatory signalling through Syk/CARD9, driving the respiratory burst and the release of cytokines such as TNF-α, IL-6 and IL-12 (Goodridge et al. 2011). In addition, the recognition of β-glucan by Dectin-1 triggers phagocytosis, phagosome maturation and ultimately clearance of the offending fungal cell (Mansour et al. 2013).

The critical importance of Dectin-1 in anti-*Candida* immunity is highlighted by the susceptibility of Dectin1 knockout mice to lethal infection (Taylor et al. 2007), as well as by the association of a genetic polymorphism in human Dectin-1, which disrupts β-glucan recognition by phagocytes and abrogates cytokine expression, with familial recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis (Ferwerda et al. 2009). Furthermore, elevated β-glucan exposure on *C. albicans* cells correlates with their reduced fitness in the gastrointestinal tract (Sem et al. 2016), probably because this

exposure enhances Dectin-1-mediated clearance of the fungal cells from the gut. In addition to activating phagocytosis and pro-inflammatory functions, Dectin-1-mediated sensing of *C. albicans* β-glucan enables "trained immunity" via epigenetic reprogramming of monocyte metabolism to drive enhanced protection against secondary infections (Saeed et al. 2014). Also, a link to adaptive immunity was demonstrated in a study, showing that Dectin-1 expressed on dendritic cells controls CD4+ T cell-mediated gut immunity in mice (Drummond et al. 2016).

These observations illustrate the central importance of Dectin-1 in anti-*Candida* innate and adaptive immune defences. However, additional receptors contribute to the recognition of β-glucan. CR3 (Mac1, CD11b/CD18) is an integrin expressed on several myeloid and lymphoid cell types with affinity for a variety of ligands including iC3b-opsonised target cells (Xia et al. 1999). The I-domain of the CD11b subunit can bind β-glucan (Thornton et al. 1996) and contributes, along with Dectin-1, to the recognition of *C. albicans* hyphae by macrophages (Maxson et al. 2018). CR3 is also important for the recognition of *C. albicans* by neutrophils, which leads to activation and fungal killing (O'Brien and Reichner 2016). Other β-glucan receptors include the glycosphingolipid lactosylceramide, the scavenger receptors SCARF and CD36 and CD23 (Jimenez-Lucho et al. 1990; Means et al. 2009; Guo et al. 2018).

As stated above, the frond-like mannan fibrils that decorate the outer cell wall limit the exposure of β-glucan to immune recognition (Graus et al. 2018). Nevertheless, the mannan fibrils themselves contain molecular signatures that potentiate host immune responses (Netea et al. 2008). *N*-mannan is detected by the mannose receptor, which promotes the oxidative burst and Th1/Th17 responses to control *C. albicans* infection (van de Veerdonk et al. 2009). DC-SIGN (SIGN-R in mice), which is expressed by dendritic cells, also binds fungal *N*-mannan. This leads to interactions with plasma membrane "pickets", such as CD44, that connect the *N*-mannan-DC-SIGN synapse to the cytoskeleton, thereby stabilising phagocytic binding to the target *C. albicans* cells (Te Riet et al. 2017).

The PRRs Dectin-2 and Dectin-3 (MCL, ClecSF8) recognise hyphal α-mannan (McGreal et al. 2006; Saijo et al. 2010; Zhu et al. 2013). Indeed, heterodimerisation of Dectin-2 with Dectin-3 drives a more potent NFkB response than either of these receptors alone (Zhu et al. 2013). The Mincle (macrophage inducible Ca^{++}-dependent lectin) receptor also recognises α-mannan in the *C. albicans* cell wall to drive TNF-α production, thereby promoting protection against systemic infection in mice (Lionakis and Levitz 2018; Wells et al. 2008). In humans, Mincle expression on monocytes is non-phagocytic, but drives pro-inflammatory responses, whereas Mincle expression on neutrophils mediates phagocytosis and killing of *C. albicans* (Vijayan et al. 2012). *C. albicans* α-mannans are also recognised by CD23, resulting in NFkB activation (Guo et al. 2018).

Mannose-binding lectin (MBL) is a secreted circulatory PRR that supports opsono-phagocytosis, and mice that lack MBL succumb to lethal *C. albicans* infections (Held et al. 2008). Gut epithelial cells secrete MBL upon sensing *C. albicans* to regulate gut homoeostasis and control infection (Choteau et al. 2016). Galectin-3, which is expressed in the cytoplasm of host cells and in body

fluids (Dong et al. 2018), has direct fungicidal activity against *C. albicans* cells (Kohatsu et al. 2006). Galectin-3 binds fungal β-1,2 mannoside residues, which are found in phospholipomannan and occasional side branch caps of *N*-mannan chains in the outer wall of *C. albicans* (Roman et al. 2016). Meanwhile, the PRR Langerin recognises mannan and β-glucan and is the dominant receptor on Langerhans cells, which are specialised dendritic cells that are positioned within the epidermis to sample *Candida* species during gut colonisation (de Jong et al. 2010; De Jesus et al. 2015).

The role of Toll-Like Receptors (TLRs) in mammalian antifungal defences was initially suggested by a *Drosophila melanogaster* study that revealed the regulation of drosomycin by the Toll pathway (Lemaitre et al. 1996). Subsequently, TLR2 and TLR4 were shown to modulate cytokine production during candidiasis (Netea et al. 2002). These TLR receptors recognise phospholipomannan and *O*-linked mannan in the *C. albicans* cell wall, respectively (Tada et al. 2002; Jouault et al. 2003; Netea et al. 2006).

Host receptors do not act efficiently in isolation. Instead, sensing of fungal targets is best achieved by collaboration between PRRs and the multi-valent engagement of multiple PAMPs on the cell surface. The inflammatory programme is maximised by co-stimulation of TLR and CLR and activation of MyD88 and Syk/CARD9 pathways, respectively. For example, Dectin-1 and TLR2 cooperate to drive TNF-α production following recognition of *C. albicans* β-glucan (Brown et al. 2003; Gantner et al. 2003). Dectin-1 also mediates cooperative signalling with CR3 and SIGN-R1 (Taylor et al. 2004; Huang et al. 2015) and, as mentioned above, the paired engagement of Dectin-2 and Dectin-3 synergistically boosts inflammatory responses (Zhu et al. 2013). Our understanding of fungal recognition, combinatorial signalling and effector function is limited, and this is further complicated by the context of immune cells involved, their activation status and the nature of the fungal target encountered.

6 The Cell Wall in Immune Evasion

Most studies of fungal immunology have focussed on the immune cell—the receptors and their ligands, mechanisms of intracellular and cytokine signalling and phagocytosis, for example. Less attention has been paid to the fungus and in particular to the impact of fungal adaptation upon PAMP exposure. Indeed, most fungal immunology studies have examined fungal cells that were grown under standardised, but non-physiological conditions in vitro. Yet, as described above, *C. albicans* remodels its cell wall in response to environmental change. It is therefore unsurprising that the conditions under which *C. albicans* is grown significantly affect PAMP exposure, and thereby, the outcome of host-fungus interactions (Hopke et al. 2018). It is becoming clear that, in reality, *C. albicans* is a moving target for the immune system.

Early indications that *C. albicans* is a moving immunological target arose from Wheeler's work showing that dynamic morphogenetic changes during infection affect the degree of β-glucan exposure on the fungal cells (Wheeler et al. 2008). In part, this effect appears to be mediated by the damage that neutrophil extracellular traps cause to the fungal cell surface in situ, and the subsequent fungal cell wall remodelling and repair, which is largely mediated by Hog1-dependent processes (Hopke et al. 2016).

The paradigm of the moving immunological target was clearly demonstrated by the observation that exposing *C. albicans* cells to physiological levels of lactate (a metabolite generated in the vagina and gut by host cells and the microbiota) triggers β-glucan masking at the fungal cell surface (Ballou et al. 2016). *C. albicans* cells detect extracellular lactate via the receptor Gpr1, which signals through Gpa2, PKA, Crz1 and Ace2, leading to reduced β-glucan exposure at the cell surface (Pradhan et al. 2018; Ballou et al. 2016) (Fig. 3). This results in decreased macrophage phagocytosis, lower rates of neutrophil recruitment to sites of infection, and decreased production of the pro-inflammatory cytokines TNF-α and MIP-1 (Ballou et al. 2016). This work, together with the correlative studies of Sem and co-workers (Sem et al. 2016), suggests that *C. albicans* exploits local environmental signals to evade immune recognition and thereby enhance its fitness in certain host niches.

More recently, *C. albicans* has been shown to trigger β-glucan masking and immune evasion in response to hypoxia (Pradhan et al. 2018; Lopes et al. 2018). During the development of a lesion, oxygen concentrations are lower through the combined activities of the infecting *C. albicans* cells and the neutrophils in immune infiltrates that form in an attempt to clear these fungal cells. The resultant hypoxic microenvironment activates β-glucan masking by the *C. albicans* cells, thereby protecting them from clearance by the surrounding neutrophils (Lopes et al. 2018). The hypoxic signal is transduced via the mitochondrion, which leads to PKA-mediated β-glucan masking (Pradhan et al. 2018) (Fig. 3). More recently, we have shown that iron depletion also promotes β-glucan masking in *C. albicans* (Pradhan et al. 2019). Iron depletion is highly relevant to systemic infection as the fungus becomes exposed to iron-limiting conditions in tissues as a consequence of the nutritional immunity imposed by immune infiltrates around fungal lesions (Potrykus et al. 2013). Clearly, *C. albicans* is able to exploit the local signals in certain host niches to evade immune recognition.

Other host niches appear to trigger PAMP exposure and inflammation, rather than PAMP masking and immune evasion. *C. albicans* cells that are exposed to the relatively low ambient pH of the human vagina tend to expose higher levels of β-glucan and chitin at their surface than cells grown at neutral pH of the bloodstream, for example (Sherrington et al. 2017). The elevated chitin exposure appears to be mediated by a reduction in chitinase (Cht2) expression via Bcr1 and Rim101 signalling (Fig. 3). The exposed fungal cells are phagocytosed more efficiently by macrophages and neutrophils, they stimulate increased production of pro-inflammatory cytokines, and they recruit immune cells more efficiently to infection sites (Sherrington et al. 2017). These observations appear to resonate with

the inflammatory behaviour of *C. albicans* during vulvovaginal candidiasis (Hall and Noverr 2017).

Artificial environmental inputs, such as antifungal drugs, also convert *C. albicans* into a moving immunological target. Exposure to sub-inhibitory concentrations of caspofungin increases β-glucan exposure in *C. albicans* to sufficient levels to elicit a potent TNF-α response from macrophages (Wheeler and Fink 2006). This caspofungin-mediated β-glucan exposure is relevant in vivo during infection (Wheeler et al. 2008). A heightened immune response to *C. albicans* can also be caused by mannan grazing by *Bacteroidetes* (a Gram-negative member of the gut microbiota), possibly via trimming of the outer fibrillar layer of the cell wall to reveal the underlying β-glucan (Cuskin et al. 2015).

7 Parallels with Other Fungal Pathogens

C. albicans is not the only fungal pathogen to evade host immune responses by masking a major PAMP in their cell wall. *A. fumigatus*, *C. neoformans*, *Histoplasma capsulatum* and other dimorphic fungal pathogens have evolved effective mechanisms to avoid Dectin-1-mediated immune responses. These fungal pathogens mask PAMPs via two major mechanisms: firstly, by physically masking the PAMP with non-stimulatory cell wall molecules; or secondly, by hydrolase-mediated remodelling of the exposed PAMP.

A. fumigatus is the most common cause of invasive mould infections in immunocompromised patients (Brown et al. 2012). The initial host-pathogen interaction, and an important stage for immune evasion, occurs between conidia, lung epithelial cells, and resident alveolar macrophages. The *A. fumigatus* cell wall contains pro-inflammatory PAMPs, such as galactomannans and β-glucan, which stimulate robust antifungal immune responses and clearance mechanisms (Luther et al. 2007; Heinekamp et al. 2015; Stappers et al. 2018). *A. fumigatus* PAMP exposure peaks with conidial swelling and early hyphal germination, but is masked in mature hyphae and ungerminated conidia (Hohl et al. 2005). These ungerminated conidia mask their cell wall PAMPs under a rodlet layer composed of DHN-melanin and the hydrophobic RodA protein (Aimanianda et al. 2009).

RodA masks Dectin-1- and Dectin-2-mediated detection of *A. fumigatus* conidial PAMPs, and this promotes early immune evasion and fungal survival in the host (Carrion Sde et al. 2013). DHN-melanin plays an important role in preventing phagosomal acidification, thereby enhancing virulence (Langfelder et al. 1998; Thywissen et al. 2011). However, DHN-melanin is also a PAMP and the ligand for the newly characterised host PRR, MelLec (Stappers et al. 2018). Sensing of DHN-melanin by MelLec is important for the control of systemic *A. fumigatus* infection and MelLec polymorphisms are associated with increased risk of aspergillosis in certain cohorts of transplant patients (Stappers et al. 2018).

The protective rodlet layer is lost during *A. fumigatus* germination to reveal the underlying PAMPs. However, *A. fumigatus* hyphae synthesise a cell wall

polysaccharide, galactosaminogalactan, which masks β-glucan whilst mediating adherence to host cells (Gravelat et al. 2013). *A. fumigatus* mutants with defects in galactosaminogalactan biosynthesis display increased β-glucan exposure, they are attenuated in their virulence, and they induce hyper-inflammation in mice (Gravelat et al. 2013).

C. neoformans is another environmentally prevalent human fungal pathogen that causes disease in immunocompromised patients (Brown et al. 2012; Voelz and May 2010). Despite its clinical significance, relatively little is known about how the immune system recognises *C. neoformans* (Heung 2017). In addition to the conserved carbohydrate polymers that typically form fungal cell walls (e.g. chitin, β-glucans, and mannans (Erwig and Gow 2016), *C. neoformans* possesses a unique polysaccharide capsule, primarily composed of glucuronoxylomannan, which masks its cell wall PAMPs. Glucuronoxylomannan is recognised by the receptor TLR4, but TLR4 engagement is not sufficient to induce TNF-α or influence mouse susceptibility to cryptococcosis (Shoham et al. 2001; Yauch et al. 2004). Interestingly, the collectin SP-D binds to glucuronoxylomannan in vitro, and its interaction with *C. neoformans* cells facilitates fungal protection from macrophage killing (Geunes-Boyer et al. 2009). This suggests a possible proactive immune evasion role for *C. neoformans* capsule beyond simply passively shielding cell wall PAMPs (Geunes-Boyer et al. 2009).

Acapsular *C. neoformans* mutants are avirulent and are phagocytosed more efficiently than encapsulated cells (Geunes-Boyer et al. 2009), which is likely due to the unmasking of the underlying immune-stimulatory PAMPs. These appear to include mannoprotein moieties recognised by the Mannose Receptor (Mansour et al. 2002), as mice lacking the Mannose Receptor are more susceptible to infection than wild-type mice (Dan et al. 2008). Other major receptors, such as Dectin-1, Dectin-2, and Dectin-3, are not essential for in vivo defences against cryptococcosis (Nakamura et al. 2007; Nakamura et al. 2015; Campuzano et al. 2017).

The virulence of dimorphic fungal pathogens, such as *H. capsulatum, Blastomyces dermatitidis* and *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis*, has been linked to α-1,3-glucan in their cell walls. α-1,3-Glucan blocks the recognition of cell wall β-1,3-glucan via Dectin-1 by physically masking β-1,3-glucan (Rappleye et al. 2007). Consequently, *P. brasiliensis* and *B. dermatitidis* mutants with low α-1,3-glucan production display decreased virulence in mouse models of infection (San-Blas et al. 1977; Hogan and Klein 1994). However, this association between *H. capsulatum* virulence and α-1,3-glucan is dependent on strain chemotype. *H. capsulatum* strains of chemotype II require α-1,3-glucan for virulence (Edwards et al. 2011) and the inactivation of α-1,3-glucan synthesis attenuates *H. capsulatum* virulence in mice (Rappleye et al. 2004).

In addition to physically masking β-1,3-glucan with α-1,3-glucan, *H. capsulatum* also enzymatically reduces β-glucan exposure in its cell wall (Garfoot and Rappleye 2016). This is achieved by expressing Eng1, an endoglucanase that hydrolyses β- (Sobel 2007; Denning et al. 2018) -glycosyl linkages. Eng1 decreases β-glucan exposure at the cell surface, thereby reducing Dectin-1-mediated recognition of

H. capsulatum cells, and enhancing the virulence of *H. capsulatum* (Garfoot and Rappleye 2016). Therefore the combined effects of physical masking (via α-1,3-glucan) and enzymatic trimming (via Eng1) provide *H. capsulatum* with effective PAMP masking mechanisms (Fig. 3). No doubt these contribute to the inability of innate immune cells to control *H. capsulatum* infection, with macrophages ultimately serving as a reservoir for disseminated infection (Garfoot and Rappleye 2016). Interestingly, Eng1 homologues exist in other important fungal pathogens, including *C. albicans*, suggesting that PAMP trimming mechanisms might contribute to immune evasion in these fungi.

8 Conclusions and Outlook

To summarise, the fungal cell wall is a remarkable organelle that retains a high degree of elasticity and permeability, whilst retaining sufficient tensile strength and spatial integrity to preserve the morphology of the cell. In this way, the cell wall is able to protect the fungal cell against certain acute environmental stresses, whilst permitting communication with the host or local microbiota through the release of large extracellular vesicles. Furthermore, through a complex signalling network that regulates cellular adaptation and cell wall synthesis, the cell wall is responsive to a wide variety of environmental challenges. This cell wall remodelling allows a fungal pathogen to evade the potentially lethal effects of certain antifungal drugs or debilitating mutations, and of local cell wall stresses imposed by host niches.

However, the cell wall is also a point of fragility for a fungal pathogen, as it carries immuno-stimulatory epitopes that can trigger antifungal host defences. Therefore the cell wall has a major influence upon host-fungus interactions. Nevertheless, the ability to remodel the cell wall has provided fungal pathogens with the capacity to evolve effective immune evasion strategies that either mask or remove cell surface PAMPs. *C. albicans,* in particular, has “learned” to exploit a variety of host-derived signals to activate β-glucan masking and immune evasion, including lactate, iron deprivation and hypoxia.

A number of fascinating questions remain to be answered. For example, what is the exact nature and frequency of the covalent cross-links between the major cell wall polymers in the *C. albicans* cell wall? And how, together with the properties of these polymers, do these cross-links promote the remarkable elasticity and morphological stability of the cell wall? The development of monoclonal or recombinant antibodies that are specific for particular cross-links would permit the frequency and spatial distribution of these linkages to be analysed in situ on the *C. albicans* cell wall. This would be particularly interesting in the context of environmental or genetic changes that affect cell wall elasticity and/or morphology (e.g. Ene et al. 2012, 2015; Pardini et al. 2006; Fonzi 1999).

It would be fascinating to screen for host inputs that influence β-glucan exposure in *C. albicans* and thereby affect immune evasion. A number of specific host inputs have been identified already, but an unbiased screen of host signals has yet to be

reported. Then, given the complexity and diversity of host niches, it would be important to test combinations of inputs to establish which signals are most influential in particular niches, and to test PAMP exposure on cells isolated directly from these niches. For example, recent data (e.g. (Pericolini et al. 2018) suggests that lactate-mediated β-glucan masking might dominate over pH-mediated β-glucan exposure during vulvovaginal infection. But what signals dominate in the gastrointestinal tract, and how does this affect *C. albicans* colonisation of the colon, for example?

It is also important to understand exactly how do *C. albicans* cells mask β-glucan at their cell surface—by covering it with mannan or by trimming via an Eng1-like activity (Graus et al. 2018; Garfoot et al. 2016)? Does β-glucan masking attenuate *C. albicans*-phagocyte interactions by simply delaying phagocytic recognition, or does masking (also) reduce the dynamics of phagocytic uptake and/or phagolysosomal maturation?

These questions are not simply of academic interest. A better understanding of the intricacies of cell wall structure and biogenesis is likely to reveal new therapeutic targets that will compromise this essential organelle. Furthermore, a better understanding of the immune evasion strategies exploited by fungal pathogens might reveal ways in which PAMP masking might be blocked. This type of drug might provide a potential means of augmenting antifungal immunotherapies. These could potentially include, for example, specific fungal polysaccharides that provide immuno-amelioration for certain infectious or inflammatory diseases. Time will tell.

Acknowledgements This work was funded by a programme grant from the UK Medical Research Council [www.mrc.ac.uk: MR/M026663/1], and by PhD studentships from the University of Aberdeen to AP, DL. The work was also supported by the Medical Research Council Centre for Medical Mycology (MR/N006364/1) and by the Wellcome Trust [www.wellcome.ac.uk : 097377]. The funders had no role in study design, data collection and analysis, decision to publish or preparation of the manuscript.

References

Aimanianda V, Bayry J, Bozza S, Kniemeyer O, Perruccio K, Elluru SR et al (2009) Surface hydrophobin prevents immune recognition of airborne fungal spores. Nature 460(7259):1117–1121

Albrecht A, Felk A, Pichova I, Naglik JR, Schaller M, de Groot P et al (2006) Glycosylphosphatidylinositol-anchored proteases of *Candida albicans* target proteins necessary for both cellular processes and host-pathogen interactions. J Biol Chem 281(2):688–694

Almeida RS, Brunke S, Albrecht A, Thewes S, Laue M, Edwards JE et al (2008) The hyphal-associated adhesin and invasin Als3 of *Candida albicans* mediates iron acquisition from host ferritin. PLoS Pathog 4(11):e1000217

Bain JM, Louw J, Lewis LE, Okai B, Walls CA, Ballou ER et al (2014) *Candida albicans* hypha formation and mannan masking of beta-glucan inhibit macrophage phagosome maturation. MBio 5(6):e01874–14

Ballou ER, Avelar GM, Childers DS, Mackie J, Bain JM, Wagener J et al (2016) Lactate signalling regulates fungal beta-glucan masking and immune evasion. Nat Microbiol 12(2):16238

Barelle CJ, Priest CL, Maccallum DM, Gow NA, Odds FC, Brown AJ (2006) Niche-specific regulation of central metabolic pathways in a fungal pathogen. Cell Microbiol 8(6):961–971

Bates S, MacCallum DM, Bertram G, Munro CA, Hughes HB, Buurman ET et al (2005) *Candida albicans* Pmr1p, a secretory pathway P-type Ca^{2+}/Mn^{2+} -ATPase, is required for glycosylation and virulence. J Biol Chem 280(24):23408–23415

Bates S, Hughes HB, Munro CA, Thomas WP, MacCallum DM, Bertram G et al (2006) Outer chain *N*-glycans are required for cell wall integrity and virulence of *Candida albicans*. J Biol Chem 281(1):90–98

Bensen ES, Martin SJ, Li M, Berman J, Davis DA (2004) Transcriptional profiling in *Candida albicans* reveals new adaptive responses to extracellular pH and functions for Rim101p. Mol Microbiol 54(5):1335–1351

Blankenship JR, Fanning S, Hamaker JJ, Mitchell AP (2010) An extensive circuitry for cell wall regulation in *Candida albicans*. PLoS Pathog 6(2):e1000752

Bowman SM, Free SJ (2006) The structure and synthesis of the fungal cell wall. BioEssays 28 (8):799–808

Brown GD, Gordon S (2001) Immune recognition. A new receptor for beta-glucans. Nature 413 (6851):36–37

Brown GD, Netea MG (2007) SpringerLink. Immunology of fungal infections

Brown GD, Herre J, Williams DL, Willment JA, Marshall AS, Gordon S (2003) Dectin-1 mediates the biological effects of beta-glucans. J Exp Med 197(9):1119–1124

Brown GD, Denning DW, Gow NA, Levitz SM, Netea MG, White TC (2012) Hidden killers: human fungal infections. Sci Transl Med 4(165):165rv13

Bruno VM, Kalachikov S, Subaran R, Nobile CJ, Kyratsous C, Mitchell AP (2006) Control of the *C. albicans* cell wall damage response by transcriptional regulator Cas5. PLoS Pathog 2(3):e21

Buurman ET, Westwater C, Hube B, Brown AJ, Odds FC, Gow NA (1998) Molecular analysis of CaMnt1p, a mannosyl transferase important for adhesion and virulence of *Candida albicans*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 95(13):7670–7675

Campuzano A, Castro-Lopez N, Wozniak KL, Leopold Wager CM, Wormley FL Jr (2017) Dectin-3 is not required for protection against *Cryptococcus neoformans* infection. PLoS ONE 12(1):e0169347

Cantero PD, Ernst JF (2011) Damage to the glycoshield activates PMT-directed O-mannosylation via the Msb2-Cek1 pathway in *Candida albicans*. Mol Microbiol 80(3):715–725

Carrion Sde J, Leal SM Jr, Ghannoum MA, Aimanianda V, Latge JP, Pearlman E (2013) The RodA hydrophobin on *Aspergillus fumigatus* spores masks dectin-1- and dectin-2-dependent responses and enhances fungal survival in vivo. J Immunol 191(5):2581–2588

Castillo L, Calvo E, Martinez AI, Ruiz-Herrera J, Valentin E, Lopez JA et al (2008) A study of the *Candida albicans* cell wall proteome. Proteomics 8(18):3871–3881

Chaffin WL (2008) *Candida albicans* cell wall proteins. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 72(3):495–544

Cheetham J, Smith DA, da Silva Dantas A, Doris KS, Patterson MJ, Bruce CR et al (2007) A single MAPKKK regulates the Hog1 MAPK pathway in the pathogenic fungus *Candida albicans*. Mol Biol Cell 18(11):4603–4614

Choteau L, Parny M, Francois N, Bertin B, Fumery M, Dubuquoy L et al (2016) Role of mannose-binding lectin in intestinal homeostasis and fungal elimination. Mucosal Immunol 9 (3):767–776

Citiulo F, Jacobsen ID, Miramon P, Schild L, Brunke S, Zipfel P et al (2012) *Candida albicans* scavenges host zinc via Pra1 during endothelial invasion. PLoS Pathog 8(6):e1002777

Crowe JD, Sievwright IK, Auld GC, Moore NR, Gow NA, Booth NA (2003) *Candida albicans* binds human plasminogen: identification of eight plasminogen-binding proteins. Mol Microbiol 47(6):1637–1651

Cuskin F, Lowe EC, Temple MJ, Zhu Y, Cameron E, Pudlo NA et al (2015) Human gut Bacteroidetes can utilize yeast mannan through a selfish mechanism. Nature 517(7533):165–169

Dague E, Bitar R, Ranchon H, Durand F, Yken HM, Francois JM (2010) An atomic force microscopy analysis of yeast mutants defective in cell wall architecture. Yeast 27(8):673–684
Dambuza IM, Brown GD (2015) C-type lectins in immunity: recent developments. Curr Opin Immunol 32:21–27
Dan JM, Kelly RM, Lee CK, Levitz SM (2008) Role of the mannose receptor in a murine model of *Cryptococcus neoformans* infection. Infect Immun 76(6):2362–2367
Day AM, Smith DA, Ikeh MA, Haider M, Herrero-de-Dios CM, Brown AJ et al (2017) Blocking two-component signalling enhances *Candida albicans* virulence and reveals adaptive mechanisms that counteract sustained SAPK activation. PLoS Pathog 13(1):e1006131
De Jesus M, Rodriguez AE, Yagita H, Ostroff GR, Mantis NJ (2015) Sampling of *Candida albicans* and *Candida tropicalis* by langerin-positive dendritic cells in mouse Peyer's patches. Immunol Lett 168(1):64–72
de Jong MA, Vriend LE, Theelen B, Taylor ME, Fluitsma D, Boekhout T et al (2010) C-type lectin langerin is a beta-glucan receptor on human Langerhans cells that recognizes opportunistic and pathogenic fungi. Mol Immunol 47(6):1216–1225
Deatherage BL, Cookson BT (2012) Membrane vesicle release in bacteria, eukaryotes, and archaea: a conserved yet underappreciated aspect of microbial life. Infect Immun 80(6):1948–1957
Delgado-Silva Y, Vaz C, Carvalho-Pereira J, Carneiro C, Nogueira E, Correia A et al (2014) Participation of *Candida albicans* transcription factor RLM1 in cell wall biogenesis and virulence. PLoS ONE 9(1):e86270
Denning DW, Kneale M, Sobel JD, Rautemaa-Richardson R (2018) Global burden of recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis: a systematic review. Lancet Infect Dis
Dichtl K, Samantaray S, Wagener J (2016) Cell wall integrity signalling in human pathogenic fungi. Cell Microbiol 18(9):1228–1238
Dong R, Zhang M, Hu Q, Zheng S, Soh A, Zheng Y et al (2018) Galectin-3 as a novel biomarker for disease diagnosis and a target for therapy (Review). Int J Mol Med 41(2):599–614
Donlin MJ, Upadhya R, Gerik KJ, Lam W, VanArendonk LG, Specht CA et al (2014) Cross talk between the cell wall integrity and cyclic AMP/protein kinase A pathways in Cryptococcus neoformans. MBio 5(4). https://doi.org/10.1128/mbio.01573-14
Douglas CM, D'Ippolito JA, Shei GJ, Meinz M, Onishi J, Marrinan JA et al (1997) Identification of the FKS1 gene of Candida albicans as the essential target of 1,3-beta-D-glucan synthase inhibitors. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 41(11):2471–2479
Drummond RA, Dambuza IM, Vautier S, Taylor JA, Reid DM, Bain CC et al (2016) CD4(+) T-cell survival in the GI tract requires dectin-1 during fungal infection. Mucosal Immunol 9 (2):492–502
Ebanks RO, Chisholm K, McKinnon S, Whiteway M, Pinto DM (2006) Proteomic analysis of *Candida albicans* yeast and hyphal cell wall and associated proteins. Proteomics 6(7):2147–2156
Edwards JA, Alore EA, Rappleye CA (2011) The yeast-phase virulence requirement for alpha-glucan synthase differs among Histoplasma capsulatum chemotypes. Eukaryot Cell 10 (1):87–97
Ene IV, Adya AK, Wehmeier S, Brand AC, MacCallum DM, Gow NA et al (2012a) Host carbon sources modulate cell wall architecture, drug resistance and virulence in a fungal pathogen. Cell Microbiol 14(9):1319–1335
Ene IV, Heilmann CJ, Sorgo AG, Walker LA, de Koster CG, Munro CA et al (2012b) Carbon source-induced reprogramming of the cell wall proteome and secretome modulates the adherence and drug resistance of the fungal pathogen *Candida albicans*. Proteomics 12 (21):3164–3179
Ene IV, Walker LA, Schiavone M, Lee KK, Martin-Yken H, Dague E et al (2015) Cell wall remodeling enzymes modulate fungal cell wall elasticity and osmotic stress resistance. MBio 6 (4):e00986–15

Enjalbert B, Smith DA, Cornell MJ, Alam I, Nicholls S, Brown AJ et al (2006) Role of the Hog1 stress-activated protein kinase in the global transcriptional response to stress in the fungal pathogen *Candida albicans*. Mol Biol Cell 17(2):1018–1032

Erwig LP, Gow NA (2016) Interactions of fungal pathogens with phagocytes. Nat Rev Microbiol 14(3):163–176

Evans DF, Pye G, Bramley R, Clark AG, Dyson TJ, Hardcastle JD (1988) Measurement of gastrointestinal pH profiles in normal ambulant human subjects. Gut 29(8):1035–1041

Fallingborg J (1999) Intraluminal pH of the human gastrointestinal tract. Dan Med Bull 46(3):183–196

Fanning S, Xu W, Beaurepaire C, Suhan JP, Nantel A, Mitchell AP (2012) Functional control of the *Candida albicans* cell wall by catalytic protein kinase A subunit Tpk1. Mol Microbiol 86 (2):284–302

Ferwerda B, Ferwerda G, Plantinga TS, Willment JA, van Spriel AB, Venselaar H et al (2009) Human dectin-1 deficiency and mucocutaneous fungal infections. N Engl J Med 361 (18):1760–1767

Fonzi WA (1999) PHR1 and PHR2 of *Candida albicans* encode putative glycosidases required for proper cross-linking of beta-1,3- and beta-1,6-glucans. J Bacteriol 181(22):7070–7079

Frohner IE, Bourgeois C, Yatsyk K, Majer O, Kuchler K (2009) *Candida albicans* cell surface superoxide dismutases degrade host-derived reactive oxygen species to escape innate immune surveillance. Mol Microbiol 71(1):240–252

Fuchs BB, Mylonakis E (2009) Our paths might cross: the role of the fungal cell wall integrity pathway in stress response and cross talk with other stress response pathways. Eukaryot Cell 8 (11):1616–1625

Galan-Diez M, Arana DM, Serrano-Gomez D, Kremer L, Casasnovas JM, Ortega M et al (2010) *Candida albicans* beta-glucan exposure is controlled by the fungal CEK1-mediated mitogen-activated protein kinase pathway that modulates immune responses triggered through dectin-1. Infect Immun 78(4):1426–1436

Gantner BN, Simmons RM, Canavera SJ, Akira S, Underhill DM (2003) Collaborative induction of inflammatory responses by dectin-1 and Toll-like receptor 2. J Exp Med 197(9):1107–1117

Gantner BN, Simmons RM, Underhill DM (2005) Dectin-1 mediates macrophage recognition of *Candida albicans* yeast but not filaments. EMBO J 24(6):1277–1286

Garcia R, Bravo E, Diez-Muniz S, Nombela C, Rodriguez-Pena JM, Arroyo J (2017) A novel connection between the cell wall integrity and the PKA pathways regulates cell wall stress response in yeast. Sci Rep 7(1):5703 https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-017-06001-9

Garfoot AL, Rappleye CA (2016) *Histoplasma capsulatum* surmounts obstacles to intracellular pathogenesis. FEBS J 283(4):619–633

Garfoot AL, Shen Q, Wuthrich M, Klein BS, Rappleye CA (2016) The Eng1 beta-glucanase enhances histoplasma virulence by reducing beta-glucan exposure. MBio 7(2):e01388–15

Gatti E, Popolo L, Vai M, Rota N, Alberghina L (1994) O-linked oligosaccharides in yeast glycosyl phosphatidylinositol-anchored protein gp115 are clustered in a serine-rich region not essential for its function. J Biol Chem 269(31):19695–19700

Geunes-Boyer S, Oliver TN, Janbon G, Lodge JK, Heitman J, Perfect JR et al (2009) Surfactant protein D increases phagocytosis of hypocapsular C*ryptococcus neoformans* by murine macrophages and enhances fungal survival. Infect Immun 77(7):2783–2794

Gil-Bona A, Parra-Giraldo CM, Hernaez ML, Reales-Calderon JA, Solis NV, Filler SG et al (2015) *Candida albicans* cell shaving uncovers new proteins involved in cell wall integrity, yeast to hypha transition, stress response and host-pathogen interaction. J Proteomics 127(Pt B):340–351

Goodridge HS, Reyes CN, Becker CA, Katsumoto TR, Ma J, Wolf AJ et al (2011) Activation of the innate immune receptor Dectin-1 upon formation of a 'phagocytic synapse'. Nature 472 (7344):471–475

Gouba N, Drancourt M (2015) Digestive tract mycobiota: a source of infection. Med Mal Infect 45 (1–2):9–16

Gow NA, Hube B (2012) Importance of the *Candida albicans* cell wall during commensalism and infection. Curr Opin Microbiol 15(4):406–412

Gow NA, Robbins PW, Lester JW, Brown AJ, Fonzi WA, Chapman T et al (1994) A hyphal-specific chitin synthase gene (CHS2) is not essential for growth, dimorphism, or virulence of *Candida albicans*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 91(13):6216–6220

Gow NAR, Latge JP, Munro CA (2017) The fungal cell wall: structure, biosynthesis, and function. Microbiol Spectr 5(3). https://doi.org/10.1128/microbiolspec.funk-0035-2016

Grahl N, Shepardson KM, Chung D, Cramer RA (2012) Hypoxia and fungal pathogenesis: to air or not to air? Eukaryot Cell 11(5):560–570

Graus MS, Wester MJ, Lowman DW, Williams DL, Kruppa MD, Martinez CM et al (2018) Mannan molecular substructures control nanoscale glucan exposure in candida. Cell Rep 24 (9):2432–2442.e5

Gravelat FN, Beauvais A, Liu H, Lee MJ, Snarr BD, Chen D et al (2013) *Aspergillus* galactosaminogalactan mediates adherence to host constituents and conceals hyphal beta-glucan from the immune system. PLoS Pathog 9(8):e1003575

Guo Y, Chang Q, Cheng L, Xiong S, Jia X, Lin X et al (2018) C-type lectin receptor CD23 is required for host defense against *Candida albicans* and *Aspergillus fumigatus* infection. J Immunol 201(8):2427–2440

Hall RA (2015) Dressed to impress: impact of environmental adaptation on the Candida albicans cell wall. Mol Microbiol 97(1):7–17

Hall RA, Gow NA (2013) Mannosylation in *Candida albicans*: role in cell wall function and immune recognition. Mol Microbiol 90(6):1147–1161

Hall RA, Noverr MC (2017) Fungal interactions with the human host: exploring the spectrum of symbiosis. Curr Opin Microbiol 40:58–64

Hall RA, Bates S, Lenardon MD, Maccallum DM, Wagener J, Lowman DW et al (2013) The Mnn2 mannosyltransferase family modulates mannoprotein fibril length, immune recognition and virulence of *Candida albicans*. PLoS Pathog 9(4):e1003276

Heilmann CJ, Sorgo AG, Mohammadi S, Sosinska GJ, de Koster CG, Brul S et al (2013) Surface stress induces a conserved cell wall stress response in the pathogenic fungus *Candida albicans*. Eukaryot Cell 12(2):254–264

Heinekamp T, Schmidt H, Lapp K, Pahtz V, Shopova I, Koster-Eiserfunke N et al (2015) Interference of *Aspergillus fumigatus* with the immune response. Semin Immunopathol 37 (2):141–152

Held K, Thiel S, Loos M, Petry F (2008) Increased susceptibility of complement factor B/C2 double knockout mice and mannan-binding lectin knockout mice to systemic infection with *Candida albicans*. Mol Immunol 45(15):3934–3941

Herrero de Dios C, Roman E, Diez C, Alonso-Monge R, Pla J (2013) The transmembrane protein Opy2 mediates activation of the Cek1 MAP kinase in *Candida albicans*. Fungal Genet Biol 50:21–32

Herrero-de-Dios C, Alonso-Monge R, Pla J (2014) The lack of upstream elements of the Cek1 and Hog1 mediated pathways leads to a synthetic lethal phenotype upon osmotic stress in *Candida albicans*. Fungal Genet Biol 69:31–42

Hertel M, Schmidt-Westhausen AM, Strietzel FP (2016) Local, systemic, demographic, and health-related factors influencing pathogenic yeast spectrum and antifungal drug administration frequency in oral candidiasis: a retrospective study. Clin Oral Investig 20(7):1477–1486

Heung LJ (2017) Innate immune responses to cryptococcus. J Fungi (Basel) 3(3). https://doi.org/10.3390/jof3030035. Epub 2017 Jul 2

Hobson RP, Munro CA, Bates S, MacCallum DM, Cutler JE, Heinsbroek SE et al (2004) Loss of cell wall mannosylphosphate in *Candida albicans* does not influence macrophage recognition. J Biol Chem 279(38):39628–39635

Hofs S, Mogavero S, Hube B (2016) Interaction of *Candida albicans* with host cells: virulence factors, host defense, escape strategies, and the microbiota. J Microbiol 54(3):149–169

Hogan LH, Klein BS (1994) Altered expression of surface alpha-1,3-glucan in genetically related strains of *Blastomyces dermatitidis* that differ in virulence. Infect Immun 62(8):3543–3546

Hohl TM, Van Epps HL, Rivera A, Morgan LA, Chen PL, Feldmesser M et al (2005) *Aspergillus fumigatus* triggers inflammatory responses by stage-specific beta-glucan display. PLoS Pathog 1(3):e30

Hood MI, Skaar EP (2012) Nutritional immunity: transition metals at the pathogen-host interface. Nat Rev Microbiol 10(8):525–537

Hopke A, Nicke N, Hidu EE, Degani G, Popolo L, Wheeler RT (2016) Neutrophil attack triggers extracellular trap-dependent *Candida* cell wall remodeling and altered immune recognition. PLoS Pathog 12(5):e1005644

Hopke A, Brown AJP, Hall RA, Wheeler RT (2018) Dynamic fungal cell wall architecture in stress adaptation and immune evasion. Trends Microbiol 26(4):284–295

Hoyer LL, Payne TL, Bell M, Myers AM, Scherer S (1998) *Candida albicans* ALS3 and insights into the nature of the ALS gene family. Curr Genet 33(6):451–459

Hoyer LL, Green CB, Oh SH, Zhao X (2008) Discovering the secrets of the *Candida albicans* agglutinin-like sequence (ALS) gene family—a sticky pursuit. Med Mycol 46(1):1–15

Huang JH, Lin CY, Wu SY, Chen WY, Chu CL, Brown GD et al (2015) CR3 and dectin-1 collaborate in macrophage cytokine response through association on lipid rafts and activation of Syk-JNK-AP-1 pathway. PLoS Pathog 11(7):e1004985

Jimenez-Lucho V, Ginsburg V, Krivan HC (1990) *Cryptococcus neoformans*, *Candida albicans*, and other fungi bind specifically to the glycosphingolipid lactosylceramide (Gal beta 1-4Glc beta 1-1Cer), a possible adhesion receptor for yeasts. Infect Immun 58(7):2085–2090

Joffe LS, Nimrichter L, Rodrigues ML, Del Poeta M (2016) Potential roles of fungal extracellular vesicles during infection. mSphere 1(4). https://doi.org/10.1128/msphere.00099-16.eCollection

Jouault T, Ibata-Ombetta S, Takeuchi O, Trinel PA, Sacchetti P, Lefebvre P et al (2003) *Candida albicans* phospholipomannan is sensed through toll-like receptors. J Infect Dis 188(1):165–172

Kapteyn JC, Hoyer LL, Hecht JE, Muller WH, Andel A, Verkleij AJ et al (2000) The cell wall architecture of *Candida albicans* wild-type cells and cell wall-defective mutants. Mol Microbiol 35(3):601–611

Karababa M, Valentino E, Pardini G, Coste AT, Bille J, Sanglard D (2006) CRZ1, a target of the calcineurin pathway in *Candida albicans*. Mol Microbiol 59(5):1429–1451

Kjellerup L, Winther AL, Wilson D, Fuglsang AT (2018) Cyclic AMP pathway activation and extracellular zinc induce rapid intracellular zinc mobilization in *Candida albicans*. Front Microbiol 21(9):502

Klis FM, de Groot P, Hellingwerf K (2001) Molecular organization of the cell wall of *Candida albicans*. Med Mycol 39(Suppl 1):1–8

Kohatsu L, Hsu DK, Jegalian AG, Liu FT, Baum LG (2006) Galectin-3 induces death of *Candida* species expressing specific beta-1,2-linked mannans. J Immunol 177(7):4718–4726

Kondoh O, Tachibana Y, Ohya Y, Arisawa M, Watanabe T (1997) Cloning of the RHO1 gene from *Candida albicans* and its regulation of beta-1,3-glucan synthesis. J Bacteriol 179 (24):7734–7741

Koyama T, Makita M, Shibata N, Okawa Y (2009) Influence of oxidative and osmotic stresses on the structure of the cell wall mannan of *Candida albicans* serotype A. Carbohydr Res 344 (16):2195–2200

Koziolek M, Schneider F, Grimm M, Modebeta C, Seekamp A, Roustom T et al (2015) Intragastric pH and pressure profiles after intake of the high-caloric, high-fat meal as used for food effect studies. J Control Release 220(Pt A):71–78

Kullberg BJ, Arendrup MC (2015) Invasive candidiasis. N Engl J Med 373(15):1445–1456

Lan CY, Rodarte G, Murillo LA, Jones T, Davis RW, Dungan J et al (2004) Regulatory networks affected by iron availability in *Candida albicans*. Mol Microbiol 53(5):1451–1469

Langfelder K, Jahn B, Gehringer H, Schmidt A, Wanner G, Brakhage AA (1998) Identification of a polyketide synthase gene (pksP) of *Aspergillus fumigatus* involved in conidial pigment biosynthesis and virulence. Med Microbiol Immunol 187(2):79–89

Leach MD, Stead DA, Argo E, MacCallum DM, Brown AJ (2011) Molecular and proteomic analyses highlight the importance of ubiquitination for the stress resistance, metabolic adaptation, morphogenetic regulation and virulence of *Candida albicans*. Mol Microbiol 79 (6):1574–1593

Leach MD, Budge S, Walker L, Munro C, Cowen LE, Brown AJ (2012) Hsp90 orchestrates transcriptional regulation by Hsf1 and cell wall remodelling by MAPK signalling during thermal adaptation in a pathogenic yeast. PLoS Pathog 8(12):e1003069

Leberer E, Harcus D, Broadbent ID, Clark KL, Dignard D, Ziegelbauer K et al (1996) Signal transduction through homologs of the Ste20p and Ste7p protein kinases can trigger hyphal formation in the pathogenic fungus *Candida albicans*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 93(23):13217–13222

Lee KK, Maccallum DM, Jacobsen MD, Walker LA, Odds FC, Gow NA et al (2012) Elevated cell wall chitin in *Candida albicans* confers echinocandin resistance in vivo. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 56(1):208–217

Lemaitre B, Nicolas E, Michaut L, Reichhart JM, Hoffmann JA (1996) The dorsoventral regulatory gene cassette spatzle/Toll/cactus controls the potent antifungal response in *Drosophila* adults. Cell 86(6):973–983

Lenardon MD, Whitton RK, Munro CA, Marshall D, Gow NA (2007) Individual chitin synthase enzymes synthesize microfibrils of differing structure at specific locations in the *Candida albicans* cell wall. Mol Microbiol 66(5):1164–1173

Lenardon MD, Munro CA, Gow NA (2010) Chitin synthesis and fungal pathogenesis. Curr Opin Microbiol 13(4):416–423

Levin DE (2011) Regulation of cell wall biogenesis in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*: the cell wall integrity signaling pathway. Genetics 189(4):1145–1175

Lindsay AK, Deveau A, Piispanen AE, Hogan DA (2012) Farnesol and cyclic AMP signaling effects on the hypha-to-yeast transition in *Candida albicans*. Eukaryot Cell 11(10):1219–1225

Lionakis MS, Levitz SM (2018) Host control of fungal infections: Lessons from basic studies and human cohorts. Annu Rev Immunol 26(36):157–191

Lo HJ, Kohler JR, DiDomenico B, Loebenberg D, Cacciapuoti A, Fink GR (1997) Nonfilamentous *C. albicans* mutants are avirulent. Cell 90(5):939–949

Lopes JP, Stylianou M, Backman E, Holmberg S, Jass J, Claesson R et al (2018) Evasion of immune surveillance in low oxygen environments enhances *Candida albicans* virulence. MBio 9(6). https://doi.org/10.1128/mbio.02120-18

Louis P, Scott KP, Duncan SH, Flint HJ (2007) Understanding the effects of diet on bacterial metabolism in the large intestine. J Appl Microbiol 102(5):1197–1208

Lowman DW, Greene RR, Bearden DW, Kruppa MD, Pottier M, Monteiro MA et al (2014) Novel structural features in *Candida albicans* hyphal glucan provide a basis for differential innate immune recognition of hyphae versus yeast. J Biol Chem 289(6):3432–3443

Lu Y, Su C, Unoje O, Liu H (2014a) Quorum sensing controls hyphal initiation in *Candida albicans* through Ubr1-mediated protein degradation. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 111(5):1975–1980

Lu Y, Su C, Liu H (2014b) *Candida albicans* hyphal initiation and elongation. Trends Microbiol 22(12):707–714

Luther K, Torosantucci A, Brakhage AA, Heesemann J, Ebel F (2007) Phagocytosis of Aspergillus fumigatus conidia by murine macrophages involves recognition by the dectin-1 beta-glucan receptor and Toll-like receptor 2. Cell Microbiol 9(2):368–381

Malavia D, Lehtovirta-Morley LE, Alamir O, Weiss E, Gow NAR, Hube B et al (2017) Zinc limitation induces a hyper-adherent goliath phenotype in *Candida albicans*. Front Microbiol 14 (8):2238

Mansour MK, Schlesinger LS, Levitz SM (2002) Optimal T cell responses to *Cryptococcus neoformans* mannoprotein are dependent on recognition of conjugated carbohydrates by mannose receptors. J Immunol 168(6):2872–2879

Mansour MK, Tam JM, Khan NS, Seward M, Davids PJ, Puranam S et al (2013) Dectin-1 activation controls maturation of beta-1,3-glucan-containing phagosomes. J Biol Chem 288 (22):16043–16054

Martinez-Lopez R, Park H, Myers CL, Gil C, Filler SG (2006) *Candida albicans* Ecm33p is important for normal cell wall architecture and interactions with host cells. Eukaryot Cell 5 (1):140–147

Maxson ME, Naj X, O'Meara TR, Plumb JD, Cowen LE, Grinstein S (2018) Integrin-based diffusion barrier separates membrane domains enabling the formation of microbiostatic frustrated phagosomes. Elife 7. https://doi.org/10.7554/elife.34798

McGreal EP, Rosas M, Brown GD, Zamze S, Wong SY, Gordon S et al (2006) The carbohydrate-recognition domain of Dectin-2 is a C-type lectin with specificity for high mannose. Glycobiology 16(5):422–430

Means TK, Mylonakis E, Tampakakis E, Colvin RA, Seung E, Puckett L et al (2009) Evolutionarily conserved recognition and innate immunity to fungal pathogens by the scavenger receptors SCARF1 and CD36. J Exp Med 206(3):637–653

Mio T, Adachi-Shimizu M, Tachibana Y, Tabuchi H, Inoue SB, Yabe T et al (1997) Cloning of the *Candida albicans* homolog of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* GSC1/FKS1 and its involvement in beta-1,3-glucan synthesis. J Bacteriol 179(13):4096–4105

Monge RA, Roman E, Nombela C, Pla J (2006) The MAP kinase signal transduction network in *Candida albicans*. Microbiology 152(Pt 4):905–912

Mora-Montes HM, Bates S, Netea MG, Castillo L, Brand A, Buurman ET et al (2010) A multifunctional mannosyltransferase family in *Candida albicans* determines cell wall mannan structure and host-fungus interactions. J Biol Chem 285(16):12087–12095

Moreno-Ruiz E, Ortu G, de Groot PW, Cottier F, Loussert C, Prevost MC et al (2009) The GPI-modified proteins Pga59 and Pga62 of *Candida albicans* are required for cell wall integrity. Microbiology 155(Pt 6):2004–2020

Moyes DL, Wilson D, Richardson JP, Mogavero S, Tang SX, Wernecke J et al (2016) Candidalysin is a fungal peptide toxin critical for mucosal infection. Nature 532(7597):64–68

Mukaremera L, Lee KK, Mora-Montes HM, Gow NAR (2017) *Candida albicans* yeast, pseudohyphal, and hyphal morphogenesis differentially affects immune recognition. Front Immunol 7(8):629

Munro CA, Gow NA (2001) Chitin synthesis in human pathogenic fungi. Med Mycol 39(Suppl 1):41–53

Munro CA, Winter K, Buchan A, Henry K, Becker JM, Brown AJ et al (2001) Chs1 of *Candida albicans* is an essential chitin synthase required for synthesis of the septum and for cell integrity. Mol Microbiol 39(5):1414–1426

Munro CA, Bates S, Buurman ET, Hughes HB, Maccallum DM, Bertram G et al (2005) Mnt1p and Mnt2p of *Candida albicans* are partially redundant alpha-1,2-mannosyltransferases that participate in O-linked mannosylation and are required for adhesion and virulence. J Biol Chem 280(2):1051–1060

Munro CA, Selvaggini S, de Bruijn I, Walker L, Lenardon MD, Gerssen B et al (2007) The PKC, HOG and Ca^{2+} signalling pathways co-ordinately regulate chitin synthesis in *Candida albicans*. Mol Microbiol 63(5):1399–1413

Murad AM, Leng P, Straffon M, Wishart J, Macaskill S, MacCallum D et al (2001) NRG1 represses yeast-hypha morphogenesis and hypha-specific gene expression in *Candida albicans*. EMBO J 20(17):4742–4752

Murciano C, Moyes DL, Runglall M, Islam A, Mille C, Fradin C et al (2011) *Candida albicans* cell wall glycosylation may be indirectly required for activation of epithelial cell proinflammatory responses. Infect Immun 79(12):4902–4911

Nakamura K, Kinjo T, Saijo S, Miyazato A, Adachi Y, Ohno N et al (2007) Dectin-1 is not required for the host defense to *Cryptococcus neoformans*. Microbiol Immunol 51(11):1115–1119

Nakamura Y, Sato K, Yamamoto H, Matsumura K, Matsumoto I, Nomura T et al (2015) Dectin-2 deficiency promotes Th2 response and mucin production in the lungs after pulmonary infection with Cryptococcus neoformans. Infect Immun 83(2):671–681

Navarro-Garcia F, Alonso-Monge R, Rico H, Pla J, Sentandreu R, Nombela C (1998) A role for the MAP kinase gene MKC1 in cell wall construction and morphological transitions in *Candida albicans*. Microbiology 144 (Pt 2)(Pt 2):411–424

Netea MG, Van Der Graaf CA, Vonk AG, Verschueren I, Van Der Meer JW, Kullberg BJ (2002) The role of toll-like receptor (TLR) 2 and TLR4 in the host defense against disseminated candidiasis. J Infect Dis 185(10):1483–1489

Netea MG, Gow NA, Munro CA, Bates S, Collins C, Ferwerda G et al (2006) Immune sensing of *Candida albicans* requires cooperative recognition of mannans and glucans by lectin and Toll-like receptors. J Clin Invest 116(6):1642–1650

Netea MG, Brown GD, Kullberg BJ, Gow NA (2008) An integrated model of the recognition of *Candida albicans* by the innate immune system. Nat Rev Microbiol 6(1):67–78

Netea MG, Joosten LA, van der Meer JW, Kullberg BJ, van de Veerdonk FL (2015) Immune defence against Candida fungal infections. Nat Rev Immunol 15(10):630–642

Nguyen TH, Fleet GH, Rogers PL (1998) Composition of the cell walls of several yeast species. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 50(2):206–212

Noble SM, Gianetti BA, Witchley JN (2017) *Candida albicans* cell-type switching and functional plasticity in the mammalian host. Nat Rev Microbiol 15(2):96–108

O'Brien XM, Reichner JS (2016) Neutrophil integrins and matrix ligands and NET release. Front Immunol 19(7):363

Odds FC, Brown AJ, Gow NA (2003) Antifungal agents: mechanisms of action. Trends Microbiol 11(6):272–279

O'Hanlon DE, Moench TR, Cone RA (2013) Vaginal pH and microbicidal lactic acid when lactobacilli dominate the microbiota. PLoS ONE 8(11):e80074

Okawa Y, Goto K (2006) Antigenicity of cell wall mannans of *Candida albicans* and *Candida stellatoidea* cultured at high temperatures in BACTEC medium. Biol Pharm Bull 29(8):1723–1727

Owen DH, Katz DF (1999) A vaginal fluid simulant. Contraception 59(2):91–95

Paravicini G, Mendoza A, Antonsson B, Cooper M, Losberger C, Payton MA (1996) The *Candida albicans* PKC1 gene encodes a protein kinase C homolog necessary for cellular integrity but not dimorphism. Yeast 12(8):741–756

Pardini G, De Groot PW, Coste AT, Karababa M, Klis FM, de Koster CG et al (2006) The CRH family coding for cell wall glycosylphosphatidylinositol proteins with a predicted transglycosidase domain affects cell wall organization and virulence of *Candida albicans*. J Biol Chem 281(52):40399–40411

Pericolini E, Perito S, Castagnoli A, Gabrielli E, Mencacci A, Blasi E et al (2018) Epitope unmasking in vulvovaginal candidiasis is associated with hyphal growth and neutrophilic infiltration. PLoS ONE 13(7):e0201436

Perlroth J, Choi B, Spellberg B (2007) Nosocomial fungal infections: epidemiology, diagnosis, and treatment. Med Mycol 45(4):321–346

Phan QT, Myers CL, Fu Y, Sheppard DC, Yeaman MR, Welch WH et al (2007) Als3 is a *Candida albicans* invasin that binds to cadherins and induces endocytosis by host cells. PLoS Biol 5(3): e64

Plaine A, Walker L, Da Costa G, Mora-Montes HM, McKinnon A, Gow NA et al (2008) Functional analysis of *Candida albicans* GPI-anchored proteins: roles in cell wall integrity and caspofungin sensitivity. Fungal Genet Biol 45(10):1404–1414

Popolo L, Degani G, Camilloni C, Fonzi WA (2017) The PHR family: the role of extracellular transglycosylases in shaping *Candida albicans* cells. J Fungi (Basel) 3(4). https://doi.org/10.3390/jof3040059

Potrykus J, Stead D, Maccallum DM, Urgast DS, Raab A, van Rooijen N et al (2013) Fungal iron availability during deep seated candidiasis is defined by a complex interplay involving systemic and local events. PLoS Pathog 9(10):e1003676

Pradhan A, Avelar GM, Bain JM, Childers DS, Larcombe DE, Netea MG et al (2018) Hypoxia promotes immune evasion by triggering beta-glucan masking on the *Candida albicans* cell surface via mitochondrial and cAMP-protein kinase a signaling. MBio 9(6). https://doi.org/10.1128/mbio.01318-18

Pradhan A, Avelar GM, Bain JM, Childers D, Pelletier C, Larcombe DE, Shekhova E, Netea MG, Brown GD, Erwig LP, Gow NAR, Brown AJP (2019) Non-canonical signalling mediates changes in fungal cell wall PAMPs that drive immune evasion. Nat Commun (in press)

Preechasuth K, Anderson JC, Peck SC, Brown AJ, Gow NA, Lenardon MD (2015) Cell wall protection by the *Candida albicans* class I chitin synthases. Fungal Genet Biol 82:264–276

Ramanan N, Wang Y (2000) A high-affinity iron permease essential for *Candida albicans* virulence. Science 288(5468):1062–1064

Rappleye CA, Engle JT, Goldman WE (2004) RNA interference in *Histoplasma capsulatum* demonstrates a role for alpha-(1,3)-glucan in virulence. Mol Microbiol 53(1):153–165

Rappleye CA, Eissenberg LG, Goldman WE (2007) *Histoplasma capsulatum* alpha-(1,3)-glucan blocks innate immune recognition by the beta-glucan receptor. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 104 (4):1366–1370

Richard M, Ibata-Ombetta S, Dromer F, Bordon-Pallier F, Jouault T, Gaillardin C (2002) Complete glycosylphosphatidylinositol anchors are required in *Candida albicans* for full morphogenesis, virulence and resistance to macrophages. Mol Microbiol 44(3):841–853

Roman E, Cottier F, Ernst JF, Pla J (2009) Msb2 signaling mucin controls activation of Cek1 mitogen-activated protein kinase in *Candida albicans*. Eukaryot Cell 8(8):1235–1249

Roman E, Correia I, Salazin A, Fradin C, Jouault T, Poulain D et al (2016) The Cek1mediated MAP kinase pathway regulates exposure of alpha1,2 and beta1,2mannosides in the cell wall of *Candida albicans* modulating immune recognition. Virulence 7(5):558–577

Saeed S, Quintin J, Kerstens HH, Rao NA, Aghajanirefah A, Matarese F et al (2014) Epigenetic programming of monocyte-to-macrophage differentiation and trained innate immunity. Science 345(6204):1251086

Saijo S, Ikeda S, Yamabe K, Kakuta S, Ishigame H, Akitsu A et al (2010) Dectin-2 recognition of alpha-mannans and induction of Th17 cell differentiation is essential for host defense against *Candida albicans*. Immunity 32(5):681–691

San Jose C, Monge RA, Perez-Diaz R, Pla J, Nombela C (1996) The mitogen-activated protein kinase homolog HOG1 gene controls glycerol accumulation in the pathogenic fungus *Candida albicans*. J Bacteriol 178(19):5850–5852

San-Blas G, San-Blas F, Serrano LE (1977) Host-parasite relationships in the yeastlike form of *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis* strain IVIC Pb9. Infect Immun 15(2):343–346

Sanglard D, Ischer F, Marchetti O, Entenza J, Bille J (2003) Calcineurin A of *Candida albicans*: involvement in antifungal tolerance, cell morphogenesis and virulence. Mol Microbiol 48 (4):959–976

Santos M, de Larrinoa IF (2005) Functional characterization of the *Candida albicans* CRZ1 gene encoding a calcineurin-regulated transcription factor. Curr Genet 48(2):88–100

Saporito-Irwin SM, Birse CE, Sypherd PS, Fonzi WA (1995) PHR1, a pH-regulated gene of *Candida albicans*, is required for morphogenesis. Mol Cell Biol 15(2):601–613

Sato T, Ueno Y, Watanabe T, Mikami T, Matsumoto T (2004) Role of Ca^{2+}/calmodulin signaling pathway on morphological development of *Candida albicans*. Biol Pharm Bull 27(8):1281–1284

Savage DC (1977) Microbial ecology of the gastrointestinal tract. Annu Rev Microbiol 31:107–133

Saville SP, Lazzell AL, Monteagudo C, Lopez-Ribot JL (2003) Engineered control of cell morphology in vivo reveals distinct roles for yeast and filamentous forms of *Candida albicans* during infection. Eukaryot Cell 2(5):1053–1060

Sem X, Le GT, Tan AS, Tso G, Yurieva M, Liao WW et al (2016) β-glucan exposure on the fungal cell wall tightly correlates with competitive fitness of *Candida* species in the mouse gastrointestinal tract. Front Cell Infect Microbiol 22(6):186

Setiadi ER, Doedt T, Cottier F, Noffz C, Ernst JF (2006) Transcriptional response of *Candida albicans* to hypoxia: linkage of oxygen sensing and Efg1p-regulatory networks. J Mol Biol 361 (3):399–411

Shepherd MG (1987) Cell envelope of *Candida albicans*. Crit Rev Microbiol 15(1):7–25

Sherrington SL, Sorsby E, Mahtey N, Kumwenda P, Lenardon MD, Brown I et al (2017) Adaptation of *Candida albicans* to environmental pH induces cell wall remodelling and enhances innate immune recognition. PLoS Pathog 13(5):e1006403

Shoham S, Huang C, Chen JM, Golenbock DT, Levitz SM (2001) Toll-like receptor 4 mediates intracellular signaling without TNF-alpha release in response to *Cryptococcus neoformans* polysaccharide capsule. J Immunol 166(7):4620–4626

Smith DA, Nicholls S, Morgan BA, Brown AJ, Quinn J (2004) A conserved stress-activated protein kinase regulates a core stress response in the human pathogen *Candida albicans*. Mol Biol Cell 15(9):4179–4190

Sobel JD (2007) Vulvovaginal candidosis. Lancet 369(9577):1961–1971

Sorgo AG, Heilmann CJ, Dekker HL, Bekker M, Brul S, de Koster CG et al (2011) Effects of fluconazole on the secretome, the wall proteome, and wall integrity of the clinical fungus *Candida albicans*. Eukaryot Cell 10(8):1071–1081

Sosinska GJ, de Groot PWJ, Teixeira de Mattos MJ, Dekker HL, de Koster CG, Hellingwerf KJ et al (2008) Hypoxic conditions and iron restriction affect the cell-wall proteome of Candida albicans grown under vagina-simulative conditions. Microbiology 154(Pt 2):510–520

Staab JF, Bradway SD, Fidel PL, Sundstrom P (1999) Adhesive and mammalian transglutaminase substrate properties of *Candida albicans* Hwp1. Science 283(5407):1535–1538

Staniszewska M, Bondaryk M, Rabczenko D, Smolenska-Sym G, Kurzatkowski W (2013) Cell wall carbohydrates content of pathogenic *Candida albicans* strain morphological forms. Med Dosw Mikrobiol 65(2):119–128

Stappers MHT, Clark AE, Aimanianda V, Bidula S, Reid DM, Asamaphan P et al (2018) Recognition of DHN-melanin by a C-type lectin receptor is required for immunity to Aspergillus. Nature 555(7696):382–386

Su C, Lu Y, Liu H (2013) Reduced TOR signaling sustains hyphal development in *Candida albicans* by lowering Hog1 basal activity. Mol Biol Cell 24(3):385–397

Sudbery PE (2011) Growth of *Candida albicans* hyphae. Nat Rev Microbiol 9(10):737–748

Tada H, Nemoto E, Shimauchi H, Watanabe T, Mikami T, Matsumoto T et al (2002) *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*- and *Candida albicans*-derived mannan induced production of tumor necrosis factor alpha by human monocytes in a CD14- and Toll-like receptor 4-dependent manner. Microbiol Immunol 46(7):503–512

Taylor PR, Brown GD, Herre J, Williams DL, Willment JA, Gordon S (2004) The role of SIGNR1 and the beta-glucan receptor (dectin-1) in the nonopsonic recognition of yeast by specific macrophages. J Immunol 172(2):1157–1162

Taylor PR, Tsoni SV, Willment JA, Dennehy KM, Rosas M, Findon H et al (2007) Dectin-1 is required for beta-glucan recognition and control of fungal infection. Nat Immunol 8(1):31–38

Te Riet J, Joosten B, Reinieren-Beeren I, Figdor CG, Cambi A (2017) N-glycan mediated adhesion strengthening during pathogen-receptor binding revealed by cell-cell force spectroscopy. Sci Rep 7(1):6713. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-017-07220-w

Thornton BP, Vetvicka V, Pitman M, Goldman RC, Ross GD (1996) Analysis of the sugar specificity and molecular location of the beta-glucan-binding lectin site of complement receptor type 3 (CD11b/CD18). J Immunol 156(3):1235–1246

Thywissen A, Heinekamp T, Dahse HM, Schmaler-Ripcke J, Nietzsche S, Zipfel PF et al (2011) Conidial dihydroxynaphthalene melanin of the human pathogenic fungus *Aspergillus fumigatus* interferes with the host endocytosis pathway. Front Microbiol 3(2):96

Timpel C, Strahl-Bolsinger S, Ziegelbauer K, Ernst JF (1998) Multiple functions of Pmt1p-mediated protein O-mannosylation in the fungal pathogen *Candida albicans*. J Biol Chem 273(33):20837–20846

Toh-e A, Yasunaga S, Nisogi H, Tanaka K, Oguchi T, Matsui Y (1993) Three yeast genes, PIR1, PIR2 and PIR3, containing internal tandem repeats, are related to each other, and PIR1 and PIR2 are required for tolerance to heat shock. Yeast 9(5):481–494

Umeyama T, Kaneko A, Watanabe H, Hirai A, Uehara Y, Niimi M et al (2006) Deletion of the CaBIG1 gene reduces beta-1,6-glucan synthesis, filamentation, adhesion, and virulence in *Candida albicans*. Infect Immun 74(4):2373–2381

Urban C, Xiong X, Sohn K, Schroppel K, Brunner H, Rupp S (2005) The moonlighting protein Tsa1p is implicated in oxidative stress response and in cell wall biogenesis in *Candida albicans*. Mol Microbiol 57(5):1318–1341

Valiante V, Macheleidt J, Foge M, Brakhage AA (2015) The Aspergillus fumigatus cell wall integrity signaling pathway: drug target, compensatory pathways, and virulence. Front Microbiol 16(6):325

van de Veerdonk FL, Marijnissen RJ, Kullberg BJ, Koenen HJ, Cheng SC, Joosten I et al (2009) The macrophage mannose receptor induces IL-17 in response to *Candida albicans*. Cell Host Microbe 5(4):329–340

Vargas G, Rocha JD, Oliveira DL, Albuquerque PC, Frases S, Santos SS et al (2015) Compositional and immunobiological analyses of extracellular vesicles released by Candida albicans. Cell Microbiol 17(3):389–407

Vijayan D, Radford KJ, Beckhouse AG, Ashman RB, Wells CA (2012) Mincle polarizes human monocyte and neutrophil responses to *Candida albicans*. Immunol Cell Biol 90(9):889–895

Voelz K, May RC (2010) Cryptococcal interactions with the host immune system. Eukaryot Cell 9 (6):835–846

Wagener J, Malireddi RK, Lenardon MD, Koberle M, Vautier S, MacCallum DM et al (2014) Fungal chitin dampens inflammation through IL-10 induction mediated by NOD2 and TLR9 activation. PLoS Pathog 10(4):e1004050

Wagener J, MacCallum DM, Brown GD, Gow NA (2017) *Candida albicans* chitin increases arginase-1 activity in human macrophages, with an impact on macrophage antimicrobial functions. MBio 8(1). https://doi.org/10.1128/mbio.01820-16

Walker LA, Munro CA, de Bruijn I, Lenardon MD, McKinnon A, Gow NA (2008) Stimulation of chitin synthesis rescues *Candida albicans* from echinocandins. PLoS Pathog 4(4):e1000040

Walker L, Sood P, Lenardon MD, Milne G, Olson J, Jensen G, et al (2018) The viscoelastic properties of the fungal cell wall allow traffic of AmBisome as intact liposome vesicles. MBio 9(1). https://doi.org/10.1128/mbio.02383-17

Weinberg ED. Nutritional immunity. Host's attempt to withold iron from microbial invaders. JAMA 1975 Jan 6;231(1):39-41

Wells CA, Salvage-Jones JA, Li X, Hitchens K, Butcher S, Murray RZ et al (2008) The macrophage-inducible C-type lectin, mincle, is an essential component of the innate immune response to *Candida albicans*. J Immunol 180(11):7404–7413

Wheeler RT, Fink GR (2006) A drug-sensitive genetic network masks fungi from the immune system. PLoS Pathog 2(4):e35

Wheeler RT, Kombe D, Agarwala SD, Fink GR (2008) Dynamic, morphotype-specific *Candida albicans* beta-glucan exposure during infection and drug treatment. PLoS Pathog 4(12): e1000227

Xia Y, Vetvicka V, Yan J, Hanikyrova M, Mayadas T, Ross GD (1999) The beta-glucan-binding lectin site of mouse CR3 (CD11b/CD18) and its function in generating a primed state of the receptor that mediates cytotoxic activation in response to iC3b-opsonized target cells. J Immunol 162(4):2281–2290

Yauch LE, Mansour MK, Shoham S, Rottman JB, Levitz SM (2004) Involvement of CD14, toll-like receptors 2 and 4, and MyD88 in the host response to the fungal pathogen *Cryptococcus neoformans* in vivo. Infect Immun 72(9):5373–5382

Zhu LL, Zhao XQ, Jiang C, You Y, Chen XP, Jiang YY et al (2013) C-type lectin receptors Dectin-3 and Dectin-2 form a heterodimeric pattern-recognition receptor for host defense against fungal infection. Immunity 39(2):324–334

Znaidi S, van Wijlick L, Hernandez-Cervantes A, Sertour N, Desseyn JL, Vincent F et al (2018) Systematic gene overexpression in *Candida albicans* identifies a regulator of early adaptation to the mammalian gut. Cell Microbiol 20(11):e12890

Revisiting Old Questions and New Approaches to Investigate the Fungal Cell Wall Construction

Michael Blatzer, Anne Beauvais, Bernard Henrissat, and Jean-Paul Latgé

Contents

1 Coupling Genome Analysis with Cell Wall Construction 332
2 Carbohydrate-Binding Domains 351
3 Gene Clusters and Gene Families in Fungi 354
4 Uncertainties in the Structure of the Cell Wall 357
5 Similar Questions and Common Problems in the Understanding of Cell Wall Biosynthesis in Plants and Fungi? 358
6 New Approaches to Understand Cell Wall Synthesis and Degradation 360
7 Conclusion 363
References 364

Abstract The beginning of our understanding of the cell wall construction came from the work of talented biochemists in the 70–80's. Then came the era of sequencing. Paradoxically, the accumulation of fungal genomes complicated rather

M. Blatzer
Experimental Neuropathology Unit, Institut Pasteur, 25 rue du Docteur Roux, 75015 Paris, France

A. Beauvais
Mycology Department, Institut Pasteur, 25 rue du Docteur Roux, 75015 Paris, France

B. Henrissat
Architecture et Fonction des Macromolécules Biologiques, UMR 7257—CNRS & Aix-Marseille Université, 13288 Marseille cedex 9, France

Department of Biological Sciences, King Abdulaziz University, Jeddah, Saudi Arabia

J.-P. Latgé (✉)
Institute of Molecular Biology and Biotechnology of the Foundation for Research and Technology Hellas (IMBB-FORTH), Heraklion, Greece
e-mail: jplatge@pasteur.fr

Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology (2020) 425: 331–369
https://doi.org/10.1007/82_2020_209
© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
Published Online: 17 May 2020

than solved the mystery of cell wall construction, by revealing the involvement of a much higher number of proteins than originally thought. The situation has become even more complicated since it is now recognized that the cell wall is an organelle whose composition continuously evolves with the changes in the environment or with the age of the fungal cell. The use of new and sophisticated technologies to observe cell wall construction at an almost atomic scale should improve our knowledge of the cell wall construction. This essay will present some of the major and still unresolved questions to understand the fungal cell wall biosynthesis and some of these exciting futurist approaches.

What is our current knowledge in the understanding of the fungal cell wall biosynthesis in 2020? Many contributors to the Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology issue entitled “The fungal cell wall. An armor and a weapon for human fungal pathogens” have presented the state of the art of our knowledge on the structural organization, biosynthesis, and biological function of the cell wall of the human fungal pathogens. Here, we present some of the still unresolved but essential questions in the area. Questions are focused on human pathogenic fungi but will be comparatively assessed with plant cell wall and fungal models. We also hope that new methodologies presented at the end of this report will inspire the development of new approaches absolutely required to advance the fungal cell wall field.

1 Coupling Genome Analysis with Cell Wall Construction

Fungal diversity is enormous: around 120,000 fungal species are known and many more are expected to be discovered. The huge amount of data gathered with the increasing number of sequenced genomes offers the possibility to redefine fungal evolutionary relationships and to assess the metabolic diversity that confers fungi the remarkable adaptability to colonize virtually all environments. Fungi emerged as the third kingdom of life and are one of the oldest and also largest groups of living organisms; they play important roles in virtually all ecosystems. The fungal kingdom is extremely diverse regarding morphology, lifestyle, habitats, and complexity. The origin of all fungi might stem from a unicellular, flagellated eukaryvorous aquatic organism that evolved via unicellular parasites to terrestrial mycelial, multicellular and multinucleated forms of variable size (Naranjo-Ortiz and Gabaldón 2019). The fungal lifestyles are as diverse as their habitats, ranging from obligate parasites over obligate anaerobic forms to terrestrial symbionts, commensals, and pathogens.

In spite of their differences in lifestyle and morphology, fungi share one essential common feature which is their cell wall, characterized by the presence of a polysaccharide skeleton comprising β-1,3 glucan and chitin for most species. Besides enzymes that are required for the synthesis of the major cell wall

components, fungi also encode a huge collection of carbohydrate-active enzymes that degrade, modify, or build glycosidic bonds of different cell wall components. The cell wall is the first organelle of fungi interacting with the environment. In contrast to old "postulates," it is dynamic, actively remodeled according to growth stage or environmental conditions (Elhasi and Blomberg 2019). In the host, it has opposite functions since it is required to protect the fungus but also to activate immune responses (Gow et al. 2017; Latgé et al. 2017).

Unlike nucleic acids and proteins, the assembly of glycans is not template-based but it is dictated by the specificity of carbohydrate-processing enzymes. The enzymes that assemble, modify, and break down polysaccharides and glycoconjugates are classified in sequence-based families in the carbohydrate-active enzyme (CAZy) database (www.cazy.org), a continuously updated online resource available since 1998. Due to the link of the carbohydrate metabolism of an organism and its genome, the CAZy database has become an essential source for the analysis and recovery of unknown putative carbohydrate-active enzymes across all organisms. The huge number of sequenced genomes offers the possibility to compare the diverse equipment of carbohydrate-active enzymes among the different fungi that can cause disease in humans. However, a comprehensive picture of the complexity of carbohydrate-active enzymes (CAZymes) acting on the fungal cell wall is still missing, as well as a thorough comparison of the equipment of carbohydrate-active enzymes between different fungal pathogens. The CAZy database systematically groups the information on carbohydrate-active enzymes in the following five enzyme classes: glycoside hydrolases (GHs), glycosyltransferases (GTs), polysaccharide lyases (PLs), carbohydrates esterases (CEs), and redox auxiliary activities (AAs). Redox auxiliary enzymes have not been investigated yet for a role in cell wall synthesis or turnover but may be of interest since a growing number of publications associate cell wall, redox potentials, and mitochondria (Duvenage et al. 2019; Yu et al. 2016). The database also lists the various families of non-catalytic carbohydrate-binding modules (CBMs) that are frequently appended to the CAZymes. The association between the CAZy families of the major human pathogenic species and the cell wall composition of the different fungal classes is shown in Tables 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7 and was based on the analysis of the jgi mycocosm Web site (https://mycocosm.jgi.doe.gov/).

Other efforts are made by the JGI 1000 fungal genomes project, an international initiative that aims to sequence at least two reference genomes from the more than 500 recognized families of fungi. The JGI MycoCosm fungal genomics resource currently holds almost 1500 genomes that integrate several types of annotations such as Gene Ontology, PFAM domains, KEGG, KOG, and CAZy (Grigoriev et al. 2014). Compared to several thousand fungal species that are able to colonize plants (Knogge 1996) and cause diseases in plants, only about 300 fungal species are described to cause disease in humans with the most prominent being *Candida*, *Aspergillus*, *Cryptococcus*, *Pneumocystis,* Dermatophytes, and Zygomycetes (Brown et al. 2012). To date the curated CAZy database covers over 16,000 genomes, with only 1.6% eukaryotic genomes and human pathogenic fungi accounting for a tiny low percentage (<0.2%).

Table 1 Association between CAZYme families in the major fungal pathogens and model organisms and their cell wall composition

	Phylogeny	organism	median genome [Mb]	median protein count	total CAZYmes	CAZYmes %	GT	GH	PL	AA	CE	CBM	EXPN	chitin	chitosan	β1,3 glucan	α1,3 glucan	β1,6 glucan	mannan	galactofurane	fucoidan	glucuronan
							CAZY family															
Dikarya	Ascomycota, Pezizomycotina, Eurotiomycetes	*Aspergillus flavus*	36,81	12832	627	4,89	123	324	25	70	26	54	3	■		■	■		■	■		
		Aspergillus fumigatus	28,83	9544	537	5,63	105	278	15	35	23	73	5	■		■	■		■	■		
		Talaromyces marneffei	28,34	11841	487	4,11	98	230	6	37	19	89	6	■		■	■		■	■		
	Ascomycota, Pezizomycotina, Sordariomycetes	*Fusarium graminearum*	36,67	13334	587	4,40	105	256	22	73	42	79	7	■		■	■		■	■		
	Ascomycota, Taphrinomycotina, Pneumocystidomycetes	*Pneumocystis jirovecii*	8,18	3649	56	1,53	36	15	0	0	0	5	0			■			■			
	Ascomycota, Saccharomycotina, Saccharomycetes	*Saccharomyces cerevisiae*	11,88	5404	143	2,65	68	52	0	6	2	15	0	■		■		■	■			
		Candida albicans	14,68	6265	154	2,46	74	57	0	9	2	11	1	■		■		■	■			
	Basidiomycota, Agaricomycotina, Tremellomycetes	*Cryptococcus neoformans*	18,6	6941	202	2,91	68	90	4	16	4	14	5	■	■	■	■		■			
	Basidiomycota, Ustilagomycotina, Malasseziomycetes	*Malassezia globosa*	8,94	4286	103	2,40	43	30	1	18	4	2	4	■		■			■			
Fungi incertae sedis	Zoopagomycota, Entomorphthoromycotina, Enteromorphthoromycetes	*Conidiobolus coronatus*	39,9	10527	296	2,81	132	97	0	38	6	16	2	■		■			■			
	Mucoromycota, Mucoromycotina, Mucormycetes	*Rhizopus microsporus*	45,7	11496	302	2,63	117	92	4	11	23	34	12	■	■				■		■	■
		Lichtheimia corymbifera	42,42	11542	353	3,06	142	101	6	14	25	47	12	■	■				■		■	■
	Microsporida, Unikarionidae, Encephalitozoon	*Encephalitozoon cuniculi*	2,29	1915	11	0,57	8	2	0	0	1	0	0	■					■			

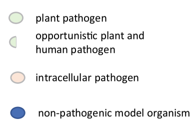


Table 2 Glycosyl hydrolase families in fungal species of different orders (including major human pathogens)

	A. flavus	*A. fumigatus*	*T. marneffei*	*F. graminearum*	*P. jirovecii*	*S. cerevisiae*	*C. albicans*	*C. neoformans*	*M. globosa*	*C. coronatus*	*R. microsporus*	*L. corymbifera*	*E. cuniculi*	
CAZYmestotal	627	537	487	587	56	143	154	202	103	296	302	353	11	
GH	324	278	230	256	15	52	57	90	30	97	92	101	2	**Involved in cell wall (putatively-)**
GH1	3	5	3	3	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH2	8	6	6	10	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH3	24	20	14	21	–	–	3	3	1	3	5	6	–	
GH5	15	14	8	14	–	5	5	12	6	8	5	6	–	β glycans
GH5_4	1	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	3	–	–	–	–	
GH5_5	2	4	1	2	–	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	
GH5_7	2	2	1	2	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH5_9	2	2	2	1	–	3	3	6	–	–	1	1	–	
GH5_11	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH5_12	1	1	1	2	–	1	1	3	–	6	2	2	–	
GH5_15	2	1	1	2	–	–	–	–	–	2	2	1	–	α glucans
GH5_16	1	1	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH5_22	1	1	–	2	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	
GH5_23	1	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH5_24	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH5_27	1	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1	–	
GH5_49	1	–	1	–	–	1	1	–	–	–	–	1	–	
GH5_50	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1	2	–	–	–	–	
GH6	1	1	1	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH7	3	4	2	2	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH8	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1	–	2	1	–	
GH9	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1	–	–	3	4	–	
GH10	4	4	1	5	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	

(continued)

Table 2 (continued)

	A. flavus	*A. fumigatus*	*T. marneffei*	*F. graminearum*	*P. jirovecii*	*S. cerevisiae*	*C. albicans*	*C. neoformans*	*M. globosa*	*C. coronatus*	*R. microsporus*	*L. corymbifera*	*E. cuniculi*	
GH11	4	3	3	3	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH12	5	4	3	4	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1	–	
GH13	16	16	11	8	3	9	4	12	–	3	3	5	–	α glycans
GH13_1	3	5	3	1	–	–	–	5	–	–	1	2	–	
GH13_5	2	1	1	–	–	–	–	2	–	1	–	–	–	
GH13_8	1	1	1	1	2	1	1	1	–	1	1	1	–	
GH13_22	3	3	2	–	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	
GH13_25	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	–	1	1	2	–	
GH13_30	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	
GH13_40	6	5	3	5	–	7	2	1	–	–	–	–	–	
GH15	3	5	4	3	–	1	1	2	–	1	3	3	–	
GH16	13	14	15	24	1	5	7	13	7	17	8	6	–	β-1,3 glucan
GH17	5	5	4	6	–	4	5	1	–	6	2	4	–	
GH18	17	16	27	20	–	2	4	4	1	19	12	11	–	Chitin
GH19	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1	Chitin
GH20	3	2	2	3	–	–	1	1	–	6	4	4	–	β glycan
GH23	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	
GH24	2	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH25	1	3	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	2	–	1	–	
GH26	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH27	3	4	2	2	–	–	–	–	–	–	1	2	1	
GH28	21	13	8	6	–	1	–	1	–	–	6	3	–	
GH29	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1	–	
GH30	–	1	5	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH30_3	–	1	2	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH30_5	–	–	2	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH30_7	–	–	8	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	

(continued)

Table 2 (continued)

	A. flavus	*A. fumigatus*	*T. marneffei*	*F. graminearum*	*P. jirovecii*	*S. cerevisiae*	*C. albicans*	*C. neoformans*	*M. globosa*	*C. coronatus*	*R. microsporus*	*L. corymbifera*	*E. cuniculi*	
GH31	10	7	1	8	1	1	3	3	2	4	3	5	–	
GH32	4	5	–	5	2	1	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	
GH33	1	1	–	1	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	
GH35	8	5	4	3	–	–	–	–	–	1	1	2	–	
GH36	3	3	1	3	–	–	–	1	–	–	4	3	–	
GH37	1	1	1	2	1	2	1	2	1	2	3	5	1	
GH38	1	1	1	1	–	1	1	1	–	2	2	3	–	
GH39	–	1	1	2	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH43	21	18	7	18	–	–	–	–	1	–	–	2	–	
GH45	1	1	2	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	5	1	–	
GH46	6	6	7	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	2	3	–	Chitosan
GH47	–	–	1	10	1	3	2	3	3	11	8	6	–	
GH51	4	2	1	2	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	2	–	
GH53	2	1	1	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH54	1	–	4	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH55	3	8	7	3	–	–	–	–	3	–	–	–	–	β 1,3 glucan
GH62	2	2	2	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH63	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	–	1	1	1	1	–	
GH64	–	–	3	2	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	β 1,3 glucan
GH65	1	1	1	–	–	1	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH67	1	1	2	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH71	10	9	7	–	–	–	–	4	–	–	–	–	–	β 1,3 glucan
GH72	8	7	5	3	1	5	5	1	–	5	1	2	–	
GH74	–	2	1	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH75	4	3	1	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	Chitosan
GH76	10	7	6	7	1	2	3	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH78	12	6	2	7	–	–	–	2	–	–	–	–	–	

(continued)

Table 2 (continued)

	A. flavus	*A. fumigatus*	*T. marneffei*	*F. graminearum*	*P. jirovecii*	*S. cerevisiae*	*C. albicans*	*C. neoformans*	*M. globosa*	*C. coronatus*	*R. microsporus*	*L. corymbifera*	*E. cuniculi*	
GH79	5	–	2	1	–	–	–	4	–	–	–	1	–	
GH81	1	1	1	1	1	2	2	–	–	1	1	1	–	β 1,3 glucan
GH85	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	
GH88	3	2	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH89	1	1	2	–	–	–	1	1	–	–	–	–	–	
GH92	6	7	5	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH93	3	3	2	2	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH95	3	2	1	2	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH105	4	3	4	3	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	3	–	
GH106	5	1	–	1	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	
GH114	1	1	1	2	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	
GH115	3	1	–	2	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	
GH125	1	1	1	3	–	–	1	–	–	–	2	1	–	
GH127	–	1	2	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH128	2	2	6	4	–	–	–	7	2	–	–	–	–	
GH130	–	–	–	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH131	3	2	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH132	2	2	2	2	1	5	3	–	–	3	–	–	–	
GH133	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	–	2	1	2	–	
GH134	3	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	4	–	–	
GH135	4	4	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH136	1	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH139	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH140	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH141	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH142	1	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH145	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	

(continued)

Table 2 (continued)

	A. flavus	*A. fumigatus*	*T. marneffei*	*F. graminearum*	*P. jirovecii*	*S. cerevisiae*	*C. albicans*	*C. neoformans*	*M. globosa*	*C. coronatus*	*R. microsporus*	*L. corymbifera*	*E. cuniculi*	
GH146	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GH152	–	–	1	1	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	
GH154	3	2	1	2	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	
GH162	–	1	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	

Table 3 Glycosyl transferase families in fungal species of different orders (including major human pathogens)

	A. flavus	*A. fumigatus*	*T. marneffei*	*F. graminearum*	*P. jirovecii*	*S. cerevisiae*	*C. albicans*	*C. neoformans*	*M. globosa*	*C. coronatus*	*R. microsporus*	*L. corymbifera*	*E. cuniculi*	
CAZYmes total	627	537	487	587	56	143	154	202	103	296	302	353	11	**Cell wall-associated transferase activity**
GT	123	105	98	105	36	68	74	68	43	132	117	142	8	
GT1	9	9	6	16	2	3	3	5	3	50	9	10	–	
GT2	20	15	17	19	2	5	6	10	9	17	27	30	2	Chitin synthase
GT3	1	1	1	1	1	2	1	1	4	1	2	3	1	Glycogen synthase
GT4	11	8	5	5	3	3	3	5	–	3	5	7	–	
GT5	3	3	2	–	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	
GT8	5	4	4	6	2	3	3	6	1	2	3	3	–	GlcNAc transferase?
GT10	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1	2	–	
GT14	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	
GT15	3	3	7	5	–	9	5	1	3	16	12	16	1	Mannosyl transferase
GT17	–	–	–	2	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GT20	6	7	7	3	2	4	3	3	3	2	7	8	2	
GT21	1	1	1	1	1	–	1	1	1	–	1	1	–	
GT22	4	4	4	4	2	4	4	3	3	3	5	5	–	
GT24	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	3	–	
GT25	6	3	2	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	
GT31	12	8	8	5	–	–	–	2	1	–	3	1	–	Galactofuranosyl transferase
GT32	10	6	8	5	2	4	3	7	1	10	2	3	–	Mannosyltransferase
GT33	1	1	1	1	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	GDP-Man: chitobiosyldiphosphodolichol β-mannosyltransferase?
GT34	2	3	3	2	–	2	2	–	–	–	1	3	–	
GT35	1	1	1	1	2	1	1	1	–	–	2	–	1	
GT39	3	3	3	3	4	7	5	3	3	5	6	8	–	
GT41	1	1	1	1	–	–	–	–	–	1	1	1	–	
GT47	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1	–	–	1	1	–	
GT48	1	1	1	1	1	3	3	1	2	4	2	3	–	1,3 beta glucan synthase

(continued)

Table 3 (continued)

	A. flavus	*A. fumigatus*	*T. marneffei*	*F. graminearum*	*P. jirovecii*	*S. cerevisiae*	*C. albicans*	*C. neoformans*	*M. globosa*	*C. coronatus*	*R. microsporus*	*L. corymbifera*	*E. cuniculi*	
GT49	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	8	11	–	β-1,3-N-acetylglucosaminyltransferase?
GT50	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	1	1	1	1	–	
GT57	2	2	2	2	4	2	2	–	2	2	2	2	–	Dol-P-Glc: α-1,3 glucosyltransferase
GT58	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	–	1	1	1	–	
GT59	1	1	1	1	2	1	1	–	–	1	1	1	–	
GT62	3	3	3	3	–	3	4	–	–	–	2	5	–	
GT64	–	–	–	2	–	–	–	–	–	–	2	1	–	
GT66	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	–	
GT69	3	3	1	1	–	–	–	2	2	2	–	1	–	Mannosyltransferase
GT71	5	3	2	4	–	6	12	2	–	7	3	4	–	
GT76	1	2	2	1	–	1	1	1	1	–	1	1	–	
GT77	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	3	4	–	
GT90	4	5	1	6	–	–	–	6	–	–	–	6	–	
GT91	–	–	–	–	–	–	6	–	–	–	–	–	–	β-1,2-mannosyltransferase
Myosin_motor	2	2	2	2	–	–	–	1	1	5	9	–	–	

Table 4 Can auxiliary activities and polysaccharide lyases be of any role in fungal cell wall?

	A. flavus	*A. fumigatus*	*T. marneffei*	*F. graminearum*	*P. jirovecii*	*S. cerevisiae*	*C. albicans*	*C. neoformans*	*M. globosa*	*C. coronatus*	*R. microsporus*	*L. corymbifera*	*E. cuniculi*
CAZYmes total	627	537	487	587	56	143	154	202	103	296	302	353	11
Polysaccharide lyases (PL)	25	15	6	22	0	0	0	4	1	0	4	6	0
PL1	12	6	3	9	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
PL3	3	3	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
PL4	3	3	–	7	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	6	–
PL7	1	–	1	2	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
PL8	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1	–	–
PL9	1	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
PL11	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
PL14	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	2	1	–	3	–	–
PL20	2	1	1	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
PL26	2	1	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
PL27	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
PL35	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–

(continued)

Table 4 (continued)

	A. flavus	*A. fumigatus*	*T. marneffei*	*F. graminearum*	*P. jirovecii*	*S. cerevisiae*	*C. albicans*	*C. neoformans*	*M. globosa*	*C. coronatus*	*R. microsporus*	*L. corymbifera*	*E. cuniculi*
Auxiliary Activities (AA)	70	35	37	73	0	6	9	16	18	38	11	14	0
AA1	11	5	11	14	–	3	5	5	12	1	5	7	–
AA2	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
AA3	35	11	10	20	–	–	–	3	5	10	2	–	–
AA4	–	1	4	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
AA5	2	1	4	5	–	–	–	3	1	–	2	1	–
AA6	1	1	4	1	–	3	4	2	–	8	2	6	–
AA7	3	1	1	5	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
AA8	3	2	–	4	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–
AA9	7	8	1	13	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
AA11	5	3	2	4	–	–	–	1	–	19	–	–	–
AA12	–	–	–	2	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
AA13	1	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
AA14	–	1	–	1	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–
AA16	2	1	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–

Table 5 Carbohydrate esterase families in the different human fungal species

		A. flavus	*A. fumigatus*	*T. marneffei*	*F. graminearum*	*P. jirovecii*	*S. cerevisiae*	*C. albicans*	*C. neoformans*	*M. globosa*	*C. coronatus*	*R. microsporus*	*L. corymbifera*	*E. cuniculi*
CAZYmes total		627	537	487	587	56	143	154	202	103	296	302	353	11
Carbohydrate exterase (CE)		26	23	19	42	–	2	2	4	4	6	23	25	1
CE1	Xylan	3	2	2	4	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
CE2		–	–	1	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
CE3		3	1	1	5	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
CE4	Chitin	2	7	4	7	–	2	1	4	3	4	18	17	1
CE5	Xylan	6	5	3	12	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
CE8		5	5	3	6	–	–	–	–	–	–	3	2	–
CE9		1	1	1	1	–	–	1	–	1	1	1	1	–
CE12		4	2	1	3	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
CE15		–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
CE16		2	3	3	3	–	–	–	–	–	1	1	5	–
Distantly related to plant expansins (EXPN)		3	5	6	7	–	–	1	5	4	2	12	12	–

Table 6 Carbohydrate-binding modules in fungi

		A. flavus	*A. fumigatus*	*T. marneffei*	*F. graminearum*	*P. jirovecii*	*S. cerevisiae*	*C. albicans*	*C. neoformans*	*M. globosa*	*C. coronatus*	*R. microsporus*	*L. corymbifera*	*E. cuniculi*
CAZYmes total		627	537	487	587	56	143	154	202	103	296	302	353	11
CBM	Described binding in fungi	54	73	89	79	5	15	11	14	2	16	34	47	0
CBM1	Cellulose	5	16	17	12	–	–	–	–	–	–	2	2	–
CBM5	Cellulose	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	3	2	–
CBM6	Amorphous cellulose, xylan	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
CBM12	Chitin	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1	2	–
CBM13	Xylan, N-acetylgalactosamine	2	–	–	2	–	–	–	5	–	–	16	22	–
CBM14	Chitin	2	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	5	–	–	–
CBM18	Chitin	5	11	19	26	–	2	1	1	–	1	1	1	–
CBM19	Chitin	1	1	2	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
CBM20	α 1,4/1,6 glucan	1	4	3	2	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
CBM21	α 1,4/1,6 glucan	1	1	2	2	–	4	2	2	–	1	5	5	–
CBM24	α-1,3-glucan	9	11	2	2	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
CBM32	Galactose, lactose, pectin	2	0	1	3	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
CBM35	Galactan, β mannan	3	3	2	3	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
CBM38	Inulin	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
CBM42	Arabinoxylan	1	–	4	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
CBM43	β-1,3 glucan	5	4	1	1	1	2	3	1	–	5	1	2	–
CBM48	α 1,4/1,6 glucan	3	2	3	2	3	6	5	3	1	2	2	3	–
CBM50	Chitin, chitopentaose	13	14	29	20	–	–	–	2	1	–	3	8	–
CBM52	β-1,3-Glucan	–	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
CBM63	Cellulose	0	1	–	3	–	–	–	–	–	2	–	–	–
CBM66	Fructan	–	2	4	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–

Clearly, the CAZy database is an essential reference source for the analysis and recovery of genomic, structural, and biochemical information across organisms. Even though the CAZy database integrates mainly glycoside hydrolases allowing the fungus to grow on fresh or decaying plant material, the presence of cell wall-associated CAZymes common to many species has been also used to identify enzymes involved in morphogenetic processes. This is how the GPI-anchored CAZymes encoded by *GEL*, *DFG*, *SPS2, SUN,* and *CRH* were suspected to be cell wall-associated and shown later to play an active role in cell wall construction. The discovery of new cell wall enzymes remains, however, a very difficult challenge especially since the mechanisms of cell wall synthesis are complex and have been insufficiently clarified at the molecular level as seen in the following paragraphs describing the synthesis of the two major fungal polysaccharides: chitin and β-1,3 glucan (Latge and Beauvais 2014).

a. **Chitin—a fungal key polysaccharide**

The comparison of Microsporidia, Chytridiomycetes, and Zygomycetes with Ascomycetes and Basidomycetes (Table 1) suggests that the most recent fungi in the phylogeny appear to have the most complex cell wall composition. However, it is also interesting to observe that some of the Zygomycetes have a complex cell wall with an "algal" signature represented by fucoidan and glucuronan polysaccharides (Mélida et al. 2015), a feature perhaps due to the fact that they populate mainly the same habitat. Chitin, a polymer of β-1,4-linked N-acetylglucosamine, is the key component of the fungal cell wall, though not in terms of abundance in the cell wall. This polysaccharide is present in all fungal lineages and distinguishes the fungal cell wall from that of plants. Chitin indeed evolved soon after plants split from the other eukaryotes. Although it is a rigid molecule, it did not prevent the ancestral fungal cells to move since the first fungi had flagella. The cell wall of the most deeply branching fungal taxon, *Rozella* (Cryptomycota) is chitin-based. The group of early diverging fungi includes members of Chytridiomycetes and Zygomycetes are also chitin-rich. However, chitin is not necessary for all fungi since it is missing in *Pneumocystis* or *Schizoaccharomyces pombe*. Of note, the *S. pombe* genome harbors a class I chitin synthase gene. The proportion of chitin in fungal cell walls varies widely from 1 to 2% of cell dry weight in yeasts up to 40% in Zygomycetes (Bartnicki-Garcia and Lippman 1969).

Chitin biosynthesis is best studied in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae,* which encodes three chitin synthases belonging to the CAZy family GT2. The chitin synthases of the baker's yeast can be subclassed in classes I, II, IV of the total seven subclasses and the class IV Chs3 is responsible for the synthesis of 90% of the entire chitin content (Osmond et al. 1999). One of the limitations in the analysis of the CAZy family can be seen here: the other two GT2 members encoded by *S. cerevisiae* are not associated to chitin synthesis but are Alg5 and Dpm1 which are required in the assembly of the core glycolipid of GPI membrane anchor and in the synthesis of O- and N-linked mannans, respectively. In addition, the quantity and the class of chitin synthases genes encoded in a fungal genome can greatly vary, from a single gene to multiple copies of different classes. The phylogeny of the chitin synthase genes is

indeed quite complex with some of the candidate chitin synthases being found in organisms which do not have chitin, raising the question of a putative role of chitin synthases in other pathways than only chitin synthesis (Zakrzewski et al. 2014).

The construction of the cell wall chitin involves the cooperative and sequential activity of several CAZy families including synthases (GT2), chitinases (GH18, GH19), or remodeling enzymes such as chitin deacetylases (CE4). Some of these enzymes can also harbor a CBM, but there also exist several chitin-binding modules not appended to any catalytic domain. The chitin synthase activity to date has been shown exclusively in vitro with rudimentary biochemical experiments using NDP-sugars and crude membrane fractions. In each CAZy family involved, there are several proteins, but their precise role and function are rarely properly identified. For chitin hydrolases, a search in the CAZy database will recover mostly GH18 or GH19 enzymes sometimes appended to chitin-binding domains of families CBM5, 12, 14, 18, 19, or 50 (Table 7) generating diverse modular structures. The biological function of fungal chitinases is difficult to appreciate as there is no easy way to separate the chitinases which have a morphogenetic role in the construction/remodeling of the cell wall from those that have a simple nutritional role (Alcazar-Fuoli et al. 2011). Similar to obligate pathogens, *S. cerevisiae* has a limited number of chitinases which are obviously not focused on nutrient acquisition and have been shown to be exclusively involved in cell wall modifications. There are 16 putative chitinases encoded in the *Aspergillus fumigatus* genome (Table 2). All belong to family GH18, nine have just the catalytic GH18 module while the others are appended to CBM18, 19 or 50 modules. Delineating the role of these enzymes is arduous and involves multiple deletions of the corresponding hydrolase genes. In *A. fumigatus*, a quintuple chitinase-deleted mutant showed only a minor loss of chitinase activity and ongoing work suggests still more than 25% of chitinase activity in a decuple mutant (Blatzer and Latgé unpublished).

Also, it is often difficult to correlate the presence of a CAZyme(s) and the composition of the fungal cell wall which is often not accurately known. This is the case for chitin deacetylases (CE4, Table 5) which are found in all fungal phyla while only Zygomycetes or *Cryptococcus sp*. appear to contain their product chitosan, the deacetylated derivative of chitin, in the cell wall. In *Saccharomyces cerevisiae,* chitosan is only produced during sporulation in the ascospore cell wall (Christodoulidou et al. 1996). *A. fumigatus* harbors seven CE4 family members; one is coupled to two CBM18 chitin-binding modules while the other two members are not (Table 7). *Cryptococcus neoformans* harbors four carbohydrate esterases of the CE4 family and three members have been experimentally shown to contribute to chitosan production. *C. neoformans* chitosan-deficient strains show a budding defect and more importantly chitosan-deficient strains are rapidly cleared by the host in the lungs (Banks et al. 2005). Interestingly, the chitin deacetylase activity of Cda1 is critical for fungal virulence in a murine infection model (Upadhya et al. 2018). What would be the use of enzymes such as chitin deacetylases which are expressed during growth by some *Aspergillus* sp. when the fungal cell wall does not contain chitosan (Mouyna et al. 2020)? Is it possible that the presence of low amounts of glucosamine go unnoticed after classical very harsh hydrolysis

Table 7 An example of CAZYme organization and carbohydrate-binding modules in *A. fumigatus*

Chitin binding	***β glucan binding***	***Other mixed CBM modules***
CBM 18—CBM 18—CE 4	***4 x*** CBM 43—GH 72	AA 5/Subf 2—CBM 32
CBM 18—GH 16	***Cellulose binding***	CBM 35—GH 27
CBM 18—GH 18	***3 x*** AA 9—CBM 1	***2 x*** CBM 35—GH 43
CBM 18—CBM 18—GH 18	CBM 1—CE 5	CBM 38—GH 32—GH 32
CBM 18—CBM 50—GH 18	CBM 1—CE 16	CBM 48—GH 13/Subf 8
CBM 18—CBM 18—CBM 50—GH 18	***2 x*** CBM 1—GH 5/Subf 5	CBM 66—CBM 66
2 x CBM 18—CBM 50—CBM 50—GH 18	CBM 1—GH 5/Subf 7	***Single CBM only modules***
CBM 19—GH 18	CBM 1—GH 6	CBM 1 distantly related to plant expansins
2 x CBM 50—CBM 50	***2 x*** CBM 1—GH 7	CBM1
CBM 50—CBM 50—CBM 50	CBM 1—GH 10	CBM 14
α ***glucan binding***	CBM 1—GH 45	CBM 21
CBM 24—CBM 24	CBM 1—GH 62	CBM 48
CBM 24—CBM 24—GH 71	***Starch binding***	CBM 50
CBM 24—CBM 24—CBM 24—GH 71	CBM 20—GH 13/Subf 1	CBM 63 distantly related to plant expansins
CBM 24—CBM 24—CBM 24—CBM 24—GH 71	***3 x*** CBM 20—GH 15	

procedures used for cell wall analysis? Could the chitin be susceptible to post-synthetic modifications and contain some glucosamine oligosaccharides which would decrease the stiffness of the chitin fibrils and lead to a more plastic cell wall exoskeleton? These are open questions which are also relevant for other cell wall polysaccharides.

b. **β-1,3 glucan, another major cell wall structural polysaccharide**

β-1,3 glucans are the most abundant component of the cell walls of Ascomycetes and Basidiomycetes. With chitin, they contribute to the rigidity of the cell wall as fibrillar core and hold a central place in the cell wall organization and architecture. They are branched with β-1,6 connections and are covalently linked to other cell wall polysaccharides. Their synthesis is mediated by β-1,3 glucan synthases belonging to GT48 family, which use UDP-glucose as the only glucosyl donor. Deletion of the β-1,3 glucan synthase catalytic subunit (*FKS*) genes is lethal (*FKS1* deletion in *C. albicans*, or simultaneous deletion of *FKS1* and *FKS2* in *C. glabrata*) or lead to very impaired growth and abnormal morphology in *A. fumigatus* (Dichtl et al. 2015; Douglas et al. 1997; Katiyar et al. 2006). Of note, the microsporidian

Encephalitozoon cuniculi lacks a *FKS* ortholog, consistent with the lack of β-1,3 glucans. β-1,3 glucans have been also the only structural core polysaccharide for which a very specific pattern recognition receptor (PRR) ligand, dectin1, has been characterized (Taylor et al. 2007) and a homolog of the mammalian dectin-1 triggers immune responses in plants (Mélida et al. 2018).

The steady-state growth theory established in the 70's assumes the continuous secretion at the apex of an expansible mixture of wall polymers that is continuously removed at the base of the extension zone the rigid cell wall arising from interactions between the polymers (Bartnicki-Garcia et al. 2000; Bartnicki-García 1999). This suggests that β-1,3 glucanases are indeed only useful for cell separation as seen with yeast and more recently in *A. fumigatus* (Kuznetsov et al. 2016; Millet et al. 2019; Onwubiko et al. 2020; Wloka and Bi 2012). In *A. fumigatus*, five GH families have so far been identified to act as β-1,3 glucanases: GH3, GH5, GH16, GH81, and GH55. The latter family has been shown to be important during conidiation and proper spore maturation and spore dissemination (Millet et al. 2019). Also, the endoglucanase activity of the GH16 members together with that of the only GH81 member impact on conidial maturation (Mouyna et al. 2016). An extension of this morphogenetic role of glucanases during cell separation is that the septum insertion requires some degradation of the mature rigid cell wall for the centripetal growth required for septum formation in filamentous fungi. In addition, many of these hydrolases have now been recognized as true transglycosidases as shown by the GH72 family. The remodeling role of these glycoside hydrolases during cell wall expansion should be better assessed.

c. **Fungal life and CAZymes**

The CAZyme content appears to be co-evolving with the lifestyle of fungi. Among the selected human pathogenic fungi, *Encephalitozoon cuniculi* possesses not only the smallest genome but also the most reduced CAZyme portfolio with only 11 CAZymes belonging to three CAZy families (Table 1). Due to its peculiar obligate intracellular lifestyle, it is not known if this CAZyme set constitutes a very reduced set for the specialized environment of this pathogen. For example, as a basal fungus, it possesses a mitochondrial remnant without DNA (Han et al. 2019). Chitin and mannose have been identified as cell wall components of this pathogen. This is reflected in the CAZy makeup, which consists of only two glycoside hydrolase namely a class I chitinase from family GH19 and a trehalase of family GH37. Furthermore, eight glycosyltransferases (which make up more than 70% of its tiny CAZyme repertoire) are encoded in the genome of *E. cuniculi*. Family GT48 β-1,3 glucan synthase is missing from the *E. cuniculi* genome, in agreement with the absence of β-1,3 glucan in this organism. Two GT2 members are present with predicted chitin synthase and dolicholphosphate mannosyltransferase functions. Another α-mannosyltransferase (PIG-V) from the family GT76, a third KTR like GT15 glycolipid α-mannosyltransferase, and a GT4 family glycosyltransferase likely to participate to GPI anchor biosynthesis complete the mannosytransferase portfolio of *E. cuniculi* and confirm the essential role of the GPI pathway in fungal life (and cell wall construction?). Such in silico analysis would suggest to inspect

more deeply these glycolipid CAZymes whose role in the cell wall biosynthesis has been insufficiently investigated. Of the third CAZy class, the carbohydrate esterases, *E. cuninculi* possesses one single CE4 member, a polysaccharide deacetylase responsible for the production of chitosan, whose presence has not been investigated biochemically in this species.

At the other extreme of the spectrum of fungi, the opportunistic human, plant, and insect pathogenic *A. flavus* can be found. While *E. cuniculi* is very specialized regarding host and habitat and limited in its CAZyme makeup, *A. flavus* holds the highest number of CAZymes among aerobic fungi with over 620 proteins. *A. flavus* is able to infect intact plant tissues or insects or humans but is also able to survive as a saprotroph as permitted by its large CAZyme equipment which allows this species to acquire nutrients in diverse environments (St Leger et al. 2000). Indeed, opportunistic ascomycetous molds encode the largest number of glycoside hydrolases (Table 1).

Pneumocystis jirovecii, another obligate pathogen, also harbors limited CAZyme equipment with only 56 members (Table 1). This equipment is sufficient for the fungus to survive and proliferate in the human lung but it is noteworthy that it lacks the CAZymes that are required by rotting fungi or plant pathogens. *P. jirovecii* is the only fungal representative lacking chitinases, in agreement with the fact that its cell wall does not contain chitin and that chitin is also absent as carbon source in its habitat, the human lung. The genome of *P. jirovecii* encodes only 15 glycoside hydrolases (GH) members, a tiny number compared to plant pathogenic or plant biomass decaying fungi which encode over 250 glycoside hydrolases, a majority of which to decompose plant carbohydrates. Similarly, the commensal and opportunistic pathogen *Candida albicans*, which is also adapted to the human host, either on mucosal surfaces or in the gastrointestinal tract, also displays a reduced number of GHs with 52 glycoside hydrolase genes. The number of glycosyltransferases is also decreased in *P. jirovecii* with only 36 members. Interestingly, the family GT2 members in this species are not chitin synthases, as no chitin is present, but have been identified in silico as a dolicholphosphate mannosyl transferase and a UDP-ceramide-glucosyltransferase. Surprisingly, *P. jirovecii* appears to have no GT15 homolog while it has mannans in its cell wall. These results suggest that mannan synthesis in this species may be different from the other molds and yeasts.

Another difficulty in the analysis of the CAZyme genes is that the genomic survey most of the time does not take into accounts the relative and often huge differences seen in the composition occurring between the different morphotypes of the fungus (yeast vs mycelium in dimorphic or trimorphic fungi such as *Histoplasma* or *Paracoccidioides*, mycelium vs conidium in filamentous fungi). It is then unknown if a set of CAZymes are more important for the synthesis of one or the other morphotype.

If we take into consideration all the points mentioned above and especially the huge differences and variations between the cell walls of the different fungal groups (Table 1), it is clear that the *S. cerevisiae* model for cell wall biosynthesis is not a paradigm. Drastic changes occurred during evolution of the genes encoding the enzymes involved in cell wall synthesis, as revealed by the variable degrees of

similarity between the corresponding genes in the different fungal phyla. One example is the CRH proteins of the GH16 family, which are involved in the building of chitin–glucan linkages in *S. cerevisiae* (Blanco et al. 2012; Cabib et al. 2008), but not in filamentous fungi since the entire deletion of the CRH family (5 genes) in *A. fumigatus* does not change the morphogenesis of the cell wall [(Fang et al. 2019) Mouyna and Millet unpublished]. Does it mean that the dogma the construction of the cell wall requiring the covalent binding of glucan and chitin should be abandoned or that some modifying enzymes have not been identified yet? Moreover, orthologous genes with very similar sequences and even similar enzymatic function play a different role in the cell wall construction in *S. cerevisiae* and other fungi. The DFG family assigned to the GH76 family is essential in yeast and the analysis of the mutants suggested that the two members of this family have a regulatory role in hypha development (Kitagaki et al. 2002; Spreghini et al. 2003). In molds, this family is not essential and has been shown to play a role in the anchoring of galactomannan to the glucan–chitin core (Muszkieta et al. 2019). Significant discrepancies have been also found in the analysis of mannan synthesis in yeast and molds. In yeast, mannosyl transferases which belong to the GT32, GT34, GT62, and GT71 are responsible for the synthesis of the linear α-1,6 mannan chains and their branching (Stolz and Munro 2002). In *A. fumigatus*, the eleven orthologous genes of the yeast polymerase families do exist and are able to transfer mannose to mannan from GDP-mannose in vitro but are not associated to the synthesis of the cell wall mannan. In contrast, the homologs of the *KTR* genes of the GT15 family, which are not involved in mannan cell wall production in yeast, are essential for the synthesis of the cell wall mannan in *A. fumigatus* (Henry et al. 2019). To date, the enzymatic activity of these cell wall CAZymes has been mainly investigated in vitro using recombinant proteins. Do these enzymes play a similar role in situ in a cell wall environment with different acceptors and donors? Probably not. This field has been totally untouched to date. Associated to this problem is the poor understanding of the location of most of the cell wall proteins. This is very clear for the function assigned to GPI proteins in yeast and molds. In *S. cerevisiae,* it has been repeatedly suggested (but not fully demonstrated) that these proteins have a structural role in the cell wall and would be covalently bound to polysaccharides. In *A. fumigatus,* GPI proteins are not bound to polysaccharides but have an enzymatic function essential for the remodeling of the cell wall polysaccharides (Li et al. 2018).

2 Carbohydrate-Binding Domains

Carbohydrate-binding domains (CBMs) are independently folding protein modules that have carbohydrate-binding properties but no enzymatic activity. They are often appended to CAZymes and frequently attached to proteins of unknown function. Within the fungi, the most common CBMs belong to cellulose-binding (CBM1) or chitin-binding (CBM18 and CBM50/LysM domain) families (Tables 6, 7 and

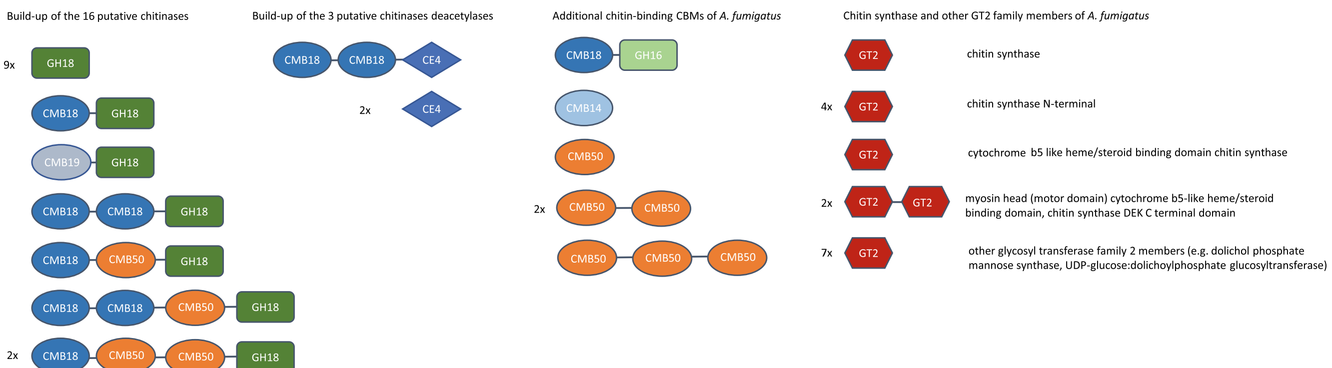


Fig. 1 An example of the organization of CBMs in chitin synthesis and chitin modifying CAZYmes in the *A. fumigatus* genome

Fig. 1). Cellulose-binding CBMs like those of family CBM1 and CBM63 are often attached to glycoside hydrolases, carbohydrate esterases, or auxiliary activity redox enzymes, and they serve to target their appended catalytic domain to the plant cell wall. Some of these CBM-containing proteins may not have an enzymatic function associated to plant degradation. This is the case of some CBM1 and CBM63 members such as AFUA_6G03280 or AFUA_5G08030 in *A. fumigatus*, which bear distant similarity with plant expansins. They are non-catalytic carbohydrate-binding proteins that facilitate cell wall expansion during plant growth (Chase et al. 2020).

While CBMs have been widely investigated for their role in complex polymer decomposition and biotechnological applications, in particular lignocellulose breakdown, CBM-containing proteins have not yet been extensively studied regarding their role in fungal cell wall deconstruction or remodeling (Pham et al. 2010).

Most fungal proteins with characterized CBMs are chitin-binding proteins. In addition to being a structural component of the cell wall and a natural food for saprotrophic fungi, chitin is a well-described pathogen-associated molecular pattern (PAMP) for pathogenic fungi regardless if the host is a plant or mammal. In mammals, chitin is able to activate a variety of innate and adaptive immune responses (Elieh Ali Komi et al. 2018). To overcome host immunity, fungal plant pathogens secrete effector molecules that can repress the host defense systems. A class of conserved secreted effectors are LysM effectors, that carry no recognizable protein domains other than the CBM50 motif (Kombrink and Thomma 2013). In *A. fumigatus*, eight putative LysM-domain proteins were identified including three putative chitinases (AFUA_5G03960, AFUA_5G06840, and AFUA_6G13720) and LdpA and B (AFUA_5G03980 and AFUA_1G15420) with multiple putative LysM domains but without catalytic domain typical of LysM domains found in plant pathogens (Muraosa et al. 2019). Single- and double-deletion mutants revealed that LdpA and LdpB have no significant defects on cell wall integrity or chitin content and virulence. Interestingly the commensal *C. albicans*, as well as the skin-associated *Malassezia globosa* or the intracellular pathogen *P. jirovecii* lack CBM50 or other chitin-binding effectors. These results suggest that LysM molecules are not essential for the biosynthesis of cell wall chitin in *Aspergillus* and that such molecules may not have the same function in plant and in mammal pathogens. Mammalian fungal pathogens, such as opportunistic pathogens, may use their LysM effector homologs in other processes rather than host colonization, such as survival in the environment. The absence of LysM effector genes in *C. albicans*, *M. globosa*, and *P. jirovecii*, which are among the few fungal species that are commensals of humans and animals and that do not occur free-living in the environment, seems to support this hypothesis (Kombrink and Thomma 2013).

The *A. fumigatus* genome encodes several proteins with more than one CBM (Fig. 1). The reasons for the presence of several CBM50 domains on a single polypeptide remain unknown.

Most of the proteins with a chitin-binding module are chitinases. Others are transglycosidases. Crh transglycosidases supposed to synthesize glucan–chitin

branched polymers in yeast but not in molds belong to two GH16 subfamilies GH16_18 and GH16_19 which possess or not different CBMs. When present, only chitin-binding CBM 18 and 50 are found in these Crh proteins in the absence of any β-1,3 glucan-binding CBM. This also points out the lack of understanding of the biochemical activity of transglycosidases in situ since the Crh enzymes are able to produce in vitro chitin–chitin or chitin—β-1,3 or even β-1,6 glucan cross-links without any characterization of the acceptor and donor molecules for these enzymes in situ (Blanco et al. 2012; Fang et al. 2019). No transglycosidases have been indeed identified yet with two different CBMs recognizing the two polysaccharides to be transglycosylated by the enzyme. Another question to rise is why only one of the fourteen GH16 members in *A. fumigatus* possesses a CMB18 chitin-binding module while the thirteen others are not associated with any other module. This would question the role of the CBM in the control of the activity of these enzymes.

In contrast to chitin-modifying enzymes and in spite of the important role of β-1,3 glucan enzymes, nearly all β-1,3 glucan CAZymes among human pathogens (Table 6) possess a CBM43-binding domain. However, the presence or absence of this CBM is essential in establishing the specificity of the CAZyme activity as seen with the GH72 proteins (Aimanianda et al. 2017). All members of the GH72 have a β-1,3 glucan elongating activity (Hartland et al. 1996; Mouyna et al. 2000) but some of the GH72 proteins which contain a CBM43 at their C terminus have in addition a β-1,3 glucan branching activity suggesting that linear elongation of β-1,3 glucan is a prerequisite and that the positioning of elongated β-1,3-glucan by the CBM43 is absolutely required for the subsequent branching activity of Gas/Gel proteins. In *P. jivocenii*, a CBM 52 [characterized in *Schizosaccharomyces pombe* (Martín-Cuadrado et al. 2008)] has been noticed.

Even though mannan, galactan, galacturonan, β-1,6 glucans or fucoidan must be transglycosylated to be covalently bound to the structural cell wall core of various fungal species, no CBMs able to bind these polysaccharides have been identified yet. Such observations suggest that there may be many unknown CBMs to discover and especially some with key acceptor function in cell wall remodelases.

3 Gene Clusters and Gene Families in Fungi

Bacterial cell wall and exopolysaccharides are produced and degraded by the products of gene clusters whose expression is highly coordinated (Pan et al. 2015; Christiansen et al. 2020; Pilhofer et al. 2008; Schmid et al. 2015). By contrast, even when the products of several genes cooperate for the biosynthesis of polysaccharides, the corresponding fungal genes do not reside on the same chromosome location. Fungal gene clusters do exist but they have been essentially described for the enzymes synthesizing secondary metabolites (www.jcvi.org/smurf/) where they need the cooperation of several enzymes but not for the synthesis of glycans. There seems to exist a single exception to this rule, namely the synthesis of the galactosaminogalactan (GAG) in *A. fumigatus* which was originally described as the first

virulence polysaccharide in the fungal kingdom (Fontaine et al. 2011). A transcriptomic analysis of *A. fumigatus* regulatory mutants deficient in GAG production identified a cluster of genes (AFUA_3G07860 to AFUA_3G07910) linked to GAG synthesis on chromosome 3 [(Bamford et al. 2015; Lee et al. 2014) Briard et al., submitted]. This cluster encoded five putative enzymes: (i) Uge3 (AFUA_3G07910) a bifunctional cytoplasmic uridine diphosphate (UDP)-glucose-4-epimerase that mediates the production of UDP-GalNAc and UDP-Gal, (ii) Agd3 a secreted protein required for the partial deacetylation of newly synthesized GAG polymer (AFUA_3G07890), (iii) Sph3 (AFUA_3G07890) a member of CAZy family GH135, with endo-α-1,4-*N*-acetylgalactosaminidase activity, (iv) Ega3 (AFUA_3G07890) a CAZy family GH114 endo-α-1,4-galactosaminidase specific for GalN–GalN linkages, and (v) Gt4c (AFUA_3G07860) which encodes a CAZy family GT4 glycosyltransferase whose catalytic domain is appended to a large domain featuring multiple transmembrane segments. Cell wall chitin and glucan polysaccharides are synthesized by synthases and composed of monomers. In contrast, GAG is an alternating polysaccharide requiring a close collaboration of enzymes which will add one monomer after another monomer of different nature. In addition, the presence of hydrolases of the GH114 and 135 families in this cluster suggest that GAG hydrolysis must be also concerted. The similarity between the exopolysaccharide deacetylase PelA of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and Agd3 of *A. fumigatus* as well the similarities with the exopolysaccharide synthesis analogous to the bacterial ICA/PGA systems has helped understanding the function of all members of the GAG cluster in *A. fumigatus* (Lee et al. 2016). However, the complexity of the GAG structure and the identification of a single glycosyltransferase in the cluster of *A. fumigatus* suggests that other undiscovered yet glycosyltransferases may be located somewhere else in the genome. The GAG cluster of *A. fumigatus* is conserved in other Aspergilli, but also in the Ascomycete *Botrytis cinerea*, *Phialocephala subalpina*, *Niesslia*, *Gloniopsis* sp., and the Basidiomycete *Trichosporon asahii*. However, the GH135 gene is missing from the cluster in *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum*, *Neurospora crassa*, *Clonostachys rosea*, and *Fusarium oxysporum*, while the GH135 and GT4 genes are missing in *Alternaria brassicicola*, suggesting that the colocalization of the GAG enzymes on the genome is not an absolute requirement, neither is the coupling of synthesis and hydrolysis. The chemical nature of all the fungal exopolysaccharides remains, however, to be investigated in all these fungi containing "GAG genes".

Other attempts have been made to identify phylogenetic clusters including chitin synthases, chitinases, and putative cell wall metabolism genes. Across six *Aspergillus* species, a cluster of five cell wall metabolic enzymes could be identified: a chitin synthase activator, a class V (or class i) myosin, a serine/threonine kinase, a type 2A protein phosphatase PP2A (with a WD40 domain), and a cell wall glucanase Scw11 (or beta-glucosidase Bgl2). The chitin synthase activator located in this syntenic block shares its highest identity to an ortholog of *S. cerevisiae*'s Chs4p/Skt5, a post-translational regulator of the Chs3 complex during vegetative growth. Interestingly, the chitin synthase activator and the class IV chitin synthase are close to each other in a head-to-head orientation, typical for secondary

metabolite clusters or functionally related genes (Pacheco-Arjona and Ramirez-Prado 2014). Another cluster with four other genes homologous to the ones of the GAG cluster of the chromosome 3 (AFUA_4G14090 for UDP glucose 4 epimerase, AFUA_4G14085 and AFUA_4G14080 for two Spherulin-like proteins and AFUA_4G14070 for a glycoside transferase) do not have any apparent function in GAG synthesis at least during growth in vitro. In contrast to the above-mentioned cluster, which is expressed in all environmental conditions, the genes of the second cluster in the chromosome 4 are mainly highly expressed in vivo (Latgé et al. unpublished), but have not been associated yet to the pathobiology of *A. fumigatus*. These data suggest that it may exist in the CAZy database more clusters homologous to the bacterial operons which are responsible for the synthesis of polysaccharides. Such clusters would be devoted to the synthesis of heterogenous polymer lacking repeating units.

One issue in cell wall biosynthesis is the total lack of understanding of the significance of the presence of multiple genes per CAZy family of cell wall-associated proteins. This is especially true for mold enzymes. Several examples are the GEL, KTR, DFG, or CHS families. In the GEL family, belonging to CAZy family GH72, even though all these enzymes display the same glucan elongation activity, mutants showed that Gel1 does not have any impact on the construction of the cell wall whereas Gel4 is essential in *A. fumigatus* (Gastebois et al. 2010). In the GT15 family of mannosyltransferases, two KTR enzymes KTR4 and 7 are essential for the synthesis of the cell wall mannan whereas the 3rd member of the family does not play a role in the synthesis of mannan (Henry et al. 2019). In the GH76 family of the Dfg proteins which have been shown to be involved in the transfer of the galactomannan to the branched β-1,3 glucan, the *DFG3* gene is essential whereas all the other genes do not have any (or a minute) role in the cell wall morphogenesis (Muszkieta et al. 2019). Finally, some of the eight chitin synthases of *A. fumigatus* do not seem to play any role in chitin biosynthesis whereas others are absolutely needed. However, even though some of the enzymes have a stronger impact in the function of interest, gene deletions of all members of the family have suggested that in several cases these enzymes work cooperatively (Muszkieta et al. 2014). Even though it has not been convincingly shown in the absence of localization or specific activity per individual protein, it is assumed that the presence of multiple genes per family enables a spatio-temporal expression of these activities for a definite fungal stage or under different nutritional or environmental conditions. Moreover, the characterization of cell wall-associated enzymatic activities is performed most of the time in vitro which is certainly not the most appropriate conditions to perceive the reality of the cell wall synthesis. Donor and acceptor molecules and the physico-chemical protein environment may be different in situ. Such differences could explain why the two *KTR* genes have been shown in vitro to have only an α-1,2 mannosyltransferase activity while the mannan of *A. fumigatus* is a mixture of α-1,6 an α-1,2 mannan. Obviously, efforts to mimic *in cellulo* enzyme activities should be better developed.

4 Uncertainties in the Structure of the Cell Wall

Most studies have suggested that the skeleton of the cell wall is a branched β-1,3 glucan bound to chitin. However, a recent solid NMR study of the *A. fumigatus* cell wall questions this conclusion and suggests that the α-1,3 glucans may be the central polymer around which are arranged the other polymers especially chitin (Kang et al. 2018). Could we then consider that β-1,3 glucans have a function of stabilizer [like callose in plants (De Storme and Geelen 2014)] and that the structure analyzed are not the reality due to the chemical modifications induced by the harsh treatments to isolate soluble individual components. However, these NMR findings do not provide a clear picture either, since mutants devoid of α-1,3 glucans do not have an altered growth or even morphogenetic issues (Henry et al. 2012). We still believe that the fibrillar aspect of the wall is due to chitin and β-1,3 glucan since electron microscopy suggests that α-1,3 glucans are amorphous. In any case, this provocative NMR study is very interesting and indicates that the structural organization of the fungal cell wall is far from fully understood. For example, the possible association of microfibrils of structural polysaccharides with an amorphous material made up of proteins and other types of polysaccharides have never been investigated in situ in living fungus.

In the past, it was considered that the cell wall was an inert skeletal structure whose modifications only associated with the extension of the fungal cell. Data are now accumulating showing that the cell wall is constantly rearranged and modified structurally and quantitatively depending on the external environment [(Beauvais and Latgé 2015; Beauvais et al. 2014) see APJ Brown chapter]. Characterizing these changes especially those occurring during growth in vivo on the polysaccharides exposed on the surface of the cell wall is essential to understand better the interactions between host and fungal pathogens (Valsecchi et al. 2019). Interestingly, the fungal carbohydrate ligands recognized by C-type lectins are poorly understood with the exception of the specific recognition by dectin1 of long β-1,3 glucan fibrils (although dectin1 is also able to recognize *Mycobacterium*, which lacks β-1,3 glucan). The ligands recognized by the other C-type lectins remain poorly characterized. Is this due to the poorly defined carbohydrate poly- or monomers used as ligands? Such recognition studies usually require soluble ligands and most of the studies are based on insufficiently purified molecules. The new availability of pure oligosaccharides representative of the cell wall polysaccharides, obtained by chemical synthesis, can now allow the construction of glycoarrays to analyze the recognition of ligands by C-type lectins (see Nifantiev chapter) but also to mimic fungal infection with oligosaccharide-conjugated particles (Mansour et al. 2013). If the use of such definite tools does not identify precisely the ligands for the lectins, it can suggest that the recognition is more based on the 3D structure of the polysaccharide than on a specific chemical composition of the polysaccharide. However, modeling the three-dimensional features of polysaccharides and carbohydrate polymers is still in its infancy (Perez et al. 2015). More work devoted to this area could help decipher the molecular bases of these host cell–fungal cell wall

polysaccharide interactions and further precise the binding capacity of the CBMs. Another important point already mentioned above is that the composition of the cell wall varies depending on the fungal morphotype considered (yeast, conidia, and mycelium). Unfortunately, the analysis of the role of the cell wall during infection is rarely based on the morphotype of the infective propagule or on a propagule which has been grown in a medium mimicking the in vivo situation. For example, in Chytridiomycetes or Zygomycetes, the presence of β-1,3-glucans is restricted to the sporangiospore wall or flagellate spores. In *A. fumigatus,* the mycelium is covered by GAG (which is absent from the conidium), which favors the infection while the conidium in contrast is covered and protected by melanin (absent from the hyphae) [(Akoumianaki et al. 2016); Briard et al. submitted]. In spite of the progresses made in the analysis of the fungal cell wall in the last 50 years, the structure of the fungal cell wall remains uncertain as suggested by all different putative schemas of the fungal cell wall, often contradictory, proposed by multiple authors (look at Google "images of fungal cell wall"). Even though it is often not rewarding in terms of publications, such studies should be implemented in the future.

5 Similar Questions and Common Problems in the Understanding of Cell Wall Biosynthesis in Plants and Fungi?

The plant and fungal cell walls face similar challenges: they have a composite architecture based on a crystalline core (cellulose or chitin) surrounded by a matrix of hydrated polysaccharides with aromatic material or proteins. If there are differences between plants and fungi, the majority of the questions asked in the analysis of the fungal cell wall have not been answered in plant cell wall growth. For example, what is exactly and what determines the length of a polysaccharide in a growing or aged cell wall? What determines the substitution patterns of a polysaccharide and what is the minimal branching level between polysaccharides to keep the viscoelastic property of the cell wall? What are the auxiliary proteins and cofactors in polysaccharide synthesis? How is the product influenced by the supply of activated precursors such as nucleotide sugars and how are nucleotide sugar transporters regulated? Activation of the cell wall-associated enzymes is thought to occur after their integration into the plasma membrane, although the exact mechanism is unknown. One possibility is that the activation is achieved through phosphorylation as it was shown for chitin synthases (Lenardon et al. 2010; Martínez-Rucobo et al. 2009). How are the sequential biosynthetic events in the addition of branched chains controlled and how are the sites of insertion defined? What are the hot spots important to convey biomechanical stability to the wall? In plants like in fungi, understanding the functional biochemical analysis of glycosyltransferases has been slow because they are membrane proteins which sometimes operate as part of large multimeric complexes. The glycosyltransferases have

been identified based on biochemical enrichment strategies, heterologous protein expression followed by in vitro activity assays, and/or the isolation of mutants or overexpression (rarely undertaken in fungi) followed by the analysis of the cell wall of the mutants. Substrate specificity for acceptor and donor in vitro and vivo, enzyme kinetics, and cellular localization (rarely undertaken) are usually poorly understood in both eukaryotic phyla. Because of this complexity, it has been impossible to reconstruct synthetically an entire biosynthetic machinery to produce a complex branched cell wall polysaccharide in vitro with a structure similar to that found in the native cell wall. Will it be an interest to strengthen cross-fertilization between these two kingdoms? Will we learn about the role of β-1,3 glucans in fungi if we engineer the expression of fungal *FKS* genes in *Arabidopsis* or Gram negative bacteria such as *Agrobacterium* producing the plant or bacterial β-1,3 glucans callose or curdlan (Pauly et al. 2019)?

A grand challenge in the cell wall field is to relate cell wall structure to the mechanics of cell walls and the action of cell wall-loosening agents (enzymes or biophysical changes) that induce wall stress relaxation and provoke water uptake needed for cell growth. Discussed in plants, the water entrance has not been really followed up in fungi. Aquaporins which are present in fungi are obviously not the unique element to regulate water entrance (Latgé et al. 2017). A deeper understanding of wall deformations will require more extensive experimental testing in combination with quantitative models of how the structural components of the cell wall are linked to one another and what kinds of polymer motions occur during rapid, reversible deformations versus the slow irreversible enlargement of the growing wall. Are these modifications only due to enzymes? In plants, the best-studied example of non-enzymatic degradation of the cell wall matrix is the family of expansins (Cosgrove 2016; Nikolaidis et al. 2014). Orthologous expansin genes have been found in *Aspergillus* (Table 4), but their deletion which has been initiated has not led yet to any modification of the fungal cell wall (Mouyna and Latgé, unpublished). Moreover, the role of an increase in the intracellular osmotic pressure in the modification of the elasticity of the cell wall structure has not been investigated.

To date, a number of publications on plant cell wall and fungal cell wall are equally numerous. Even though the studies on the plant and fungal cell walls target different objectives and are more focused on biotechnology in the case of plants and antifungals and immunology in human fungal pathogens, scientific questions are numerous and remain similar.

6 New Approaches to Understand Cell Wall Synthesis and Degradation

The invention of the microscope in the late 1600s was critical to fuel interest in biology. Since then, increasingly sophisticated microscopic tools have led to an ever-more refined picture of the cell especially on the role of membrane complexes which can accurately define the underlying molecular interactions through extensive studies in biophysics, membrane biology, and advanced imaging. However, these new technologies have not been applied to the study of the fungal cell wall and only very scarcely to plant or bacterial cell wall. Super-resolution microscopy techniques reach previously inaccessible spatial scales and the understanding of short-lived interactions (protein–protein, protein–lipid, and protein–carbohydrate interactions) that are not amenable to standard biochemical assays and have been previously inaccessible in live cells. Super-resolution microscopy, such as PALM, STORM, and STED, is able to accurately describe the nanoscale structure of living cells with a sub-100 nm resolution. The development of CryoEM and super-resolution microscopy which has been recently complemented by the development of new Titan Krios microscopes will allow a **"near-atomic" resolution of samples in a fully hydrated environment** (Atanasova et al. 2019; Gustafsson et al. 2016; Sahl et al. 2017; Sezgin 2017). All these high-resolution microscopy techniques should allow a better characterization of the membrane complexes responsible for the synthesis and remodeling of the polysaccharides and the insertion and secretion of the glycans in the membrane complex. The first example to go after will be the Fks1/Rho1 complex which has been known to be crucial for the synthesis of β-1,3 glucans. Many other questions should be investigated: for example, how do transglycosidases of family GH72 interact with the neosynthesized β-1,3 glucan and the Fks synthase complex? Or how do the different chitin synthases cooperate with each other and interact with the glucan synthase?

These new technological approaches would not only allow the **localization of the different CAZymes involved in fungal cell wall synthesis and turnover**, but they would enable studying (i) the timing of cell wall deposition, (ii) the variations of cell wall composition during cell aging, and (iii) the identification of the linkages truly responsible for the rigidity of the cell wall. Cell wall regeneration in protoplasts is an ancient tool used in the 70's (Moore and Peberdy 1976; Peberdy and Gibson 1971) which could be revisited now with the technology mentioned above. Protoplasts are the most appropriate cells since they do not possess a cell wall which would make the application of these technologies difficult. Multiple glucan chains are simultaneously synthesized by single plasma membrane-localized synthases and in contrast to the situation in plants (Li et al. 2014), we still do not know what is the length of the neosynthesized glucan and chitin fibrils in situ, how are assembled the polysaccharide molecules to form an elementary microfibril and how are all these neosynthesized microfibrils imbricated.

Coupling super-resolution approaches to click chemistry for the introduction of specific labeled molecules inside the neosynthesized polysaccharides has not been undertaken yet in the fungal field and very little in the plant or bacterial cell wall fields (DeMeester et al. 2019; Simon et al. 2018).

Preliminary data suggest that a new method called PIP for polysaccharide immunoprecipitation can be beneficial (Latgé unpublished). The idea behind PIP is close to that used in chromatin immunoprecipitation (ChIP). Insoluble polysaccharides and associated CAZymes in living cells are cross-linked by chemical fixation and made soluble after cleavage by appropriate glycoside hydrolases. The soluble molecules are immunoprecipitated with carbohydrate-specific antibodies or lectins and the associated protein could be sequenced. Enrichment of specific CAZyme proteins associated in vivo to the target polysaccharides should be an indication of their involvement in the polysaccharide synthesis. Product entrapment techniques (Inoue et al. 1995; Kang et al. 1984) which have been used in the past should be now revisited with these new technologies.

These methods could be also applied to the analysis of the mechanisms responsible for the **secretion of cell wall polymers**, which remains largely unknown to date although they have an essential role in biofilm formation. One still unanswered and very controversial question is the putative role of extracellular vesicles (and even their existence in the plant cell wall biosynthesis field) in the secretion of the polysaccharides [(Rodrigues and Casadevall 2018; Zarnowski et al. 2018) Rizzo et al., submitted]. In plants, the association between extracellular vesicles and the cell wall is not clear (Cui et al. 2020). It is however obvious that the secretion and transport pathways responsible for the passage of the cell wall polymers through the plasma membrane and their deposition in the cell wall space is different from the active secretory mechanisms responsible for the secretion of proteins. The composition of the glycan present in biofilms or capsules is different from the polysaccharides constitutive of the cell wall. In *Aspergillus*, the GAG present in the extracellular mycelial matrix plays a role in the adhesion of hyphae in the colony and to the host epithelial cells (Beaussart et al. 2015; Lee et al. 2015). The capsule of *C. neoformans* is rich in glucuronoxylomannan and glucuronoxylomannogalactan components which are also not present in the cell wall. The polymers in *C. albicans* biofilm are rich in α-1,6-mannan and β-1,6- and β-1,3-glucans, a composition different of the typical *Candida* cell wall (Zarnowski et al. 2018; Doering 2009; Fontaine et al. 2011; Zarnowski et al. 2014). All these polysaccharides must travel through the cell wall using (a) pathway(s) not defined to date. The type of transport may also depend on signals for this recognition which are also unknown. It has been recently shown that galactomannan in *Aspergillus* which is covalently bound to the cell wall is transported by a different mechanism than the one used for the membrane GPI-anchored galactomannan (Muszkieta et al. 2019). The passage of the polysaccharides through the cell wall will also depend on the porosity of the cell wall. The mechanisms responsible for the **permeability** (or impermeability) of the cell wall to external toxic or beneficial molecules remain poorly understood or even explored (Liu et al. 2019; Stirke et al. 2019). The use of

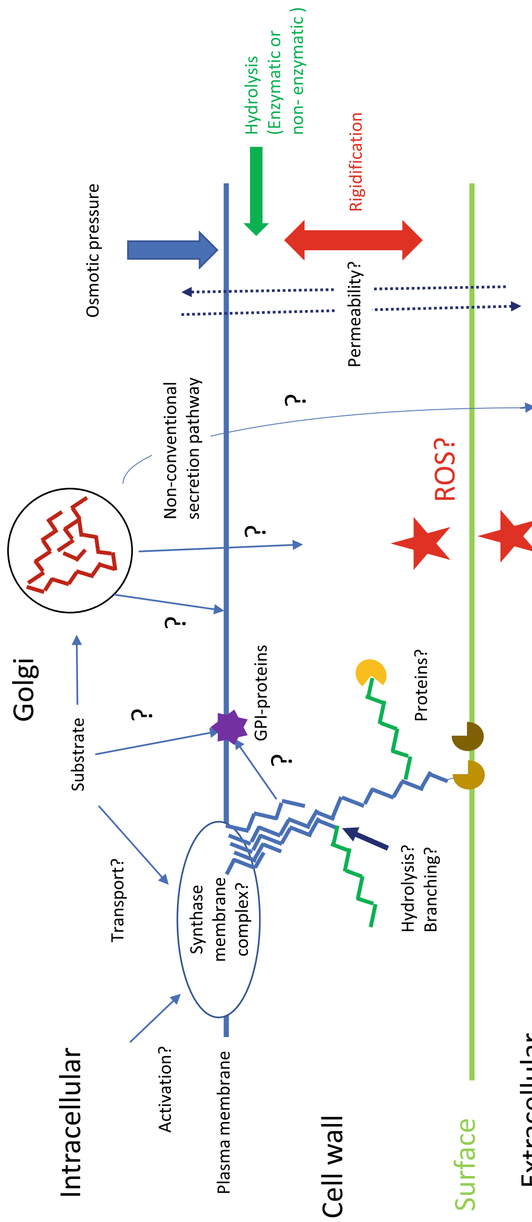


Fig. 2 Unanswered questions in fungal cell wall construction

nanoparticles bound to several ligands has been shown to be a useful strategy to analyze permeability [(Walker et al. 2018) Hua et al., unpublished].

Most questions are focused on cell wall synthesis but the **degradation of the cell wall** is an issue which is less addressed. Enzymatic degradation of the cell wall has been often mentioned as the only way for the fungal cell to soften the cell wall and make the cell wall viscoelastic to allow the fungus to expand. However, the essential role of glycoside hydrolases during yeast budding and conidium germination, or hyphal branching has not been fully demonstrated and the relationship between internal turgor pressure and hydrolases remains fuzzy (Lew 2011). The part taken by the internal osmotic pressure vs enzymatic hydrolysis has yet to be quantified by biophysical methods. Another intriguing question is the intra-phagosomal degradation of the cell wall polysaccharides. How are the cell wall components degraded and presented by antigen-presenting cells to select for polysaccharide-specific T-cells since human glycoside hydrolases have not been shown to be able to degrade enzymatically cell wall polymers (even though they are able to degrade chito-oligosaccharides or glycosaminoglycans and hyaluronan)? (Nakamura et al. 2019; Kumar and Zhang 2019). In the phagosome, cell wall polysaccharides can be degraded by the action of reactive oxygen radicals (ROS) but the rearrangements of the glycan polymers consecutively to the oxidation of the polysaccharides remain unknown. The role of ROS in the degradation of glycans has been shown especially inside the phagocytes (Baum and Cobb 2017; Duan and Kasper 2011; Velez et al. 2009). Such understanding is needed and would certainly help the understanding of the PAMP/PRR interaction and especially the identification of the ligands for C-type lectins and help defining better how glycan-specific T-cells emerge. Better identifying the links between glycobiology, fungal virulence, and immunology is certainly a way of the future to promote the study the fungal cell wall.

7 Conclusion

Fungal genome sequencing has made considerable progress over the last 20 years, but this progress translates only slowly in a better understanding of cell wall synthesis and turnover, due to the intrinsic experimental difficulties of characterizing a poorly understood composite structure and to the difficult characterization of dozens of membrane enzymes with overlapping substrates and products. Even though the study of the cell wall biosynthesis has been initiated half a century ago, major questions presented in Fig. 2 remain unsolved. It is clear that breakthrough in the field will require new innovative approaches and technologies to advance our understanding of cell wall construction. All the approaches presented in this essay are of course not exclusive and new ideas and concepts are certainly welcome to break codes and transcend ideas accepted to date in the fungal field.

References

Aimanianda V, Simenel C, Garnaud C, Clavaud C, Tada R, Barbin L, Mouyna I, Heddergott C, Popolo L, Ohya Y et al (2017) The dual activity responsible for the elongation and branching of β-(1,3)-glucan in the fungal cell wall. MBio 8

Akoumianaki T, Kyrmizi I, Valsecchi I, Gresnigt MS, Samonis G, Drakos E, Boumpas D, Muszkieta L, Prevost M-C, Kontoyiannis DP et al (2016) Aspergillus cell wall melanin blocks LC3-associated phagocytosis to promote pathogenicity. Cell Host Microbe 19:79–90

Alcazar-Fuoli L, Clavaud C, Lamarre C, Aimanianda V, Seidl-Seiboth V, Mellado E, Latgé J-P (2011) Functional analysis of the fungal/plant class chitinase family in Aspergillus fumigatus. Fungal Genet Biol FG B 48:418–429

Atanasova M, Bagdonas H, Agirre J (2019) Structural glycobiology in the age of electron cryo-microscopy. Curr Opin Struct Biol 62:70–78

Bamford NC, Snarr BD, Gravelat FN, Little DJ, Lee MJ, Zacharias CA, Chabot JC, Geller AM, Baptista SD, Baker P et al (2015) Sph3 is a glycoside hydrolase required for the biosynthesis of galactosaminogalactan in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. J Biol Chem 290:27438–27450

Banks IR, Specht CA, Donlin MJ, Gerik KJ, Levitz SM, Lodge JK (2005) A chitin synthase and its regulator protein are critical for chitosan production and growth of the fungal pathogen *Cryptococcus neoformans*. Eukaryot Cell 4:1902–1912

Bartnicki-García S (1999) Glucans, walls, and morphogenesis: on the contributions of J. G. H. Wessels to the golden decades of fungal physiology and beyond. Fungal Genet Biol FG B 27:119–127

Bartnicki-Garcia S, Lippman E (1969) Fungal morphogenesis: cell wall construction in *Mucor rouxii*. Science 165:302–304

Bartnicki-Garcia S, Bracker CE, Gierz G, López-Franco R, Lu H (2000) Mapping the growth of fungal hyphae: orthogonal cell wall expansion during tip growth and the role of turgor. Biophys J 79:2382–2390

Baum LG, Cobb BA (2017) The direct and indirect effects of glycans on immune function. Glycobiology 27:619–624

Beaussart A, El-Kirat-Chatel S, Fontaine T, Latgé J-P, Dufrêne YF (2015) Nanoscale biophysical properties of the cell surface galactosaminogalactan from the fungal pathogen *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Nanoscale 7:14996–15004

Beauvais A, Latgé J-P (2015) Aspergillus biofilm in vitro and in vivo. Microbiol Spectr 3

Beauvais A, Fontaine T, Aimanianda V, Latgé J-P (2014) Aspergillus cell wall and biofilm. Mycopathologia 178:371–377

Blanco N, Reidy M, Arroyo J, Cabib E (2012) Crosslinks in the cell wall of budding yeast control morphogenesis at the mother-bud neck. J Cell Sci 125:5781–5789

Brown GD, Denning DW, Gow NAR, Levitz SM, Netea MG, White TC (2012) Hidden killers: human fungal infections. Sci Transl Med 4:165rv13

Cabib E, Farkas V, Kosík O, Blanco N, Arroyo J, McPhie P (2008) Assembly of the yeast cell wall. Crh1p and Crh2p act as transglycosylases in vivo and in vitro. J Biol Chem 283:29859–29872

Chase WR, Zhaxybayeva O, Rocha J, Cosgrove DJ, Shapiro LR (2020) Global cellulose biomass, horizontal gene transfers and domain fusions drive microbial expansin evolution. New Phytol

Christiansen L, Pathiraja D, Bech PK, Schultz-Johansen M, Hennessy R, Teze D, Choi I-G, Stougaard P (2020) A multifunctional polysaccharide utilization gene cluster in *Colwellia echini* encodes enzymes for the complete degradation of κ-Carrageenan, ι-Carrageenan, and Hybrid β/κ-Carrageenan. MSphere 5

Christodoulidou A, Bouriotis V, Thireos G (1996) Two sporulation-specific chitin deacetylase-encoding genes are required for the ascospore wall rigidity of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. J Biol Chem 271:31420–31425

Cosgrove DJ (2016) Catalysts of plant cell wall loosening. F1000Research 5

Cui Y, Gao J, He Y, Jiang L (2020) Plant extracellular vesicles. Protoplasma 257:3–12

De Storme N, Geelen D (2014) Callose homeostasis at plasmodesmata: molecular regulators and developmental relevance. Front Plant Sci 5:138

DeMeester KE, Liang H, Zhou J, Wodzanowski KA, Prather BL, Santiago CC, Grimes CL (2019) Metabolic incorporation of N-acetyl muramic acid probes into bacterial peptidoglycan. Curr Protoc Chem Biol 11:e74

Dichtl K, Samantaray S, Aimanianda V, Zhu Z, Prévost M-C, Latgé J-P, Ebel F, Wagener J (2015) *Aspergillus fumigatus* devoid of cell wall β-1,3-glucan is viable, massively sheds galactomannan and is killed by septum formation inhibitors. Mol Microbiol 95:458–471

Doering TL (2009) How sweet it is! Cell wall biogenesis and polysaccharide capsule formation in *Cryptococcus neoformans*. Annu Rev Microbiol 63:223–247

Douglas CM, D'Ippolito JA, Shei GJ, Meinz M, Onishi J, Marrinan JA, Li W, Abruzzo GK, Flattery A, Bartizal K et al (1997) Identification of the FKS1 gene of *Candida albicans* as the essential target of 1,3-beta-D-glucan synthase inhibitors. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 41:2471–2479

Duan J, Kasper DL (2011) Oxidative depolymerization of polysaccharides by reactive oxygen/nitrogen species. Glycobiology 21:401–409

Duvenage L, Walker LA, Bojarczuk A, Johnston SA, MacCallum DM, Munro CA, Gourlay CW (2019) Inhibition of classical and alternative modes of respiration in *Candida albicans* leads to cell wall remodeling and increased macrophage recognition. MBio 10

Elhasi T, Blomberg A (2019) Integrins in disguise—mechanosensors in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* as functional integrin analogues. Microb. Cell Graz Austria 6:335–355

Elieh Ali Komi D, Sharma L, Dela Cruz CS (2018) Chitin and its effects on inflammatory and immune responses. Clin Rev Allergy Immunol 54:213–223

Fang W, Sanz AB, Bartual SG, Wang B, Ferenbach AT, Farkaš V, Hurtado-Guerrero R, Arroyo J, van Aalten DMF (2019) Mechanisms of redundancy and specificity of the *Aspergillus fumigatus* Crh transglycosylases. Nat Commun 10:1669

Fontaine T, Delangle A, Simenel C, Coddeville B, van Vliet SJ, van Kooyk Y, Bozza S, Moretti S, Schwarz F, Trichot C et al (2011) Galactosaminogalactan, a new immunosuppressive polysaccharide of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. PLoS Pathog 7:e1002372

Gastebois A, Fontaine T, Latgé J-P, Mouyna I (2010) beta(1-3)Glucanosyltransferase Gel4p is essential for *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Eukaryot Cell 9:1294–1298

Gow NAR, Latge J-P, Munro CA (2017) The fungal cell wall: structure, biosynthesis, and function. Microbiol, Spectr, p 5

Grigoriev IV, Nikitin R, Haridas S, Kuo A, Ohm R, Otillar R, Riley R, Salamov A, Zhao X, Korzeniewski F et al (2014) MycoCosm portal: gearing up for 1000 fungal genomes. Nucleic Acids Res 42:D699–704

Gustafsson N, Culley S, Ashdown G, Owen DM, Pereira PM, Henriques R (2016) Fast live-cell conventional fluorophore nanoscopy with ImageJ through super-resolution radial fluctuations. Nat Commun 7:12471

Han B, Moretto M, Weiss ML (2019) Encephalitozoon: tissue culture, cryopreservation, and murine infection. Curr Protoc Microbiol 52:e72

Hartland RP, Fontaine T, Debeaupuis JP, Simenel C, Delepierre M, Latgé JP (1996) A novel beta-(1-3)-glucanosyltransferase from the cell wall of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. J Biol Chem 271:26843–26849

Henry C, Latgé J-P, Beauvais A (2012) α1,3 glucans are dispensable in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Eukaryot Cell 11:26–29

Henry C, Li J, Danion F, Alcazar-Fuoli L, Mellado E, Beau R, Jouvion G, Latgé J-P, Fontaine T (2019) Two KTR mannosyltransferases are responsible for the biosynthesis of cell wall mannans and control polarized growth in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. MBio 10

Inoue SB, Takewaki N, Takasuka T, Mio T, Adachi M, Fujii Y, Miyamoto C, Arisawa M, Furuichi Y, Watanabe T (1995) Characterization and gene cloning of 1,3-beta-D-glucan synthase from *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Eur J Biochem 231:845–854

Kang MS, Elango N, Mattia E, Au-Young J, Robbins PW, Cabib E (1984) Isolation of chitin synthetase from *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Purification of an enzyme by entrapment in the reaction product. J Biol Chem 259:14966–14972

Kang X, Kirui A, Muszyński A, Widanage MCD, Chen A, Azadi P, Wang P, Mentink-Vigier F, Wang T (2018) Molecular architecture of fungal cell walls revealed by solid-state NMR. Nat Commun 9:2747

Katiyar S, Pfaller M, Edlind T (2006) *Candida albicans* and *Candida glabrata* clinical isolates exhibiting reduced echinocandin susceptibility. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 50:2892–2894

Kitagaki H, Wu H, Shimoi H, Ito K (2002) Two homologous genes, DCW1 (YKL046c) and DFG5, are essential for cell growth and encode glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI)-anchored membrane proteins required for cell wall biogenesis in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Mol Microbiol 46:1011–1022

Knogge W (1996) Fungal *Infection of Plants*. Plant Cell 8:1711–1722

Kombrink A, Thomma BPHJ (2013) LysM effectors: secreted proteins supporting fungal life. PLoS Pathog 9:e1003769

Kumar A, Zhang KYJ (2019) Human chitinases: structure, function, and inhibitor discovery. Adv Exp Med Biol 1142:221–251

Kuznetsov E, Váchová L, Palková Z (2016) Cellular localization of Sun4p and its interaction with proteins in the yeast birth scar. Cell Cycle Georget. Tex 15:1898–1907

Latge J-P, Beauvais A (2014) Functional duality of the cell wall. Curr Opin Microbiol 20:111–117

Latgé J-P, Beauvais A, Chamilos G (2017) The cell wall of the human fungal pathogen *Aspergillus fumigatus*: biosynthesis, organization, immune response, and virulence. Annu Rev Microbiol 71:99–116

Lee MJ, Gravelat FN, Cerone RP, Baptista SD, Campoli PV, Choe S-I, Kravtsov I, Vinogradov E, Creuzenet C, Liu H et al (2014) Overlapping and distinct roles of *Aspergillus fumigatus* UDP-glucose 4-epimerases in galactose metabolism and the synthesis of galactose-containing cell wall polysaccharides. J Biol Chem 289:1243–1256

Lee MJ, Liu H, Barker BM, Snarr BD, Gravelat FN, Al Abdallah Q, Gavino C, Baistrocchi SR, Ostapska H, Xiao T et al (2015) The fungal exopolysaccharide galactosaminogalactan mediates virulence by enhancing resistance to neutrophil extracellular traps. PLoS Pathog 11:e1005187

Lenardon MD, Milne SA, Mora-Montes HM, Kaffarnik FAR, Peck SC, Brown AJP, Munro CA, Gow NAR (2010) Phosphorylation regulates polarisation of chitin synthesis in *Candida albicans*. J Cell Sci 123:2199–2206

Lew RR (2011) How does a hypha grow? The biophysics of pressurized growth in fungi. Nat Rev Microbiol 9:509–518

Li J, Mouyna I, Henry C, Moyrand F, Malosse C, Chamot-Rooke J, Janbon G, Latgé J-P, Fontaine T (2018) Glycosylphosphatidylinositol anchors from galactomannan and GPI-anchored protein are synthesized by distinct pathways in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. J Fungi Basel Switz 4

Li S, Bashline L, Lei L, Gu Y (2014) Cellulose synthesis and its regulation. Arab Book Am Soc Plant Biol 12

Liu X, Li J, Zhao H, Liu B, Günther-Pomorski T, Chen S, Liesche J (2019) Novel tool to quantify cell wall porosity relates wall structure to cell growth and drug uptake. J Cell Biol 218:1408–1421

Mansour MK, Tam JM, Khan NS, Seward M, Davids PJ, Puranam S, Sokolovska A, Sykes DB, Dagher Z, Becker C et al (2013) Dectin-1 activation controls maturation of β-1,3-glucan-containing phagosomes. J Biol Chem 288:16043–16054

Martín-Cuadrado AB, Encinar del Dedo J, de Medina-Redondo M, Fontaine T, del Rey F, Latgé JP, Vázquez de Aldana CR (2008) The Schizosaccharomyces pombe endo-1,3-beta-glucanase Eng1 contains a novel carbohydrate binding module required for septum localization. Mol Microbiol 69:188–200

Martínez-Rucobo FW, Eckhardt-Strelau L, Terwisscha van Scheltinga AC (2009) Yeast chitin synthase 2 activity is modulated by proteolysis and phosphorylation. Biochem J 417:547–554

Mélida H, Sain D, Stajich JE, Bulone V (2015) Deciphering the uniqueness of Mucoromycotina cell walls by combining biochemical and phylogenomic approaches. Environ Microbiol 17:1649–1662

Mélida H, Sopeña-Torres S, Bacete L, Garrido-Arandia M, Jordá L, López G, Muñoz-Barrios A, Pacios LF, Molina A (2018) Non-branched β-1,3-glucan oligosaccharides trigger immune responses in arabidopsis. Plant J Cell Mol Biol 93:34–49

Millet N, Moya-Nilges M, Sachse M, Krijnse Locker J, Latgé J-P, Mouyna I (2019) *Aspergillus fumigatus* exoβ(1-3)glucanases family GH55 are essential for conidial cell wall morphogenesis. Cell Microbiol 21:e13102

Moore PM, Peberdy JF (1976) A particulate chitin synthase from *Aspergillus flavus* link: the properties, location, and levels of activity in mycelium and regenerating protoplast preparations. Can J Microbiol 22:915–921

Mouyna I, Fontaine T, Vai M, Monod M, Fonzi WA, Diaquin M, Popolo L, Hartland RP, Latge JP (2000) Glycosylphosphatidylinositol-anchored glucanosyltransferases play an active role in the biosynthesis of the fungal cell wall. J Biol Chem 275:14882–14889

Mouyna I, Aimanianda V, Hartl L, Prevost M-C, Sismeiro O, Dillies M-A, Jagla B, Legendre R, Coppee J-Y, Latgé J-P (2016) GH16 and GH81 family β-(1,3)-glucanases in *Aspergillus fumigatus* are essential for conidial cell wall morphogenesis. Cell Microbiol 18:1285–1293

Mouyna I, Dellière S, Beauvais A, Gravelat F, Snarr B, Lehoux M, Zacharias C, Sun Y, de Jesus Carrion S, Pearlman E, Sheppard DC, Latgé J-P (2020) What are the functions of chitin Deacetylases in Aspergillus fumigatus? Front Cell Infect Microbiol 10:28. https://doi.org/10.3389/fcimb.2020.00028

Muraosa Y, Toyotome T, Yahiro M, Kamei K (2019) Characterisation of novel-cell-wall LysM-domain proteins LdpA and LdpB from the human pathogenic fungus *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Sci Rep 9:3345

Muszkieta L, Aimanianda V, Mellado E, Gribaldo S, Alcàzar-Fuoli L, Szewczyk E, Prevost M-C, Latgé J-P (2014) Deciphering the role of the chitin synthase families 1 and 2 in the in vivo and in vitro growth of *Aspergillus fumigatus* by multiple gene targeting deletion. Cell Microbiol 16:1784–1805

Muszkieta L, Fontaine T, Beau R, Mouyna I, Vogt MS, Trow J, Cormack BP, Essen L-O, Jouvion G, Latgé J-P (2019) The glycosylphosphatidylinositol-anchored DFG family is essential for the insertion of galactomannan into the β-(1,3)-glucan-chitin core of the cell wall of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. MSphere 4

Nakamura T, Fahmi M, Tanaka J, Seki K, Kubota Y, Ito M (2019) Genome-wide analysis of whole human glycoside hydrolases by data-driven analysis in silico. Int J Mol, Sci, p 20

Naranjo-Ortiz MA, Gabaldón T (2019) Fungal evolution: diversity, taxonomy and phylogeny of the Fungi. Biol Rev Camb Philos Soc 94:2101–2137

Nikolaidis N, Doran N, Cosgrove DJ (2014) Plant expansins in bacteria and fungi: evolution by horizontal gene transfer and independent domain fusion. Mol Biol Evol 31:376–386

Onwubiko UN, Rich-Robinson J, Mustaf RA, Das ME (2020) Cdc42 promotes Bgs1 recruitment for septum synthesis and glucanase localization for cell separation during cytokinesis in fission yeast. Small GTPases

Osmond BC, Specht CA, Robbins PW (1999) Chitin synthase III: synthetic lethal mutants and “stress related” chitin synthesis that bypasses the CSD3/CHS6 localization pathway. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 96:11206–11210

Pacheco-Arjona JR, Ramirez-Prado JH (2014) Large-scale phylogenetic classification of fungal chitin synthases and identification of a putative cell-wall metabolism gene cluster in *Aspergillus genomes*. PLoS ONE 9:e104920

Pan Y-J, Lin T-L, Chen C-T, Chen Y-Y, Hsieh P-F, Hsu C-R, Wu M-C, Wang J-T (2015) Genetic analysis of capsular polysaccharide synthesis gene clusters in 79 capsular types of Klebsiella spp. Sci Rep 5:15573

Pauly M, Gawenda N, Wagner C, Fischbach P, Ramírez V, Axmann IM, Voiniciuc C (2019) The suitability of orthogonal hosts to study plant cell wall biosynthesis. Plants Basel Switz 8

Peberdy JF, Gibson RK (1971) Regeneration of *Aspergillus nidulans* protoplasts. J Gen Microbiol 69:325–330

Perez S, Tubiana T, Imberty A, Baaden M (2015) Three-dimensional representations of complex carbohydrates and polysaccharides–SweetUnityMol: a video game-based computer graphic software. Glycobiology 25:483–491

Pham TA, Berrin JG, Record E, To KA, Sigoillot J-C (2010) Hydrolysis of softwood by *Aspergillus mannanase*: role of a carbohydrate-binding module. J Biotechnol 148:163–170

Pilhofer M, Rappl K, Eckl C, Bauer AP, Ludwig W, Schleifer K-H, Petroni G (2008) Characterization and evolution of cell division and cell wall synthesis genes in the bacterial phyla Verrucomicrobia, Lentisphaerae, Chlamydiae, and Planctomycetes and phylogenetic comparison with rRNA genes. J Bacteriol 190:3192–3202

Rodrigues ML, Casadevall A (2018) A two-way road: novel roles for fungal extracellular vesicles. Mol Microbiol 110:11–15

Sahl SJ, Hell SW, Jakobs S (2017) Fluorescence nanoscopy in cell biology. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 18:685–701

Schmid J, Sieber V, Rehm B (2015) Bacterial exopolysaccharides: biosynthesis pathways and engineering strategies. Front Microbiol 6:496

Sezgin E (2017) Super-resolution optical microscopy for studying membrane structure and dynamics. J Phys Condens Matter Inst Phys J 29:273001

Simon C, Spriet C, Hawkins S, Lion C (2018) Visualizing lignification dynamics in plants with click chemistry: dual labeling is BLISS! J Vis Exp JoVE

Spreghini E, Davis DA, Subaran R, Kim M, Mitchell AP (2003) Roles of *Candida albicans* Dfg5p and Dcw1p cell surface proteins in growth and hypha formation. Eukaryot Cell 2:746–755

St Leger RJ, Screen SE, Shams-Pirzadeh B (2000) Lack of host specialization in *Aspergillus flavus*. Appl Environ Microbiol 66:320–324

Stirke A, Celiesiute-Germaniene R, Zimkus A, Zurauskiene N, Simonis P, Dervinis A, Ramanavicius A, Balevicius S (2019) The link between yeast cell wall porosity and plasma membrane permeability after PEF treatment. Sci Rep 9:14731

Stolz J, Munro S (2002) The components of the *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* mannosyltransferase complex M-Pol I have distinct functions in mannan synthesis. J Biol Chem 277:44801–44808

Taylor PR, Tsoni SV, Willment JA, Dennehy KM, Rosas M, Findon H, Haynes K, Steele C, Botto M, Gordon S et al (2007) Dectin-1 is required for beta-glucan recognition and control of fungal infection. Nat Immunol 8:31–38

Upadhya R, Baker LG, Lam WC, Specht CA, Donlin MJ, Lodge JK (2018) *Cryptococcus neoformans* Cda1 and its chitin deacetylase activity are required for fungal pathogenesis. MBio 9

Valsecchi I, Dupres V, Michel J-P, Duchateau M, Matondo M, Chamilos G, Saveanu C, Guijarro JI, Aimanianda V, Lafont F et al (2019) The puzzling construction of the conidial outer layer of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Cell Microbiol 21:e12994

Velez CD, Lewis CJ, Kasper DL, Cobb BA (2009) Type I Streptococcus pneumoniae carbohydrate utilizes a nitric oxide and MHC II-dependent pathway for antigen presentation. Immunology 127:73–82

Walker L, Sood P, Lenardon MD, Milne G, Olson J, Jensen G, Wolf J, Casadevall A, Adler-Moore J, Gow NAR (2018) The viscoelastic properties of the fungal cell wall allow traffic of AmBisome as intact liposome vesicles. MBio 9

Wloka C, Bi E (2012) Mechanisms of cytokinesis in budding yeast. Cytoskelet. 69:710–726 (Hoboken NJ)

Yu Q, Zhang B, Li J, Zhang B, Wang H, Li M (2016) Endoplasmic reticulum-derived reactive oxygen species (ROS) is involved in toxicity of cell wall stress to *Candida albicans*. Free Radic Biol Med 99:572–583

Zakrzewski A-C, Weigert A, Helm C, Adamski M, Adamska M, Bleidorn C, Raible F, Hausen H (2014) Early divergence, broad distribution, and high diversity of animal chitin synthases. Genome Biol Evol 6

Zarnowski R, Westler WM, Lacmbouh GA, Marita JM, Bothe JR, Bernhardt J, Lounes-Hadj Sahraoui A, Fontaine J, Sanchez H, Hatfield RD et al (2014) Novel entries in a fungal biofilm matrix encyclopedia. MBio 5:e01333–01314

Zarnowski R, Sanchez H, Covelli AS, Dominguez E, Jaromin A, Bernhardt J, Mitchell KF, Heiss C, Azadi P, Mitchell A et al (2018) *Candida albicans* biofilm-induced vesicles confer drug resistance through matrix biogenesis. PLoS Biol 16:e2006872